

**"MAKE SURE  
OF ALL  
THINGS"**

# **"MAKE SURE OF ALL THINGS"**

A compilation of scriptures  
from the Holy Bible under  
seventy main headings to  
enable the searcher for truth  
to ascertain the fundamental  
doctrines and be  
assured thereof.



**"Make sure of all things;  
hold fast to what is right."**

**—1 Thessalonians 5:21.**

COPYRIGHT, 1953  
by  
WATCH TOWER BIBLE & TRACT SOCIETY

**REVISED April 1, 1957**

All scriptures, except otherwise indicated, quoted in this book from the Hebrew Scriptures, Genesis to Malachi, are from the *American Standard Version (AS)*. The Greek Scriptures, Matthew to Revelation, are quoted from the *New World Translation of the Christian Greek Scriptures (NW)*. Quotations from any other versions are identified by symbols below.

- AT* - An American Translation
- AV* - Authorized Version
- CB* - Catholic Biblical Assn. ver.
- Da* - J. N. Darby's version
- Dy* - Catholic Douay version
- Le* - Isaac Leeser's version
- LXX* - The Septuagint Version
- Mo* - James Moffatt's version
- Ro* - J. B. Rotherham's version

PUBLISHERS  
WATCHTOWER BIBLE AND TRACT SOCIETY, INC.  
International Bible Students Association  
Brooklyn, New York, U. S. A.

Made in the United States of America

# C O N T E N T S

	Page
Ancestor Worship .....	9
Animal Worship .....	10
Antichrist .....	14
Apostolic Succession .....	16
Armageddon .....	24
Baptism .....	27
Bible .....	36
Blood Transfusion .....	47
Born Again .....	48
Caesar's Things to Caesar .....	50
Caste System .....	54
Charitable Works .....	57
Communism .....	61
Confession .....	67
Congregation of God .....	70
Creation .....	78
Cross .....	83
Death .....	86
Dedication .....	91
Devil and Demons .....	97
Earth and Its Destiny .....	108
Evolution .....	112
Faith .....	119
Freedom .....	122
Friendship with the World .....	126
Gifts from God .....	135
Healing .....	144
Heavens .....	150
Hell .....	154
Holidays .....	165
Honorary Titles .....	171
Idolatry .....	172
Incarnation .....	179
Interfaith .....	181



## CONTENTS

	Page
Jehovah .....	188
Jehovah's Witnesses .....	193
Jesus Christ .....	207
Jews' Return to Palestine .....	210
Judgment Days .....	219
Kingdom .....	226
Law .....	237
Life .....	242
Love .....	250
Marriage .....	253
Mass .....	257
Minister of God .....	263
New-World Living .....	272
Prayer .....	280
Purgatory .....	286
Races of Mankind .....	290
Ransom .....	293
Religion .....	296
Repentance .....	307
Resurrection .....	311
Return of Christ .....	319
Sabbath .....	324
Salvation .....	330
Sign of Last Days .....	337
Sin .....	344
Soul .....	349
Spirit .....	357
Spiritism .....	366
Superior Authorities .....	369
Ten "Lost Tribes" .....	373
Tithing .....	376
Tongues, Speaking in .....	380
Transmigration .....	383
Trinity .....	386
World Distress .....	390
Worship of Mary .....	398

## FOREWORD

**M**EN want to know the reason why things are as they are. Why is the world so full of confused ideas and shifting patterns? There are so many different beliefs, so many different religions, and all of them have their followers who advocate their particular faith with greater or less zeal. What should one believe in these days? Who is right?

Sound advice is, "Make sure of all things." That means, Go to the highest authority you can find. The highest authority is the Holy Bible, Jehovah's Word. God's only-begotten Son said to him: "Your word is truth." (John 17:17) But Jehovah's advice goes even farther. This book of highest authority does not ask us to accept just one statement of truth, and that blindly; but rather God's prophet says: "Come now, and let us reason together, saith Jehovah." (Isaiah 1:18) That is it! Think the answer out, search for it in the Scriptures, as the early Christians did. "They received the word with the greatest readiness of mind, carefully examining the Scriptures daily as to whether these things were so." (Acts 17:11) If these early Christians were eager to check the Scriptures to find out why things were as they were, then certainly we should be just as diligent in our search for the truth.

Do not just take someone's word for it, but "make sure of all things; hold fast to what is right". (1 Thesalonians 5:21) The apostle Paul said that. But now listen to what John says: "Do not believe every inspired expression, but test the inspired expressions to see whether they originate with God, because many false prophets have gone forth into the world." (1 John 4:1) This book will help you to run to and fro through the Holy Scriptures, to do what these apostles say. The

purpose of this publication is to urge you to check everything with Jehovah's Word of truth. You will notice that all the authority given in this book for the various teachings is Scriptural, and the texts from the Bible are arranged according to different themes for your study. You can check the doctrines yourself from your own Bible, regardless of the version you use, to see 'whether these things are so'.

Furthermore, when you teach others a great responsibility rests upon you. You certainly want to be sure you are right and be "always ready to make a defense before everyone that demands of you a reason for the hope in you, but doing so together with a mild temper and deep respect". (1 Peter 3:15) The apostle Peter here had the right idea: Give a reason; give proof; make sure of your belief, and do not be mixed up with the philosophies of men. Always have the highest authority, Jehovah's Word, backing you up. Always remember, Jesus said to his Father: "Your word is truth." He believed it; he preached it, and he lived it.

In your proclamation of the good news you should always use the Scriptures. Therefore you should study them and understand how reasonable they are "to those who through use have their perceptive powers trained to distinguish both right and wrong", by means of the Word.—Hebrews 5:14.

### WHAT TO DO WITH KNOWLEDGE

Knowledge is too precious to keep to one's self; so we must tell it out. Paul felt this urge; hence he said: "Woe is me if I did not declare the good news!" (1 Corinthians 9:16) Jehovah's Word is so full of good news; if only we knew all of it! It is not enough for those who know the good news merely to *wish* others knew it; it is for them to *see* to it that others know it. That is why Jesus said, 'Go therefore, and teach.' (Matthew 28:19, 20) Wishing never gives knowledge; but your

talking, preaching and proclaiming the good news to others will certainly spread knowledge, and it must be the right kind of knowledge.

Paul told the young man Timothy: "Pay constant attention to yourself and to your teaching." Timothy was interested in gaining everlasting life, and he knew the need of reading the Scriptures, following their teachings and preaching them in order to become mature. In this way his perceptive powers would be trained so as to distinguish between right and wrong teaching, as everything must be in agreement with God's Word. Paul, as a wise counselor, advised Timothy to pay constant attention to his teaching, that is, what he was telling others. Today you should be sure what you say is in line with Jehovah's Word of truth. Never get lax in taking in knowledge; and as you take it in, also give it out in the same unadulterated way that you receive it, because it will save both you and those who listen to you.—1 Timothy 4:16.

We must give the knowledge we have to others. We cannot selfishly store it up within ourselves forever. There is great pleasure in taking in knowledge and learning new things, making them our own, as we receive them from the Giver of all good and perfect gifts. But is it not true that "counsel in the heart of man is like deep water; but a man of understanding will draw it out"? (Proverbs 20:5) The witnesses of Jehovah and all lovers of righteousness want to draw out from their understanding of God's Word and give it to others. "*Make Sure of All Things*" will be a great aid to every user of it to draw out the truth so others can have it freely.

#### HOW TO USE IT

"*Make Sure of All Things*" sets forth seventy principal themes and gives you a balanced picture or

rounded-out coverage by answering the outstanding questions and objections on each of these themes just by using scriptures from the Bible. This publication is not a commentary on the Bible, but it brings together the many scriptures having to do with the theme under discussion. It will prove to be a convenient Bible aid to you.

This book does not take the place of the Bible nor does it try to limit the application of the texts cited to the various themes under which they appear. But the purpose of the book is to put pure Bible truth into the mind of the teacher and to let the Bible speak for itself. It should help the user to be more effective in his use of the Bible in every feature of his preaching activity.

**Door-to-Door Witnessing:** The apostles preached "publicly and from house to house". (Acts 20:20) As you do that, carry this handy book with you. It will not take you long to get acquainted with the seventy themes. Hundreds of different questions can very easily be answered by you as you go about preaching the good news of the Kingdom just by being acquainted with these themes. You always want to give a Scriptural answer. With the aid of this small handbook your presentation of the truth from house to house will always be fresh, versatile and adaptable. If an argument arises on any Bible question, you can always turn to "Subjects for Study" on page 406 and you will be able to find just the scriptures you need. You will find "*Make Sure of All Things*" a ready aid in "announcing Jehovah's kingdom".

**Back-Calls:** When you meet an interested person at his home, make another visit soon. Call back, because your logical, coherent conversation is needed to arouse interest in the truth and to lead the interested person into a deeper consideration of the Bible truths with the help of Watch Tower publications based on these truths. On these revisits when presenting the publications of the Watch Tower Society to the people and showing the need of reading them, it is necessary for you first to clear out objections that exist in the mind of the person before it is possible to start a Bible study. Do not push such questions aside, but answer them

(Continued on page 404)

# Ancestor Worship

## DEFINITION

The practice (ceremonially or otherwise) of honor, veneration and worship of dead ancestors, either individually or collectively, in the belief that they are conscious in an invisible realm and can assist or hinder and are therefore to be kept appeased. *A false practice.*

## ORIGIN

Of non-Biblical origin. A pagan, heathenish practice.

### Due Respect for Living Parents Proper

**Deut. 5:16** "Honor thy father and thy mother, as Jehovah thy God commanded thee; that thy days may be long, and that it may go well with thee, in the land which Jehovah thy God giveth thee."

**Luke 18:18-20** "A certain ruler questioned him, saying: 'Good Teacher, by doing what shall I inherit everlasting life?' Jesus said to him: '... You know the commandments: "... Honor your father and mother..."'

**Prov. 23:22** "Hearken unto thy father that begat thee, and despise not thy mother when she is old."

**Ex. 21:17** "And he that curseth his father or his mother, shall surely be put to death."

**Also: Lev. 20:9; Deut. 27:16; Prov. 1:8, 9; 19:26; 20:20; Jer. 35:6-8, 18; 1 Tim. 5:8.**

### Obedience to God Before That to Parents

**Eph. 6:1-4** "Children, be obedient to your parents in union with the Lord, for this is righteous: 'Honor your father and mother'; which is the first command with a promise: 'That it may go well with you and you may endure a long time on the earth.' And you, fathers, do not be irritating your children, but go on bringing them up in the discipline and authoritative advice of Jehovah."

**Acts 5:29** "We must obey God as ruler rather than men."

**Matt. 10:35** "I came to cause division, with a man against his father, and a daughter against her mother, and a young wife against her mother-in-law."

**Matt. 19:29** "Everyone that has left ... father or mother ... for the sake of my name will receive many times more and will inherit everlasting life."

### Ancestors Not Conscious, Unable to Help

**Ps. 49:10, 17-19** "Wise men die; the fool and the brutish alike perish, and leave their wealth to others. For when he dieth he shall carry nothing away; his glory shall not descend after him. Though while he lived he blessed his soul (and men praise thee, when thou doest well to thyself). He shall go to the generation of his fathers; they shall never see the light."

**John 3:13** "No man has ascended into heaven but he that descended from heaven, the Son of man."

**Acts 2:29, 34** "It is allowable to speak with freeness of speech to you concerning the family head David, that he both deceased and was buried and his tomb is among us to this day. Actually David did not ascend to the heavens."

**Eccl. 9:5, 10** "For the living know that they shall die: but the dead know not anything, ... for

there is no work, nor device, nor knowledge, nor wisdom, in Sheol ["the grave," AV], whither thou goest."

**Job 14:1, 2, 21** "Man, that is born of a woman, is of few days, and full of trouble. He cometh forth like a flower, and is cut down: he fleeth also as a shadow and continueth not. His sons come to honor, and he knoweth it not; and they are brought low, but he perceiveth it not of them."

## Condemned as Creature Worship

**Rom. 1:25** "Who exchanged the truth of God for the lie and venerated and rendered sacred service to the creation rather than the One who created, who is blessed forever."

**Matt. 10:37** "He that has greater affection for father or mother than for me is not worthy of me."

## Worship Due Jehovah

**Matt. 4:10** "For it is written, 'It is Jehovah your God you must worship, and it is to him alone you must render sacred service.'"

**John 4:23, 24** "The hour is coming, and it is now, when the genuine worshipers will worship the Father with spirit and truth, for, indeed, the Father is looking for such kind to worship him. God is a Spirit, and those worshipping him must worship with spirit and truth."

# Animal Worship

## DEFINITION

The form or practice of rendering, ceremonially or otherwise, honor or reverence to various forms of animal life or to man-made representations, or thereby attributing to them human or super-human powers, abilities or inclinations. *A false practice.*

## ORIGIN

From when Eve acted on the lie spoken through a serpent and onward, organized false religions before and after the Flood have held animals as symbolically representing certain heroes or gods. In the first world empire, Egypt, "animal gods" were worshiped in great numbers. Modern Hinduism holds a sacred regard for certain animals.

## Man's Superiority to Animals Clearly Established in Scriptures

**Job 35:11** "Who teacheth us more than the beasts of the earth, and maketh us wiser than the birds of the heavens?"

**Job 18:3** "Wherefore are we counted as beasts, and are become unclean in your sight?"

## Man Given Dominion over the Animals

**Gen. 2:19, 20** "And out of the ground Jehovah God formed every beast of the field, and every

bird of the heavens; and brought them unto the man to see what he would call them: and whatsoever the man called every living creature, that was the name thereof. And the man gave names to all cattle, and to the birds of the heavens, and to every beast of the field; but for man there was not found a help meet for him."

**Gen. 1:27, 28** "And God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he

them. And God blessed them: And God said unto them, . . . have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the birds of the heavens, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth."

**Jer. 27:6** "And now have I given all these lands into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, my servant; and the beasts of the field also have I given him to serve him."

### **Animals Made Subject to Man to Provide Him with Food and Clothing**

**Gen. 9:2-4** "And the fear of you and the dread of you shall be upon every beast of the earth, and upon every bird of the heavens; with all wherewith the ground teemeth, and all the fishes of the sea, into your hand are they delivered. Every moving thing that liveth shall be food for you; as the green herb have I given you all. But flesh with the life thereof, which is the blood thereof, shall ye not eat."

**Lev. 11:2, 9** "Speak unto the children of Israel, saying, These are the living things which ye may eat among all the beasts that are on the earth. These may ye eat of all that are in the waters: whatsoever hath fins and scales in the waters, in the seas, and in the rivers, that may ye eat."

**Gen. 3:21** "And Jehovah God made for Adam and for his wife coats of skins, and clothed them."

**Prov. 27:26, 27** "The lambs are for thy clothing, and the goats are the price of the field; and there will be goats' milk enough for thy food, for the food of thy household, and maintenance for thy maidens."

**Num. 14:8** "If Jehovah delight in us, then he will bring us into this land, and give it unto us; a land which floweth with milk and honey."

**Mark 1:6** "Now John was clothed with camel's hair and

with a leather girdle around his loins, and was living on insect locusts and wild honey."

**Acts 10:10-13** "[Peter] beheld heaven opened and some sort of vessel descending like a great linen sheet being let down by its four extremities upon the earth, and in it there were all kinds of four-footed creatures and creeping things of the earth and birds of heaven. And a voice came to him: 'Rise, Peter, slaughter and eat!'"

### **Under Mosaic Law Vicious Animals Were to Be Killed, Showing Their Subjection**

**Ex. 21:28, 35** "And if an ox gore a man or a woman to death, the ox shall be surely stoned, and its flesh shall not be eaten; but the owner of the ox shall be quit. And if one man's ox hurt another's, so that it dieth, then they shall sell the live ox, and divide the price of it; and the dead also they shall divide."

### **Animals Were Created "After Their Kind" and Are Considered Souls; Hence, Not Inhabited by "Soul" as a Transmigration**

**Gen. 1:20-25** "And God said, Let the waters swarm with swarms of living creatures ["soul," Ro], and let birds fly above the earth in the open firmament of heaven. And God created the great sea-monsters, and every living creature ["soul," Ro] that moveth, wherewith the waters swarmed, after their kind, and every winged bird after its kind: and God saw that it was good. And God blessed them, saying, Be fruitful, and multiply . . . on the earth. And there was evening and there was morning, a fifth day. And God said, Let the earth bring forth living creatures ["soul," Ro] after their kind, cattle, and creeping things, and beasts of the earth after their kind: . . . and the cattle after their kind, and everything that creepeth upon the ground



after its kind: and God saw that it was good."

**Num. 31:28** "And levy a tribute unto Jehovah of the men of war that went out to battle: one soul of five hundred, both of the persons, and of the oxen, and of the asses, and of the flocks."

**1 Cor. 15:39** "Not all flesh is the same flesh, but there is one of mankind, and there is another flesh of cattle, and another flesh of birds, and another of fish."

**Jehovah Established His Superiority in Contest with "Animal Gods" of Egypt by Sending Plagues in Moses' Day**

***Against the frog-goddess, Heqt***

**Ex. 8:1-7** "And Jehovah spake unto Moses, Go in unto Pharaoh, and say unto him, Thus saith Jehovah, Let my people go, that they may serve me. And if thou refuse to let them go, behold, I will smite all thy borders with frogs; and the river shall swarm with frogs, which shall go up and come into thy house, and into thy bedchamber, and upon thy bed, and into the house of thy servants, and upon thy people, and into thine ovens, and into thy kneading-troughs: . . . And Aaron stretched out his hand over the waters of Egypt; and the frogs came up, and covered the land of Egypt."

***Against the ichneumon fly-goddess, Wadjet***

**Ex. 8:20-24** "And Jehovah said . . . behold, I will send swarms of flies upon thee, and upon thy servants, and upon thy people, and into thy houses: and the houses of the Egyptians shall be full of swarms of flies, and also the ground whereon they are."

***Against the cow-goddess, Hathor, and Apis the bull***

**Ex. 9:1-7** "Behold, the hand of Jehovah is upon thy cattle which are in the field, upon the horses, upon the asses, upon the camels, upon the herds, and upon the flocks: there shall be a very

grievous murrain. . . and all the cattle of Egypt died."

***Against Amon-Ra (symbolized by a male sheep)***

**Ex. 11:4, 5; 12:29** "And Moses said, Thus saith Jehovah, About midnight will I go out into the midst of Egypt: and all the first-born in the land of Egypt shall die, from the first-born of Pharaoh that sitteth upon his throne, even unto the first-born of the maid-servant that is behind the mill; and all the first-born of cattle." "And it came to pass at midnight, that Jehovah smote all the first-born in the land of Egypt, from the first-born of Pharaoh that sat on his throne unto the first-born of the captive that was in the dungeon; and all the first-born of cattle."

**Making Images of Animals Was Forbidden Under Mosaic Law**

**Deut. 4:15-18** "Take ye therefore good heed unto yourselves; for ye saw no manner of form on the day that Jehovah spake unto you in Horeb out of the midst of the fire; lest ye corrupt yourselves, and make you a graven image in the form of any figure, the likeness of male or female, the likeness of any beast that is on the earth, the likeness of any winged bird that flieth in the heavens, the likeness of anything that creepeth on the ground, the likeness of any fish that is in the water under the earth."

**When Degraded, Man Described as on Level with Beast**

**Ps. 73:22** "So brutish was I, and ignorant; I was as a beast before thee."

**Dan. 5:20, 21** "But when his heart was lifted up, and his spirit was hardened so that he dealt proudly, he was deposed from his kingly throne, and they took his glory from him: and he was driven from the sons of men, and his heart was made like the beasts', and his dwelling was

with the wild asses; he was fed with grass like oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of heaven; until he knew that the Most High God ruleth in the kingdom of men."

**Titus 1:12** "A certain one of them, their own prophet, said: 'Cretans are always liars, injurious wild-beasts, unemployed gluttons.'"

**2 Pet. 2:12** "But these men, like unreasoning animals born naturally to be caught and destroyed, will in the things of which they are ignorant and speak abusively, even suffer destruction in their own course of destruction."

**Jude 10** "Yet these men are speaking abusively of all the things they really do not know, but all the things they do understand naturally like the unreasoning animals, in these things they go on corrupting themselves."

### **Death Equalizes Men and Beasts (Except Man Is Promised a Resurrection)**

**Eccl. 3:18-20** "I said in my heart, It is because of the sons of men, that God may prove them, and that they may see that they themselves are but as beasts. For that which befalleth the sons of men befalleth beasts; even one thing befalleth them: as the one dieth, so dieth the other; yea, they have all one breath; and man hath no pre-eminence above the beasts: for all is vanity. All go unto one place: all are of the dust, and all turn to dust again."

### **Animals Perish at Death; No Afterlife**

**Ps. 49:12, 17, 20** "But man being in honor abideth not: he is like the beasts that perish. For when he dieth he shall carry nothing away; his glory shall not descend after him. Man that is

in honor, and understandeth not, is like the beasts that perish."

**2 Pet. 2:12** "But these men, like unreasoning animals born naturally to be caught and destroyed."

### **Man Forbidden to Have Unclean Relations with Any Animal**

**Ex. 22:19** "Whosoever lieth with a beast shall surely be put to death."

**Lev. 11:43** "Ye shall not make yourselves abominable with any creeping thing that creepeth, neither shall ye make yourselves unclean with them, that ye should be defiled thereby."

**Lev. 20:15, 16** "And if a man lie with a beast, he shall surely be put to death: and ye shall slay the beast. And if a woman approach unto any beast, and lie down thereto, thou shalt kill the woman, and the beast: they shall surely be put to death; their blood shall be upon them."

### **Animal Worship Turns Attention Away from the Creator**

**Rom. 1:21-25** "Because, although they knew God, they did not glorify him as God nor did they thank him, but they became empty-headed in their reasonings and their unintelligent heart became darkened. Although asserting they were wise, they became foolish and turned the glory of the incorruptible God into something like the image of corruptible man and of birds and four-footed creatures and creeping things. Therefore God in keeping with the desires of their hearts gave them up to uncleanness, that their bodies might be dishonored among them, even those who exchanged the truth of God for the lie and venerated and rendered sacred service to the creation rather than the One who created, who is blessed forever."

# Antichrist

## DEFINITION

Any organization or individual that is against Christ or Christianity. Specifically, an organization or arrangement claiming to serve God but actually being against Christ and his kingdom.

### Satan's Organization Babylon Brings Forth Antichrists

**Matt. 13:27, 28, 38, 39** "Master, did you not sow seed of a right kind in your field? How, then, does it come to have weeds?" ... "The field is the world; as for the right kind of seed, these are the sons of the kingdom; but the weeds are the sons of the wicked one, and the enemy that sowed them is the Devil."

### Antichrists Are False Prophets

**Matt. 24:11, 24** "And many false prophets will arise and mislead many. For false Christs and false prophets will arise and will give great signs and wonders so as to mislead, if possible, even the chosen ones."

### Do Not Fulfill Requirements of True Prophets

**Deut. 18:20-22** "But the prophet, that shall speak a word presumptuously in my name, which I have not commanded him to speak, or that shall speak in the name of other gods, that same prophet shall die. And if thou say in thy heart, How shall we know the word which Jehovah hath not spoken? when the prophet speaketh in the name of Jehovah, if the thing follow not, nor come to pass, that is the thing which Jehovah hath not spoken: the prophet hath spoken it presumptuously, thou shalt not be afraid of him."

### Antichrists Say Christ Was God Incarnate; Deny Christ Actually Came to Earth as a Perfect Man of Flesh

**1 John 4:1-3** "Beloved ones, do not believe every inspired expres-

sion, but test the inspired expressions to see whether they originate with God, because many false prophets have gone forth into the world. You gain the knowledge of the inspired expression from God by this: Every inspired expression that confesses Jesus Christ as having come in the flesh originates with God, but every inspired expression that does not confess Jesus does not originate with God. Furthermore, this is the antichrist's inspired expression which you have heard was coming, and now it is already in the world."

**2 John 7** "The reason why is that many deceivers have gone forth into the world, persons not confessing Jesus Christ as coming in the flesh. This is the deceiver and the antichrist."

**1 John 2:22** "Who is the liar if it is not the one that denies that Jesus is the Christ? This is the antichrist, the one that denies the Father and the Son."

### "Man of Lawlessness"—The Collective Clergy of Christendom

**2 Thess. 2:3, 4, 9** "Let no one seduce you in any manner, because it will not come unless the falling away comes first and the man of lawlessness gets revealed, the son of destruction. He is set in opposition and lifts himself up over everyone who is called 'god' or an object of reverence, so that he sits down in the temple of The God, publicly showing himself to be a god. But the lawless one's presence is according to the operation of Satan with every

powerful work and lying signs and wonders."

**Jer. 23:11, 21, 22** "For both prophet and priest are profane; yea, in my house have I found their wickedness, saith Jehovah. I sent not these prophets, yet they ran: I spake not unto them, yet they prophesied. But if they had stood in my council, then had they caused my people to hear my words, and had turned them from their evil way, and from the evil of their doings."

### **Clergy Seek Power, and Honor of This World**

**1 Cor. 4:8** "You men already have your fill, do you? You are rich already, are you? You have begun ruling as kings without us, have you? And I wish indeed that you had begun ruling as kings, that we also might rule with you as kings."

**Jas. 4:4** "Adulteresses, do you not know that the friendship with the world is enmity with God? Whoever, therefore, wants to be a friend of the world is constituting himself an enemy of God."

### **"Evil Slave"**

**Matt. 24:48-51** "But if that evil slave should say in his heart, 'My master is delaying,' and should start to beat his fellow slaves and should eat and drink with the confirmed drunkards, the master of that slave will come on a day that he does not expect and in an hour that he does not know, and will punish him with the greatest severity and will assign him his part with the hypocrites. There is where his weeping and the gnashing of his teeth will be."

**1 John 2:18, 19** "Young children, it is the last hour, and, just as you have heard that antichrist is coming, even now there have come to be many antichrists; from which fact we gain the knowledge that it is the last hour. They went out from us, but they were not of our kind;

for if they had been of our kind, they would have remained with us. But they went out that it might be shown up that not all are of our kind."

### **Pagan Religions**

**Eph. 2:12** "That you were at that particular time without Christ, alienated from the state of Israel and strangers to the covenants of the promise, and you had no hope and were without God in the world."

**1 Cor. 10:20, 21** "The things which the nations sacrifice they sacrifice to demons, and not to God, and I do not want you to become sharers with the demons. You cannot be drinking the cup of Jehovah and the cup of demons; you cannot be partaking of 'the table of Jehovah' and the table of demons."

### **Communist Red Religion Included Among Many Antichrists**

**Rev. 19:18, 19** "That you may eat the fleshy parts of kings and the fleshy parts of military commanders and the fleshy parts of strong men and the fleshy parts of horses and of those mounted upon them, and the fleshy parts of all, of freemen as well as of slaves and of small ones and great." And I saw the wild beast and the kings of the earth and their armies gathered together to wage the war with the one seated on the horse and with his army."

**Ps. 14:1** "The fool hath said in his heart, There is no God. They are corrupt, they have done abominable works; there is none that doeth good."

### **Culmination of Antichrist Effort in Supporting U.N.**

**Rev. 17:3-8, 18** "And I caught sight of a woman sitting upon a scarlet-colored wild beast that was full of blasphemous names and that had seven heads and ten horns. And the woman was arrayed in purple and scarlet, and was adorned with gold and precious stone and pearls and had

in her hand a golden cup that was full of disgusting things and the unclean things of her fornication. And upon her forehead was written a name, a mystery, 'Babylon the Great, the mother of the harlots and of the disgusting things of the earth.' . . . The wild beast that you saw was, but is not, and yet is destined to ascend out of the abyss, and it is to go off into destruction. And when they see how the wild beast was, but is not, and yet will be present, those who dwell on the earth will wonder admiringly, but their names have not been written upon the scroll of life from the world's foundation. And the woman that you saw means the great city that has a kingdom over the kings of the earth."

### Antichrists to Be Forever Destroyed at Armageddon

**Rev. 17:16** "And the ten horns that you saw, and the wild beast, these will hate the harlot and will make her devastated and naked, and will eat up her fleshy parts and will completely burn her with fire."

**2 Thess. 2:8** "Then, indeed, the lawless one will be revealed, whom the Lord Jesus will annihilate by the spirit of his mouth and bring to nothing by the manifestation of his presence."

**Matt. 7:22, 23** "Many will say to me in that day: 'Master, Master, did we not prophesy in your name, and expel demons in your name, and perform many powerful works in your name?' And yet then I will confess to them: I never knew you at all. Get away from me, you workers of lawlessness."

See "Religion".

## Apostolic Succession

### DEFINITION

The doctrine that the twelve apostles have successors to whom authority is passed by divine appointment. In the Roman Catholic Church, the pope is said to be one of an unbroken line of successors of Peter, and bearer of the keys of heaven passed on from Peter (who the church claims was chief of the apostles and the first pope). *A false doctrine.*

### ORIGIN

Established in the Roman Catholic Church in the Nicene Creed, A.D. 325 and 381, in the words, "I believe one holy catholic and apostolic Church." Reaffirmed by the Council of Trent in the sixteenth century.

### Matthew 16:18 Misapplied; Christ Is the "Rock", Not Peter

**Matt. 16:18** "Also I say to you, You are Peter [Gr., *Petros*; Syriac, *ke'pha*, "a stone," in the masculine gender in both languages], and on this rock-mass [Gr., *petra*; Syriac, *ke'pha*, "a rock-mass," in feminine gender and with a feminine demonstrative

pronoun (this) in both languages] I will build my congregation, and the gates of Hades will not overpower it."

**1 Cor. 10:4** "They used to drink from the spiritual rock-mass which followed them, and that rock-mass meant the Christ."

**Eph. 2:20, 21** "You have been built up upon the foundation of

the apostles and prophets, while Christ Jesus himself is the foundation cornerstone. In union with him the whole building, being harmoniously joined together, is growing into a holy temple for Jehovah."

**Matt. 21:42** "Jesus said to them: 'Did you never read in the Scriptures, "The stone that the builders rejected is the one that has become the chief cornerstone. From Jehovah this has come to pass and it is marvelous in our eyes"?' " (See Isaiah 28:16; Psalm 118:22, 23.)

**Acts 4:8-12** "Then Peter, filled with holy spirit, said to them: '...in the name of Jesus Christ the Nazarene, whom you impaled but whom God raised up from the dead, by this one does this man stand here sound in front of you. This is "the stone which was treated by you builders as of no account that has become chief cornerstone". Furthermore, there is no salvation in anyone else.' "

**Rom. 9:33** "Look! I am laying in Zion a stone of stumbling and a rock-mass of offense, but he that rests his faith on it will not come to disappointment."

**John 21:15-17** **Misapplied; Not Only Peter, but All Disciples Must Feed Christ's Sheep**

**Acts 20:28** "Pay attention to yourselves and to all the flock, among which the holy spirit has appointed you overseers, to shepherd the congregation of God, which he purchased with the blood of his own [Son]."

**1 Pet. 5:1-4** "To the older men among you I give this exhortation, for I, too, am an older man like them... Shepherd the flock of God in your care, not under compulsion, but willingly, neither for love of dishonest gain,... but becoming examples to the flock. And when the chief shepherd has been made manifest, you will receive the unfadable crown of glory."

## Peter Is Merely One of the Stones in the Spiritual Temple

**1 Pet. 2:4-8** "Coming to him as to a living stone, rejected, it is true, by men, but chosen, precious, with God, you yourselves also as living stones are being built up a spiritual house for the purpose of a holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices acceptable to God through Jesus Christ. . . . It is to you, therefore, that he is precious, because you are believers; but to those not believing, 'the identical stone that the builders rejected has become the chief cornerstone,' and 'a stone of stumbling and a rock-mass of offense.'"

**Only the Twelve Apostles of Jesus Christ in the Foundation of the Christian Congregation; They Have No Successors**

### *Names of the twelve:*

**Matt. 10:1-4; Gal. 1:1; 1 Cor. 9:1; 2 Cor. 12:12** "First, Simon, the one called 'Peter', and Andrew his brother; and James the son of Zebedee and John his brother; Philip and Bartholomew; Thomas and Matthew the tax collector; James the son of Alphaeus, and Thaddaeus; Simon the Cananaean, and Judas Iscariot, who later betrayed him."

"Paul, an apostle, neither from men nor through a man, but through Jesus Christ and God the father."

"Am I not free? Am I not an apostle? Have I not seen Jesus our Lord?"

"Indeed, the signs of an apostle were produced among you by all endurance, and by signs and wonders and powerful works."

**Rev. 21:14** "The wall of the city also had twelve foundation stones, and on them the twelve names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb."

**Matt. 19:28** "Jesus said to them: 'Truly I say to you, In the re-creation, when the Son of

man sits down upon his glorious throne, you who have followed me will also yourselves sit upon twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel.'"

**Christ the Ever-living Head of the Christian Congregation; No Earthly Head Needed**

**Col. 1:18** "He is the head of the body, the congregation."

**Eph. 1:22, 23** "He also subjected all things under his feet, and made him head over all things to the congregation, which is his body, the fullness of him who fills up all things in all."

**Eph. 4:15; 5:23, 24** "Speaking the truth, let us by love grow up in all things into him who is the head, Christ." "A husband is head of his wife as the Christ also is head of the congregation, he being a savior of this body.... the congregation is in subjection to the Christ."

**Zech. 4:7** "He shall bring forth the top stone with shoutings of Grace, grace, unto it."

**How Gates of Hell (Hades) Do Not Prevail Against the Christian Congregation**

**1 Cor. 15:54-57** "When this which is corruptible puts on incorruption and this which is mortal puts on immortality, then the saying will take place that is written: 'Death is swallowed up forever.' 'Death, where is your victory? Death, where is your sting?' . . . But thanks to God, for he gives us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ!"

**Hos. 13:14** "I will ransom them from the power of Sheol; I will redeem them from death: O death, where are thy plagues? O Sheol, where is thy destruction?"

**John 6:39** "This is the will of him that sent me, that I should lose nothing out of all that he has given me but that I should resurrect it at the last day."

**John 10:27-29** "My sheep listen to my voice, and I know them, and they follow me. And I give

them everlasting life, and they will by no means ever be destroyed, and no one will snatch them out of my hand. What my Father has given me is something greater than all other things, and no one can snatch them out of the hand of the Father."

**John 17:12** "I have kept them, and not one of them is destroyed except the son of destruction."

**John 11:26** "He that exercises faith in me, even though he dies, will come to life."

**1 Cor. 15:42-44** "So also is the resurrection of the dead. It is sown in corruption, it is raised up in incorruption. It is sown in dishonor, it is raised up in glory. It is sown in weakness, it is raised up in power. It is sown a physical body, it is raised up a spiritual body."

**2 Cor. 4:14** "Knowing that he who raised Jesus up will raise us up also together with Jesus and will present us together with you."

**Rev. 2:10** "Prove yourself faithful even with the danger of death, and I will give you the crown of life."

**1 Thess. 4:16** "The Lord himself will descend from heaven with a commanding call, with an archangel's voice and with God's trumpet, and those who are dead in union with Christ will rise first."

**Keys of Heaven**

*Given to Peter to use, but their use directed by heaven*

**Matt. 16:19** "I will give you the keys of the kingdom of the heavens, and whatever you may bind on earth will have been bound [*margin*, "be the thing already bound"] in the heavens, and whatever you may loose on earth will have been loosed [*margin*, "be the thing already loosed"] in the heavens."

**Matt. 18:18** "Truly I say to you men, Whatever things you may bind on earth will have been bound in heaven and whatever

things you may loose on earth will have been loosed in heaven."

**Keys represent unlocking of knowledge of opportunity of entering kingdom of heaven**

**Luke 11:52** "Woe to you who are versed in the Law, because you took away the key of knowledge; you yourselves did not go in, and those going in you hindered!"

**2 Tim. 1:10** "Our Savior, Christ Jesus, who has abolished death but has shed light upon life and incorruption through the good news."

**1 Pet. 1:3, 4** "Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, for according to his great mercy he gave us a new birth to a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, to an incorruptible and undefiled and unfading inheritance. It is being reserved in the heavens for you."

**Col. 1:26, 27** "The sacred secret which was concealed from the past systems of things and from the past generations. But now it has been made manifest to his holy ones, to whom God has been pleased to make known what are the glorious riches of this sacred secret among the nations. It is Christ in union with you, the hope of his glory."

**1 Tim. 3:16** "Indeed, the sacred secret of this godly devotion is admittedly great: 'He was made manifest in flesh, was declared righteous in spirit, appeared to angels, was preached about among nations, was believed upon in the world, was received up in glory.'"

**Rom. 1:16** "I am not ashamed of the good news; it is, in fact, God's power for salvation to everyone having faith, to the Jew first as well as to the Greek."

**Heaven directs use of first key toward Jews, Pentecost, A.D. 33**

**Acts 2:1, 2, 38, 39, 41** "Now while the day of the feast of Pen-

tecost was in progress they were all together at the same place, and . . . Peter said to them: 'Repent, and let each one of you be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ for forgiveness of your sins, and you will receive the free gift of the holy spirit. For the promise is to you and to your children and to all those afar off, just as many as Jehovah our God may call to him.' Therefore those who embraced his word heartily were baptized, and on that day about three thousand souls were added."

**Time:** (Dan. 9:24-27) 69½ weeks of years (486½ years) from rebuilding of Jerusalem's walls under Nehemiah, in the fall of 455 B.C. (September 17-18), to spring, A.D. 33.

**Heaven directs use of second key toward Gentiles, fall, A.D. 36**

**Acts 10:9-35, 44-48** "Peter . . . fell into a trance . . . Peter said: 'Not at all, Lord, because I have never eaten anything at all defiled and unclean.' And the voice spoke again to him, the second time: 'You stop calling defiled the things God has cleansed.' . . . the spirit said: 'Look! three men are seeking you.' . . . They said: 'Cornelius, an army officer, . . . was given divine instructions by a holy angel to send for you to come to his house and to hear the things you have to say.' . . . Cornelius said: ' . . . a man in bright raiment stood before me and said: "Cornelius, your prayer has been favorably heard and your gifts of mercy have been remembered before God. Send, therefore, to Joppa and call for Simon who is surnamed Peter." ' . . . At this Peter opened his mouth and said: 'For a certainty I perceive that God is not partial, but in every nation the man that fears him and works righteousness is acceptable to him.' While Peter was yet speaking about these matters the holy spirit fell upon all those hearing the word. And



the faithful ones that had come with Peter who were of those circumcised were amazed, because the free gift of the holy spirit was being poured out also upon people of the nations.... Then Peter responded: 'Can anyone forbid water so that these might not be baptized who have received the holy spirit even as we have?' With that he commanded them to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ."

**Acts 11:15-18** "But when I started to speak the holy spirit fell upon them just as it did also upon us originally. At this I called to mind the saying of the Lord, how he used to say: 'John, on the one hand, baptized with water, but you will be baptized in holy spirit.' If, therefore, God gave the same free gift to them as he also did to us who have believed upon the Lord Jesus Christ, who was I that I should be able to hinder God?"

**Acts 15:7** "Peter rose and said to them: 'Brothers, you well know that from early days God made the choice among you that through my mouth people of the nations should hear the word of the good news and believe.'"

**Eph. 3:5, 6** "In other generations this secret was not made known to the sons of men as it has now been revealed to his holy apostles and prophets by spirit, namely, that people of the nations should be joint heirs and fellow members of the body and partakers with us of the promise in union with Christ Jesus through the good news."

**Time:** End of 70th week of special favor to the Jews, which extended from fall of A.D. 29, at Jesus' baptism, to fall of A.D. 36 (490 years from fall of 455 B.C.).—See Daniel 9:24-27.

**Keys not passed on; door still open to Jews and Gentiles**

**Rev. 3:7** "These are the things he says who is holy, who is true, who has the key of David, who opens so that no one will shut,

and shuts so that no one opens."

**Acts 14:27** "When they had arrived and had gathered the congregation together, they proceeded to recount the many things God had done by means of them and that he had opened to the nations the door to faith."

**Keys had no further use by Peter; not Peter, but God and Christ judge who is worthy to enter Kingdom**

**Matt. 20:23** "He said to them: 'You will indeed drink my cup, but this sitting down at my right hand and at my left is not mine to give, but it belongs to those for whom it has been prepared by my Father.'"

**2 Tim. 4:1** "I earnestly beg you before God and Christ Jesus, who is destined to judge the living and the dead, and by his manifestation and his kingdom."

**Heb. 12:23** "The congregation of the firstborn who have been enrolled in the heavens, and God the Judge of all."

**1 Pet. 4:5** "These people will render an account to the one ready to judge those living and those dead."

**1 Cor. 12:18** "But now God has set the members in the body, each one of them, just as he pleased."

**None of the apostles (including Peter, the supposed "gate-keeper") were in heaven prior to Christ's second coming in Kingdom power**

**2 Tim. 4:8** "There is reserved for me the crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, will give me as a reward in that day, yet not only to me, but also to all those who have loved his manifestation."

**1 Cor. 15:51, 52** "Look! I tell you a sacred secret: We shall not all fall asleep in death, but we shall all be changed, in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, during the last trumpet. For the trumpet will sound, and the

dead will be raised up incorruptible, and we shall be changed."

**1 Thess. 4:15, 16** "We the living who survive to the presence of the Lord shall in no way precede those who have fallen asleep in death, because the Lord himself will descend from heaven with a commanding call, with an archangel's voice and with God's trumpet, and those who are dead in union with Christ will rise first."

**2 Thess. 2:1-3** "However, brothers, respecting the presence of our Lord Jesus Christ and our being gathered together to him, we request of you not to be quickly shaken from your reason nor to be excited either through an inspired expression or through a verbal message or through a letter as though from us, to the effect that the day of Jehovah is here. Let no one seduce you in any manner, because it will not come unless the falling away comes first and the man of lawlessness gets revealed, the son of destruction."

**Acts 17:31** "He has set a day in which he purposes to judge the inhabited earth in righteousness by a man whom he has appointed, and he has furnished a guarantee to all men in that he has resurrected him from the dead."

### **Peter Did Not Rule over the Christian Congregation**

**Gal. 2:9** "James and Cephas and John, the ones who seemed to be pillars, gave me and Barnabas the right hand of joint participation."

**Matt. 23:8-10** "But you, do not you be called 'Rabbi', for one is your teacher, whereas all you are brothers. Moreover, do not call anyone your father on earth, for One is your Father, the heavenly One. Neither be called 'leaders', for your Leader is one, the Christ."

**Acts 15:13-23, 28** "After they quit speaking James answered, saying: '. . . Symeon has related

thoroughly how God for the first time turned his attention to the nations . . . Hence my decision is not to trouble those from the nations who are turning to God, . . . ' Then the apostles and the older men together with the whole congregation favored sending chosen men from among them . . . they wrote: '. . . the holy spirit and we ourselves have favored adding no further burden to you, except these necessary things.'"

### **Infallibility Not Granted to Any Imperfect Man; Peter No Exception**

**Matt. 14:29-31** "Peter, getting down off the boat, walked over the waters and went toward Jesus. But looking at the wind-storm, he got afraid and, after starting to sink, he cried out: 'Master, save me!' Immediately stretching out his hand Jesus caught hold of him and said to him: 'You with little faith, why did you give way to doubt?'"

**Matt. 16:22, 23** "Peter took him aside and commenced raising strong objections to him, saying: 'Be kind to yourself, Master; you will not have this destiny at all.' But, turning his back, he said to Peter: 'Get behind me, Satan! You are a stumblingblock to me, because you think, not God's thoughts, but those of men.'"

**John 18:10, 11** "Then Simon Peter, as he had a sword, drew it and struck the slave of the high priest and cut his right ear off. The name of the slave was Malchus. Jesus, however, said to Peter: 'Put the sword into its sheath. The cup that the Father has given me, should I not by all means drink it?'"

**Luke 22:31-34** " 'Simon, Simon, look! Satan has demanded to have you men to sift you as wheat. But I have made supplication for you that your faith may not give out; and you, when once you have returned, give support to your brothers.' Then he said to him: 'Master, I am ready

to march with you both into prison and into death.' But he said: 'I tell you, Peter, A cock will not crow today until you have three times denied knowing me.'"

**Luke 22:60-62** "But Peter said: 'Man, I do not know what you are saying.' And instantly, while he was yet speaking, a cock crowed. And the Master turned and looked upon Peter, and Peter recalled the utterance of the Master when he said to him: 'Before a cock crows today you will disown me three times.' And he went outside and wept bitterly."

**Gal. 2:11-14** "However, when Cephas came to Antioch, I resisted him face to face, because he stood condemned. For before the arrival of certain men from James he used to eat with people of the nations; but when they arrived, he went to withdrawing and separating himself, in fear of those of the circumcised class. . . . But when I saw they were not walking straight according to the truth of the good news, I said to Cephas before them all: 'If you, though you are a Jew, live as the nations do, and not as Jews do, how is it that you are compelling people of the nations to live according to Jewish practice?'"

**Joh 20:6-9** "Simon Peter . . . entered into the memorial tomb. . . . For they did not yet discern the scripture that he must rise from the dead."

### **Christ Holds Keys of Death and Hell (Hades)**

**Rev. 1:18** "I became dead, but, look! I am living for ever and ever, and I have the keys of death and of Hades."

**John 11:25, 26** "Jesus said to her: 'I am the resurrection and the life. He that exercises faith in me, even though he dies, will come to life, and everyone that is living and exercises faith in me will never die at all.'"

**John 14:6** "Jesus said to him: 'I am the way and the truth and

the life. No one comes to the Father except through me.'"

**John 17:2** "You have given him authority over all flesh, that, as regards the whole number which you have given him, he may give them everlasting life."

**1 John 5:11** "And this is the witness given, that God gave us everlasting life, and this life is in his Son."

### **Key of Hades (Gravedom) Completes Use When All Deserving Ones Resurrected During 1,000-Year Reign**

**John 5:28, 29** "The hour is coming in which all those in the memorial tombs will hear his voice and come out, those who did good things to a resurrection of life, those who practiced vile things to a resurrection of judgment."

**Rev. 20:13, 14** "And the sea gave up those dead in it, and death and Hades gave up those dead in them, and they were judged individually according to their deeds. And death and Hades were hurled into the lake of fire. This means the second death, the lake of fire."

### **Key of Death Completes Use When Every Trace and Effect of Adamic Death Is Removed from Deserving Ones (Toward End of 1,000-Year Reign)**

See Revelation 20:13, 14, above.

**Rev. 21:4** "And he will wipe out every tear from their eyes, and death will be no more, neither will mourning nor outcry nor pain be any more. The former things have passed away."

**1 Cor. 15:25, 26** "He must rule as king until God has put all enemies under his feet. As the last enemy, death is to be destroyed."

### **No Record Peter Was Ever in Rome; He Preached Mainly to Jews and Did Travel to Babylon, a Seat of Jewish Culture**

**Gal. 2:7-9** "On the contrary, when they saw that I had en-

trusted to me the good news for those who are uncircumcised, just as Peter had it for those who are circumcised—for He who gave Peter powers necessary for an apostleship to those who are circumcised gave powers also to me for those who are of the nations; yes, when they came to know the undeserved kindness which was given me, James and Cephas and John, the ones who seemed to be pillars, gave me and Barnabas the right hand of joint participation, that we should go to the nations, but they to those who are circumcised."

**1 Pet. 5:13** "She who is in Babylon, a chosen one like you, sends you her greetings."

### **Peter Was Married**

**Mark 1:30** "Now Simon's mother-in-law was lying down sick with a fever."

**Luke 4:38** "Now Simon's mother-in-law was afflicted with a high fever."

**1 Cor. 9:5** "We have authority to lead about a sister as a wife, even as the rest of the apostles and the Lord's brothers and Cephas, do we not?"

### **Apostles Had Power to Transmit Gifts of Holy Spirit; Not All Popes Claim This**

**Acts 8:14-17** "When the apostles in Jerusalem heard that Samaria had accepted the word of God, they dispatched Peter and John to them, . . . Then they went to laying their hands upon them, and they began to receive holy spirit."

**Acts 10:44-46** "While Peter was yet speaking about these matters the holy spirit fell upon all those hearing the word. . . . For they heard them speaking with tongues and glorifying God."

**Acts 19:6** "And when Paul laid his hands upon them, the holy spirit came upon them, and they began speaking with tongues and prophesying."

### **Peter Had Gift of Discerning Spirits, Healing, Forgiving Sins, Expelling Demons, Raising the Dead; Not All Popes Claim All These Powers**

**Acts 5:1-11** "However, a certain man, Ananias by name, together with Sapphira his wife, sold a possession and secretly held back some of the price, his wife also knowing about it, . . . But Peter said: 'Ananias, to what end has Satan emboldened you to play false to the holy spirit and to hold back secretly some of the price of the field? . . . You have played false, not to men, but to God.' . . . Peter said to her [Ananias' wife]: 'Why was it agreed upon between you two to make a test of the spirit of Jehovah? Look! the feet of those who buried your husband are at the door, and they will carry you out.' Instantly she fell down at his feet and expired."

**John 20:22, 23** "And after he said this he [Jesus] blew upon them and said to them: 'Receive holy spirit. If you forgive the sins of any persons, they stand forgiven to them; if you retain those of any persons, they stand retained.'"

**Matt. 10:1** "So he summoned his twelve disciples and gave them authority over unclean spirits, in order to expel these and to cure every kind of disease and every kind of ailment."

**Mark 3:14-16** "And he formed a group of twelve, whom he also named 'apostles', that they might continue with him and that he might send them out to preach and to have authority to expel the demons. And the group of twelve that he formed were Simon, to whom he also gave the surname 'Peter'."

**Acts 9:36-41** But in Joppa there was a certain disciple named Tabitha, which, when translated, means Dorcas. . . . she happened to fall sick and die. . . . But Peter put everybody outside and, bending his knees, he

prayed, and, turning to the body, he said: "Tabitha, rise!" She opened her eyes and, as she caught sight of Peter, she sat up."

**Acts 3:6-8** "Peter said: 'Silver and gold I do not possess, but what I do have is what I give you: In the name of Jesus Christ the Nazarene, walk!' With that he took hold of him by the right hand and raised him up. Instantly the soles of his feet and his ankle bones were made firm, and, leaping up, he stood up and began walking, and he entered with them into the temple, walking and leaping and praising God."

**144,000 as Kings and Priests Rule from Heaven During the 1,000 Years; Not on Earth from Time of Pentecost**

**1 Cor. 4:8** "You men already have your fill, do you? You are rich already, are you? You have begun ruling as kings without us, have you? And I wish indeed that you had begun ruling as kings, that we also might rule with you as kings."

**2 Tim. 4:1** "I earnestly beg you before God and Christ Jesus, who is destined to judge the living and the dead, and by his manifestation and his kingdom."

**Rev. 1:1; 5:9, 10** "The revelation by Jesus Christ, which God gave him, to show his slaves the things that must shortly take place."

"And they sing a new song, saying: '... with your blood you bought persons for God out of every tribe and tongue and people and nation, and you made them to be a kingdom and priests to our God, and they will rule as kings over the earth.'"

**Rev. 20:4-6** "And I saw thrones, and there were those who sat down on them, and power of judging was given them.... And they came to life and ruled as kings with the Christ for a thousand years. . . . and will rule as kings with him for the thousand years."

**2 Tim. 2:12** "If we go on enduring, we shall also rule together as kings; if we deny, he also will deny us."

**Rom. 5:17** "For if by the trespass of the one man death ruled as king through that one, much more will those who receive the abundance of the undeserved kindness and of the free gift of righteousness rule as kings in life through the one person, Jesus Christ."

# Armageddon

## DEFINITION

(Literally: "The mountain of the assembly of [God's] troops.") The battle of Jehovah God Almighty in which his executive officer Christ Jesus leads invisible forces of righteousness to destroy Satan and his demonic and human organization, eliminating wickedness from the universe and vindicating Jehovah's universal sovereignty.

### Line-up of Sides

**Rev. 16:14, 16** "They are, in fact, expressions inspired by demons and perform signs, and they go forth to the kings of the entire inhabited earth, to gather them together to the war

of the great day of God the Almighty. And they gathered them together to the place that is called in Hebrew Har-Magedon."

**Rev. 19:19** "And I saw the wild beast and the kings of the earth and their armies gathered together to wage the war with the

one seated on the horse and with his army."

### Christians Have No Part in Slaying Work

**Eph. 6:12** "Because we have a fight, not against blood and flesh, but against the governments, against the authorities, against the world-rulers of this darkness, against the wicked spirit forces in the heavenly places."

**2 Cor. 10:3, 4** "For though we walk in the flesh, we do not wage warfare according to what we are in the flesh. For the weapons of our warfare are not fleshly, but powerful by God for overturning strongly entrenched things."

**2 Chron. 20:15, 17** "The battle is not yours, but God's. Ye shall not need to fight in this battle: set yourselves, stand ye still, and see the salvation of Jehovah with you."

**Rom. 12:19** "Do not avenge yourselves, beloved, but yield place to the wrath; for it is written: 'Vengeance is mine, I will repay, says Jehovah.'"

**Also: Rev. 2:26, 27; 19:13-15; Ezek. 9:2, 4, 5.**

### Description of Old World's Accomplished End

**Jer. 25:29-33** "I will call for a sword upon all the inhabitants of the earth, saith Jehovah of hosts. . . . for Jehovah hath a controversy with the nations; . . . And the slain of Jehovah shall be at that day from one end of the earth even unto the other end of the earth: they shall not be lamented, neither gathered, nor buried; they shall be dung upon the face of the ground."

**Isa. 34:1-9** "Jehovah hath indignation against all the nations, and wrath against all their host: he hath utterly destroyed them, he hath delivered them to the slaughter."

**Zeph. 1:14, 17, 18** "The great day of Jehovah is near, . . . the mighty man crieth there bitterly. . . . their blood shall be poured

out as dust, and their flesh as dung. Neither their silver nor their gold shall be able to deliver them in the day of Jehovah's wrath; but the whole land shall be devoured by the fire of his jealousy: for he will make an end, yea, a terrible end, of all them that dwell in the land."

### War of Supernatural Forces

**Zeph. 3:8** "Wait ye for me, saith Jehovah, until the day that I rise up to the prey; for my determination is to gather the nations, that I may assemble the kingdoms, to pour upon them mine indignation, even all my fierce anger; for all the earth shall be devoured with the fire of my jealousy."

**Jude 14, 15** "Look! Jehovah came with his holy myriads, to execute judgment against all and to convict all the ungodly concerning all their ungodly deeds that they did in an ungodly way and concerning all the shocking things that ungodly sinners spoke against him."

**Isa. 66:15, 16** "Behold, Jehovah will come with fire, and his chariots shall be like the whirlwind; to render his anger with fierceness, and his rebuke with flames of fire. For by fire will Jehovah execute judgment, and by his sword, upon all flesh; and the slain of Jehovah shall be many."

**Zech. 14:3, 12** "Then shall Jehovah go forth, and fight against those nations, as when he fought in the day of battle. And this shall be the plague wherewith Jehovah will smite all the peoples that have warred against Jerusalem: their flesh shall consume away while they stand upon their feet, and their eyes shall consume away in their sockets, and their tongue shall consume away in their mouth."

**Ps. 46:1-3, 8-10** "Come, behold the works of Jehovah, what desolations he hath made in the earth. He maketh wars to cease unto

the end of the earth; he breaketh the bow, and cutteth the spear in sunder; he burneth the chariots in the fire."

**Hab. 3:2, 11, 12** "O Jehovah, revive thy work in the midst of the years; in the midst of the years make it known; in wrath remember mercy. The sun and moon stood still in their habitation, at the light of thine arrows as they went, at the shining of thy glittering spear. Thou didst march through the land in indignation; thou didst thresh the nations in anger."

**Also:** Ps. 110:5, 6; Matt. 24:20, 21, 35, 36; Joel 3:9-14.

### Order of Fall

**Rev. 17:12, 16; 19:19-20:3** "And the ten horns . . . and the wild beast, these will hate the harlot and will make her devastated and naked, . . . And the wild beast was caught, and . . . the false prophet . . . both were hurled into the fiery lake . . . But the rest were killed off with the long sword of the one seated on the horse . . . And I saw an angel . . . and he seized . . . Satan, . . . And he hurled him into the abyss."

### Comes Suddenly, Unexpectedly

**2 Pet. 3:10** "Yet Jehovah's day will come as a thief, in which the heavens will pass away with a hissing noise, but the elements being intensely hot will be dissolved, and earth and the works in it will be discovered."

**Isa. 28:21** "For Jehovah will rise up as in mount Perazim, he will be wroth as in the valley of Gibeon; that he may do his work, his strange work, and bring to pass his act, his strange act."

**Luke 21:34, 35** "Pay attention to yourselves that your hearts never become weighed down with overeating and heavy drinking and anxieties of life, and suddenly that day be instantly upon you as a snare. For it will come in upon all those dwelling upon the face of all the earth."

**1 Thess. 5:3** "Whenever it is that they are saying, 'Peace and security!' then sudden destruction is to be instantly upon them just as the pang of distress upon a pregnant woman, and they will by no means escape."

### Comes After Earth-wide Warning Campaign

**Matt. 24:14** "This good news of the kingdom will be preached in all the inhabited earth for the purpose of a witness to all the nations, and then the accomplished end will come."

**Ezek. 9:2, 4-6** "And behold, six men came from the way of the upper gate, which lieth toward the north, every man with his slaughter weapon in his hand; and one man in the midst of them clothed in linen, with a writer's inkhorn by his side. And Jehovah said unto him, Go through the midst of the city, . . . and set a mark upon the foreheads of the men that sigh and that cry over all the abominations that are done in the midst thereof. And to the others he said . . . Go ye through the city after him, and smite: let not your eye spare, neither have ye pity; slay utterly the old man, the young man and the virgin, and little children and women; but come not near any man upon whom is the mark."

**Isa. 6:9, 11** "And he said, Go, and tell this people, . . . Then said I, Lord, how long? And he answered, Until cities be waste without inhabitant, and houses without man, and the land become utterly waste."

### Survivors

**1 Thess. 5:4** "But you, brothers, you are not in darkness, so that that day should overtake you as it would thieves."

**Zeph. 2:2, 3** "Before the decree bring forth, before the day pass as the chaff, before the fierce anger of Jehovah come upon you, before the day of Jehovah's anger come upon you. Seek ye Jehovah,

all ye meek of the earth, that have kept his ordinances; seek righteousness, seek meekness: it may be ye will be hid in the day of Jehovah's anger."

Also: Matt. 24:20-22; Rev. 7:9, 10, 14-17.

### Will Come in This Generation but Day and Hour Unknown to Man

Matt. 24:34, 36 "This generation will by no means pass away until all these things occur. Concerning that day and hour no body knows."

## Baptism

### DEFINITION

Complete submergence, immersion, dipping (1) in water [or (2) into death with Christ, (3) into his body, (4) with holy spirit, (5) into the Greater Noah in a new system of things, (6) into destruction as by fire]. Christian water baptism is an outward symbol, as a testimony before witnesses, of the baptized one's complete, unreserved and unconditional dedication and agreement to do the will of Jehovah God, the Universal Sovereign, through Christ Jesus his King. It means his past course is buried (as by the immersion in water) and he comes up from the water to do only God's will and walk in newness of life thereafter.

#### Complete Immersion, Being Dipped, Not a Sprinkling

From Greek, *baptisma*, "to dip, submerge, immerse."

Rom. 6:3, 4 "Do you not know that all of us who were baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death? Therefore we were buried with him through our baptism into his death."

Col. 2:12 "You were buried with him in his baptism."

Matt. 3:16 "After being baptized Jesus immediately came up from the water."

Mark 1:10 "Immediately on coming up out of the water he [Jesus] saw the heavens being parted."

John 3:23 "John also was baptizing in Aenon near Salim, because there was a great quantity of water there."

Acts 8:36, 38, 39 "'Look! a body of water; what prevents me from getting baptized?' . . . they both went down into the water, . . . and he baptized him. When they had come up out of the water . . . he went traveling."

Ex. 14:19, 22 "The waters were a wall unto them on their right hand, and on their left. . . and the pillar of cloud removed from before them, and stood behind them."

1 Cor. 10:1, 2 "Our forefathers were all under the cloud and all passed through the sea and all got baptized into Moses by means of the cloud and of the sea."

Gen. 7:16 "They that went in [to the ark], went in male and female of all flesh, as God commanded him: and Jehovah shut him in."

#### Instituted, First Performed by Jehovah God in Noah's Day

1 Pet. 3:20, 21 "The patience of God was waiting in Noah's days, while the ark was being constructed, in which a few people, that is, eight souls, were carried safely through the water. That which corresponds to this is also now saving you, namely, baptism."

Gen. 6:17 "I [Jehovah], behold, I do bring the flood of waters upon the earth."



**2 Pet. 2:5** "He brought a deluge upon a world of ungodly people."

**Men Authorized to Perform  
Three witnesses corroborate:**

**JOHN:**

**John 1:32, 33** "John [the Baptist] also bore witness, saying: '... the very One who sent me to baptize in water said to me, "Whoever it is upon whom you see the spirit coming down and remaining, this is the one that baptizes in holy spirit."'"

**JESUS and JEHOVAH GOD:**

**Matt. 3:15-17** "Jesus said to him: 'Let it be, this time, for in that way it is suitable for us to carry out all that is righteous.' ... the heavens were opened up, and he saw descending like a dove God's spirit coming upon him. Look! also, there was a voice from the heavens that said: 'This is my Son, the beloved, whom I have approved.'"

**An Elementary Christian  
Doctrine**

**Heb. 6:1, 2** "For this reason, now that we have left the elementary doctrine about the Christ, let us press on to maturity, not laying a foundation again, namely, repentance from dead works, and faith toward God, the teaching on baptisms."

**Entire Nation of Israel Dedicated  
to Jehovah by Baptism into  
Moses at Red Sea**

**1 Cor. 10:1, 2** "Our forefathers ... all got baptized into Moses by means of the cloud and of the sea."

**1 Chron. 17:21, 22** "What one nation in the earth is like thy people Israel, whom God went to redeem unto himself for a people, ... out of Egypt? For thy people Israel didst thou make thine own people for ever; and thou, Jehovah, becamest their God."

**Ex. 19:8** "All the people answered together, and said, All

that Jehovah hath spoken we will do."

**Deut. 5:29** "Oh ... that they would fear me, and keep all my commandments always, that it might be well with them, and with their children for ever!"

**John the Baptist Baptized Only  
Jews and Proselytes**

**Mal. 4:5, 6** "I will send you Elijah the prophet before the great and terrible day of Jehovah come. And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers."

**Luke 1:16, 17, 76, 77** "Many of the sons of Israel will he turn back to Jehovah their God. Also he will go before him with Elijah's spirit and power, to turn back the hearts of fathers to children and the disobedient ones to the practical wisdom of righteous ones, to get ready for Jehovah a prepared people."

**Matt. 11:14** "This [John the Baptist] is Elijah who is destined to come."

**Also: Matt. 17:12, 13.**

**Acts 13:24** "John, in advance of the entry of that One, had preached publicly to all the people of Israel the baptism of those repenting."

**John's Baptism an Admission of,  
Repentance for, Sins by Natural  
Jews Against the Law Covenant  
and a Preparing of Them for  
Jesus as Greater Moses  
and Leader**

**Matt. 3:8** "So then produce fruit that befits repentance."

**Acts 19:4** "John baptized with the baptism of those repenting, telling the people to believe in the one coming after him, that is, in Jesus."

**Rom. 10:4** "Christ is the accomplished end of the Law, so that everyone exercising faith may have righteousness."

**Gal. 3:24** "The Law has become our tutor leading to Christ."

**Acts 3:22, 23** "In fact, Moses said: 'Jehovah God will produce for you from among your brothers a prophet like me. You must listen to him according to all the things he speaks to you.'"

### **Jesus' Own Baptism New, Different**

**Heb. 7:26** "Such a high priest as this was suitable for us, one of loving-kindness, guileless, undefiled, separated from the sinners, and become higher than the heavens."

**1 Pet. 2:22** "He committed no sin, nor was deceit found in his mouth."

**Luke 3:21** "Jesus also was baptized and, as he was praying, the heaven was opened up."

### **Jesus' Baptism His Full Dedication to Do Newly Revealed Will of God, Fulfill Types and Shadows of Law**

**Heb. 10:5-9** "When he comes into the world he says: 'You did not desire sacrifice and offering, but you prepared a body for me. . . . Look! I am come (in the roll of the book it is written about me) to do your will, O God.' . . . He does away with what is first that he may establish what is second."

**Matt. 5:17** "Do not think I came to destroy the Law or the Prophets. I came, not to destroy, but to fulfill."

**Col. 2:17** "Those things are a shadow of the things to come, but the reality belongs to the Christ."

### **John's Baptizing Continued in Harmony with That of Jesus' Disciples Until John's Death**

**Matt. 11:12** "From the days of John the Baptist until now the kingdom of the heavens is the goal toward which men press, and those pressing forward are seizing it."

**Luke 7:26-30** "What did you go out to see? A prophet? Yes, I tell you, and far more than a prophet.' . . . (And all the peo-

ple and the tax collectors, when they heard this, declared God to be righteous, and were baptized with the baptism of John. But the Pharisees and those versed in the law disregarded the counsel of God to them and were not baptized by him.)"

**John 3:27, 30** "John said, '... That one must go on increasing, but I must go on decreasing.'"

### **Jesus Directed Baptism and Commanded Continuance of it**

**John 3:26; 4:1** "They came to John and said to him: 'Rabbi, the man that was with you across the Jordan, to whom you have borne witness, see, this one is baptizing and all are going to him.' Now, the Master became aware that the Pharisees had heard that Jesus was making and baptizing more disciples than John."

**Matt. 28:19, 20** "Go therefore and make disciples of people of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the holy spirit."

### **Baptism by Jesus' Disciples Until A.D. 36—for Jews, Related Samaritans and Proselytes Only**

**Acts 2:37, 38, 41** "Peter said to them: 'Repent, and let each one of you be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ for forgiveness of your sins...' Therefore those who embraced his word heartily were baptized."

**Acts 9:18** "He [Saul] recovered sight, and he rose and was baptized."

**Acts 22:16** "Rise, get baptized and wash your sins away by your calling upon his name."

**Acts 8:27, 35, 36, 38** "Philip opened his mouth and, starting with this Scripture, he declared to him the good news about Jesus. Now as they were traveling over the road, they came to a certain body of water, and the eunuch said: 'Look! a body of water; what prevents me from getting baptized?' ... and he baptized him."

## After A.D. 36 Jews and Uncircumcised Gentiles on Same Basis

**Dan. 9:24-27** "Seventy weeks [455 B.C.-A.D. 36] are decreed upon thy people and upon thy holy city, . . . And he shall make a firm covenant with many for one week [A.D. 29-36]."

**Acts 10:45, 47, 48** "The faithful ones that had come with Peter who were of those circumcised were amazed, because the free gift of the holy spirit was being poured out also upon people of the nations. Then Peter responded: 'Can anyone forbid water so that these might not be baptized who have received the holy spirit even as we have?' With that he commanded them to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ."

**Acts 18:25, 26** "This man [Apollos] . . . went to speaking and teaching with some correctness the things about Jesus, but being acquainted with only the baptism of John. . . . Priscilla and Aquila . . . expounded the way of God more correctly to him."

**Acts 19:2-6** "They said to him: 'Why, we have never heard whether there is a holy spirit.' And he said: 'In what, then, were you baptized?' They said: 'In John's baptism.' Paul said: 'John baptized with the baptism of those repenting, telling the people to believe in the one coming after him, that is, in Jesus.' On hearing this, they got baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus. And when Paul laid his hands upon them, the holy spirit came upon them."

**Acts 15:7-9** "Peter . . . said to them: 'Brothers, you well know that from early days God made the choice among you that through my mouth people of the nations should hear the word of the good news and believe; . . . And he made no distinction at all between us and them, but purified their hearts by faith.'"

## Repentance Must Precede, but Sins Not Washed Away by Baptism

**Acts 17:30** "God . . . now . . . is telling mankind that they should all everywhere repent."

**Acts 20:21** "I thoroughly bore witness both to Jews and to Greeks about repentance toward God and faith in our Lord Jesus."

**Acts 26:20** "I went bringing the message that they should repent and turn to God by doing works that befit repentance."

**1 Pet. 3:21** "That which corresponds to this is also now saving you, namely, baptism, (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the request made to God for a good conscience,) through the resurrection of Jesus Christ."

**Heb. 6:1, 2** "Let us press on to maturity, not laying a foundation again, namely, repentance from dead works, and faith toward God, the teaching on baptisms."

## Immersion Symbolizes Complete Dedication, as Did Jesus' Baptism

**1 Pet. 2:21** "In fact, to this course you were called, because even Christ suffered for you, leaving you a model for you to follow his steps closely."

**Matt. 16:24** "Then Jesus said to his disciples: 'If anyone wants to come after me, let him disown himself and pick up his torture stake and follow me continually.'"

**Luke 9:23** "If anyone wants to come after me, let him disown himself and pick up his torture stake day after day and follow me continually."

## A Necessary Step of Obedience for All Christians, Including the Other Sheep

**Matt. 3:15** "Jesus said to him: 'Let it be, this time, for in that way it is suitable for us to carry out all that is righteous.'"

**Mic. 4:1-5** "Many nations shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of

Jehovah, and to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths."

**1 Pet. 3:20** "In Noah's days, . . . a few people, that is, eight souls, were carried safely through the water."

**Gen. 6:18; 7:7, 13** "I will establish my covenant with thee; and thou shalt come into the ark, thou, and thy sons, and thy wife, and thy sons' wives with thee. . . . In the selfsame day entered Noah, and Shem, and Ham, and Japheth, the sons of Noah, and Noah's wife, and the three wives of his sons with them, into the ark."

**1 Cor. 10:1, 2** "All passed through the sea and all got baptized into Moses by means of the cloud and of the sea."

**Ex. 12:37, 38** "The children of Israel journeyed . . . And a mixed multitude went up also with them."

**In the Name (Recognizing the Office, Authority) of the Father**

**Ps. 83:18** "Thou alone, whose name is Jehovah, art the Most High over all the earth."

**Ps. 36:9** "With thee is the fountain of life."

**Heb. 10:7** "I am come . . . to do your will, O God."

**1 Pet. 3:21** "That which corresponds to this is also now saving you, namely, baptism, (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the request made to God for a good conscience,) through the resurrection of Jesus Christ."

**Heb. 11:6** "He that approaches God must believe that he is and that he becomes the rewarder of those earnestly seeking him."

**John 5:43** "I have come in the name of my Father."

**John 10:25** "Jesus answered them: ' . . . The works which I am doing in the name of my Father, these bear witness about me.' "

**Luke 11:2** "Father, let your name be sanctified."

**In the Name (Recognizing the Office, Authority) of the Son**

**Isa. 55:4** "Behold, I have given him for a witness to the peoples, a leader and commander to the peoples."

**Phil. 2:9-11** "God exalted him to a superior position and kindly gave him the name that is above every other name, so that in the name of Jesus every knee should bend of those in heaven and those on earth and those under the ground, and every tongue should openly confess that Jesus Christ is Lord to the glory of God the Father."

**Rev. 19:16** "He has a name written, King of kings and Lord of lords."

**Heb. 5:9, 10** "He became responsible for everlasting salvation to all those obeying him, because he has been specifically called by God a high priest after the likeness of Melchizedek."

**Isa. 9:6** "His name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace."

**John 4:42** "This man is for a certainty the savior of the world."

**1 John 2:2** "He is a propitiatory sacrifice for our sins, yet not for ours only but also for the whole world's."

**In the Name (Recognizing the Function and Purpose) of the Holy Spirit**

**Eph. 5:18** "Keep getting filled with spirit."

**Gal. 5:16, 18** "Keep walking by spirit and you will carry out no fleshly desire at all. Furthermore, if you are being led by spirit, you are not under law."

**Gal. 6:8** "He who is sowing with a view to the spirit will reap everlasting life from the spirit."

**2 Pet. 1:21** "Prophecy was at no time brought by man's will, but men spoke from God as they were borne along by holy spirit."

**John 6:63** "It is the spirit that is life-giving; the flesh is of no use at all. The sayings that I

have spoken to you are spirit and are life."

**1 John 5:6** "The spirit is the truth."

**Eph. 6:17** "Accept... the sword of the spirit, that is, God's Word."

**Not in the Name of the One Baptizing nor of Any Man or Organization**

**John 4:2** "Jesus himself did no baptizing but his disciples did."

**1 Cor. 1:13-15** "Does the Christ exist divided? Paul was not impaled for you, was he? Or were you baptized in the name of Paul? I am thankful I baptized none of you except Crispus and Gaius, so that no one may say that you were baptized in my name."

**Acts 10:47, 48** "Then Peter responded: 'Can anyone forbid water so that these might not be baptized who have received the holy spirit even as we have?' With that he commanded them to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ."

**Not to Be Urged on Anyone—Must Be a Freewill Decision**

**1 Cor. 1:17** "For Christ dispatched me, not to go baptizing, but to go declaring the good news, not with wisdom of speech, that the torture stake of the Christ should not be made useless."

**Acts 8:36-38** "Now as they were traveling over the road, they came to a certain body of water, and the eunuch said: 'Look! a body of water; what prevents me from getting baptized?' With that he commanded the chariot to halt, and they both went down into the water, both Philip and the eunuch, and he baptized him."

**John 17:3** "This means everlasting life, their taking in knowledge of you, the only true God, and of the one whom you sent forth, Jesus Christ."

**Infant Baptism Unscriptural**

**Rom. 10:13, 14** "'Anyone that calls upon the name of Jehovah will be saved.' However, how will

they call upon him in whom they have not put faith? How, in turn, will they put faith in him of whom they have not heard?"

**Heb. 11:1, 6** "Faith is the assured expectation of things hoped for, the evident demonstration of realities though not beheld. . . . Moreover, without faith it is impossible to win his good pleasure, for he that approaches God must believe that he is and that he becomes the rewarder of those earnestly seeking him."

**Matt. 13:15** "They have shut their eyes; that they might never see with their eyes and hear with their ears and get the sense of it with their hearts and turn back, and I heal them."

**Acts 3:19** "Repent, therefore, and turn around so as to get your sins blotted out."

**Ps. 51:5** "Behold, I was brought forth in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me."

**1 Cor. 14:20** "Brothers, do not become young children in powers of understanding, but be babes as to evil; yet become full-grown in powers of understanding."

**Baptism Must Be Followed by Works of Faith**

**Matt. 4:17** "From that time on, Jesus commenced preaching and saying: 'Repent, for the kingdom of the heavens has drawn near.'"

**Isa. 61:1, 2** "The spirit of the Lord Jehovah is upon me; because Jehovah hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the broken-hearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound; to proclaim the year of Jehovah's favor, and the day of vengeance of our God; to comfort all that mourn."

**Eccl. 5:4, 5** "When thou vowest a vow unto God, defer not to pay it; for he hath no pleasure in fools: pay that which thou vowest. Better is it that thou shouldest not vow, than that thou shouldest vow and not pay."

**Heb. 6:1, 2** "Now that we have left the elementary doctrine about the Christ, let us press on to maturity, not laying a foundation again."

**Luke 9:62** "Jesus said to him: 'No man that has put his hand to a plow and looks at the things behind is well fitted for the kingdom of God.'"

**Heb. 10:38** "'But my righteous one will live by reason of faith,' and, 'if he shrinks back, my soul has no pleasure in him.'"

**2 Cor. 6:1** "Working together with him, we also entreat you not to accept the undeserved kindness of God and miss its purpose."

**Ps. 116:13, 14** "I will take the cup of salvation, and call upon the name of Jehovah. I will pay my vows unto Jehovah, yea, in the presence of all his people."

**Dedicated Ones Baptized for Protection into the (Within the New System of Things) Greater Noah (Christ) and Who Is Also the Greater Moses**

**Heb. 11:7** "By faith Noah, after being given divine warning of things not yet beheld, showed godly fear and constructed an ark for the saving of his household, and through this faith he condemned the world, and he became an heir of the righteousness which is according to faith."

**Zeph. 2:2, 3** "Before the decree bring forth, before the day pass as the chaff, before the fierce anger of Jehovah come upon you, before the day of Jehovah's anger come upon you. Seek ye Jehovah, all ye meek of the earth, that have kept his ordinances; seek righteousness, seek meekness: it may be ye will be hid in the day of Jehovah's anger."

**Isa. 26:20** "Come, my people, enter thou into thy chambers, and shut thy doors about thee: hide thyself for a little moment, until the indignation be overpast."

**1 Pet. 3:20, 21** "The ark... in which... eight souls, were car-

ried safely through the water. That which corresponds to this is also now saving you, namely, baptism."

**Heb. 3:4-6** "Of course, every house is constructed by someone, but he that constructed all things is God. And Moses as an attendant was faithful in all the house of that one as a testimony of the things that were to be spoken afterwards, but Christ was faithful as a Son over the house of that one."

**Baptism with Holy Spirit—God First Baptizes His High Priest**

**Matt. 3:13-17** "After being baptized Jesus immediately came up from the water; and, look! the heavens were opened up, and he saw descending like a dove God's spirit coming upon him."

**Luke 4:18** "Jehovah's spirit is upon me, because he anointed me."

**Acts 10:38** "Jesus who was from Nazareth, how God anointed him with holy spirit and power, and he went through the land doing good and healing all those oppressed by the Devil."

**Isa. 42:1** "Behold, my servant, whom I uphold; my chosen, in whom my soul delighteth: I have put my spirit upon him; he will bring forth justice to the Gentiles."

**Ps. 133:2** "It is like the precious oil upon the head, that ran down upon the beard, even Aaron's beard; that came down upon the skirt of his garments."

**Spirit Baptism for Body Members (Underpriests) Not Direct from God, but Through Christ**

**Acts 1:5** "John, indeed, baptized with water, but you will be baptized in holy spirit not many days after this."

**Acts 2:1-4, 32, 33** "Now while the day of the feast of Pentecost was in progress they were all together at the same place, and suddenly there occurred from heaven a noise just like that of a rushing stiff breeze, and it filled

the whole house in which they were sitting. . . . and they all became filled with holy spirit. . . . 'This Jesus . . . because he was exalted to the right hand of God and received the promised holy spirit from the Father, he has poured out this which you see and hear.'"

**John 14:16, 17** "I will request the Father and he will give you another helper to be with you forever, the spirit of the truth."

**John 15:26** "When the helper arrives that I will send you from the Father, the spirit of the truth which proceeds from the Father, that one will bear witness about me."

**John 16:7, 13** "If I do not go away, the helper will by no means come to you; but if I do go my way, I will send him to you."

**2 Cor. 1:21** "But he who guarantees that you and we belong to Christ and he who has anointed us is God."

### **Baptism into Body of Christ for 144,000 Only, Done by Baptizing Them with Holy Spirit**

**Gal. 3:27, 28** "All of you who were baptized into Christ have put on Christ. . . . for you are all one in union with Christ Jesus."

**Eph. 4:4, 5** "One body there is, and one spirit, even as you were called in the one hope to which you were called; one Lord, one faith, one baptism."

**1 Cor. 12:13** "For truly by one spirit we were all baptized into one body, whether Jews or Greeks, whether slaves or free, and we were all made to drink one spirit."

**1 John 2:20, 27** "You have an anointing from the holy one; all of you have knowledge. And as for you, the anointing that you received from him remains in you, and you do not need anyone to be teaching you; but, as the anointing from him is teaching you about all things, and is true and is no lie, and just as it has

taught you, remain in union with him."

### **Baptized into Christ's Death Destiny of the 144,000**

**Rom. 6:3, 4** "Do you not know that all of us who were baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death? Therefore we were buried with him through our baptism into his death, in order that, just as Christ was raised up from the dead through the glory of the Father, we also should likewise walk in a newness of life."

**Col. 2:12** "You were buried with him in his baptism, and by relationship with him you were also raised up together through your faith in the operation of God, who raised him up from the dead."

**Luke 12:50** "Indeed, I have a baptism with which to be baptized, and how I am being distressed until it is finished!"

**Mark 10:38, 39** "'Are you able to drink the cup which I am drinking, or to be baptized with the baptism with which I am being baptized?' They said to him: 'We are able.' At that Jesus said to them: 'The cup I am drinking you will drink, and with the baptism with which I am being baptized you will be baptized.'"

**Phil. 3:10** "So as to know him and the power of his resurrection and a sharing in his sufferings, submitting myself to his kind of death."

**1 Cor. 15:29** "Otherwise, what will they do who are being baptized for the purpose of being dead ones? If the dead are not to be raised up at all, why are they also being baptized for the purpose of being such?"

**2 Tim. 2:11** "Certainly if we died together, we shall also live together."

### **Baptism with Fire (to Destruction) Not the Baptism with Holy Spirit**

**Joel 2:28-31** "And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour

out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions: and also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit. And I will show wonders in the heavens and in the earth: blood, and fire, and pillars of smoke. The sun shall be turned into darkness, and the moon into blood, before the great and terrible day of Jehovah cometh."

**2 Thess. 1:6-9** "It is righteous on God's part to repay tribulation to those who make tribulation for you, but, to you who suffer tribulation, relief along with us at the revelation of the Lord Jesus from heaven with his powerful angels in a flaming fire, as he brings due punishment upon those who do not know God and those who do not obey the good news about our Lord Jesus."

**Luke 3:16, 17** "He will baptize you people with holy spirit and fire. . . . the chaff he will burn up with fire that cannot be put out."

**Dan. 9:26, 27** "And the people of the prince that shall come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary; and the end thereof shall be with a flood, and even unto the end shall be war; desolations are determined. . . . and even unto the full end, and that determined, shall wrath be poured out upon the desolate."

**Isa. 1:9** "Except Jehovah of hosts had left unto us a very small remnant, we should have been as Sodom, we should have been like unto Gomorrah."

**Baptism into Destruction for God's Enemies at Armageddon and at End of 1,000-Year Rule of Christ**

**Matt. 13:30** "In the harvest season I will tell the reapers, First collect the weeds and bind them in bundles to burn them up, then go to gathering the wheat into my storehouse."

**Mal. 4:1** "For, behold, the day cometh, it burneth as a furnace; and all the proud, and all that work wickedness, shall be stubble; and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith Jehovah of hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch."

**Zeph. 3:8** "All the earth shall be devoured with the fire of my jealousy."

**Jude 7** "Sodom and Gomorrah and the cities about them, after they in the same manner as the foregoing ones had committed fornication excessively and gone out after flesh for unnatural use, are placed before us as a warning example by undergoing the judicial punishment of everlasting fire."

**Rev. 19:20** "The wild beast was caught, and along with it the false prophet that performed in front of it the signs with which he misled those who received the mark of the wild beast and those who render worship to its image. While still alive, they both were hurled into the fiery lake that burns with sulphur."

**Rev. 20:7-10, 14, 15** "As soon as the thousand years have been ended, Satan will . . . go out to mislead . . . . And they advanced . . . and encircled the camp of the holy ones and the beloved city. But fire came down out of heaven and devoured them. And the Devil who was misleading them was hurled into the lake of fire and sulphur, where both the wild beast and the false prophet already were; and they will be tormented day and night for ever and ever. And death and Hades were hurled into the lake of fire. This means the second death, the lake of fire. Furthermore, whoever was not found written in the book of life was hurled into the lake of fire."

**Heb. 12:29** "For our God is also a consuming fire."

**2 Pet. 3:6, 7** "The world of that time suffered destruction when it was deluged with water. But by



the same word the heavens and the earth that are now are stored up for fire and are being reserved to the day of judgment and of destruction of the ungodly men."

**Luke 17:26-30** "Just as it occurred in the days of Noah, so it will be also in the days of the Son of man: . . . and the flood arrived and destroyed them all. Likewise, just as it occurred in the days of Lot: . . . it rained fire and sulphur from heaven and destroyed them all."

**Ex. 14:26-28** "Jehovah overthrew the Egyptians in the midst of the sea. And the waters returned, and covered the chariots, and the horsemen, even all the host of Pharaoh that went in after them into the sea; there remained not so much as one of them."

**Rev. 11:8** "The great city which is in a spiritual sense called Sodom and Egypt, where their Lord was also impaled."

# Bible

## DEFINITION

The Bible is Jehovah God's written word to mankind, revealing himself and expressing his purpose. Jehovah, as the Author, inspired at least thirty-five different faithful men to write. Although the complete Bible is itself one book it is actually a library of sixty-six books, thirty-nine having been originally written in Hebrew and Aramaic and properly designated collectively the Hebrew-Aramaic Scriptures, and the other twenty-seven having been originally written in Greek and properly designated collectively the Christian Greek Scriptures. The writing of the entire Bible covered the period from 1513 B.C. to A.D. 98 or 99. The English word Bible is from the Greek word, *bibli'a*, meaning "papyrus scrolls, rolls, volumes, books" or, literally, "small papyri or booklets."

### Jehovah God's So-called "Book of Nature" Declares His Majesty and Creative Power

**Ps. 19:1, 2** "The heavens declare the glory of God; and the firmament showeth his handiwork. Day unto day uttereth speech, and night unto night showeth knowledge."

**Ps. 111:2-6** "The works of Jehovah are great, sought out of all them that have pleasure therein. His work is honor and majesty; and his righteousness endureth for ever. He hath made his wonderful works to be remembered: . . . He hath showed his people the power of his works, in giving them the heritage of the nations."

**Rom. 1:20** "For his invisible qualities are clearly seen from the world's creation onward, because they are understood by the things made, even his eternal power and Godship, so that they are inexcusable."

### God's Works Not Completely Revealed by So-called "Book of Nature"

**Ecc. 3:11** "Man cannot find out the work that God hath done from the beginning even to the end."

**Ecc. 11:5** "As thou knowest not what is the way of the wind, nor how the bones do grow in the womb of her that is with child; even so thou knowest not the work of God who doeth all."

## Jehovah Reveals Himself and His Purpose Through His Written Word

**2 Tim. 3:16, 17** "All Scripture is inspired of God and beneficial for teaching, for reproving, for setting things straight, for disciplining in righteousness, that the man of God may be fully competent, completely equipped for every good work."

**Rom. 15:4** "For all the things that were written aforetime were written for our instruction, that through our endurance and through the comfort from the Scriptures we might have hope."

**1 Cor. 10:11** "Now these things went on befalling them as examples and they were written for a warning to us upon whom the accomplished ends of the systems of things have arrived."

**Rom. 16:25, 26** "Now to him who can make you firm in accord with the good news I declare and the preaching of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of the sacred secret which has been concealed for long-lasting times but has now been made manifest and has been made known through the prophetic scriptures among all the nations in accord with the command of the everlasting God to promote obedience by faith."

### As Author of Bible, God Contributed to Its Writing Himself

**Ex. 24:12** "And Jehovah said unto Moses, Come up to me into the mount, and be there; and I will give thee the tables of stone, and the law and the commandment, which I have written, that thou mayest teach them."

**Ex. 31:18** "And he gave unto Moses, when he had made an end of communing with him upon mount Sinai, the two tables of the testimony, tables of stone, written with the finger of God."

### Not of Human Origination

**2 Pet. 1:20, 21** "No prophecy of Scripture springs from any private release. For prophecy was

at no time brought by man's will, but men spoke from God as they were borne along by holy spirit."

**Acts 3:21** "The times of restoration of all things of which God spoke through the mouth of his holy prophets of old time."

### God Used Faithful Men from All Walks of Life to Write

#### Prince

**Ex. 2:10** "And the child grew, and she brought him unto Pharaoh's daughter, and he became her son. And she called his name Moses."

**Ex. 17:14** "And Jehovah said unto Moses, Write this for a memorial in a book."

**Deut. 31:24** "And it came to pass, when Moses had made an end of writing the words of this law in a book, until they were finished."

#### General

**Josh. 1:10, 11, 16** "Then Joshua commanded the officers of the people, saying, . . . within three days ye are to pass over this Jordan, to go in to possess the land, . . . And they answered Joshua, saying, All that thou hast commanded us we will do, and whithersoever thou sendest us we will go."

**Josh. 24:26** "And Joshua wrote these words in the book of the law of God."

#### Judge

**1 Sam. 3:20; 7:15** "And all Israel from Dan even to Beer-sheba knew that Samuel was established to be a prophet of Jehovah. And Samuel judged Israel all the days of his life."

**1 Sam. 10:25** "Then Samuel told the people the manner of the kingdom, and wrote it in a book, and laid it up before Jehovah."

#### King

**2 Sam. 5:3, 4** "And they anointed David king over Israel. David was thirty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned forty years."

**2 Sam. 23:1, 2** "Now these are the last words of David.... The spirit of Jehovah spake by me, and his word was upon my tongue."

### *Nobility, a king's descendant*

**Zeph. 1:1** "The word of Jehovah which came unto Zephaniah the son of Cushi, the son of Gedaliah, the son of Amariah, the son of Hezekiah, in the days of Josiah the son of Amon, king of Judah."

### *Prophets*

**Jer. 1:1-5** "The words of Jeremiah the son of Hilkiah, of the priests that were in Anathoth in the land of Benjamin: to whom the word of Jehovah came . . . saying, . . . I have appointed thee a prophet unto the nations."

**Acts 28:25** "Paul made this one comment: 'The holy spirit aptly spoke through Isaiah the prophet to your forefathers.'"

### *Priest*

**Ezek. 1:3** "The word of Jehovah came expressly unto Ezekiel the priest, . . . and the hand of Jehovah was there upon him."

### *Prime minister*

**Dan. 2:48; 6:1-3** "Then the king [Nebuchadnezzar] made Daniel great, and gave him many great gifts, and made him to rule over the whole province of Babylon, and to be chief governor over all the wise men of Babylon." "It pleased Darius to set over the kingdom a hundred and twenty satraps, who should be throughout the whole kingdom; and over them three presidents, of whom Daniel was one; that these satraps might give account unto them, and that the king should have no damage. Then this Daniel was distinguished above the presidents and the satraps, because an excellent spirit was in him; and the king thought to set him over the whole realm."

**Dan. 7:1** "Daniel had a dream and visions of his head upon his

bed: then he wrote the dream and told the sum of the matters."

### *Scribe*

**Ezra 7:1-6, 11** "Ezra the son of Seraiah, . . . this Ezra went up from Babylon. And he was a ready scribe in the law of Moses, which Jehovah, the God of Israel, had given; . . . Now this is the copy of the letter that the king Artaxerxes gave unto Ezra the priest, the scribe, even the scribe of the words of the commandments of Jehovah, and of his statutes to Israel."

### *Court official*

**Neh. 1:1, 11; 2:1** "The words of Nehemiah the son of Hacaliah. Now I was cupbearer to the king. And it came to pass . . . when wine was before him, that I took up the wine, and gave it unto the king."

### *Herdsmen*

**Amos 1:1** "The words of Amos, who was among the herdsmen of Tekoa, which he saw concerning Israel in the days of Uzziah king of Judah."

### *Tax collector*

**Matt. 9:9** "Next, while passing along from there, Jesus caught sight of a man named Matthew seated at the tax office, and he said to him: 'Be my follower.'"

### *Fishermen*

**Matt. 4:18-21** "Walking alongside the sea of Galilee he saw two brothers, Simon who is called 'Peter' and Andrew his brother, letting down a fishing-net into the sea, for they were fishers. And he said to them: 'Come after me, and I will make you fishers of men.' At once abandoning the nets, they followed him. Going on also from there he saw two others who were brothers, James the son of Zebedee and John his brother, in the boat with Zebedee their father, repairing their nets, and he called them."

**Lawyer**

**Acts 21:40; 22:1-4** "Paul... addressed them in the Hebrew language, saying: '... I am a Jew, born in Tarsus of Cilicia, but educated in this city at the feet of Gamaliel ["a Law teacher," Acts 5:34], instructed according to the strictness of the ancestral Law.'"

**Physician**

**Col. 4:14** "Luke the beloved physician sends you his greetings."

**Luke 1:3** "I resolved also, because I have traced all things from the start with accuracy, to write them in logical order to you."

**Inspiration**

**All writers were inspired or moved by God's active force to write**

**2 Tim. 3:16** "All Scripture is inspired of God and beneficial for teaching, for reproving, for setting things straight, for disciplining in righteousness."

**2 Pet. 1:21** "For prophecy was at no time brought by man's will, but men spoke from God as they were borne along by holy spirit."

**Acts 28:25** "Paul made this one comment: 'The holy spirit aptly spoke through Isaiah the prophet to your forefathers.'"

**Inspired means "God-breathed"**

**John 20:22** "And after he said this he blew upon them and said to them: 'Receive holy spirit.'"

**Moses wrote many words as dictated directly by angels**

**Num. 12:6-8** "If there be a prophet among you, I Jehovah will make myself known unto him in a vision, I will speak with him in a dream. My servant Moses is not so; he is faithful in all my house: with him will I speak mouth to mouth, even manifestly, and not in dark speeches."

**Deut. 31:14, 19, 22** "And Jehovah said unto Moses, . . . Now

therefore write ye this song for you, and teach thou it the children of Israel: . . . So Moses wrote this song the same day, and taught it the children of Israel." [For text of song see Deuteronomy 31:30; 32:1-43.]

**Many received visions or pictorial revelations while awake**

**2 Sam. 7:17** "According to all these words, and according to all this vision, so did Nathan speak unto David."

**2 Chron. 32:32** "Now the rest of the acts of Hezekiah, and his good deeds, behold, they are written in the vision of Isaiah the prophet."

**Hab. 2:2** "And Jehovah answered me, and said, Write the vision, and make it plain upon tablets."

**Also: Isa. 1:1; Ezek. 1:1; Dan. 8:1, 2; Obad. 1; Nah. 1:1.**

**Others received dreams or pictorial revelations while asleep**

**Dan. 7:1, 2, 7** "Daniel had a dream and visions of his head upon his bed: then he wrote the dream and told the sum of the matters. Daniel spake and said, I saw in my vision by night, . . . After this I saw in the night-visions."

**Meaning not always understood by writers**

**Dan. 12:8** "And I heard, but I understood not."

**1 Pet. 1:10-12** "Concerning this very salvation a diligent inquiry and a careful search were made by the prophets who prophesied about the undeserved kindness meant for you. They kept on investigating what particular season or what kind of season the spirit in them was indicating . . . It was revealed to them that, not to themselves, but to you, they were ministering the things which have now been announced to you . . . Into these very things angels are desiring to peer."

Moses, Under Inspiration, Compiled Genesis Largely from 11 Previously Written Documents of Clay or Stone. Each Has a "Colophon" at End of Document Identifying Writer. The Writer Gave Contemporaneous Accounts

**Document No. 1, Gen. 1:1 to 2:4; written by Adam**

Gen. 2:4, *Da* "These are the histories of the heavens and the earth, when they were created, in the day that Jehovah Elohim made earth and heavens."

**Document No. 2, Gen. 2:5 to 5:2.**

Gen. 5:1, 2, *Da* "This is the book of Adam's generations ["history"; see footnote in *Da*]. In the day that God created man, in the likeness of God made he him."

**Document No. 3, Gen. 5:3 to 6:9.**

Gen. 6:9, *Da* "This is the history of Noah."

**Document No. 4, Gen. 6:9 to 10:1.**

Gen. 10:1, *Da* "And these are the generations ["history"; see Genesis 5:1, footnote] of the sons of Noah: Shem, Ham, and Japheth."

**Document No. 5, Gen. 10:2 to 11:10**

Gen. 11:10, *Da* "These are the generations ["history"; see Genesis 5:1, footnote] of Shem."

**Document No. 6, Gen. 11:10-27.**

Gen. 11:27, *Da* "And these are the generations ["history"; see Genesis 5:1, footnote] of Terah."

**Document No. 7, Gen. 11:27 to 25:12.**

Gen. 25:12, *Da* "And these are the generations ["history"; see Genesis 5:1, footnote] of Ishmael, Abraham's son."

**Document No. 8, Gen. 25:13-19.**

Gen. 25:19, *Da* "And these are the generations ["history"; see Genesis 5:1, footnote] of Isaac, Abraham's son."

**Document No. 9, Gen. 25:19 to 36:1.**

Gen. 36:1, *Da* "And these are the generations ["history"; see

Genesis 5:1, footnote] of Esau, that is Edom."

**Document No. 10, Gen. 36:2-9.**

Gen. 36:9, *Da* "And these are the generations ["history"; see Genesis 5:1, footnote] of Esau, the father of Edom, in mount Seir."

**Document No. 11, Gen. 36:10 to 37:2.**

Gen. 37:2, *Da* "These are the generations ["history"; see Genesis 5:1, footnote] of Jacob."

**Interpretation Must Come from God**

Gen. 40:8 "And Joseph said unto them, Do not interpretations belong to God?"

Dan. 2:27, 28 "Daniel answered before the king, and said, The secret which the king hath demanded can neither wise men, enchanters, magicians, nor soothsayers, show unto the king; but there is a God in heaven that revealeth secrets, and he hath made known to the king Nebuchadnezzar what shall be in the latter days."

**Understood Only in God's Due Time**

Hab. 2:2, 3 "And Jehovah answered me, and said, Write the vision, and make it plain upon tablets, that he may run that readeth it. For the vision is yet for the appointed time, and it hasteth toward the end, and shall not lie: though it tarry, wait for it; because it will surely come, it will not delay."

Dan. 12:9, 10 "And he said, Go thy way, Daniel; for the words are shut up and sealed till the time of the end. . . . and none of the wicked shall understand; but they that are wise shall understand."

**Transmission and Preservation**  
**Jehovah God has preserved his own Word accurately**

Isa. 40:8 "The grass withereth, the flower fadeth; but the word of our God shall stand forever."

**1 Pet. 1:25** "The word spoken by Jehovah endures forever." Well, this is the 'word spoken', this which has been declared to you as good news."

***Kept by side of ark of covenant from time of writing***

**Deut. 31:26** "Take this book of the law, and put it by the side of the ark of the covenant of Jehovah your God, that it may be there for a witness against thee."

**1 Sam. 10:25** "Then Samuel told the people the manner of the kingdom, and wrote it in a book, and laid it up before Jehovah."

***Used by priests to teach during reign of Jehoshaphat***

**2 Chron. 17:9** "And they taught in Judah, having the book of the law of Jehovah with them; and they went about throughout all the cities of Judah, and taught among the people."

***Book "found" in temple during King Josiah's reign, 642 B.C.***

**2 Ki. 22:3, 8, 10** "In the eighteenth year of king Josiah, . . . Hilkiah the high priest said unto Shaphan the scribe, I have found the book of the law in the house of Jehovah. . . . And Shaphan the scribe told the king, saying, Hilkiah the priest hath delivered me a book. And Shaphan read it before the king."

***Preserved during exile, beginning 607 B.C.***

**Dan. 9:2** "In the first year of his [Darius'] reign, I, Daniel, understood by the books the number of the years whereof the word of Jehovah came to Jeremiah the prophet, for the accomplishing of the desolations of Jerusalem, even seventy years."

***Ezra read law to returned exiles after 537 B.C.***

**Neh. 8:8** "And they read in the book, in the law of God, distinctly; and they gave the sense, so that they understood the reading."

***Used by Jesus and disciples***

**Luke 4:17-21** "So the scroll of the prophet Isaiah was handed him, and he opened the scroll and found the place where it was written, . . . With that he rolled up the scroll, handed it back to the attendant and sat down; . . . Then he started to say to them: 'Today this scripture that you just heard is fulfilled.'"

**2 Pet. 3:15, 16** "Paul according to the wisdom given him also wrote you, speaking about these things as he does also in all his other letters. In them, however, are some things hard to understand, the meaning of which the untaught and unsteady are twisting, as they do also the rest of the Scriptures, to their own destruction."

***Preserved also through translations to carry out earth-wide preaching commission***

**Matt. 28:19, 20** "Go therefore and make disciples of people of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the holy spirit, teaching them to observe all the things I have commanded you."

**Acts 1:8** "But you will receive power when the holy spirit arrives upon you, and you will be witnesses of me both in Jerusalem and in all Judea and Samaria and to the most distant part of the earth."

***Versus Tradition***

***God's Word not to be set aside for man's tradition***

**Matt. 15:1-9** "Then there came to Jesus from Jerusalem Pharisees and scribes, saying: 'Why is it your disciples overstep the tradition of the men of former times?' . . . In reply he said to them: 'Why is it you also overstep the commandment of God because of your tradition? . . . you have made the word of God invalid because of your tradition. You hypocrites, Isaiah aptly prophesied about you, when he

said: "This people honors me with their lips, yet their hearts are far removed from me. It is in vain that they keep paying respect to me, because they teach commands of men as doctrines." [See Isaiah 29:13.]

***No truth in teachings of men  
when opposed to Bible***

Isa. 8:19, 20 "And when they shall say unto you, Seek unto them that have familiar spirits and unto the wizards, that chirp and that mutter: should not a people seek unto their God? on behalf of the living should they seek unto the dead? To the law and to the testimony! if they speak not according to this word, surely there is no morning for them."

***Adding to God's Word forbidden***

Deut. 4:2 "Ye shall not add unto the word which I command you, neither shall ye diminish from it, that ye may keep the commandments of Jehovah your God which I command you."

Prov. 30:5, 6 "Every word of God is tried: he is a shield unto them that take refuge in him. Add thou not unto his words, lest he reprove thee, and thou be found a liar."

***Jesus used written word to  
refute false interpretation  
by Satan***

Matt. 4:4, 7, 10 "In reply he said: 'It is written, "Man must live, not on bread alone, but on every utterance coming forth through Jehovah's mouth."' Jesus said to him: 'Again it is written, "You must not put Jehovah your God to the test."' Then Jesus said to him: 'Go away, Satan! For it is written, "It is Jehovah your God you must worship, and it is to him alone you must render sacred service."' "

See: Deut. 8:3; 6:16; 6:13.

***Jesus advised religious leaders  
to believe God's written word***

John 5:39, 46, 47 "You are searching the Scriptures, because you think that by means of them you will have everlasting life; and these are the very ones that bear witness about me. In fact, if you believed Moses you would believe me, for that one wrote about me. But if you do not believe the writings of that one, how will you believe my sayings?"

See: Gen. 3:15; 12:7; 49:10; Deut. 18:15.

***Jesus gave life to uphold truth  
of Scriptures***

Luke 22:37 "For I tell you that this which is written must be accomplished in me, namely, 'And he was reckoned with lawless ones.' For that which concerns me is having an accomplishment."

See: Isa. 53:12.

***Jesus magnified God's written  
word above rabbinic schools***

Luke 24:27, 44, 45 "And commencing at Moses and all the Prophets he interpreted to them things pertaining to himself in all the Scriptures. He now said to them: 'These are my words which I spoke to you while I was yet with you, that all the things written in the law of Moses and in the Prophets and Psalms about me must be fulfilled.' Then he opened up their minds fully to grasp the meaning of the Scriptures."

Matt. 16:6, 12 "Jesus said to them: 'Be on the alert and watch out for the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.' Then they grasped that he said to watch out ... for the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees."

***Followers of tradition become  
persecutors of Jesus'  
true followers***

Gal. 1:13, 14 "You, of course, heard about my conduct formerly in Judaism, that to the point

of excess I kept on persecuting the congregation of God and devastating it, and I was making greater progress in Judaism than many of my own age in my race, as I was far more zealous for the traditions of my fathers."

***Paul warned against religious tradition***

Col. 2:8 "Look out: perhaps there may be some man that will carry you off as his prey through the philosophy and empty deception according to the tradition of men, according to the elementary things of the world and not according to Christ."

Gal. 1:7-9 "There are certain ones who are disturbing you and wanting to pervert the good news about the Christ. However, even if we or an angel out of heaven were to declare to you as good news something beyond what we declared to you as good news, let him be accursed. As we have said above, I also now say again, Whoever it is that is declaring to you as good news something beyond what you accepted, let him be accursed."

***Christians commended for verifying through Scriptures Paul's teaching***

Acts 17:10, 11 "Immediately by night the brothers sent both Paul and Silas out to Beroea, and these, following their arrival, went into the synagogue of the Jews. Now the latter were more noble-minded than those in Thessalonica, for they received the word with the greatest readiness of mind, carefully examining the Scriptures daily as to whether these things were so."

***Peter always turned hearers and readers to God's written word***

1 Pet. 1:25 "The word spoken by Jehovah endures forever." Well, this is the 'word spoken', this which has been declared to you as good news."

2 Pet. 1:19; 2:1; 3:1, 2 "Consequently, we have the prophetic

word made more firm, and you are doing well in paying attention to it as to a lamp shining in a dark place, until day dawns and a daystar rises, in your hearts." "However, there also came to be false prophets among the people, as there will also be false teachers among you. These very ones will quietly bring in destructive sects and will disown even the owner that bought them, bringing speedy destruction upon themselves." "I am arousing your clear thinking faculties by way of a reminder, that you should remember the words previously spoken by the holy prophets and the commandment of the Lord and Savior through your apostles."

***True Science:***

***Bible in harmony with true science***

1 Tim. 6:20, 21 "O Timothy, guard what is laid up in trust with you, turning away from the empty speeches that violate what is holy and from the contradictions of the falsely called 'knowledge'. For making a show of such knowledge some have deviated from the faith. May the undeserved kindness be with you people."

Titus 1:9 "Holding firmly to the faithful word as respects his art of teaching, that he may be able both to exhort by the teaching that is healthful and to reprove those who contradict."

***Mentioned earth suspended in space***

Job 26:7 "He stretcheth out the north over empty space, and hangeth the earth upon nothing."

***Showed the earth is round***

Prov. 8:27-29 "When he established the heavens, I was there: when he set a circle upon the face of the deep, when he made firm the skies above, when the fountains of the deep became strong, when he gave to the sea its bound, that the waters should



not transgress his commandment, when he marked out the foundations of the earth."

**Isa. 40:22** "It is he that sitteth above the circle of the earth."

### ***Spoke of man's circulatory system***

**Eccl. 12:5-7** "Man goeth to his everlasting home, and the mourners go about the streets: before the silver cord is loosed, or the golden bowl is broken, or the pitcher is broken at the fountain, or the wheel broken at the cistern, and the dust returneth to the earth as it was, and the spirit returneth unto God who gave it."

See also "Creation" and "Evolution".

### ***Identifying of diseases —quarantining***

**Lev. 15:3** "And this shall be his uncleanness in his issue: whether his flesh run with his issue, or his flesh be stopped from his issue, it is his uncleanness."

**Lev. 13:9-11** "When the plague of leprosy is in a man, then he shall be brought unto the priest; and the priest shall look; and behold, if there be a white rising in the skin, and it have turned the hair white, and there be quick raw flesh in the rising, . . . the priest shall pronounce him unclean."

**Lev. 13:21, AT** "But if the priest, upon looking at it, finds no white hair on it, and it is not deeper than the skin, but has become dim, the priest shall quarantine him for seven days."

**Matt. 4:24** "And the report about him went out into all of Syria; and they brought him all the ailing ones afflicted with various diseases and severe complaints, demon-possessed and lunatic and paralyzed persons, and he cured them."

### ***True chemical knowledge***

**Glass: Job 28:17** "Gold and glass cannot equal it, neither

shall it be exchanged for jewels of fine gold."

**Acid—Base Reactions: Prov. 25:20** "As one that taketh off a garment in cold weather, and as vinegar upon soda, so is he that singeth songs to a heavy heart."

**Source of Iron and Copper: Job 28:2** "Iron is taken out of the earth, and copper is molten out of the stone."

**Metallurgy: Ezek. 22:18** "The house of Israel is become dross unto me: all of them are brass and tin and iron and lead, in the midst of the furnace; they are the dross of silver."

### ***Authenticity***

***God's Word is true and exposes contradictors as liars***

**John 17:1, 17** "Jesus spoke these things, . . . Sanctify them by means of the truth; your word is truth."

**Ps. 119:142** "Thy righteousness is an everlasting righteousness, and thy law is truth."

**Rom. 3:4** "Let God be found true, though every man be found a liar, even as it is written: 'That you might be vindicated in your words and might win when you are being judged.'"

**Prov. 30:5, 6** "Every word of God is tried: he is a shield unto them that take refuge in him. Add thou not unto his words, lest he reprove thee, and thou be found a liar."

### ***Writers spoke with complete candor exposing own faults***

**Num. 20:12** "And Jehovah said unto Moses and Aaron, Because ye believed not in me, to sanctify me in the eyes of the children of Israel, therefore ye shall not bring this assembly into the land which I have given them."

**Deut. 31:25-27** "Moses commanded . . . saying, . . . For I know thy rebellion, and thy stiff neck: behold, while I am yet alive with you this day, ye have been rebellious against Jehovah; and how much more after my death?"

**Jonah 1:1-3** "Now the word of Jehovah came unto Jonah . . . Arise, go to Nineveh, that great city, and cry against it; . . . But Jonah rose up to flee unto Tarsish from the presence of Jehovah."

**Matt. 26:73-75** "After a little while those standing around came up and said to Peter: 'Certainly you also are one of them, for, in fact, your dialect gives you away.' Then he started to curse and swear: 'I do not know the man!' And immediately a cock crowed. And Peter called to mind the saying Jesus spoke, namely: 'Before a cock crows, you will disown me three times.' And he went outside and wept bitterly."

***No attempt made to deceive  
or coerce***

**Josh. 24:15** "And if it seem evil unto you to serve Jehovah, choose you this day whom ye will serve; whether the gods which your fathers served that were beyond the River, or the gods of the Amorites, in whose land ye dwell: but as for me and my house, we will serve Jehovah."

***No effort made to force  
acceptance***

**Ezek. 3:11** "And go, get thee to them of the captivity, unto the children of thy people, and speak unto them, and tell them, Thus saith the Lord Jehovah; whether they will hear, or whether they will forbear."

***No effort made to glorify men***

**Isa. 40:22, 23** "It is he that sitteth above the circle of the earth, and the inhabitants thereof are as grasshoppers; . . . that bringeth princes to nothing; that maketh the judges of the earth as vanity."

**Ps. 113:3-6** "From the rising of the sun unto the going down of the same Jehovah's name is to be praised. Jehovah is high above all nations, and his glory above the heavens. Who is like unto Jehovah our God, that hath his seat on high, that humbleth him-

self to behold the things that are in heaven and in the earth?"

***Contemporaries accepted account of miracles recorded  
as truthful***

**Ex. 15:1-18** "Then sang Moses and the children of Israel this song unto Jehovah, and spake, saying, I will sing unto Jehovah, for he hath triumphed gloriously: . . . Pharaoh's chariots and his host hath he cast into the sea; and his chosen captains are sunk in the Red Sea. . . . The floods stood upright as a heap; the deeps were congealed in the heart of the sea. The enemy said, I will pursue, I will overtake, I will divide the spoil; . . . Thou didst blow with thy wind, the sea covered them: they sank as lead in the mighty waters."

***Bible's revelation of God impossible for imperfect man (especially an impostor) to invent***

**Rom. 11:33, 34** "Oh the depth of God's riches and wisdom and knowledge! How unsearchable his judgments are and past tracing out his ways are! For 'who has come to know Jehovah's mind, or who has become his counselor?'"

**Deut. 32:4** "The Rock, his work is perfect; for all his ways are justice: a God of faithfulness and without iniquity, just and right is he."

**Isa. 55:8, 9** "For my thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways my ways, saith Jehovah. For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts."

***Answers problems of life in all  
generations with perfect  
solution***

**John 4:14** "Whoever drinks from the water that I will give him will never get thirsty at all, but the water that I will give him will become in him a fountain of water bubbling up to impart everlasting life."

**John 6:35** "Jesus said to them: 'I am the bread of life. He that comes to me will not get hungry at all, and he that exercises faith in me will never get thirsty at all.'"

**2 Tim. 3:15-17** "From infancy you have known the holy writings which are able to make you wise for salvation through the faith in connection with Christ Jesus. All Scripture is inspired of God and beneficial for teaching, for re-proving, for setting things straight, for disciplining in righteousness, that the man of God may be fully competent, completely equipped for every good work."

***Writers not fanatics—gave logical reasons for faith***

**Isa. 1:18-20** "Come now, and let us reason together, saith Jehovah: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool. If ye be willing and obedient, ye shall eat the good of the land; but if ye refuse and rebel, ye shall be devoured with the sword; for the mouth of Jehovah hath spoken it."

***Men cannot foretell events but God can***

**Prov. 27:1** "Boast not thyself of tomorrow; for thou knowest not what a day may bring forth."

**Isa. 46:9, 10** "I am God, . . . declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times things that are not yet done."

**John 14:29** "So now I have told you before it occurs, in order that, when it does occur, you may believe."

***Prophecies of Bible proved true—hence from God***

**Prophecy: Mic. 5:2** "But thou, Bethlehem . . . out of thee shall one come forth unto me that is to be ruler in Israel."

**Fulfillment: Matt. 2:1-6** "After Jesus had been born in Bethlehem . . . They said to him: 'In Bethlehem of Judea; for this is

how it has been written through the prophet.'"

**Prophecy: Isa. 7:14** "Therefore the Lord himself will give you a sign: behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel."

**Fulfillment: Matt. 1:20-23** "'Joseph, son of David, do not be afraid to take Mary your wife home, for that which has been begotten in her is by holy spirit. She will give birth to a son, and you must call his name 'Jesus';' . . . All this actually came about for that to be fulfilled which was spoken by Jehovah through his prophet, saying, 'Look! the virgin will become pregnant and will give birth to a son, and they will call his name 'Immanuel';' which means, when translated, 'With us is God.'"

**Prophecy: Ps. 69:4** "They that hate me without a cause are more than the hairs of my head: they that would cut me off, being mine enemies wrongfully, are mighty: that which I took not away I have to restore."

**Fulfillment: John 15:24, 25** "Now they have both seen and hated me as well as my Father. But the result is that the word written in their Law is fulfilled."

**Prophecy: Ps. 22:16** "For dogs have compassed me: a company of evil-doers have inclosed me; they pierced my hands and my feet."

**Fulfillment: Luke 23:33** "And when they got to the place called 'The Skull', there they impaled him and the evildoers, one on his right and one on his left."

**Prophecy: Ps. 16:10** "For thou wilt not leave my soul to Sheol; neither wilt thou suffer thy holy one to see corruption."

**Fulfillment: Acts 2:29-31** "David . . . saw beforehand and spoke concerning the resurrection of the Christ, that neither was he forsaken in Hades nor did his flesh see corruption."

# Blood Transfusion

## DEFINITION

Transferring blood from the veins or arteries of one person to another. As in intravenous feeding, it is a feeding upon blood. *An unscriptural practice.*

### 2369 B.C., Prohibition upon All Nations

**Gen. 9:3-5** "Every moving thing that liveth shall be food for you; as the green herb have I given you all. But flesh with the life thereof, which is the blood thereof, shall ye not eat. And surely your blood, the blood of your lives, will I require; at the hand of every beast will I require it; and at the hand of man, even at the hand of every man's brother, will I require the life of man."

### 1513 B.C., Prohibition Enjoined upon Jews

**Lev. 17:14** "For as to the life of all flesh, the blood thereof is all one with the life thereof: therefore I said unto the children of Israel, Ye shall eat the blood of no manner of flesh; for the life of all flesh is the blood thereof: whosoever eateth it shall be cut off."

### A.D. 49, Prohibition Enjoined upon Christians

**Acts 15:28, 29** "For the holy spirit and we ourselves have favored adding no further burden to you, except these necessary things, to keep yourselves free from things sacrificed to idols and from blood and from things killed without draining their blood and from fornication. If you carefully keep yourselves from these things, you will prosper."

**Also: Acts 21:25.**

### Principle of Life

**Lev. 17:11, 12** "The life of the flesh is in the blood; . . . No soul of you shall eat blood, neither

shall any stranger that sojourneth among you eat blood."

### Blood Not to Be Stored

**Deut. 12:16** "Ye shall not eat the blood; thou shalt pour it out upon the earth as water."

**Lev. 17:13** "Whatsoever man there be of the children of Israel, or of the strangers that sojourn among them, who taketh in hunting any beast or bird that may be eaten; he shall pour out the blood thereof, and cover it with dust."

**Also: Deut. 12:24.**

### Blood Sacred, Only for Altar Use

**Lev. 17:11** "The life of the flesh is in the blood; and I have given it to you upon the altar to make atonement for your souls: for it is the blood that maketh atonement by reason of the life."

**Deut. 12:27** "Thou shalt offer thy burnt-offerings, the flesh and the blood, upon the altar of Jehovah thy God; and the blood of thy sacrifices shall be poured out upon the altar of Jehovah thy God; and thou shalt eat the flesh."

### Pictured Christ's Atoning Blood

**Heb. 9:22, 14** "Yes, nearly all things are cleansed with blood according to the Law, and unless blood is poured out no forgiveness takes place. How much more will the blood of the Christ, who through an everlasting spirit offered himself without blemish to God, cleanse our consciences from dead works that we may render sacred service to the living God?"

**Eph. 1:7** "By means of him we have the release by ransom through the blood of that one,

yes, the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of his undeserved kindness."

**John 6:53, 54** "Accordingly Jesus said to them: 'Most truly I say to you, Unless you eat the flesh of the Son of man and drink his blood, you have no life in you. He that feeds on my flesh and drinks my blood has everlasting life, and I shall resurrect him at the last day.'"

### **Esteeming Christ's Blood Lightly**

**Heb. 10:29** "Of how much more severe a punishment, do you think, will the man be counted worthy who has trampled upon the Son of God and who has esteemed as of ordinary value the blood of the covenant by which he was sanctified, and who has outraged the spirit of undeserved kindness with contempt?"

**1 John 1:7** "However, if we are walking in the light as he himself is in the light, we do have partnership with one another and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin."

### **Attempt at Lifesaving with Blood Wrong**

**1 Chron. 11:17-19** "David would not drink [the water] thereof, but poured it out unto Jehovah, and said, My God forbid it me,

that I should do this: shall I drink the blood of these men that have put their lives in jeopardy? for with the jeopardy of their lives they brought it. Therefore he would not drink it."

### **Involves Any Form of Blood**

**Lev. 7:26, 27** "Ye shall eat no manner of blood, whether it be of bird or of beast, . . . Whosoever it be that eateth any blood, that soul shall be cut off from his people."

**Lev. 17:10** "Whatsoever man there be of the house of Israel, or of the strangers that sojourn among them, that eateth any manner of blood, I will set my face against that soul that eateth blood, and will cut him off from among his people."

**Ps. 16:4** "Their drink-offerings of blood will I not offer."

### **Vaccination or Inoculation Not Feeding on Blood; Not Connected with Sex Relations**

**Lev. 18:22, 23** "Thou shalt not lie with mankind, as with woman-kind: it is abomination. And thou shalt not lie with any beast to defile thyself therewith; neither shall any woman stand before a beast, to lie down thereto: it is confusion."

# **Born Again**

## **DEFINITION**

"Born again" means a birthlike realization of prospects and hopes for spirit life by resurrection to heaven. Such a realization is brought about through the water of God's truth in the Bible and God's holy spirit, his active force.

## **ORIGIN**

Began, as a begetting for the Kingdom, with Christ Jesus after his baptism of dedication A.D. 29. (Matt. 3:16, 17) Later he received his spirit organism when resurrected as the first ripe fruits of the Kingdom A.D. 33.—1 Pet. 3:18, 19.

### **Produced by Water and Spirit**

**John 3:5, 6** "Unless anyone is born from water and spirit, he

cannot enter into the kingdom of God."

**Jas. 1:18** "He brought us forth

by the word of truth, for us to be a certain firstfruits of his creatures."

**1 Pet. 1:23** "For you have been given a new birth, not by corruptible, but by incorruptible reproductive seed."

### **Their Father Jehovah God**

**John 1:12, 13** "As many as did receive him, to them he gave authority to become God's children, because they were exercising faith in his name; and they were born not from blood or from a fleshly will or from man's will, but from God."

**Rom. 8:16, 17** "The spirit itself bears witness with our spirit that we are God's children. If, then, we are children, we are also heirs: heirs indeed of God, but joint heirs with Christ, provided we suffer together that we may also be glorified together."

### **Their Mother God's Organization in Heaven**

**Gal. 4:22-26** "Abraham acquired two sons, one by the servant girl and one by the free woman; but the one by the servant girl was actually born in the manner of flesh, the other by the free woman through a promise. These things stand as a symbolic drama; for these women mean two covenants, . . . Hagar . . . corresponds with Jerusalem today, for she is in slavery with her children. But the Jerusalem above is free, and she is our mother."

**Also: Isa. 54:5; Heb. 12:22; Phil. 3:20.**

### **Christ and 144,000 Spiritual Brothers**

**John 3:6** "What has been born from the flesh is flesh, and what has been born from the spirit is spirit."

**Rev. 14:1** "And I saw, and look! the Lamb standing upon the mount Zion, and with him a hundred and forty-four thousand having his name and the name

of his Father written on their foreheads."

**1 John 3:2** "Beloved ones, now we are children of God, but as yet it has not been made manifest what we shall be. We do know that whenever he is made manifest we shall be like him, because we shall see him just as he is."

### **Spiritual Sonship Fruitage**

**Gal. 5:22, 23** "The fruitage of the spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, kindness, goodness, faith, mildness, self-control."

**1 John 3:9** "Everyone who has been born from God does not practice sin, because His reproductive seed remains in such one, and he cannot keep sinning, because he has been born from God."

**1 John 2:29** "If you know that he is righteous, you gain the knowledge that everyone who practices righteousness has been born from him."

### **Their New Course**

**Titus 3:5-7** "He saved us through the bath that brought us to life and through the making of us new by holy spirit. This spirit he poured out richly upon us through Jesus Christ our Savior, that, after being declared righteous by virtue of the undeserved kindness of that one, we might become heirs according to a hope of everlasting life."

**1 Pet. 3:18, 21** "Even Christ died once for all time concerning sins, a righteous person for unrighteous ones, that he might lead you to God, he being put to death in the flesh, but being made alive in the spirit. . . this is also now saving you, namely, baptism, (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the request made to God for a good conscience,) through the resurrection of Jesus Christ."

**Col. 3:9, 10** "Strip off the old personality with its practices, and clothe yourselves with the new personality which through ac-

curate knowledge is being renewed according to the image of the one who created it."

Also: Gal. 6:8-10.

### Their Heavenly Hopes

1 Pet. 1:3 "Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, for according to his great mercy he gave us a new birth to a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead."

2 Pet. 1:4 "He has freely given us the precious and very grand promises, that through these you may become sharers in divine nature."

Eph. 2:4-6 "God . . . made us alive together with the Christ, even when we were dead in trespasses—by undeserved kindness you have been saved—and he raised us up together and seated us together in the heavenly places in union with Christ Jesus."

1 Cor. 15:46-49 "Nevertheless, the first is, not that which is spiritual, but that which is physical, afterward that which is spiritual. The first man is out of the earth and made of dust; the second man is out of heaven. . . . And just as we have borne the image of the one made of dust, we shall bear also the image of the heavenly one."

Also: Eph. 1:13, 14; Phil. 3:21; Rom. 8:29.

### These Make Up the Kingdom of Heaven

John 3:3 "Unless anyone is born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God."

1 Cor. 15:50, 53 "However, this I say, brothers, that flesh and blood cannot inherit God's kingdom, neither does corruption inherit incorruption. For this which is corruptible must put on incorruption, and this which is mortal must put on immortality."

2 Cor. 5:17 "Consequently, if anyone is in union with Christ, he is a new creation; the old things passed away, look! new things have come into existence."

Rom. 6:4, 5 "Therefore we were buried with him through our baptism into his death, in order that, just as Christ was raised up from the dead through the glory of the Father, we also should likewise walk in a newness of life. For if we have become united with him in the likeness of his death, we shall certainly also be united with him in the likeness of his resurrection."

Matt. 19:28 "In the re-creation [*mar.*, "rebirth"] when the Son of man sits down upon his glorious throne, you who have followed me will also yourselves sit upon twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel."

## Caesar's Things to Caesar

### DEFINITION

In the Bible "Caesar" refers to the secular ruler or worldly government. "Pay back Caesar's things to Caesar." (Mark 12:17) This sound legal doctrine, pronounced by Jesus, grants that the "Caesar" governments may set upon their Christian inferiors or subjects certain duties, but draws a clear line at which these duties to the state end. Beyond that line commence the Christian's duties exclusively toward his God, for Jesus completed the legal pronouncement by saying, "Pay back . . . God's things to God."

### Due Respect for Worldly Rulers Proper

1 Tim. 2:1-4 "I therefore exhort

first of all that supplications, prayers, intercessions, offerings of thanks, be made concerning all

kinds of men, concerning kings and all those who are in high station, in order that we may go on leading a calm and quiet life with full godly devotion and seriousness."

**Acts 26:25** "Paul said: 'I am not going mad, Your Excellency Festus, but I am uttering sayings of truth and of soundness of mind.'"

**Ezra 6:6-10** "That they may offer sacrifices of sweet savor unto the God of heaven, and pray for the life of the king, and of his sons."

**Dan. 6:21, 22** "Then said Daniel unto the king, O king, live for ever...innocency was found in me; and also before thee, O king, have I done no hurt."

**Gen. 47:7** "And Joseph brought in Jacob his father, and set him before Pharaoh: and Jacob blessed Pharaoh."

**Acts 23:5** "Paul said: 'Brothers, I did not know he was high priest. For it is written, "You must not speak injuriously of a ruler of your people."'"

### **Tribute Tax for Services Rendered Should Be Paid**

**Matt. 22:15-21** "Then the Pharisees went their way and took counsel together in order to trap him in his speech. So they dispatched to him their disciples together with party followers of Herod, saying: 'Teacher, we know you are truthful and teach the way of God in truth, and you do not care for anybody, for you do not look upon men's outward appearance. Tell us, therefore, What do you think? Is it lawful to pay tribute to Caesar or not?' But Jesus, knowing their wickedness, said: 'Why do you put me to the test, hypocrites? Show me the tribute coin.' They brought him a denarius. And he said to them: 'Whose image and inscription is this?' They said: 'Caesar's.' Then he said to them: 'Pay back, therefore, Caesar's things to Caesar, but God's things to God.'"

**Matt. 11:19** "The Son of man did come eating and drinking, still people say: 'Look! a man gluttonous and given to drinking wine, a friend of tax collectors and sinners.' All the same, wisdom is vindicated by its works."

**Rom. 13:7** "Render to all their dues, to him who calls for tribute, the tribute; to him who calls for tax, the tax; to him who calls for fear, such fear; to him who calls for honor, such honor."

### **Marriage Requirements of the Law Conformed To**

**Heb. 13:4** "Let marriage be honorable among all, and the marriage bed be without defilement, for God will judge fornicators and adulterers."

**Gen. 24:51, 53, 64, 65, 67** "Behold, Rebekah is before thee, take her, and go, and let her be thy master's son's wife, as Jehovah hath spoken. And the servant brought forth jewels of silver, and jewels of gold, and raiment, and gave them to Rebekah: he gave also to her brother and to her mother precious things. And Rebekah lifted up her eyes, and when she saw Isaac, she alighted from the camel... and she took her veil, and covered herself. And Isaac brought her into his mother Sarah's tent, and took Rebekah, and she became his wife."

**1 Pet. 3:1, 2** "In like manner, you wives, be in subjection to your own husbands, in order that, if any are not obedient to the word, they may be won without a word through the conduct of their wives, because of having been eyewitnesses of your chaste conduct together with deep respect."

**Col. 3:18-21** "You wives, be in subjection to your husbands, as it is becoming in the Lord. You husbands, keep on loving your wives and do not be bitterly angry with them. You children, be obedient to your parents in everything, for this is well-pleasing in the Lord. You fathers, do not be exasperating your children, so



that they do not become downhearted."

2 Pet. 2:2, 3 "Furthermore, many will turn out of the way and follow their acts of loose conduct, and on account of these the way of the truth will be spoken of abusively. Also with covetousness they will exploit you with counterfeit words. But as for them, the judgment of ancient times is not moving slowly, and the destruction of them is not slumbering."

1 Tim. 3:2, 4 "The overseer should therefore be irreprehensible, a husband of one wife, moderate in habits, sound in mind, orderly, a lover of strangers, qualified to teach, a man presiding over his own household in a right manner, having children in subjection with all seriousness."

### Legal Social Distinctions Accepted

Eph. 6:5 "You slaves, be obedient to those who are your masters in a fleshly sense, with fear and trembling in the sincerity of your hearts, as to the Christ."

1 Tim. 6:1, 2 "Let as many as are slaves under a yoke keep on considering their owners worthy of full honor, that the name of God and the teaching may never be spoken of injuriously. Moreover, let those having believing owners not look down on them, because they are brothers. On the contrary, let them the more readily be slaves, because those receiving the benefit of their good service are believers and beloved."

Titus 2:9, 10 "Let slaves be in subjection to their owners in all things, and please them well, not talking back, not committing theft, but exhibiting good fidelity to the full, so that they may adorn the teaching of our Savior, God, in all things."

1 Pet. 2:18 "Let house servants be in subjection to their owners with the full measure of fear, not only to the good and reasonable, but also to those difficult to please."

### Required Registrations Complied With

Luke 2:1-5 "Now in those days a decree went forth from Caesar Augustus for all the inhabited earth to be registered; (this first registration took place when Quirinius was governor of Syria;) and all people went traveling to be registered, each one to his own city. Of course, Joseph also went up from Galilee, out of the city of Nazareth, into Judea, to David's city which is called Bethlehem, because of his being a member of the house and family of David, to get registered with Mary."

### Working in Government's Employ Not Prohibited

Neh. 1:11-2:2 "Now I was cupbearer to the king. And it came to pass in the month Nisan, in the twentieth year of Artaxerxes the king, when wine was before him, that I took up the wine, and gave it unto the king. Now I had not been beforetime sad in his presence. And the king said unto me, Why is thy countenance sad, seeing thou art not sick? this is nothing else but sorrow of heart. Then I was very sore afraid."

Dan. 3:12 "There are certain Jews whom thou hast appointed over the affairs of the province of Babylon: Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego; these men, O king, have not regarded thee: they serve not thy gods, nor worship the golden image which thou hast set up."

Dan. 6:28, 2 "So this Daniel prospered in the reign of Darius, and in the reign of Cyrus the Persian. . . over them three presidents, of whom Daniel was one."

Gen. 41:39-43 "And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, Forasmuch as God hath showed thee all this, there is none so discreet and wise as thou: thou shalt be over my house, and according unto thy word shall all my people be ruled: only in the throne will I be greater than thou. And Pharaoh

said unto Joseph, See, I have set thee over all the land of Egypt. And Pharaoh took off his signet ring from his hand, and put it upon Joseph's hand, and arrayed him in vestures of fine linen, and put a gold chain about his neck; and he made him to ride in the second chariot which he had; and they cried before him, Bow the knee: and he set him over all the land of Egypt."

**Esther 8:1-15; 10:2, 3** "And Mordecai came before the king; . . . And the king took off his ring, which he had taken from Haman, and gave it unto Mordecai. . . . And Mordecai went forth from the presence of the king in royal apparel of blue and white, and with a great crown of gold, and with a robe of fine linen and purple." "And all the acts of his power and of his might, and the full account of the greatness of Mordecai, whereunto the king advanced him, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of Media and Persia? For Mordecai the Jew was next unto king Ahasuerus, and great among the Jews."

### Christians Keep Laws of Caesar for Conscience' Sake

**Rom. 13:5, 6, 8** "There is therefore compelling reason for you to be in subjection, not only on account of that wrath but also on account of your conscience. For that is why you are also paying tribute; . . . Do not be owing anybody a single thing, except to love one another; for he that loves his fellow man has fulfilled the law."

**Acts 24:16** "In this respect, indeed, I am exercising myself continually to have a consciousness of committing no offense against God and men."

**Titus 2:6-8** "Likewise keep on exhorting the younger men to be sound in mind, in all things showing yourself an example of right works, showing uncorruptness in your teaching, seriousness, wholesome speech which cannot

be condemned, so that the man on the opposing side may get ashamed, having nothing vile to say about us."

**1 Pet. 3:16, 17** "Hold a good conscience, so that in the particular in which you are spoken against they may get ashamed who are speaking slightly of your good conduct in connection with Christ. For it is better to suffer because you are doing good, if the will of God wishes it, than because you are doing evil."

**1 Pet. 4:15** "However, let none of you suffer as a murderer or a thief or an evildoer or as a busybody in other people's matters."

**1 Tim. 3:2, 7** "The overseer should therefore be irreprehensible, . . . Moreover, he should also have a favorable testimony from people on the outside, in order that he might not fall into reproach and a snare of the Devil."

### Man's Life, Worship and Allegiance Not for Caesar to Require; These Belong to God

**Matt. 22:21** "Then he said to them: 'Pay back, therefore, Caesar's things to Caesar, but God's things to God.'"

**Ps. 66:8, 9** "Oh bless our God, ye peoples, and make the voice of his praise to be heard; who holdeth our soul in life, and suffereth not our feet to be moved."

**Luke 4:8** "In reply Jesus said to him: 'It is written, "It is Jehovah your God you must worship, and it is to him alone you must render sacred service."'"

**Isa. 8:13** "Jehovah of hosts, him shall ye sanctify; and let him be your fear, and let him be your dread."

**Luke 12:4, 5** "Moreover I say to you, my friends, Do not fear those who kill the body and after this are not able to do anything more. But I will indicate to you whom to fear: Fear him who after killing has authority to throw into Gehenna. Yes, I tell you, fear this One."

# Caste System

## DEFINITION

The principle or system of social divisions or classes of society in any community. Also the dividing of society into selfishly exclusive groups of persons (cliques), or according to supposed social rank as of persons having the same status or as possessing common characteristics (classes). *A false, hypocritical practice.*

## ORIGIN

Ruling and priestly classes were organized at Babel following the Flood and dynasties developed soon thereafter as a subversion of the patriarchal family divisions authorized by Jehovah.

### God Made Man to Live Together as Families Without Distinctions

Acts 17:26, 27 "And he made out of one man every nation of men, to dwell upon the entire surface of the earth, and he decreed the appointed seasons and the set limits of the dwelling of men, for them to seek God, if they might grope for him and really find him."

1 Cor. 15:39 "Not all flesh is the same flesh, but there is one of mankind, and there is another flesh of cattle, and another flesh of birds, and another of fish."

Gen. 10:1, 5 "Now these are the generations of the sons of Noah, namely, of Shem, Ham and Japheth: and unto them were sons born after the flood. Of these were the isles of the nations divided in their lands, every one after his tongue, after their families, in their nations."

Num. 1:18 "And they assembled all the congregation together on the first day of the second month; and they declared their pedigrees after their families, by their fathers' houses."

Psa. 107:41 "Yet setteth he the needy on high from affliction, and maketh him families like a flock."

Acts 10:34, 35 "For a certainty I perceive that God is not partial, but in every nation the man that fears him and works righteousness is acceptable to him."

### Egypt's "Master Race" Program Resulted in Their Ruin

Ex. 1:8-22 "Now there arose a new king over Egypt, who knew not Joseph. And he said unto his people, Behold, the people of the children of Israel are more and mightier than we: come, let us deal wisely with them, lest they multiply, and it come to pass, that, when there falleth out any war, they also join themselves unto our enemies, and fight against us, and get them up out of the land. Therefore they did set over them taskmasters to afflict them... But the more they afflicted them, the more they multiplied... And Pharaoh charged all his people, saying, Every son that is born ye shall cast into the river, and every daughter ye shall save alive."

Ex. 9:13, 15, 16 "And Jehovah said unto Moses, Rise up early in the morning, and stand before Pharaoh, and say unto him, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of the Hebrews, Let my people go, that they may serve me. For now I had put forth my hand, and smitten thee and thy people with pestilence, and thou hadst been cut off from the earth: but in very deed for this cause have I made thee to stand, to show thee my power, and that my name may be declared throughout all the earth."

**Ex. 15:1, 4** "Then sang Moses and the children of Israel this song unto Jehovah, and spake, saying, I will sing unto Jehovah, for he hath triumphed gloriously: the horse and his rider hath he thrown into the sea. Pharaoh's chariots and his host hath he cast into the sea; and his chosen captains are sunk in the Red Sea."

### **Israel's Favor with God Not for Race Superiority but Obedience**

**Deut. 7:7, 8** "Jehovah did not set his love upon you, nor choose you, because ye were more in number than any people; for ye were the fewest of all peoples: but because Jehovah loveth you, and because he would keep the oath which he swore unto your fathers, hath Jehovah brought you out with a mighty hand, and redeemed you out of the house of bondage, from the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt."

**Num. 14:11, 12, 20, 23** "And Jehovah said unto Moses, How long will this people despise me? and how long will they not believe in me, for all the signs which I have wrought among them? I will smite them with the pestilence, and disinherit them, and will make of thee a nation greater and mightier than they. And Jehovah said, I have pardoned according to thy word: surely they shall not see the land which I swore unto their fathers, neither shall any of them that despised me see it."

**Ps. 106:8** "Nevertheless he saved them for his name's sake, that he might make his mighty power to be known."

### **Priesthood and Tribal Divisions of Israel Not Class Distinction**

**Jer. 31:1** "At that time, saith Jehovah, will I be the God of all the families of Israel, and they shall be my people."

**Num. 3:40, 41, 45** "And Jehovah said unto Moses, Number all the first-born males of the children of Israel from a month old

and upward, and take the number of their names. And thou shalt take the Levites for me (I am Jehovah) instead of all the first-born among the children of Israel; . . . Take the Levites instead of all the first-born among the children of Israel, and the cattle of the Levites instead of their cattle; and the Levites shall be mine: I am Jehovah."

**Ex. 19:5, 6** "Then ye shall be mine own possession from among all peoples: for all the earth is mine: and ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation. These are the words which thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel."

**Job 34:19** "That respecteth not the persons of princes, nor regardeth the rich more than the poor; for they all are the work of his hands."

### **Complete Separations in Israel Allowed Only from Opposers**

**Deut. 7:1-3** "When Jehovah thy God shall bring thee into the land whither thou goest to possess it, and shall cast out many nations before thee, . . . and when Jehovah thy God shall deliver them up before thee, and thou shalt smite them; then thou shalt utterly destroy them: thou shalt make no covenant with them, nor show mercy unto them; neither shalt thou make marriages with them."

**Lev. 19:33, 34** "And if a stranger sojourn with thee in your land, ye shall not do him wrong. The stranger that sojourneth with you shall be unto you as the home-born among you, and thou shalt love him as thyself; for ye were sojourners in the land of Egypt: I am Jehovah your God."

**Num. 15:15, 16** "For the assembly, there shall be one statute for you, and for the stranger that sojourneth with you, a statute for ever throughout your generations: as ye are, so shall the sojourner be before Jehovah. One law and one ordinance shall be

for you, and for the stranger that sojourneth with you."

**Deut. 10:17** "For Jehovah your God, he is God of gods, and Lord of lords, the great God, the mighty, and the terrible, who regardeth not persons, nor taketh reward."

## Particular Family Connections Do Not Bring Salvation

**John 8:33** "[The Jews] replied to him: 'We are Abraham's offspring and never have we been slaves to anybody. How is it you say, "You will become free"?"'

**1 Tim. 1:4** "Nor to pay attention to false stories and to genealogies which end up in nothing, but which furnish questions for research rather than a dispensing of anything by God in connection with faith."

**Titus 3:9** "But shun foolish questionings and genealogies . . . for they are unprofitable and futile."

## Clergy as an Elevated Class Not Authorized for Christians

**John 13:34, 35** "I am giving you a new commandment, that you love one another; just as I have loved you, that you also love one another. By this all will know that you are my disciples, if you have love among yourselves."

**Matt. 23:8, 10-12** "But you, do not you be called 'Rabbi', for one is your teacher, whereas all you are brothers. Neither be called 'leaders', for your Leader is one, the Christ. But the greatest one among you must be your minister. Whoever exalts himself will be humbled, and whoever humbles himself will be exalted."

**1 Pet. 5:2, 3** "Shepherd the flock of God in your care, not under compulsion, but willingly, neither for love of dishonest gain, but eagerly, neither as lording it over those who are God's inheritance, but becoming examples to the flock."

**Matt. 20:25-28** "But Jesus, calling them to him, said: 'You know

that the rulers of the nations lord it over them and the great men wield authority over them. This is not the arrangement among you; but whoever wants to become great among you must be your minister, and whoever wants to be first among you must be your slave. Just as the Son of man came, not to be ministered to, but to minister.'

## Cliques and Classes in Christian Congregation Forbidden

**1 Cor. 1:10-13** "Now I exhort you, brothers, through the name of our Lord Jesus Christ that you should all speak in agreement, and that there should not be divisions among you, but that you may be fitly united in the same mind and in the same line of thought. For the disclosure was made to me about you, my brothers, by those of the house of Chloe, that dissensions exist among you. What I mean is this, that each one of you says: 'I belong to Paul,' 'But I to Apollos,' 'But I to Cephas,' 'But I to Christ.' Does the Christ exist divided? Paul was not impaled for you, was he? Or were you baptized in the name of Paul?"

**1 Tim. 6:17, 18** "Give orders to those who are rich in the present system of things not to be arrogant, and to rest their hope, not on uncertain riches, but on God, who furnishes us all things richly for our enjoyment; to work at good, to be rich in right works, to be liberal, ready to share."

**Jas. 3:16, 17** "For where jealousy and contentiousness are, there disorder and every vile thing are. But the wisdom from above is first of all chaste, then peaceable, reasonable, ready to obey, full of mercy and good fruits, not making partial distinctions, not hypocritical."

**1 Pet. 5:5** "In like manner, you younger men, be in subjection to the older men. But all of you gird yourselves with humility of mind toward one another, because God

opposes the haughty ones, but he gives undeserved kindness to the humble ones."

**Gal. 3:28** "There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor freeman, there is neither male nor female; for you are all one in union with Christ Jesus."

**Jas. 2:1-9** "My brothers, you are not holding the faith of our Lord Jesus Christ, our glory, with acts of favoritism, are you? For, if a man with gold rings on his fingers and in splendid clothing enters into your assembly, but a poor man in filthy clothing also enters, yet you look with favor upon the one wearing the splendid clothing and say: 'You take this seat here in an honorable place,' and you say to the poor one: 'You keep standing,' or, 'Take that seat there beside my footstool,' you have class distinctions among yourselves and you have become judges rendering corrupt decisions, is that not so? ... But if you continue showing favoritism, you are working a sin, for you are reproved by the law as transgressors."

### Christians Not Social Reformers, but Are Godly Examples

**Eph. 6:5-9** "You slaves, be obedient to those who are your masters in a fleshly sense, with fear and trembling in the sincerity of your hearts, as to the Christ, not by way of eyeservice as men-pleasers, but as Christ's slaves, doing the will of God

whole-souled. Be slaves with good inclinations, as to Jehovah, and not to men, for you know that each one, whatever good he may do, will receive this back from Jehovah, whether he be slave or freeman. You masters, too, keep doing the same things to them, letting up on the threatening, for you know that the Master of both them and you is in the heavens, and there is no partiality with him."

**Rom. 16:17, 18, 20** "Now I exhort you, brothers, to keep your eye on those who create divisions and causes for stumbling contrary to the teaching which you have learned, and avoid them. For men of that kind are slaves, not of our Lord Christ, but of their own bellies, and by smooth talk and complimentary speech they seduce the hearts of guileless ones. For his part, the God who gives peace will crush Satan under your feet shortly."

**1 Tim. 6:1, 2, 6** "Let as many as are slaves under a yoke keep on considering their owners worthy of full honor, that the name of God and the teaching may never be spoken of injuriously. Moreover, let those having believing owners not look down on them, because they are brothers. On the contrary, let them the more readily be slaves, because those receiving the benefit of their good service are believers and beloved. To be sure, it is a means of great gain, this godly devotion along with self-sufficiency."

# Charitable Works

## DEFINITION

Gifts of mercy, or help and assistance for the welfare of others toward Jehovah God, publicly or privately, either individually or in an organized way. Will gain God's favor.

### Jehovah the Greatest Giver

**1 Chron. 29:11-14** "All that is in the heavens and in the earth

is thine; . . . for all things come of thee, and of thine own have we given thee."

**John 3:16, 17** "God loved the world so much that he gave his only-begotten Son."

**Rom. 11:35** "Who has first given to him, so that it must be repaid to him?"

**2 Cor. 9:15** "Thanks be to God for his indescribable free gift."

**Rom. 6:23** "The gift God gives is everlasting life by Christ Jesus our Lord."

**Acts 17:25** "Neither is he attended to by human hands as if he needed anything, because he himself gives to all persons life and breath and all things."

**Also: Eph. 2:4, 8; 4:7, 8; Ps. 136:25.**

### **Give Freely, Without Show, to Honor God**

**Matt. 6:1-4** "Take good care not to practice your righteousness in front of men in order to be observed by them; otherwise you will have no reward with your Father who is in the heavens. Hence when you start making gifts of mercy, do not blow a trumpet ahead of you, just as the hypocrites do . . . But you, when making gifts of mercy, do not let your left hand know what your right is doing, that your gifts of mercy may be in secret; then your Father who is looking on in secret will repay you."

**Matt. 5:46** "If you love those loving you, what reward do you have? are not also the tax collectors doing the same thing?"

**Also: Mark 12:38-40; Luke 5:12-14; 8:49-56; 20:46, 47.**

### **Gifts Selfishly Given Bring No Favor from God**

**Mark 7:11-13** "But you men say, 'If a man says to his father or his mother, "Whatever I have by which you may get help from me is corban, (that is, a gift dedicated to God,)" you men no longer let him do a single thing for his father or his mother,' and thus you shove the word of God aside for your tradition which you handed down."

**Acts 5:1-5** "A certain man, Ananias by name, together with Sapphira his wife, sold a possession and secretly held back some of the price, his wife also knowing about it, and he brought just a part and deposited it at the feet of the apostles. But Peter said: 'Ananias, to what end has Satan emboldened you to play false to the holy spirit and to hold back secretly some of the price of the field? . . . You have played false, not to men, but to God.' On hearing these words Ananias fell down and expired."

**John 12:4-6** "Judas Iscariot, one of his disciples, who was about to betray him, said: 'Why was it this perfumed oil was not sold for three hundred denarii and given to poor people?' He said this, though, not because he was concerned about the poor, but because he was a thief and had the money-box and used to carry off the monies put in it."

### **Organized Giving Voluntary, but Directed by Congregation's Governing Body**

**1 Cor. 16:1-4** "Concerning the collection which is for the holy ones, just as I gave orders to the congregations of Galatia, do that way also yourselves. Every first day of the week let each of you at his own house set something aside in store as he may be prospering, so that when I arrive collections will not take place then. But when I get there, whatever men you approve of by letters, these I shall send to carry your kind gift to Jerusalem."

**2 Cor. 9:5, 7** "I thought it necessary to encourage the brothers to come to you in advance and to get ready in advance your bountiful gift previously promised, that thus this might be ready as a bountiful gift and not as something extorted. Let each one do just as he has resolved in his heart, not grudgingly or under compulsion, for God loves a cheerful giver."

**Acts 24:17** "So after quite a number of years I arrived to bring gifts of mercy to my nation, and offerings."

**Rom. 15:25-28** "Those in Macedonia and Achaia have been pleased to share up their things by a contribution to the poor of the holy ones in Jerusalem. True, they have been pleased to do so, and yet they were debtors to them; for if the nations have shared in their spiritual things, they also owe it to minister publicly to these with things for the physical body."

**Acts 4:34, 35** "In fact, there was not one in need among them, for all those who were possessors of fields or houses would sell them and bring the values of the things sold and they would deposit them at the feet of the apostles. In turn, distribution would be made to each one just as he would have the need."

Also: Acts 6:1-6; Gal. 2:10.

### Christians' Special Responsibility to Their Brothers and Families

**2 Cor. 8:1-15** "This led us to encourage Titus that, just as he had been the one to initiate it among you, so too he should complete this same kind giving on your part... that by means of an equalizing your surplus just now might offset their deficiency, in order that their surplus might also come to offset your deficiency, that an equalizing might take place."

**Jas. 2:15** "If a brother or a sister is in a naked state and lacking the food sufficient for the day, yet a certain one of you says to them, 'Go in peace, keep warm and well fed,' but you do not give them the necessities for their body, of what benefit is it?"

**Matt. 25:34-40** "Then the king will say to those on his right: 'Come, you who have my Father's blessing, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the world's foundation. For I became hungry

and you gave me something to eat, I got thirsty and you gave me something to drink. I was a stranger and you received me hospitably; naked, and you clothed me. I fell sick and you looked after me. I was in prison and you came to me.'... 'To the extent that you did it to one of the least of these my brothers, you did it to me.'"

**Acts 2:44, 45** "All those who became believers were together in having all things in common, and they went to selling their possessions and properties and to distributing the proceeds to all just as anyone would have the need."

**1 Tim. 5:8** "Certainly if anyone does not provide for those... who are members of his household, he has disowned the faith and is worse than a person without faith."

Also: 1 Cor. 9:1, 2, 11.

### Giving Spiritual Things More Important than Material

**Luke 10:38-42** "Mary... sat down at the feet of the Master and kept listening to his word. Martha, on the other hand, was distracted with attending to many duties... In answer the Master said to her: 'Martha, Martha, you are anxious and disturbed about many things. A few things, though, are needed, or just one. For her part, Mary chose the good portion, and it will not be taken away from her.'"

**John 6:26, 27** "Jesus... said: 'Most truly I say to you, You are looking for me, not because you saw signs, but because you ate from the loaves and were satisfied. Work, not for the food that perishes, but for the food that remains for life everlasting.'"

**Ecd. 7:12** "For wisdom is a defence, even as money is a defence; but the excellency of knowledge is, that wisdom preserveth the life of him that hath it."

**Amos 8:11** "Behold, the days come, saith the Lord Jehovah,



that I will send a famine in the land, not a famine of bread, nor a thirst for water, but of hearing the words of Jehovah."

**Acts 3:2-8** "When he caught sight of Peter and John... he began requesting to get gifts of mercy. . . . However, Peter said: 'Silver and gold I do not possess, but what I do have is what I give you: In the name of Jesus Christ the Nazarene, walk!'"

**Matt. 5:3, 6** "Happy are those who are conscious of their spiritual need, since the kingdom of the heavens belongs to them. Happy are those hungering and thirsting for righteousness, since they will be filled."

### **To Get Life, Everything Must Be Given in Wholehearted Devotion to Jehovah**

**1 Cor. 13:3** "If I give all my belongings to feed others, and if I hand over my body, that I may boast, but do not have love, I am not profited at all."

**Luke 18:18-24** "A certain ruler... said: 'All these [commandments] I have kept from youth on.'... Jesus said to him: 'There is yet one thing wanting about you: Sell all the things you have and distribute to poor people and you will have treasure in the heavens; and come be my follower.'"

**Luke 21:1-4** "Now as he looked up he saw the rich dropping their gifts into the treasury chests. Then he saw a certain needy widow drop two small coins of very little value there, and he said: 'I tell you truthfully, This widow, although poor, dropped in more than them all. For all these dropped in gifts out of their surplus, but this woman out of her want dropped in all the means of living she had.'"

**Luke 12:33** "Sell the things belonging to you and give them

as gifts of mercy. Make purses for yourselves that do not wear out, a never-failing treasure in the heavens, where a thief does not get near nor moth consumes."

**Matt. 9:13** "Go, then, and learn what this means, 'I want mercy, and not sacrifice.'"

**1 Sam. 15:22** "Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice."

**Prov. 23:26** "My son, give me thy heart."

**Prov. 21:3** "To do righteousness and justice is more acceptable to Jehovah than sacrifice."

**Heb. 13:15, 16** "Through him let us always offer to God a sacrifice of praise, that is, the fruit of lips which make public declaration to his name. Moreover, do not forget the doing of good and the sharing of things with others, for with such sacrifices God is well pleased."

**Also:** Acts 10:2, 4, 31; 1 Pet. 2:5; Matt. 19:21.

### **The World's Sacrifices Condemned**

**1 Cor. 10:20** "The things which the nations sacrifice they sacrifice to demons, and not to God."

**Prov. 15:8** "The sacrifice of the wicked is an abomination to Jehovah."

**Also:** Jer. 5:26, 28; Isa. 1:4, 16, 17; Zech. 7:9-11.

### **True Religion Shows Concern for the Poor**

**Jas. 1:26, 27** "If any man seems to himself to be a formal worshiper and yet does not bridle his tongue, but goes on deceiving his own heart, this man's form of worship is futile. The form of worship that is clean and undefiled from the standpoint of our God and Father is this: to care for orphans and widows in their tribulation, and to keep oneself without spot from the world."

**Also:** Jas. 2:1-9, 14-17.

# Communism

## DEFINITION

A theory or system of social organization based on the holding of all property in common, actual ownership being ascribed to the community as a whole or to the state. In practice today, it is a system in which all economic, educational, religious and political activity is conducted or directed by a totalitarian state dominated by a single and self-perpetuating political party. The state as the superior tends to make its subjects as inferiors totally dependent upon the state. Although claiming to be godless, in some instances screened religions are permitted to operate subservient to the state. Communism itself has become and constitutes a false religion preached around the world, for the reason that it arrogates to itself authorities belonging to God and causes the people to look to the state for salvation and to worship it, instead of God.

### **The Earth Is Jehovah's and Rightful Ruling Authority Comes Only from Him**

**Rom. 13:1** "Let every soul be in subjection to the superior authorities, for there is no authority except by God; the existing authorities stand placed in their relative positions by God."

**1 Cor. 10:26** "The earth belongs to Jehovah, and so does its fullness."

**Ps. 24:1-4** "The earth is Jehovah's and the fulness thereof; the world, and they that dwell therein.... Who shall ascend into the hill of Jehovah? and who shall stand in his holy place? He that hath clean hands, and a pure heart; who hath not lifted up his soul unto falsehood, and hath not sworn deceitfully."

**Dan. 4:25, 26, 32, 34, 35** "The Most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will.... His dominion is an everlasting dominion, and his kingdom from generation to generation; and all the inhabitants of the earth are reputed as nothing; and he doeth according to his will in the army of heaven, and among the inhabitants of the earth; and none can stay his

hand, or say unto him, What doest thou?"

**Isa. 33:22** "For Jehovah is our judge, Jehovah is our lawgiver, Jehovah is our king; he will save us."

**Ezek. 21:27** "I will overturn, overturn, overturn it: this also shall be no more, until he come whose right it is; and I will give it him."

**Ps. 75:7** "God is the judge: he putteth down one, and lifteth up another."

### **He Is Possessor of All Things; Those Living Under His Govern- ment Hold Possessions in Trust**

**Gen. 14:19, 22** "And he [Melchizedek] blessed him, and said, Blessed be Abram of God Most High, possessor of heaven and earth. And Abram said to the king of Sodom, I have lifted up my hand unto Jehovah, God Most High, possessor of heaven and earth."

**Ps. 2:7, 8** "Jehovah said unto me, Thou art my son; this day have I begotten thee. Ask of me, and I will give thee the nations for thine inheritance, and the uttermost parts of the earth for thy possession."

**1 Cor. 15:28** "But when all things will have been subjected to him, then the Son himself will also subject himself to the one who subjected all things to him, that God may be all things to everyone."

### **Only the Meek, Mild-tempered Will Inherit or Live on the Earth**

**Matt. 5:5** "Happy are the mild-tempered ones, since they will inherit the earth."

**Ps. 37:11** "The meek shall inherit the land, and shall delight themselves in the abundance of peace."

### **Political Governments Receive Their Power and Authority from Satan the Devil, the Dragon**

**Matt. 4:8-10** "Again the Devil took him along to an unusually high mountain, and showed him all the kingdoms of the world and their glory, and he said to him: 'All these things I will give you if you fall down and do an act of worship to me.' Then Jesus said to him: 'Go away, Satan! for it is written, "It is Jehovah your God you must worship, and it is to him alone you must render sacred service."'"

**2 Cor. 4:4** "The god of this system of things has blinded the minds of the unbelievers."

**1 John 5:19** "The whole world is lying in the power of the wicked one."

**Rev. 13:2** "Now the wild beast that I saw was like a leopard, but its feet were as those of a bear, and its mouth was as a lion's mouth. And the dragon gave the beast its power and its throne and great authority."

### **Godless Persons Are Fools**

**Ps. 14:1** "The fool hath said in his heart, There is no God. They are corrupt, they have done abominable works; there is none that doeth good."

**Ps. 10:4** "The wicked, in the pride of his countenance, saith,

He will not require it. All his thoughts are, There is no God."

**Ps. 53:1** "The fool hath said in his heart, There is no God. Corrupt are they, and have done abominable iniquity; there is none that doeth good."

### **Visible Creation Gives Plentiful Evidence of God**

**Rom. 1:18-28** "For God's wrath is being revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men who are suppressing the truth in an unrighteous way, because what may be known about God is manifest among them, for God made it manifest to them. For his invisible qualities are clearly seen from the world's creation onward, because they are understood by the things made, even his eternal power and Godship, so that they are inexcusable; because, although they knew God, they did not glorify him as God nor did they thank him, but they became empty-headed in their reasonings and their unintelligent heart became darkened. Although asserting they were wise, they became foolish and turned the glory of the incorruptible God into something like the image of corruptible man and of birds and four-footed creatures and creeping things. . . . even those who exchanged the truth of God for the lie and venerated and rendered sacred service to the creation rather than the One who created, . . . God gave them up to a disapproved mental state."

**Ps. 19:1-6** "The heavens declare the glory of God; and the firmament sheweth his handiwork. Day unto day uttereth speech, and night unto night sheweth knowledge. There is no speech nor language; their voice is not heard."

### **Man Cannot Even Understand or Control What He Sees**

**Ps. 139:14** "I will give thanks unto thee; for I am fearfully and wonderfully made: wonder-

ful are thy works; and that my soul knoweth right well."

**Ecc. 3:11** "He hath made everything beautiful in its time: also he hath set eternity in their heart, yet so that man cannot find out the work that God hath done from the beginning even to the end."

**Ecc. 8:17** "Then I beheld all the work of God, that man cannot find out the work that is done under the sun: because however much a man labor to seek it out, yet he shall not find it; yea moreover, though a wise man think to know it, yet shall he not be able to find it."

**1 Cor. 8:2** "If anyone thinks he has acquired knowledge of something, he does not yet know it just as he ought to know it."

### **Manifestly the Creator Is Above Finding Out by His Creation**

**Rom. 11:33-36** "Oh the depth of God's riches and wisdom and knowledge! How unsearchable his judgments are and past tracing out his ways are! For 'who has come to know Jehovah's mind, or who has become his counselor?' Or, 'Who has first given to him, so that it must be repaid to him?' Because from him and by him and for him are all things."

**Isa. 55:9** "For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts."

**Ps. 8:3, 4** "When I consider thy heavens, the work of thy fingers, the moon and the stars, which thou hast ordained; what is man, that thou art mindful of him? and the son of man, that thou visitest him?"

**Job 9:10** "[God] that doeth great things past finding out, yea, marvellous things without number."

See also: Job, chapters 38-41.

### **Man Cannot Govern Himself or His Fellow Man**

**Jer. 10:23** "O Jehovah, I know that the way of man is not in

himself; it is not in man that walketh to direct his steps."

**Jer. 17:9** "The heart is deceitful above all things, and it is exceedingly corrupt: who can know it?"

**Ecc. 8:9** "There is a time wherein one man hath power over another to his hurt."

**Prov. 14:12** "There is a way that seemeth right unto a man; but the end thereof are the ways of death."

**Ps. 37:23, 31** "A man's goings are established of Jehovah; and he delighteth in his way. The law of his God is in his heart; none of his steps shall slide."

**Prov. 16:9** "A man's heart deviseth his way; but Jehovah directeth his steps."

**Prov. 21:29** "A wicked man hardeneth his face; but as for the upright, he establisheth his ways."

### **Communism Cannot Bring Peace**

**Isa. 9:6, 7** "The government shall be upon his [Christ's] shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace. Of the increase of his government and of peace there shall be no end, . . . for ever."

**Isa. 48:22** "There is no peace, saith Jehovah, to the wicked."

**Isa. 33:7** "The ambassadors of peace weep bitterly."

### **Worship of State or Ruler as God and Owner Brings Destruction**

**John 10:34-36** "Jesus answered them: 'Is it not written in your Law, "I said: You are gods"? If he called "gods" those against whom the word of God came, . . . do you say to me . . . "You blaspheme," because I said, I am God's Son?"'

**Ps. 82:1-7** "God standeth in the congregation of God; he judgeth among the gods. How long will ye judge unjustly, and respect the persons of the wicked? . . . I said, Ye are gods, and all of you sons of the Most High. Nevertheless ye

shall die like men, and fall like one of the princes."

**Zeph. 2:11** "Jehovah will be terrible unto them; for he will famish all the gods of the earth; and men shall worship him."

**Zeph. 1:4, 5** "I will cut off... them that worship the host of heaven upon the housetops; and them that worship, that swear to Jehovah and swear by Malcam ["their king," *mar.*]."

**Gen. 11:4, 8** "And they said, Come, let us build us a city, and a tower, whose top may reach unto heaven, and let us make us a name;... So Jehovah scattered them."

### **Communism Will Suffer Destruction for Fighting Jehovah's Witnesses**

**Rom. 13:2, 3** "He who ranges himself up against the authority has taken a stand against the arrangement of God; those who have taken a stand against it will receive judgment to themselves."

**Ps. 83:2-5, 17** "Lo, thine enemies make a tumult; and they that hate thee have lifted up the head. They take crafty counsel against thy people, and consult together against thy hidden ones. They have said, Come, and let us cut them off from being a nation;... Let them be put to shame and dismayed for ever; yea, let them be confounded and perish."

**Ps. 2:1-12** "The kings of the earth set themselves, and the rulers take counsel together against Jehovah, and against his anointed,... He that sitteth in the heavens will laugh: the Lord will have them in derision.... Thou shalt break them with a rod of iron; thou shalt dash them in pieces like a potter's vessel."

**Zech. 2:8** "For thus saith Jehovah of hosts: After glory hath he sent me unto the nations which plundered you; for he that toucheth you toucheth the apple of his eye."

**Jer. 25:29, 31** "For, lo, I begin to work evil at the city which is

called by my name; and should ye be utterly unpunished? Ye shall not be unpunished; for I will call for a sword upon all the inhabitants of the earth, saith Jehovah of hosts. A noise shall come even to the end of the earth; for Jehovah hath a controversy with the nations; he will enter into judgment with all flesh: as for the wicked, he will give them to the sword, saith Jehovah."

**Matt. 25:45, 46** "Then he will answer them with the words: 'Truly I say to you, To the extent that you did not do it to one of these least ones, you did not do it to me.' And these will depart into everlasting cutting-off."

**Rev. 12:5** "And she gave birth to a son, a male, who is destined to shepherd all the nations with an iron rod."

**Acts 3:23** "Indeed, any soul that does not listen to that Prophet will be completely destroyed from among the people."

**Ps. 110:5, 6** "The Lord at thy right hand will strike through kings in the day of his wrath. He will judge among the nations, he will fill the places with dead bodies; he will strike through the head in many countries."

### **Clergy Are Mainly Responsible for the Hold Communism Has on Peoples of Christendom by Failure to Teach Truth**

**Jer. 23:21, 22** "I sent not these prophets, yet they ran: I spake not unto them, yet they prophesied. But if they had stood in my council, then had they caused my people to hear my words, and had turned them from their evil way, and from the evil of their doings."

**Jer. 5:31** "The prophets prophesy falsely, and the priests bear rule by their means; and my people love to have it so: and what will ye do in the end thereof?"

**Jer. 6:13** "For from the least of them even unto the greatest of them every one is given to

covetousness; and from the prophet even unto the priest every one dealeth falsely."

**Amos 8:11** "Behold, the days come, saith the Lord Jehovah, that I will send a famine in the land, not a famine of bread, nor a thirst for water, but of hearing the words of Jehovah."

**Claim Based on Acts 2:44, That Early Christian Congregation Was Communistic, Is False**

***Each had full control over his private possessions***

**Acts 2:44, 45** "All those who became believers were together in having all things in common, and they went to selling their possessions and properties and to distributing the proceeds to all just as anyone would have the need."

**Acts 5:3, 4** "Peter said, 'Ananias, to what end has Satan emboldened you to play false to the holy spirit and to hold back secretly some of the price of the field? As long as it remained with you did it not remain yours, and after it was sold did it not continue in your control?'"

***Voluntary gifts of love and mercy were made, and governing body helped administer***

**Acts 24:17** "So after quite a number of years I arrived to bring gifts of mercy to my nation, and offerings."

**Acts 11:29, 30** "So those of the disciples determined, each of them according as anyone could afford it, to send a relief ministration to the brothers dwelling in Judea; and this they did, dispatching it to the older men by the hand of Barnabas and Saul."

**2 Cor. 9:5-13** "Therefore I thought it necessary to encourage the brothers to come to you in advance and to get ready in advance your bountiful gift previously promised, that thus this might be ready as a bountiful gift and not as something ex-

torted... Let each one do just as he has resolved in his heart, not grudgingly or under compulsion, for God loves a cheerful giver. God, moreover, is able to make all his undeserved kindness abound toward you, that, while you always have full self-sufficiency in everything, you may have plenty for every good work. ... you are generous in your contribution to them and to all."

***Each responsible to provide for his own household***

**1 Tim. 5:8** "Certainly if anyone does not provide for those who are his own, and especially for those who are members of his household, he has disowned the faith and is worse than a person without faith."

***Some had a trade that they practiced to meet their own obligations***

**Acts 18:2-4** "He found a certain Jew named Aquila, a native of Pontus who had recently come from Italy, and Priscilla his wife, because of the fact that Claudius had ordered all the Jews to depart from Rome. So he went to them and on account of being of the same trade he stayed at their home, and they worked, for they were tentmakers by trade. However, he would give a talk in the synagogue every sabbath and would win over Jews and Greeks."

***Christians recognize ownership rights of others, do not covet or demand a share of another's property***

**Ex. 20:17** "Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife, nor his man-servant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbor's."

**Rom. 7:7** "I would not have known covetousness if the Law had not said, 'You must not covet.'"

**Acts 20:33, 34** "I [the apostle Paul] have coveted no man's sil-

ver or gold or apparel. You yourselves know that these hands have attended to the needs of me and of those with me."

**Col. 3:5** "Deaden, therefore, your body members which are upon the earth as respects fornication, uncleanness, sexual appetite, hurtful desire, and covetousness, which is idolatry."

**1 Cor. 13:4, 5** "Love is not jealous, ... does not look for its own interests."

**Luke 3:12-14** "But even tax collectors came to be baptized and they said to him [John]: 'Teacher, what shall we do?' He said to them: 'Do not demand anything more than the tax-rate.' Also those in military service would ask him: 'What shall we also do?' And he said to them: 'Do not harass anybody or accuse anybody falsely, but be satisfied with your provisions.'"

**1 Pet. 4:15** "However, let none of you suffer as a murderer or a thief or an evildoer or as a busybody in other people's matters."

**Christians Recognize, Do Not Try to Overthrow Duly Constituted Governments and Laws, but Recognize God as Supreme**

**Matt. 22:21** "Pay back, therefore, Caesar's things to Caesar, but God's things to God."

**Rom. 13:5-8** "There is therefore compelling reason for you to be in subjection, not only on account of that wrath but also on account of your conscience. For that is why you are also paying tribute; ... Render to all their dues, to him who calls for tribute, the tribute; to him who calls for tax, the tax; to him who calls for fear, such fear; to him who calls for honor, such honor. Do not be owing anybody a single thing, except to love one another."

**Eph. 6:5-9** "You slaves, be obedient to those who are your masters in a fleshly sense, with fear and trembling in the sincerity of

your hearts, as to the Christ, not by way of eyeservice as men-pleasers, but as Christ's slaves, doing the will of God whole-souled. Be slaves with good inclinations, as to Jehovah, and not to men, for you know that each one, whatever good he may do, will receive this back from Jehovah, whether he be slave or freeman. You masters, too, keep doing the same things to them, letting up on the threatening, for you know that the Master of both them and you is in the heavens, and there is no partiality with him."

**1 Cor. 7:20, 21** "In whatever state each one was called, let him remain in it. Were you called a slave? Do not let it worry you; but if you can also become free, rather seize the opportunity."

**1 Pet. 2:18** "Let house servants be in subjection to their owners with the full measure of fear, not only to the good and reasonable, but also to those difficult to please."

**Philem. 15, 16** "Perhaps really on this account he [Onesimus the slave] broke away for an hour, that you may have him back forever, no longer as a slave but as more than a slave, as a brother beloved."

**Christians Exercise God-given Parental Rights; Do Not Turn Children Over to the State or Put It First**

**Eph. 6:1-4** "Children, be obedient to your parents in union with the Lord, for this is righteous: 'Honor your father and mother'; which is the first command with a promise: 'That it may go well with you and you may endure a long time on the earth.' And you, fathers, do not be irritating your children, but go on bringing them up in the discipline and authoritative advice of Jehovah."

**Prov. 22:6** "Train up a child in the way he should go, and even when he is old he will not depart from it."

2 Tim. 1:5; 3:15 "For I recollect the faith which is in you without any hypocrisy, and which dwelt first in your grandmother Lois and your mother Eunice, but which I am confident is also in you. And that from infancy you have known the holy writings which are able to make you wise for salvation through the faith in connection with Christ Jesus."

Gen. 18:19 "For I have known him [Abraham], to the end that he may command his children

and his household after him, that they may keep the way of Jehovah, to do righteousness and justice."

Deut. 6:6, 7 "And these words, which I command thee this day, shall be upon thy heart; and thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children, and shalt talk of them when thou sittest in thy house, and when thou walkest by the way, and when thou liest down, and when thou risest up."

## Confession

### DEFINITION

(1) A personal admission of sins before God, with true repentance, asking for forgiveness from God through his Mediator and High Priest, Jesus Christ.

(2) A public proclamation of God's purposes as revealed in the Bible, confessing or admitting one's dedication to do God's will, and telling of God's provisions for vindication of His name and salvation of men through Jesus Christ.

(3) A personal admission to other Christians of our sins, in order that we may have their Christian, Scriptural counsel, help and prayers, that we may remain spiritually healthy and in harmony with the Christian congregation.

(4) A *false understanding*—"The Sacrament of Penance—... This whole procedure is usually called, from one of its parts, 'confession'; ... it is a judicial process in which the penitent is at once the accuser, the person accused, and the witness, while the priest pronounces judgment and sentence, ... the confession is made not in the secrecy of the penitent's heart nor to a layman as friend and advocate, nor to a representative of human authority, but to a duly ordained priest with requisite jurisdiction and with the 'power of the keys', i.e., the power to forgive sins which Christ granted to his church."—*The Catholic Encyclopedia*, 1911, Vol. XI, pages 618, 619.

### ORIGIN

True confession originated with righteous Abel, who admitted his sins and made a sacrificial offering to God, properly foreshadowing the ransom-providing sacrifice of Christ.—Heb. 11:4.

The false practice of confessing to priests began in ancient pagan Babylon. (See Hislop's *The Two Babylons*, pages 9, 10.) The false doctrine of penance was reconfirmed in the Roman Catholic Church by the Council of Trent (1551).



## God the One to Whom to Confess for Forgiveness of Sins Through Christ

**1 John 1:9** "If we confess our sins, he is faithful and righteous so as to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness."

**Matt. 6:9-14** "Our Father in the heavens, . . . forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors. And do not bring us into temptation, but deliver us from the wicked one. For if you forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you."

**Ps. 32:5** "I acknowledge my sin unto thee, and mine iniquity did I not hide: I said, I will confess my transgressions unto Jehovah; and thou forgavest the iniquity of my sin."

**Eph. 1:7** "By means of him we have the release by ransom through the blood of that one, yes, the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of his undeserved kindness."

**Mark 11:25, 26** "And when you stand praying, forgive whatever you have against anyone, in order that your Father who is in the heavens may also forgive you your trespasses. But if you do not forgive, neither will your Father who is in the heavens forgive your trespasses."

**Eph. 4:32** "But become kind to one another, tenderly compassionate, freely forgiving one another just as God also by Christ freely forgave you."

**Dan. 9:9** "To the Lord our God belong mercies and forgiveness; for we have rebelled against him."

## Christ the Only Mediator Between God and Men

**1 Tim. 2:5** "For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, a man Christ Jesus."

**Eph. 2:18** "Because through him we, both peoples, have the approach to the Father by one spirit."

**Eph. 3:11, 12** "According to the eternal purpose which he formed in connection with the Christ, Jesus our Lord, by means of whom we have this freeness of speech and an approach with confidence through our faith in him."

**Rom. 5:1, 2** "Therefore, now that we have been declared righteous as a result of faith, let us enjoy peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ, through whom also we have gained our approach by faith into this undeserved kindness in which we now stand, and let us exult, based on hope of the glory of God."

## On Accepting Christ, Former Sins Are Confessed

**Acts 19:18** "And many of those who had become believers would come and confess and report their practices openly."

**If Spiritually Sick, It Is Proper for Christians to Confess Sins to Fellow Christians So They Can Counsel, Help Us, Pray for Us—This Command Given Specifically to God's Anointed Servants**

**Jas. 5:13-16** "Is there anyone suffering evil among you? Let him carry on prayer. Is there anyone in good spirits? Let him sing psalms. Is there anyone sick among you? Let him call the older men of the congregation to him, and let them pray over him, rubbing him with oil in the name of Jehovah. And the prayer of faith will make the indisposed one well, and Jehovah will raise him up. Also if he has committed sins, it will be forgiven him. Therefore openly confess your sins to one another and pray for one another, that you may get healed. A righteous man's supplication when it is at work has much force."

## No Man Can Forgive Sins—Healing Equally as Easy

**Luke 5:23, 24** "Which is easier, to say, 'Your sins are forgiven

you," or to say, "Get up and walk"? But in order for you to know that the Son of man has authority on the earth to forgive sins—" he said to the paralyzed man: 'I say to you, Get up and pick up your little bed and be on your way home.'"

### **Improper for Priest to Interrogate Person About Every Phase of His Life**

1 Pet. 4:15 "However, let none of you suffer as a murderer or a thief or an evildoer or as a busybody in other people's matters."

2 Thess. 3:11 "For we hear certain ones are walking disorderly among you, not working at all but meddling with what does not concern them."

### **God Through Christ Judges**

Heb. 10:30 "For we know him that said, 'Vengeance is mine; I will recompense'; and again, 'Jehovah will judge his people.'"

John 5:22 "For the Father judges no one at all, but he has committed all the judging to the Son."

Rom. 2:16 "This will be in the day when God through Christ Jesus judges the secret things of mankind, according to the good news I declare."

Acts 10:42 "Also he ordered us to preach to the people and to give a thorough witness that this is the One decreed by God to be judge of the living and the dead."

Acts 17:31 "He has set a day in which he purposes to judge the inhabited earth in righteousness by a man whom he has appointed."

Heb. 12:23 "God the Judge of all."

### **No Christian Has the Right to Judge His Brother**

Rom. 14:10-13 "But why do you judge your brother? Or why do you also look down on your brother? For we shall all stand before the judgment seat of God; for it is written: 'As I live,' says

Jehovah, 'to me every knee will bow, and every tongue will make open acknowledgment to God.' So, then, each of us will render an account for himself to God. Therefore, let us not be judging one another any longer, but rather make this your decision, not to put before a brother a stumblingblock or a cause for falling."

Mat. 7:1 "Stop judging, that you may not be judged."

### **Israelites Confessed Sins to God Before Priests and Public so that Proper Offering and Restitution Might Be Made—No Secret Confessional**

Num. 5:7 "Then he shall confess his sin which he hath done: and he shall make restitution for his guilt in full, and add unto it the fifth part thereof, and give it unto him in respect of whom he hath been guilty."

Lev. 5:5, 6 "And it shall be, when he shall be guilty in one of these things, that he shall confess that wherein he hath sinned: and he shall bring his trespass-offering unto Jehovah for his sin which he hath sinned, a female from the flock, a lamb or a goat, for a sin-offering; and the priest shall make atonement for him as concerning his sin."

### **Israelite Priests Had to Admit Their Own Sins Before God and Make Atonement Offering**

Lev. 16:6, 17 "And Aaron shall present the bullock of the sin-offering, which is for himself, and make atonement for himself, and for his house. And there shall be no man in the tent of meeting when he goeth in to make atonement in the holy place, until he come out, and have made atonement for himself, and for his household, and for all the assembly of Israel."

### **Entire Congregation or Organization May Publicly Confess Sin, or a Wrong Course Taken**

Neh. 9:2 "And the seed of Israel separated themselves from

all foreigners, and stood and confessed their sins, and the iniquities of their fathers."

Isa. 12:1 "And in that day thou shalt say, I will give thanks unto thee, O Jehovah; for though

thou wast angry with me, thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortest me."

See "Apostolic Succession", "Jehovah," "Sin."

# Congregation of God

## DEFINITION

(Gr., *ekklesia*—"assembly," "congregation") An assembly of persons called out from this world to the service of Almighty God. The Christian congregation, the "holy nation", is comprised of Jesus Christ, the Head, and 144,000 members of his body. The term also applies collectively to all those of the anointed spiritual class on earth at any particular time, or to the local assembly in any place. (*Ekklesia* is often translated "church".)

### Nation of Israel the First Congregation of God

Acts 7:38 "This is he that came to be among the congregation in the wilderness with the angel that spoke to him on Mount Sinai and with our forefathers, and he received living sacred pronouncements to give you."

### Called Out from Egypt at Passover Time

Ex. 12:2, 5, 6, 41 "This month [Abib or Nisan] shall be unto you the beginning of months: it shall be the first month of the year to you. Your lamb shall be without blemish, a male a year old: ye shall take it from the sheep, or from the goats: and ye shall keep it until the fourteenth day of the same month; and the whole assembly of the congregation of Israel shall kill it at even."

Ex. 12:7, 22-24 "And they shall take of the blood, and put it on the two side-posts and on the lintel, upon the houses wherein they shall eat it. And ye shall take a bunch of hyssop, and dip it in the blood that is in the basin, and strike the lintel and the two side-posts with the blood

that is in the basin; and none of you shall go out of the door of his house until the morning. For Jehovah will pass through to smite the Egyptians; and when he seeth the blood upon the lintel, and on the two side-posts, Jehovah will pass over the door, and will not suffer the destroyer to come in unto your houses to smite you. And ye shall observe this thing for an ordinance to thee and to thy sons for ever."

### Officially Organized at Mount Sinai, 1513 B.C.—Jewish "Systems of Things"

Ex. 19:1 "In the third month after the children of Israel were gone forth out of the land of Egypt, the same day came they into the wilderness of Sinai."

Heb. 9:18-20 "Consequently neither was the former covenant inaugurated without blood. For when every commandment according to the Law had been spoken by Moses to all the people, he took the blood of the young bulls and of the goats with water and scarlet wool and hyssop and sprinkled the book itself and all the people, saying: 'This is the blood of the covenant which God has laid as a charge upon you.'"

### Glory of Its Law Covenant

**Ex. 19:16** "And it came to pass on the third day, when it was morning, that there were thunders and lightnings, and a thick cloud upon the mount, and the voice of a trumpet exceeding loud; and all the people that were in the camp trembled."

**Heb. 12:18-21** "For you have not approached that which can be felt and which has been set aflame with fire, and a dark cloud and thick darkness and a tempest, and the blare of a trumpet and the voice of words, on hearing which voice the people implored that no word should be added to them. For the command was not bearable to them: 'And if a beast touches the mountain, it must be stoned.' Also the display was so fearful that Moses said: 'I am terrified and trembling.'"

### Jewish Congregation Pictured by Ishmael

**Gal. 4:22-30** "For example, it is written that Abraham acquired two sons, one by the servant girl and one by the free woman; but the one by the servant girl was actually born in the manner of flesh, the other by the free woman through a promise. These things stand as a symbolic drama; for these women mean two covenants, the one from mount Sinai, which brings forth children for slavery, and which is Hagar. Now this Hagar means Sinai, a mountain in Arabia, and she corresponds with the Jerusalem today, for she is in slavery with her children... Nevertheless, what does the Scripture say? 'Cast out the servant girl and her son.'"

### Organizational Structure of Jewish Congregation

Mediator and leader, Moses (**Gal. 3:19**); founded on twelve sons of Jacob; twelve tribes of Israel; law covenant; Levitical priesthood; animal sacrifices.

### Covenant Did Not Accomplish Stated Purpose Because of Fleshly Imperfection and Sin

**Rom. 8:3** "For, there being an incapability on the part of the Law, while it was weak through the flesh, God, by sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh and concerning sin, condemned sin in the flesh."

**Rom. 9:31, 32** "But Israel, although pursuing a law of righteousness, did not attain to the law. For what reason? Because he pursued it, not by faith, but as by works."

**Heb. 4:2** "For we have had the good news declared to us also, even as they also had; but the word which was heard did not benefit them, because they were not united by faith with those who did hear."

**Heb. 10:3, 6** "To the contrary, by these sacrifices there is a reminding of sins from year to year. 'You did not approve of whole burnt-offerings and sin offering.'"

### Covenant Did Serve Purpose of Leading Faithful Remnant to Christ

**Gal. 3:24** "Consequently, the Law has become our tutor leading to Christ, that we might be declared righteous due to faith."

### The Typical House Cast Off, A.D. 33; "Jewish Systems of Things" No Longer Valid

**Matt. 23:38** "Look! your house is abandoned to you."

**Dan. 9:27** "And he shall make a firm covenant with many for one week: and in the midst of the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease."

**Col. 2:13, 14** "He kindly forgave us all our trespasses and blotted out the handwritten document against us which consisted of decrees and which was in opposition to us, and he has taken it out of the way by nailing it to the torture stake."

## The Christian Congregation —Some Scriptural Names Applied to It

Anointed ones (2 Cor. 1:21); body of Christ (Eph. 1:22, 23); congregation of God (Gal. 1:13); heirs (Rom. 8:17); holy nation (1 Pet. 2:9); holy ones (1 Cor. 1:2; Eph. 1:1); holy priesthood (1 Pet. 2:5); Israel of God (Gal. 6:16); new creation (2 Cor. 5:17); royal palace of David (Acts 15:16); sons of the Kingdom (Matt. 13:38); spiritual Israel (Rev. 7:4; 21:12); temple (1 Cor. 6:19; 1 Pet. 2:5).

### Its Purpose

**Acts 15:14** "Symeon has related thoroughly how God for the first time turned his attention to the nations to take out of them a people for his name."

**1 Pet. 2:9** "On the other hand, you are 'a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for special possession, that you should declare abroad the excellencies' of the one that called you out of darkness into his wonderful light."

### Called Out from This World (Egypt) Beginning A.D. 29

**John 15:19; 17:6** "If you were part of the world, the world would be fond of what is its own. Now because you are no part of the world, but I have chosen you out of the world, on this account the world hates you." "I have made your name manifest to the men you gave me out of the world."

### Established on New Covenant

**Jer. 31:31, 32** "Behold, the days come, saith Jehovah, that I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel, and with the house of Judah: not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day that I took them by the hand to bring them out of the land of Egypt; which my covenant they brake, although I was a husband unto them, saith Jehovah."

**Heb. 8:10-13** "'For this is the covenant which I shall covenant with the house of Israel after those days," says Jehovah: "I shall put my laws in their mind, and upon their hearts I shall write them, and I shall be a God to them and they will be a people to me. And they will by no means teach every man his fellow citizen and every man his brother, saying: 'Know Jehovah,' because they will all know me, from the least to the greatest of them. For I shall be merciful to their unrighteous deeds and I will by no means call their sins to mind any more.'" In his saying 'a new covenant' he has made the former one obsolete. Now that which is made obsolete and growing old is near to vanishing away."

**Heb. 12:24** "Jesus the mediator of a new covenant."

### Blood of Christ validated new covenant

**1 Cor. 5:7** "For, indeed, Christ our passover has been sacrificed."

**Luke 22:20** "Also the cup in the same way after they had the evening meal, he saying: 'This cup means the new covenant by virtue of my blood, which is to be poured out in your behalf.'"

**1 Cor. 11:25** "He did likewise respecting the cup also, after he had the evening meal, saying: 'This cup means the new covenant by virtue of my blood. Keep doing this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of me.'"

**Heb. 9:13-17 (mar.)** "For if the blood of goats and of bulls and the ashes of a heifer sprinkled on those who have been polluted sanctifies to the extent of cleanness of the flesh, how much more will the blood of the Christ, who through an everlasting spirit offered himself without blemish to God, cleanse our consciences from dead works that we may render sacred service to the living God? . . . For where there is a covenant, the death of the human mediating sacrifice (or, victim) needs to be furnished. For a cov-

enant is valid over dead victims, since it is not in force at any time while the human mediating sacrifice (or, victim) is living."

***Covenant inaugurated at Pentecost, A.D. 33—"new systems of things"***

**Acts 2:1-4, 14-17, 38** "Now while the day of the feast of Pentecost was in progress they were all together at the same place, and suddenly there occurred from heaven a noise just like that of a rushing stiff breeze, and it filled the whole house in which they were sitting. And tongues as if of fire became visible and were distributed to them, and one sat upon each one of them, and they all became filled with holy spirit and started to speak with different tongues, just as the spirit was granting them to make utterance. . . . Peter . . . raised his voice . . . 'These people are, in fact, not drunk, as you suppose, for it is the third hour of the day. On the contrary, this is what was said through the prophet Joel, "And in the last days," God says, "I shall pour some of my spirit out upon every kind of flesh, and your sons and your daughters will prophesy and your young men will see visions and your old men will dream dreams." "' Peter said to them: 'Repent, and let each one of you be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ for forgiveness of your sins, and you will receive the free gift of the holy spirit.'"

***Glory of the new covenant***

**2 Cor. 3:7-11** "Moreover, if the code which administers death and which was engraved in letters in stones came about in a glory, so that the sons of Israel could not gaze intently at the face of Moses because of the glory of his face, a glory which was to be done away with, why should not the administering of the spirit be much more with glory? For if the code administering condemnation was glorious, much more does the

administering of righteousness abound with glory. In fact, even that which has once been made glorious has been stripped of glory in this respect, because of the glory that excels it. For if that which was to be done away with was brought in with glory, much more would that which remains be with glory."

**Heb. 12:22-26** "But you have approached a mount Zion and a city of the living God, heavenly Jerusalem, and myriads of angels, in general assembly, and the congregation of the firstborn who have been enrolled in the heavens, and God the Judge of all, and the spiritual lives of righteous ones who have been made perfect, and Jesus the mediator of a new covenant, and the blood of sprinkling which speaks in a better way than Abel's blood. See that you do not implore him not to speak. For if they did not escape who implored him not to give divine warning upon earth, much more shall we not if we turn away from him who speaks from the heavens. At that time his voice shook the earth, but now he has promised, saying: 'Yet once more I will set not only the earth but also the heavens in commotion.'"

***New covenant achieves success***

**Rom. 8:3, 4** "For, there being an incapability on the part of the Law, while it was weak through the flesh, God, by sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh and concerning sin, condemned sin in the flesh, that the righteous requirement of the Law might be fulfilled in us who walk, not in accord with the flesh, but in accord with the spirit."

**Rom. 11:27** "And this is the covenant on my part with them, when I completely take their sins away."

**Heb. 10:16, 17** "'This is the covenant which I shall covenant toward them after those days," says Jehovah: "I shall put my

laws upon their hearts, and upon their minds I shall write them," it says afterwards, 'And I will by no means call their sins and their lawless deeds to mind any more.'"

***First benefits of covenant received by anointed***

**Jas. 1:18** "Because he willed it, he brought us forth by the word of truth, for us to be a certain firstfruits of his creatures."

**Rev. 14:4** "These are the ones that keep following the Lamb no matter where he goes. These were purchased from among mankind as a firstfruits to God and to the Lamb."

**Luke 12:32** "Have no fear, little flock, because your Father has approved of giving you the kingdom."

***Secondary benefits of covenant for other sheep***

**Isa. 56:4, 5** "For thus saith Jehovah of the eunuchs that keep my sabbaths, and choose the things that please me, and hold fast my covenant: Unto them will I give in my house and within my walls a memorial and a name better than of sons and of daughters; I will give them an everlasting name, that shall not be cut off."

**Isa. 56:6-8** "Also the foreigners that join themselves to Jehovah, to minister unto him, and to love the name of Jehovah, to be his servants, every one that keepeth the sabbath from profaning it, and holdeth fast my covenant; even them will I bring to my holy mountain, and make them joyful in my house of prayer: their burnt-offerings and their sacrifices shall be accepted upon mine altar; for my house shall be called a house of prayer for all peoples. The Lord Jehovah, who gathereth the outcasts of Israel, saith, Yet will I gather others to him, besides his own that are gathered."

**John 10:16** 'And I have other sheep, which are not of this fold;

those also I must bring, and they will listen to my voice, and they will become one flock, one shepherd."

**Christian Congregation Pictured by Isaac (the Seed) and Rebekah (the "Bride", the Adopted Seed)**

**Gen. 24:67** "And Isaac brought her into his mother Sarah's tent, and took Rebekah, and she became his wife; and he loved her: and Isaac was comforted after his mother's death."

**Gal. 4:26-28, 31** "But the Jerusalem above is free, and she is our mother. For it is written: 'Be glad, you barren woman who does not bear children; break out and cry aloud, you woman who does not have childbirth pains; because the children of the desolate woman number more than those of her who has the husband.' Now we, brothers, are children belonging to the promise the same as Isaac was. Wherefore, brothers, we are children, not of a servant girl, but of the free woman."

**Gal. 3:16, 29; 4:4-7** "Now the promises were spoken to Abraham and to his seed. It says, not, 'And to seeds,' as in the case of many such, but as in the case of one, 'And to your seed,' who is Christ. Moreover, if you belong to Christ, you are really Abraham's seed, heirs with reference to a promise." "But when the full limit of the time arrived, God sent forth his Son, who was produced out of a woman and who came to be under law, that he might release by purchase those under law, that we in turn might receive the adoption as sons. Now because you are sons, God has sent forth the spirit of his Son into our hearts and it cries out, 'Abba, Father!' So, then, you are no longer a slave but a son; and if a son, also an heir through God."

## God's Heavenly Organization, Not the Church, Produces the Kingdom Head and Other Members

**Rev. 12:5** "And she gave birth to a son, a male, who is destined to shepherd all the nations with an iron rod."—See also verse 17.

### Organizational Structure of Christian Congregation

Mediator and Leader, Christ (Heb. 9:15; 12:24; 1 Tim. 2:5); 12 apostolic foundations (Eph. 2:20); twelve spiritual tribes (Rev. 7:4-8); new covenant; priesthood after likeness of Melchizedek (Heb. 7:17); perfect human sacrifice of Christ.

### Accomplishes Stated Purpose Through God's Spirit

**2 Cor. 3:5, 6** "Not that we of ourselves are adequately qualified to reckon anything as issuing from ourselves, but our being adequately qualified issues from God, who has indeed adequately qualified us to be ministers of a new covenant, not of a written code, but of spirit; for the written code condemns to death, but the spirit makes alive."

**Heb. 7:18, 19** "Certainly, then, there occurs a setting aside of the preceding commandment on account of its weakness and ineffectiveness. For the Law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in besides of a better hope did, through which we are drawing near to God."

### "Princes"—Those in Responsible Positions in Organization

(Heb., *sa-rim*'—"captains," "stewards," "rulers")

**Isa. 32:1-4** "Behold, a king shall reign in righteousness, and princes shall rule in justice. And a man shall be as a hiding-place from the wind, and a covert from the tempest, as streams of water in a dry place, as the shade of a great rock in a weary land. And the eyes of them that see shall not be dim, and the ears of them that hear shall hearken. And the

heart of the rash shall understand knowledge, and the tongue of the stammerers shall be ready to speak plainly."

**Ex. 18:21** "Moreover thou shalt provide out of all the people able men, such as fear God, men of truth, hating unjust gain; and place such over them, to be rulers of thousands, rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens."

**Num. 31:14, 48, 52, 54** "And Moses was wroth with the officers of the host, the captains of thousands and the captains of hundreds, who came from the service of the war. And the officers that were over the thousands of the host, . . . the captains of hundreds, came near unto Moses; . . . And all the gold of the heave-offering that they offered up to Jehovah, of the captains of thousands, and of the captains of hundreds, . . . And Moses and Eleazar the priest took the gold of the captains of thousands and of hundreds, and brought it into the tent of meeting, for a memorial for the children of Israel before Jehovah."

### Principle of Community Responsibility—Whole Congregation Responsible, Suffers for Wrongdoing Within Its Ranks

**Josh. 7:1-26** "But the children of Israel committed a trespass in the devoted thing; for Achan, the son of Carmi, the son of Zabdi, the son of Zerah, of the tribe of Judah, took of the devoted thing: and the anger of Jehovah was kindled against the children of Israel. . . . And the men of Ai . . . chased them from before the gate even unto Shebarim, and smote them at the descent: and the hearts of the people melted, and became as water. . . . And Jehovah said . . . Israel hath sinned; yea, they have even transgressed my covenant which I commanded them: yea, they have even taken of the devoted thing, and have also stolen, and dissembled also; and they have even put it among



their own stuff. Therefore the children of Israel cannot stand before their enemies; they turn their backs before their enemies, because they are become accursed: I will not be with you any more, except ye destroy the devoted thing from among you. . . . And Achan answered Joshua, and said, Of a truth I have sinned against Jehovah, the God of Israel, and thus and thus have I done: when I saw among the spoil a goodly Babylonish mantle, and two hundred shekels of silver, and a wedge of gold of fifty shekels weight, then I coveted them, and took them; and, behold, they are hid in the earth in the midst of my tent, and the silver under it. . . . And Joshua said, Why hast thou troubled us? Jehovah shall trouble thee this day. And all Israel stoned him with stones and they burned them with fire, and stoned them with stones."

**1 Cor. 12:12-27** "For the body, indeed, is not one member, but is many. . . . God compounded the body, giving honor more abundant to the part which had a lack, so that there should be no division in the body, but that its members should have the same care for one another. And if one member suffers, all the other members suffer with it; or if a member is glorified, all the other members rejoice with it. Now you are Christ's body, and members individually."

**Gal. 5:9** "A little yeast ferments the whole lump."

**Heb. 12:15** "Carefully watching that no one may be deprived of the undeserved kindness of God; that no poisonous root may spring up and cause trouble and many be defiled by it."

**1 Cor. 3:16, 17** "Do you not know that you people are God's temple and that the spirit of God dwells in you? If anyone destroys the temple of God, God will destroy him; for the temple of God is holy, which temple you people are."

**1 Cor. 5:6-8** "Your cause for boasting is not right. Do you not know that a little yeast ferments the whole lump? Clear away the old yeast, that you may be a new lump, according as you are free from ferment. For, indeed, Christ our passover has been sacrificed. Consequently, let us keep the feast, not with old yeast, neither with yeast of injuriousness and wickedness, but with unfermented cakes of purity and truth."

### Keeping the Organization Clean, Upright and at Unity

**Jude 3, 4** "I found it necessary to write you to exhort you to put up a hard fight for the faith that was once for all time delivered to the holy ones. My reason is that certain men have slipped in who have long ago been appointed by the Scriptures to the judgment described below, ungodly men, turning the undeserved kindness of our God into an excuse for loose conduct and proving false to our only Owner and Lord, Jesus Christ."

**Titus 2:6-8** "Likewise keep on exhorting the younger men to be sound in mind, in all things showing yourself an example of right works, showing uncorruptness in your teaching, seriousness, wholesome speech which cannot be condemned, so that the man on the opposing side may get ashamed, having nothing vile to say about us."

### Difficulties Between Individuals

**Matt. 18:15-17** "Moreover, if your brother commits a sin, go lay bare his fault between you and him alone. If he listens to you, you have gained your brother. But if he does not listen, take along with you one or two more, in order that at the mouth of two or three witnesses every matter may be established. If he does not listen to them, speak to the congregation. If he does not listen even to the congregation, let him be to you just as a man

of the nations and as a tax collector."

### **Wrongdoing Affecting the Congregation and Its Service**

**1 Tim. 4:1** "However, the inspired utterance says definitely that in later periods of time some will fall away from the faith, paying attention to misleading inspired utterances and teachings of demons."

**Gal. 5:12** "I wish the men who are trying to overturn you would even get themselves emasculated."

**Jude 19** "These are the ones that make separations, animalistic men, not having spirituality."

See also: **1 Cor. 5:1-5.**

### **Reproof Issued by Those in Responsible Positions**

#### *Private*

**1 Tim. 5:1, 2** "Do not severely criticize an older man. To the contrary, entreat him as a father, younger men as brothers, older women as mothers, younger women as sisters with all chasteness."

#### *Before all*

**1 Tim. 5:20** "Reprove before all onlookers persons who practice sin, that the rest also may have fear."

**Titus 1:10-13** "For there are many unruly men, profitless talkers, and deceivers of the mind, especially those men who adhere to the circumcision. It is necessary to shut the mouths of these, as these very men keep on subverting entire households by teaching things they ought not for the sake of dishonest gain. A certain one of them, their own prophet, said: 'Cretans are always liars, injurious wild-beasts, unemployed gluttons.' The witness here given is true. For this very cause keep on reproving them with severity, that they may be healthy in the faith."

### **Disfellowshipping—for Doctrinal or Moral Uncleaness, or Troublemaking**

**Rom. 16:17** "Now I exhort you, brothers, to keep your eye on those who create divisions and causes for stumbling contrary to the teaching which you have learned, and avoid them."

**3 John 9-11** "I wrote something to the congregation, but Diotrephes, who likes to have the first place among them, does not receive anything from us with respect. That is why, if I come, I will call to remembrance his works which he goes on doing, chattering about us with wicked words. Also, not being content with these things, neither does he himself receive the brothers with respect, and those who are wanting to receive them he tries to hinder and to throw out of the congregation."

**1 Cor. 5:12, 13** "Do you not judge those inside, while God judges those outside? 'Remove the wicked man from among yourselves.'"

**Lev. 23:28, 29** "And ye shall do no manner of work in that same day; for it is a day of atonement, to make atonement for you before Jehovah your God. For whatsoever soul it be that shall not be afflicted in that same day; he shall be cut off from his people."

**Num. 9:13** "But the man that is clean, and is not on a journey, and forbearth to keep the pass-over, that soul shall be cut off from his people; because he offered not the oblation of Jehovah in its appointed season, that man shall bear his sin."

**1 Tim. 1:20** "Hymenaeus and Alexander belong to these, and I have handed them over to Satan that they may be taught by discipline not to blaspheme."

### **Restrictions on Disfellowshipped Persons**

**2 John 10, 11** "If anyone comes to you and does not bring this teaching, never receive him into your homes or say farewell to

him. For he that says farewell to him is a sharer in his wicked works."

**1 Cor. 5:11** "But now I am writing you to quit mixing in company with anyone called a brother that is a fornicator or a greedy person or an idolater or a reviler or a drunkard or an extortioner, not even eating with such a man."

**2 Thess. 3:6-14** "Now we are giving you orders, brothers, in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, to withdraw from every brother walking disorderly and not according to the tradition you received from us. . . . In fact, also, when we were with you, we used to give you this order: 'If anyone does not want to work, neither let him eat.' For we hear certain ones are walking disorderly among you, not working at all but meddling with what does not concern them. To such persons we give the order and exhortation in the Lord Jesus Christ that by work-

ing with quietness they should eat food they themselves earn."

### Receiving Back Repentant Ones

**2 Cor. 2:5-11** "Now if anyone has caused sadness, he has saddened, not me, but all of you to an extent—not to be too harsh in what I say. This rebuke given by the majority is sufficient for such a man, so that, on the contrary now, you should kindly forgive and comfort him, that somehow such a man may not be swallowed up by his being overly sad. Therefore I exhort you to confirm your love for him. . . . Anything you kindly forgive anyone, I do too. In fact, as for me, whatever I have kindly forgiven, if I have kindly forgiven anything, it has been for your sakes in Christ's sight, that we may not be overreached by Satan, for we are not ignorant of his designs."

See "Jehovah's Witnesses", "Apostolic Succession," "Minister of God."

# Creation

## DEFINITION

The original bringing into existence of all that is material and spiritual that comprises the universe by a mastermind, a great First Cause known as the Creator, Jehovah God. Scriptural description: Ephesians 3:9, NW: "God, who created all things."

### Jehovah Alone Before Creation Had a Beginning

**Ps. 90:2** "From everlasting to everlasting, thou art God."

**Ps. 93:2** "Thy throne is established of old: thou art from everlasting."

**Isa. 40:13, 14** "Who hath directed the spirit of Jehovah, or being his counsellor hath taught him? With whom took he counsel, and who instructed him, and taught him in the path of justice, and taught him knowledge?"

**John 1:1** "Originally the Word was, and the Word was with God, and the Word was a god."

**Rev. 4:11** "Jehovah, . . . you created all things, and because of your will they existed and were created."

**Acts 17:24, 25** "The God that made the world and all the things in it, . . . does not dwell in hand-made temples, neither is he attended to by human hands as if he needed anything, because he himself gives to all persons life and breath and all things."

### Jehovah the Only Creator

**Heb. 3:4** "He that constructed all things is God."

**Ps. 36:9** "With thee is the fountain of life."

**Eccl. 3:14** "Whatsoever God doeth, it shall be for ever: nothing can be put to it, nor anything taken from it."

**Ps. 148:1-6** "Angels: . . . all his host. . . sun and moon: . . . stars of light. . . heavens of heavens, . . . waters that are above the heavens. . . for he commanded, and they were created."

**Luke 12:25** "Who of you by being anxious can add a cubit to his life span?"

### Orderly, Not Chaotic

**1 Cor. 14:33** "God is a God, not of disorder, but of peace."

**Jas. 3:16, 17** "Where jealousy and contentiousness are, there is disorder and every vile thing are. But the wisdom from above is first of all chaste, then peaceable, reasonable, ready to obey, full of mercy and good fruits, not making partial distinctions, not hypocritical."

**Matt. 12:25** "Every kingdom divided against itself comes to desolation, and every city or house divided against itself will not stand."

### "Book of Nature" Shows God as Supreme Scientist

**Rom. 1:20** "His invisible qualities are clearly seen from the world's creation onward, because they are understood by the things made, even his eternal power and Godship, so that they are inexcusable."

### Only-begotten Son the First Creation

**Rev. 3:14** "And to the angel of the congregation in Laodicea write: These are the things the Amen says, the faithful and true witness, the beginning of the creation by God."

**Col. 1:15** "He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation."

**John 1:1, 2** "Originally the Word was, and the Word was with God, and the Word was a god. This one was originally with God."

### Son Used in Creating All Other Things

**John 1:3, 10** "All things came into existence through him, and apart from him not even one thing came into existence."

**Col. 1:16, 17** "By means of him all other things were created in the heavens and upon the earth, the things visible and the things invisible, no matter whether they are thrones or lordships or governments or authorities. All other things have been created through him and for him. Also he is before all other things and by means of him all other things were made to exist."

**Gen. 1:26** "And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness."

### Angels Created Before Earth

**Job 38:4, 7** "Where wast thou when I laid the foundations of the earth? . . . when the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy?"

**Ezek. 28:13, 14** "Thou wast in Eden, the garden of God; . . . Thou wast the anointed cherub that covereth: and I set thee, so that thou wast upon the holy mountain of God."

**Ps. 104:4, 5** "Who maketh winds his messengers [his angels winds, *footnote*: who laid the foundations of the earth."

**Heb. 1:7** "Also with reference to the angels he says: 'And he makes his angels spirits, and his public servants a flame of fire.'"

**2 Pet. 2:11** "Angels . . . are greater in strength and power."

### Many Angels, Different Ranks

**Rev. 9:16** "And the number of the armies of cavalry was two myriads of myriads [200,000,000, *footnote*]: I heard the number of them."

**Dan. 7:10** "A fiery stream issued and came forth from before him: thousands of thousands ministered unto him, and ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him: the judgment was set, and the books were opened."

**Col. 1:16** "By means of him all other things were created in the heavens and upon the earth, the things visible and the things invisible, no matter whether they are thrones or lordships or governments or authorities."

**Jude 9** "On the other hand, when Michael the archangel had a difference with the Devil and was disputing about Moses' body, he did not dare to bring a judgment against him in abusive terms, but said: 'May Jehovah rebuke you.'"

**Col. 2:10** "And so you are possessed of a fullness by means of him, who is the head of all government and authority."

**Eph. 1:20, 21** "In the heavenly places, far above every government and authority and power and lordship and every name named, not only in this system of things, but also in that to come."

**Eph. 3:10** "This was to the end that now to the governments and the authorities in the heavenly places there might be made known through the congregation the greatly diversified wisdom of God."

Also: Ezekiel, chapter 1.

### **Starry Heavens Created**

**Ps. 33:6, 9** "By the word of Jehovah were the heavens made, and all the host of them by the breath of his mouth. For he spake, and it was done; he commanded, and it stood fast."

**Ps. 136:5, 7** "To him that by understanding made the heavens; ... to him that made great lights; for his lovingkindness endureth for ever."

**Ps. 102:25** "Of old didst thou lay the foundation of the earth; and the heavens are the work of thy hands."

### **Heavens and Earth and All Elements**

**Gen. 1:1** "In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth."

**Ps. 115:15, 16** "Blessed are ye of Jehovah, who made heaven and earth. The heavens are the heavens of Jehovah; but the earth hath he given to the children of men."

**Job 26:7, 13** "He stretcheth out the north over empty space, and hangeth the earth upon nothing. By his spirit the heavens are garnished."

**Ps. 121:2** "My help cometh from Jehovah, who made heaven and earth."

**Ps. 146:6** "Who made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them is."

**Isa. 40:12, 22, 26, 28** "Who hath measured the waters in the hollow of his hand, and meted out heaven with the span, and comprehended the dust of the earth in a measure, and weighed the mountains in scales, and the hills in a balance?"

**Isa. 45:7, 8** "I form the light, and create darkness."

**Amos 4:13** "For, lo, he that formeth the mountains, and createth the wind, and declareth unto man what is his thought; that maketh the morning darkness, and treadeth upon the high places of the earth—Jehovah, the God of hosts, is his name."

**Zech. 12:1** "Thus saith Jehovah, who stretcheth forth the heavens, and layeth the foundation of the earth, and formeth the spirit of man within him."

**Acts 4:24** "Sovereign Lord, you are the One who made the heaven and the earth and the sea and all the things in them."

**Acts 7:49, 50** "The heaven is my throne, and the earth is my footstool. What kind of house will you build for me? Jehovah says. Or what is the place for my resting? My hand made all these things, did it not?"

**Acts 14:15** "Men, why are you doing these things? We also are human creatures having the same infirmities as you do, and are declaring the good news to you, for you to turn from these vain things to the living God, who made the heaven and the earth and the sea and all the things in them."

**Rev. 10:6** "The One who lives for ever and ever, who created the heaven and the things in it and the earth and the things in it and the sea and the things in it."

**Rev. 14:7** "Worship the one that made the heaven and the earth and sea and fountains of waters."

**Ps. 89:11, 12** "The heavens are thine, the earth also is thine: the world and the fulness thereof, thou hast founded them. The north and the south, thou hast created them."

**Also:** Ps. 148; Job, chapters 38-41; Ps. 124:8; 134:3.

### Earth

**Ps. 65:6** "Who by his strength setteth fast the mountains."

**Ps. 95:5** "The sea is his, and he made it; and his hands formed the dry land."

**Jonah 1:9** "I fear Jehovah, the God of heaven, who hath made the sea and the dry land."

**Acts 17:24** "The God that made the world and all the things in it, being, as this One is, Lord of heaven and earth, does not dwell in handmade temples."

### Living Creatures

**Gen. 6:7** "And Jehovah said, I will destroy man whom I have created from the face of the ground; both man, and beast, and creeping things, and birds of the heavens; for it repenteth me that I have made them."

**Gen. 7:4** "Every living thing that I have made will I destroy from off the face of the ground."

**Job 10:8-13** "Thy hands have framed me and fashioned me... Remember, I beseech thee, that

thou hast fashioned me as clay; ...Thou hast clothed me with skin and flesh, and knit me together with bones and sinews. Thou hast granted me life and lovingkindness; and thy visitation hath preserved my spirit. Yet these things thou didst hide in thy heart."

**Ps. 104:30** "Thou sendest forth thy spirit, they are created; and thou renewest the face of the ground."

**Job 33:4** "The spirit of God hath made me, and the breath of the Almighty giveth me life."

**Ps. 95:6** "Let us kneel before Jehovah our Maker."

**Ps. 100:3** "Know ye that Jehovah, he is God: it is he that hath made us, and we are his."

**Mark 10:6** "He made them male and female."

**Acts 17:25** "He himself gives to all persons life and breath and all things."

**Also:** Genesis, chapter 1.

### God's Works Perfect, a Credit to Him

**Ps. 111:2, 3, 7, 8** "The works of Jehovah are great, sought out of all them that have pleasure therein. His work is honor and majesty; and his righteousness endureth for ever. The works of his hands are truth and justice; all his precepts are sure. They are established for ever and ever; they are done in truth and uprightness."

**Eccl. 3:11** "He hath made everything beautiful in its time."

**Rom. 1:20** "For his invisible qualities are clearly seen from the world's creation onward, because they are understood by the things made, even his eternal power and Godship."

**Deut. 32:4, 5** "The Rock, his work is perfect; for all his ways are justice: a God of faithfulness and without iniquity, just and right is he. They have dealt corruptly with him, they are not his children, it is their blemish."

**Ezek. 28:12-15** "Thou sealest up the sum, full of wisdom, and

perfect in beauty. Thou wast in Eden, the garden of God; every precious stone was thy covering, the sardius, the topaz, and the diamond, the beryl, the onyx, and the jasper, . . . Thou wast the anointed cherub that covereth; and I set thee, so that thou wast upon the holy mountain of God; . . . Thou wast perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created, till unrighteousness was found in thee."

**Isa. 45:11** "Thus saith Jehovah, the Holy One of Israel, and his Maker: Ask me of the things that are to come; concerning my sons, and concerning the work of my hands, command ye me."

**Ps. 27:4** "One thing have I asked of Jehovah, that will I seek after: that I may dwell in the house of Jehovah all the days of my life, to behold the beauty of Jehovah, and to inquire in his temple."

### **Creation Beyond Understanding Completely**

**Ecc. 3:11** "Man cannot find out the work that God hath done from the beginning even to the end."

**Ecc. 11:5** "As thou knowest not what is the way of the wind, nor how the bones do grow in the womb of her that is with child; even so thou knowest not the work of God who doeth all."

### **Man Made Perfect, to Remain on Earth**

**Ecc. 7:29** "Behold, this only have I found: that God made man upright; but they have sought out many inventions."

**1 Cor. 15:47** "The first man is out of the earth and made of dust; the second man is out of heaven."

**Ps. 115:16** "The heavens are the heavens of Jehovah; but the earth hath he given to the children of men."

**Job 33:6** "Behold, I am toward God even as thou art: I also am formed out of the clay."

**Heb. 2:6, 7** "What is man so that you are mindful of him, or the son of man so that you look after him? You made him a little lower than angels."

**Acts 17:26** "And he made out of one man every nation of men, to dwell upon the entire surface of the earth, and he decreed the appointed seasons and the set limits of the dwelling of men."

### **Man Created with a Measure of God's Attributes**

**Gen. 1:26** "And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness."

**Gen. 9:6** "Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed: for in the image of God made he man."

### **Man Did Not Exist Prior to His Creation on Earth**

**Job 15:7** "Art thou the first man that was born? Or wast thou brought forth before the hills?"

**Deut. 4:32** "For ask now of the days that are past, which were before thee, since the day that God created man upon the earth, and from the one end of heaven unto the other, whether there hath been any such thing as this great thing is, or hath been heard like it?"

**Job 38:4** "Where wast thou when I laid the foundations of the earth? Declare, if thou hast understanding."

### **Man's Inventions and Discoveries Not Creations**

**Ecc. 1:9** "That which hath been is that which shall be; and that which hath been done is that which shall be done: and there is no new thing under the sun."

### **144,000 Body Members of Christ a New Creation (Immortal)**

**2 Cor. 5:1, 17** "For we know that if our earthly house, this tent, should be dissolved, we are to have a building from God, a house not made with hands, ever-

lasting in the heavens. . . . If anyone is in union with Christ, he is a new creation; the old things passed away, look! new things have come into existence."

Gal. 6:15 "For neither is circumcision anything nor is uncircumcision, but a new creation is something."

#### **Life Pattern Re-created in Resurrection; No New Human Souls**

Job 14:13-15 "Oh that thou wouldest hide me in Sheol, that thou wouldest keep me secret, until thy wrath be past, that thou wouldest appoint me a set time, and remember me! If a man die, shall he live again? All the days of my warfare would I wait, till my release should come. Thou wouldest call, and I would answer thee: thou wouldest have a desire to the work of thy hands."

Matt. 12:11, 12 "He said to them: 'Who will be the man among you that has one sheep and, if this falls into a pit on the sabbath, will not get hold of it and lift it out? All considered, of how

much more worth is a man than a sheep!'"

John 5:28, 29 "Do not marvel at this, because the hour is coming in which all those in the memorial tombs will hear his voice and come out, those who did good things to a resurrection of life, those who practiced vile things to a resurrection of judgment."

#### **Resurrection of Others Not of Christ's Body**

Rev. 20:5 "The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were ended."

1 Cor. 15:26 "As the last enemy, death is to be destroyed."

Rev. 20:13, 14 "And the sea gave up those dead in it, and death and Hades gave up those dead in them, and they were judged individually according to their deeds. And death and Hades were hurled into the lake of fire. This means the second death, the lake of fire."

See "Jehovah", "Jesus Christ," "Devil and Demons," "Evolution," "Resurrection."

## **Cross**

### **DEFINITION**

In Christendom, the symbol falsely used to represent Christianity. From the erroneous idea that Jesus Christ was put to death on a post with a crossarm.

### **ORIGIN**

Ancient Egyptians worshiped what has since been called the *crux ansata*, a phallic emblem shaped like a "T" with an oval handle on top, representing the male and female organs of reproduction combined. It was supposedly a symbol of life. Constantine (a pagan at the time, also afterward a professed worshiper and yet a murderer, falsely claiming conversion to Christianity) claimed to have a vision A.D. 312 of a burning cross in the heavens, with the words in Latin, *In hoc signo vinces* ("By this sign you will conquer"). It was after this (by the edict of Milan in 312) that the cross was incorporated into apostate Christianity. The cross was also used in worship by ancient pagan Babylon, India, Syria, Persia and the Aztecs. (See *New World Appendix*, under Matthew 10:38—"torture stake".)



### Jesus Was Put to Death on a Simple Upright Stake

"Cross" (**AV, AS, Dy**) from Greek, *stau-ros*, "an upright stake or pole" (Hebrew, *tz'lab*; Latin, *crux*); Greek, *xy'lon*, "tree or stake"; also used in reference to the instrument used to put Jesus to death. (Acts 5:30; 10:39; 13:29) At Ezra 6:11 we find *xy'lon* in the Greek *Septuagint* (1 Esdras 6:31) as a beam on which the violator of the law was to be hanged, as at Luke 23:39. *Crux* (Latin) originally meant a tree, frame, or wooden instrument of execution. "Cross" was a later meaning of *crux*. The term *crux simplex* (Latin) was used to denote a plain upright execution stake. The Greek verb *stau-ro'o* ("crucify," **AV**) meant "to fence with pales" as a stockade, or "to fasten or fix on a pole or stake", "to impale." (John 19:15) *Ana-stau-ro'o* (Heb. 6:6) is a synonym for *stau-ro'o*.

### Jesus' Death on a Stake or Tree, Not a Cross, Was Necessary to Fulfill Scriptures, Free Jews from Law

**Deut. 21:22, 23, Mo, AT** "If any man has committed a sin deserving of death, and if he is put to death by being impaled upon a stake, his corpse must not remain all night upon the stake; you must be sure to bury him the same day, for an impaled man is under God's curse."

**Gal. 3:13** "Christ by purchase released us from the curse of the law by becoming a curse instead of us, because it is written: 'Accursed is every man hanged upon a stake.'"

**Col. 2:14** "[Christ] blotted out the handwritten document against us which consisted of decrees and which was in opposition to us, and He has taken it out of the way by nailing it to the torture stake."

See also: Eph. 2:15, 16; John 19:31.

### Execution Stake a Thing to Be Hated, Not Worshiped

**Isa. 14:19** "Thou art cast forth away from thy sepulchre like an abominable branch [stake upon which a criminal is executed], clothed with the slain, that are thrust through with the sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a dead body trodden under foot."

(See *New World App.*, under Matthew 10:38.)

### Display of Execution Stake Wrong; Would Commemorate Satan's Supposed Victory in Causing Christ's Death

**Matt. 27:39-42** "So the passers-by began speaking abusively of him, wagging their heads and saying: 'O you would-be thrower-down of the temple and builder of it in three days, save yourself! If you are a son of God, come down off the torture stake!' In like manner also the chief priests with the scribes and older men of influence began making fun of him and saying: 'Others he saved, himself he cannot save! He is King of Israel; let him now come down off the torture stake and we will believe on him.'"

**Heb. 6:6** "They impale the Son of God afresh for themselves and expose him to public shame."

See also: Rev. 11:8-10.

### Use of Cross in Worship Is Idolatry

**Ex. 20:4, 5** "Thou shalt not make unto thee a graven image, nor any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth: thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them."

### Christ's Human Body Disposed of by God, Not to Be Worshiped as on Crucifix

**John 20:7, 12, 13** "And he viewed the bandages lying, also

the cloth which had been upon his head not lying with the bandages but separately rolled up in one place. And she [Mary] viewed two angels in white sitting one at the head and one at the feet where the body of Jesus had been lying. . . . She said to them: "They have taken my Master away, and I do not know where they have laid him."

2 Cor. 5:16 "Even if we have known Christ according to the flesh, certainly we now know him so no more."

### **Christ to Be Worshiped as a Glorious Spirit, Victorious over Death on the Torture Stake**

Rom. 6:9 "For we know that Christ, now that he has been raised up from the dead, dies no more; death is master over him no more."

2 Cor. 13:4 "True, indeed, he was impaled owing to weakness, but he is alive owing to God's power."

1 Pet. 3:18 "Why, even Christ died once for all time concerning sins, a righteous person for unrighteous ones, that he might lead you to God, he being put to death in the flesh, but being made alive in the spirit."

### **Christ the Reigning King Is Now the Signal to Be Pointed to—Not Crucifix or Banner with Cross**

Isa. 62:10, AT "Pass through, pass through the gates, prepare the way of the people; grade up, grade up the highway, clear it of stones; raise a signal over the peoples."

Isa. 11:10, AT "It shall come to pass on that day that the root of Jesse, who will be standing as a signal to the peoples—to him will the nations resort, and his resting-place will be glorious."

See: Isa. 18:3; Rev. 12:1, 5; 14:1.

### **Preaching of the Stake of Christ Means the Preaching of His Death as a Ransom**

1 Cor. 1:17, 18, 23; 2:2 "For Christ dispatched me, not to go

baptizing, but to go declaring the good news, not with wisdom of speech, that the torture stake of the Christ should not be made useless. For the speech about the torture stake is foolishness to those who are perishing, but to us who are being saved it is God's power. But we preach Christ impaled, to the Jews a cause for falling but to the nations foolishness." "For I decided not to know anything among you except Jesus Christ, and him impaled."

1 Tim. 2:5, 6 "Christ Jesus who gave himself a corresponding ransom for all—this is what is to be witnessed to at its own particular times."

Gal. 3:1 "O senseless Galatians, who is it that brought you under evil influence, you before whose eyes Jesus Christ was openly portrayed impaled?"

### **"Enemies of Torture Stake" Are Those Denying Christ's Death as Providing the Ransom**

Phil. 3:18, 19 "For there are many, I used to mention them often but now I mention them also with weeping, who are walking as the enemies of the torture stake of the Christ, and their finish is destruction."

2 Pet. 2:1 "However, there also came to be false prophets among the people, as there will also be false teachers among you. These very ones will quietly bring in destructive sects, and will disown even the owner that bought them."

Rom. 10:6, 7 "Do not say . . . 'Who will descend into the abyss?' that is, to bring Christ up from the dead."

See: 1 Cor. 1:17–2:2, above.

### **Execution Stake a Symbol of Death Under Shame, and Reproach to Christians from Enemies**

Heb. 12:2 "We look intently at the leader and perfecter of our faith, Jesus. For the joy that was set before him he endured a torture stake, despising shame, and

has sat down at the right hand of the throne of God."

**Matt. 16:24** "Then Jesus said to his disciples: 'If anyone wants to come after me, let him disown himself and pick up his torture stake and follow me continually.'"

**Gal. 6:12** "All those who want to make a pleasing appearance in the flesh are the ones that try to compel you to get circumcised, only that they may not be persecuted for the torture stake of the Christ."

**Phil. 2:8** "He humbled himself and became obedient as far as death, yes, death on a torture stake."

### 'Boasting in Torture Stake' Means Gladly Bearing Re- proach for Name of Christ

**Gal. 6:14** "Never may it occur that I should boast, except in the torture stake of our Lord Jesus Christ, through whom the world has been impaled to me and I to the world."

**Col. 1:24** "I am now rejoicing in my sufferings for you, and I in my turn am filling up what is lacking of the tribulations of the Christ in my flesh on behalf of his body, which is the congregation."

**1 Pet. 4:16** "But if he suffers as a Christian, let him not feel shame, but let him keep on glorifying God in this name."

## Death

### DEFINITION

Loss of life; termination of existence; utter cessation of conscious, intellectual or physical activity, celestial, human or otherwise.

### Man Created, Not to Die, but to Live Forever

**Gen. 1:27-31** "And God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them. And God blessed them: and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it; and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the birds of the heavens, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth.... And God saw everything that he had made, and, behold, it was very good."

**Prov. 10:22** "The blessing of Jehovah, it maketh rich; and he addeth no sorrow therewith."

**Gen. 2:16, 17** "And Jehovah God commanded the man, saying, Of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat: but of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for

in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die."

### Lower Animals Not Created to Live Forever

**2 Pet. 2:12** "But these men, like unreasoning animals born naturally to be caught and destroyed, will, in the things of which they are ignorant and speak abusively, even suffer destruction in their own course of destruction."

### Human Death the Result of First Man's Sin

**Rom. 5:12, 14, 19** "Through one man sin entered into the world and death through sin, and thus death spread to all men because they had all sinned—. Nevertheless, death ruled as king from Adam down to Moses, even over those who had not sinned after the likeness of the transgression by Adam, ... through the disobe-

dience of the one man many were constituted sinners."

**Rom. 6:23** "For the wages sin pays is death, but the gift God gives is everlasting life by Christ Jesus our Lord."

**1 Cor. 15:22** "For just as in Adam all are dying, so also in the Christ all will be made alive."

### **Satan Introduced Sin, Caused Death**

**Heb. 2:14** "Therefore, since the 'young children' are sharers of blood and flesh, he also similarly partook of the same things, that through his death he might destroy the one having the means to cause death, that is, the Devil."

**Gen. 3:4, 5, 14** "And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die: for God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil. And Jehovah God said unto the serpent, Because thou hast done this, cursed art thou above all cattle, and above every beast of the field; upon thy belly shalt thou go, and dust shalt thou eat all the days of thy life."

### **Death Due to Adam Is an Enemy**

**1 Cor. 15:26** "As the last enemy, death is to be destroyed."

**Heb. 2:15** "And might emancipate all those who for fear of death were subject to slavery all through their lives."

**Ps. 18:4, 5** "The cords of death compassed me, and the floods of ungodliness made me afraid. The cords of Sheol were round about me; the snares of death came upon me."

**Ps. 55:4, 5** "My heart is sore pained within me: and the terrors of death are fallen upon me. Fearfulness and trembling are come upon me, and horror hath overwhelmed me."

**Ps. 116:3** "The cords of death compassed me, and the pains of Sheol gat hold upon me: I found trouble and sorrow."

### **A Dead Person Is Unconscious, Inactive**

**John 11:11-14** "He said these things, and after this he said to them: 'Lazarus our friend has gone to rest, but I am traveling there to awaken him from sleep.' Therefore the disciples said to him: 'Master, if he has gone to rest, he will get well.' Jesus had spoken, however, about his death. But they imagined he was speaking about taking rest in sleep. At that time, therefore, Jesus said to them outspokenly: 'Lazarus has died.'"

**Ps. 6:5** "For in death there is no remembrance of thee: in Sheol who shall give thee thanks?"

**Eccl. 9:5, 10** "For the living know that they shall die: but the dead know not anything, neither have they any more a reward; for the memory of them is forgotten. Whatsoever thy hand findeth to do, do it with thy might; for there is no work, nor device, nor knowledge, nor wisdom, in Sheol, whither thou goest."

**Isa. 38:18** "For Sheol cannot praise thee, death cannot celebrate thee: they that go down into the pit cannot hope for thy truth."

**Acts 7:60** "After saying this he fell asleep in death."

**Acts 13:36** "For David, on the one hand, served the express will of God in his own generation and fell asleep in death and was laid with his forefathers and did see corruption."

**Eccl. 3:19-21** "For that which befalleth the sons of men befalleth beasts; even one thing befalleth them: as the one dieth, so dieth the other; yea, they have all one breath; and man hath no pre-eminence above the beasts: for all is vanity. All go unto one place; all are of the dust, and all turn to dust again. Who knoweth the spirit of man, whether it goeth upward, and the spirit of the beast, whether it goeth downward to the earth?"

## Dead Persons Are Beyond Any Human Aid

**2 Sam. 12:21-23** "Then said his servants unto him, What thing is this that thou hast done? thou didst fast and weep for the child, while it was alive; but when the child was dead, thou didst rise and eat bread. And he said, While the child was yet alive, I fasted and wept: for I said, Who knoweth whether Jehovah will not be gracious to me, that the child may live? But now he is dead, wherefore should I fast? can I bring him back again? I shall go to him, but he will not return to me."

## Redemption and Resurrection from Adamic Death Possible Through Ransom

**2 Tim. 1:10** "Christ Jesus, who has abolished death but has shed light upon life and incorruption through the good news."

**Heb. 2:9** "But we behold Jesus, who has been made a little lower than angels, crowned with glory and honor for having suffered death, that he by God's undeserved kindness might taste death for every man."

**Heb. 9:27, 28** "And as it is reserved for men to die once for all time, but after this a judgment, so also the Christ was offered once for all time to bear the sins of many, and the second time that he appears it will be apart from sin and to those earnestly looking for him for their salvation."

## Those in Sin Considered Dead by God

**Luke 9:60** "But he said to him: 'Let the dead bury their dead, but you go away and declare abroad the kingdom of God.'"

**1 Tim. 5:6** "But the one that goes in for sensual gratification is dead though she is living."

**Eph. 2:1** "Furthermore, it is you God made alive though you were dead in your trespasses and sins."

## All Men Prior to Christ Died and Are Awaiting Resurrection

**Rom. 5:14** "Nevertheless, death ruled as king from Adam down to Moses, even over those who had not sinned after the likeness of the transgression by Adam."

**Heb. 11:4-40** "By faith Enoch was transferred so as not to see death, and he was nowhere to be found because God had transferred him.... In faith all these died,... as God foresaw something better for us, in order that they might not be made perfect apart from us."

**Gen. 5:24** "And Enoch walked with God: and he was not; for God took him."

**Acts 2:29** "Brothers, it is allowable to speak with freeness of speech to you concerning the family head David, that he both deceased and was buried and his tomb is among us to this day."

## Those Having Faith in Christ's Ransom Considered Alive by God

**1 John 3:14** "We know we have passed over from death to life, because we love the brothers. He who does not love remains in death."

**Mark 12:27** "He is a God, not of the dead, but of the living."

## All Body Members of Christ Must Die a Sacrificial Death with Him

**2 Tim. 2:11** "Trustworthy is the saying: Certainly if we died together, we shall also live together."

**1 Cor. 15:29** "Otherwise, what will they do who are being baptized for the purpose of being dead ones? If the dead are not to be raised up at all, why are they also being baptized for the purpose of being such?"

## Death Triumphed Over by Resurrection of Christ's Body Members

**1 Cor. 15:54-57** "But when this which is corruptible puts on in-

corruption and this which is mortal puts on immortality, then the saying will take place that is written: 'Death is swallowed up forever.' 'Death, where is your victory? Death, where is your sting?' The sting producing death is sin, and the Law gives to sin its power. But thanks to God, for he gives us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ!"

**Hos. 13:14** "I will ransom them from the power of Sheol; I will redeem them from death: O death, where are thy plagues? O Sheol, where is thy destruction?"

**Rom. 8:38, 39** "For I am convinced that neither death nor life nor angels nor governments nor things here nor things to come nor powers nor height nor depth nor any other creation will be able to separate us from God's love that is in Christ Jesus our Lord."

**Death Due to Adam Will Be Completely Done Away with in Christ's 1,000-Year Reign**

**1 Cor. 15:26** "As the last enemy, death is to be destroyed."

**Rev. 21:4** "And he will wipe out every tear from their eyes, and death will be no more, neither will mourning nor outcry nor pain be any more. The former things have passed away."

**Rev. 1:18** "Look! I am living for ever and ever, and I have the keys of death and of Hades."

**Rev. 20:13, 14** "And the sea gave up those dead in it, and death and Hades gave up those dead in them, and they were judged individually according to their deeds. And death and Hades were hurled into the lake of fire. This means the second death, the lake of fire."

**"Second Death" Not Destroyed; Always Within God's Power to Exercise**

**Rev. 20:10, 14** "The Devil... was hurled into the lake of fire and sulphur, where both the wild beast and the false prophet already were; and they will be tor-

mented day and night for ever and ever. And death and Hades were hurled into the lake of fire. This means the second death, the lake of fire."

**Rev. 21:8** "But as for the cowards and those without faith and those who are disgusting in their filth and murderers and fornicators and those practicing spiritism and idolaters and all the liars, their portion will be in the lake that burns with fire and sulphur. This means the second death."

**No Resurrection from the Second Death**

**Jude 12** "These are the rocks hidden below water in your love feasts while they feast with you, shepherds that feed themselves without concern for others; waterless clouds carried this way and that by winds; trees in autumn time, but fruitless, having died twice, having been uprooted."

**Jer. 51:57** "And I will make drunk her princes and her wise men, her governors and her deputies, and her mighty men; and they shall sleep a perpetual sleep, and not wake, saith the King, whose name is Jehovah of hosts."

**Prov. 10:7** "The name of the wicked shall rot."

**Obad. 16** "For as ye have drunk upon my holy mountain, so shall all the nations drink continually; yea, they shall drink, and swallow down, and shall be as though they had not been."

**The Sin That Incurs Second Death**

**1 John 5:16** "There is a sin that does incur death."

**Luke 12:10** "And everyone that says a word against the Son of man, it will be forgiven him; but he that commits blasphemy against the holy spirit will not be forgiven it."

**Heb. 6:4-6** "For it is impossible as regards those who have once for all been enlightened and who have tasted the heavenly free

gift and who have become partakers of holy spirit and who have tasted the right word of God and powers of the coming system of things, but who have fallen away, to revive them again to repentance, because they impale the Son of God afresh for themselves and expose him to public shame."

**Heb. 10:26, 27** "For if we practice sin willfully after having received the accurate knowledge of the truth, there is no longer any sacrifice for sins left, but there is a certain fearful expectation of judgment and there is a fiery jealousy that is going to consume those in opposition."

**Moment When One Expires Bible Describes as Entering the "Gates of Death"**

**Job 38:17** "Have the gates of death been revealed unto thee? or hast thou seen the gates of the shadow of death?"

**Ps. 107:18** "Their soul abhorreth all manner of food; and they draw near unto the gates of death."

**When the Dead Body Is Buried in the Common Grave of Mankind the Bible Describes This as Entering the "Gates of Sheol-Hades" or Gravedom**

**Isa. 38:10** "I said, In the noon-tide of my days I shall go into the gates of Sheol: I am deprived of the residue of my years."

**The Glorified Jesus Christ Has Been Given the Keys to the Figurative Gates of "Death" and "Hades"**

**Rev. 1:18** "I became dead, but, look! I am living for ever and ever, and I have the keys of death and of Hades."

**Resurrection Is Described as Returning from the "Gates of Death" and "Sheol-Hades" or Gravedom**

**Ps. 9:13** "Have mercy upon me, O Jehovah; behold my affliction which I suffer of them that hate

me, thou that liftest me up from the gates of death."

**Rev. 20:13** "And the sea gave up those dead in it, and death and Hades gave up those dead in them, and they were judged individually according to their deeds."

**"Death" Sometimes Used to Denote a Change of Condition**

**Luke 16:22** "Now in course of time the beggar died and he was carried off by the angels to the bosom position of Abraham. Also the rich man died and was buried."

**Rev. 9:6** "And in those days the men will seek death but will by no means find it, and they will desire to die but death keeps fleeing from them."

**No Fear of Second Death for the 144,000 Members of the Kingdom After Their Resurrection to Heaven**

**Rev. 2:11** "He that conquers will by no means be harmed by the second death."

**Rev. 20:6** "Happy and holy is anyone having part in the first resurrection; over these the second death has no authority."

**No Fear of Death for the "Other Sheep" Who Receive Justification to Everlasting Life After Passing Test by Satan at the End of Christ's 1,000-Year Reign**

**Rev. 20:5** "The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were ended."

**Luke 20:35, 36** "But those who have been counted worthy of gaining that system of things and the resurrection from the dead neither marry nor are given in marriage. In fact, neither can they die any more, for they are like the angels, and they are God's children by being children of the resurrection."

**See "Soul". "Ransom."**

# Dedication

(ALSO CONSECRATION, SANCTIFICATION)

## DEFINITION

**DEDICATION.** An act by which a person or thing is initiated into some way, course or use. Christian dedication is the act of a person in setting himself apart by solemn agreement, unreservedly and unconditionally, to do the will of Jehovah God through Christ Jesus, as that will is set forth in the Bible, being made plain by God's holy spirit. It means one must live a holy life, separate from this world, and serve God henceforth to eternity.

**CONSECRATION.** As used in the Hebrew Scriptures, literally, to "fill the hand", to put full power into the hand of those who are to serve in a priestly office. Installation into the priesthood. To Christians it is God's act of installing them as priests of God under the great consecrated High Priest, Christ, and empowering them to act as such. It applies only to Christ and the anointed, spirit-begotten members of his body.

**SANCTIFICATION.** A setting apart for God's holy purpose or use. God sanctifies his spirit-begotten ones by means of his holy spirit and word of truth. They become God's "holy nation", a people for God's name. The ones sanctified co-operate in maintaining sanctification by their action in study and following God's will.

## DEDICATION

**Required of All Who Will Serve God, Receive Everlasting Life**

**Luke 14:27** "Whoever is not carrying his torture stake and coming after me cannot be my disciple."

**Gen. 47:19, 20, 25** "Buy us and our land for bread, and we and our land will be servants unto Pharaoh: and give us seed, that we may live, and not die, and that the land be not desolate. So Joseph bought all the land of Egypt for Pharaoh;... And they said, Thou hast saved our lives: let us find favor in the sight of my lord, and we will be Pharaoh's servants."

**One Must Be Drawn to God by Faith Based on Knowledge of His Word**

**John 14:6** "Jesus said to him: 'I am the way and the truth and

the life. No one comes to the Father except through me.'"

**John 6:44** "No man can come to me unless the Father, who sent me, draws him, and I will resurrect him in the last day."

**Heb. 11:6** "Moreover, without faith it is impossible to win his good pleasure, for he that approaches God must believe that he is and that he becomes the rewarder of those earnestly seeking him."

## Repentance Must Precede Dedication

**Acts 2:37, 41** "Now when they heard this they were stabbed to the heart, and they said to Peter and the rest of the apostles: 'Brothers, what shall we do?' Therefore those who embraced his word heartily were baptized, and on that day about three thousand souls were added."



**Acts 3:19, 20** "Repent, therefore, and turn around so as to get your sins blotted out, that seasons of refreshing may come from the person of Jehovah and that he may send forth the Christ appointed for you, Jesus."

### **Cost of Dedication Must First Be Calculated**

**Luke 14:28-33** "For example, who of you that wants to build a tower does not first sit down and figure out the expense, to see if he has enough to complete it? Otherwise, he might lay its foundation but not have the funds to finish it, and all the onlookers might start to ridicule him, saying: 'This man started to build but had not the funds to finish.' Or what king, marching to meet another king in war does not first sit down and take counsel whether he is able with ten thousand troops to cope with the one that comes against him with twenty thousand? If, in fact, he cannot do so, then while that one is yet far away he sends out a body of ambassadors and sues for peace. Thus, you may be sure, none of you that does not say good-bye to all his belongings can be my disciple."

### **One Dedicating Self Must Recognize Jehovah as Supreme Sovereign, Life-Giver, Christ as Savior, King, Holy Spirit as God's Active Force**

**Matt. 28:19** "Go therefore and make disciples of people of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the holy spirit."

**Ps. 83:18** "That they may know that thou alone, whose name is Jehovah, art the Most High over all the earth."

**Ps. 36:9** "For with thee is the fountain of life."

**Phil. 2:9, 11** "For this very reason also God exalted him to a superior position and kindly gave him the name that is above every other name, and every tongue should openly confess that

Jesus Christ is Lord to the glory of God the Father."

**Gal. 6:8** "Because he who is sowing with a view to his flesh will reap corruption from his flesh, but he who is sowing with a view to the spirit will reap everlasting life from the spirit."

**Eph. 5:18** "Keep getting filled with spirit."

### **Dedication Is Followed by Water Baptism**

**Acts 10:47, 48** "Then Peter responded: 'Can anyone forbid water so that these might not be baptized who have received the holy spirit even as we have?' With that he commanded them to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ."

**Acts 16:30-33** "And he brought them outside and said: 'Sirs, what must I do to get saved?' They said: 'Believe on the Lord Jesus and you will get saved, you and your household.' And they spoke the word of Jehovah to him together with all those in his house. And he took them along in that hour of the night and bathed their stripes, and, one and all, he and his were baptized without delay."

### **Prayerful, Sincere Dedication Is Accepted by Jehovah**

**Acts 10:3-5, 30, 31, 44** "Just about the ninth hour of the day he saw plainly in a vision an angel of God come in to him and say to him: 'Cornelius!' The man gazed at him and, becoming frightened, said: 'What is it, Lord?' He said to him: 'Your prayers and gifts of mercy have ascended as a remembrance before God. So now send men to Joppa and summon a certain Simon who is surnamed Peter.' Accordingly Cornelius said: 'Four days ago counting from this hour I was praying in my house at the ninth hour, when, look! a man in bright raiment stood before me and said: "Cornelius, your prayer has been favorably heard and your gifts of mercy

have been remembered before God.'" While Peter was yet speaking about these matters the holy spirit fell upon all those hearing the word."

**1 Sam. 1:9-28** "So Hannah rose up . . . And she was in bitterness of soul, and prayed unto Jehovah, and wept sore. And she vowed a vow, and said, O Jehovah of hosts, if thou wilt indeed look on the affliction of thy handmaid, and remember me, and not forget thy handmaid, but wilt give unto thy handmaid a man-child, then I will give him unto Jehovah all the days of his life, and there shall no razor come upon his head. . . . And Elkanah knew Hannah his wife; and Jehovah remembered her; and it came to pass, when the time was come about, that Hannah conceived, and bare a son; and she called his name Samuel, saying, Because I have asked him of Jehovah. . . . For this child I prayed; and Jehovah hath given me my petition which I asked of him: therefore also I have granted him to Jehovah; as long as he liveth he is granted to Jehovah."

**1 Ki. 8:41-43** "Moreover concerning the foreigner, that is not of thy people Israel, when he shall come out of a far country for thy name's sake (for they shall hear of thy great name, and of thy mighty hand, and of thine outstretched arm); when he shall come and pray toward this house; hear thou in heaven thy dwelling-place, and do according to all that the foreigner calleth to thee for; that all the peoples of the earth may know thy name, to fear thee, as doth thy people Israel, and that they may know that this house which I have built is called by thy name."

### Examples of Dedication

**Heb. 10:5-7** "Hence when he comes into the world he says: 'You did not desire sacrifice and offering, but you prepared a body for me. You did not approve of

whole burnt-offerings and sin offering.' Then I said, 'Look! I am come (in the roll of the book it is written about me) to do your will, O God.'"

**Heb. 11:24, 25** "By faith Moses, when grown up, refused to be called the son of the daughter of Pharaoh, choosing to be ill-treated with the people of God rather than to have the temporary enjoyment of sin."

See: Acts, chapters 2, 10; and Hebrews, chapter 11.

### Dedication Must Be Faithfully Carried Out

**Rom. 1:31, 32** "Without understanding, false to agreements, having no natural affection, merciless. Although these know full well the righteous decree of God, that those practicing such things are deserving of death, they not only keep on doing them but also approve those practicing them."

**Ecc. 5:2, 4-6** "Be not rash with thy mouth and let not thy heart be hasty to utter anything before God; for God is in heaven, and thou upon earth: therefore let thy words be few. When thou vowest a vow unto God, defer not to pay it; for he hath no pleasure in fools: pay that which thou vowest. Better is it that thou shouldest not vow than that thou shouldest vow and not pay. Suffer not thy mouth to cause thy flesh to sin; neither say thou before the angel, that it was an error: wherefore should God be angry at thy voice, and destroy the work of thy hands?"

**Jas. 1:27; 2:17, 24** "The form of worship that is clean and undefiled from the standpoint of our God and Father is this: to care for orphans and widows in their tribulation, and to keep oneself without spot from the world." "Thus, too, faith, if it does not have works, is dead in itself. You see that a man is to be declared righteous by works, and not by faith alone."

### Dedicated One Must Work with God's Organization

**Matt. 12:30** "He that is not on my side is against me, and he that does not gather with me scatters."

**Matt. 24:45-47** "Who really is the faithful and discreet slave whom his master appointed over his domestics to give them their food at the proper time? Happy is that slave if his master on arriving finds him doing so. Truly I say to you, He will appoint him over all his belongings."

**John 10:16** "And I have other sheep, which are not of this fold; those also I must bring, and they will listen to my voice, and they will become one flock, one shepherd."

**Eccl. 4:9-12** "Two are better than one, because they have a good reward for their labor. For if they fall, the one will lift up his fellow; but woe to him that is alone when he falleth, and hath not another to lift him up. Again, if two lie together, then they have warmth; but how can one be warm alone? And if a man prevail against him that is alone, two shall withstand him; and a threefold cord is not quickly broken."

### Things, Possessions May Be Dedicated to God's Service

**Deut. 20:5** "And the officers shall speak unto the people, saying, What man is there that hath built a new house, and hath not dedicated it? let him go and return to his house, lest he die in the battle, and another man dedicate it."

**Num. 7:10, 11, 84, 88** "And the princes offered for the dedication of the altar in the day that it was anointed, even the princes offered their oblation before the altar. And Jehovah said unto Moses, They shall offer their oblation, each prince on his day, for the dedication of the altar. This was the dedication of the altar, in the day when it was anointed,

by the princes of Israel: twelve silver platters, twelve silver bowls, twelve golden spoons; and all the oxen for the sacrifice of peace-offerings twenty and four bullocks, the rams sixty, the he-goats sixty, the he-lambs a year old sixty. This was the dedication of the altar, after that it was anointed."

**2 Chron. 7:9** "And on the eighth day . . . they kept the dedication of the altar seven days, and the feast seven days."

**Ezra 6:16** "And the children of Israel, the priests and the Levites, and the rest of the children of the captivity, kept the dedication of this house of God with joy."

**Neh. 12:27** "And at the dedication of the wall of Jerusalem they sought the Levites out of all their places, to bring them to Jerusalem, to keep the dedication with gladness, both with thanksgivings, and with singing, with cymbals, psalteries, and with harps."

## CONSECRATION

### It Is God Who Consecrates

**Matt. 3:13-17** "Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan to John in order to be baptized by him. But the latter tried to prevent him, saying: 'I am the one needing to be baptized by you, and are you coming to me?' In reply Jesus said to him: 'Let it be, this time, for in that way it is suitable for us to carry out all that is righteous.' Then he quit preventing him. After being baptized Jesus immediately came up from the water; and, look! the heavens were opened up, and he saw descending like a dove God's spirit coming upon him. Look! also, there was a voice from the heavens that said: 'This is my Son, the beloved, whom I have approved.'"

**Heb. 5:4-6** "Also a man takes this honor, not of his own accord, but only when he is called by God, just as Aaron also was. So,

too, the Christ did not glorify himself by becoming a high priest, but was glorified by him who spoke with reference to him: 'You are my Son; today I have become your Father.' Just as he says also in another place: 'You are a priest forever after the likeness of Melchizedek.'"

**Heb. 7:28** "For the Law appoints men high priests having weakness, but the word of the sworn oath that came after the Law appoints a Son, who is perfected forever."

### **Consecration Applies Only to Those Who Are Anointed as Priests of God—the 144,001**

**Ex. 29:9, 29** "And thou shalt gird them with girdles, Aaron and his sons, and bind head-tires on them: and they shall have the priesthood by a perpetual statute: and thou shalt consecrate Aaron and his sons. And the holy garments of Aaron shall be for his sons after him, to be anointed in them, and to be consecrated in them."

**Lev. 8:22-24** "And he presented the other ram, the ram of consecration: and Aaron and his sons laid their hands upon the head of the ram. And he slew it; and Moses took of the blood thereof, and put it upon the tip of Aaron's right ear, and upon the thumb of his right hand, and upon the great toe of his right foot. And he brought Aaron's sons; and Moses put of the blood upon the tip of their right ear, and upon the thumb of their right hand, and upon the great toe of their right foot: and Moses sprinkled the blood upon the altar round about."

**Heb. 3:1** "Consequently, holy brothers, partakers of the heavenly calling, consider the apostle and high priest whom we confess—Jesus."

**Rev. 14:1, 3** "And I saw, and look! the Lamb standing upon the mount Zion, and with him a hundred and forty-four thousand

having his name and the name of his Father written on their foreheads. And they are singing as if a new song before the throne and before the four living creatures and the persons of advanced age; and no one was able to master that song but the hundred and forty-four thousand, who have been purchased from the earth."

**Rev. 5:9, 10** "And they sing a new song, saying: 'You are worthy to take the scroll and open its seals, because you were slaughtered and with your blood you bought persons for God out of every tribe and tongue and people and nation, and you made them to be a kingdom and priests to our God, and they will rule as kings over the earth.'"

### **Consecrated Anointed Underpriests Are Brought into New Covenant over Christ's Sacrifice**

**Ps. 50:5** "Gather my saints together unto me, those that have made a covenant with me by sacrifice."

### **Consecrated Ones Are Spirit Begotten to a Heavenly Hope**

**1 Pet. 1:3, 4** "Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, for according to his great mercy he gave us a new birth to a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, to an incorruptible and undefiled and unfading inheritance. It is reserved in the heavens for you."

## **SANCTIFICATION**

### **Spirit-begotten Ones Are Sanctified**

**1 Thess. 4:3** "For this is what God wills, the sanctifying of you, that you abstain from fornication."

**Heb. 2:10, 11** "For it was fitting for the one for whose sake all things are and through whom all things are, in bringing many sons to glory, to make the Chief

Agent of their salvation perfect through sufferings. For both he who is sanctifying and those who are being sanctified all stem from one, and for this cause he is not ashamed to call them 'brothers'."

### **Both God and Dedicated Ones Have a Part in Sanctifying**

**Lev. 20:7, 8** "Sanctify yourselves therefore, and be ye holy; for I am Jehovah your God. And ye shall keep my statutes, and do them: I am Jehovah who sanctifieth you."

**John 17:19** "And I am sanctifying myself in their behalf, that they also may be sanctified by means of truth."

**1 Thess. 4:4** "Each one of you should know how to get possession of his own vessel in sanctification and honor."

### **Faith in Christ Necessary**

**Acts 26:18** "To open their eyes, to turn them from darkness to light and from the authority of Satan to God, in order for them to receive forgiveness of sins and an inheritance among those sanctified by their faith in me."

### **God, Through Christ, Sanctifies by Means of the Truth and Holy Spirit**

**Eph. 5:25-27** "Christ also loved the congregation and delivered up himself for it, that he might sanctify it, cleansing it with the bath of water by means of the word, that he might present the congregation to himself in its splendor, not having a spot or a wrinkle or any of such things, but that it should be holy and without blemish."

**John 17:17** "Sanctify them by means of the truth; your word is truth."

**Heb. 10:22** "Let us approach with sincere hearts in the full assurance of faith, having had our hearts sprinkled from a wicked conscience and our bodies washed with clean water."

**1 Cor. 6:11** "And yet that is what some of you were. But you

have been washed clean, but you have been sanctified, but you have been declared righteous in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ and with the spirit of our God."

**Acts 20:32** "And now I commit you to God and to the word of his undeserved kindness, which word can build you up and give you the inheritance among all the sanctified ones."

**1 Thess. 5:23** "May the very God of peace sanctify you completely."

**Heb. 13:12** "Hence Jesus also, that he might sanctify the people with his own blood, suffered outside the gate."

### **Such Are "Saints" or Holy Ones — God's Holy Nation**

**1 Pet. 1:15, 16** "But, in accord with the holy one who called you, do you also become holy yourselves in all your conduct, because it is written: 'You must be holy, because I am holy.'"

**Col. 1:12** "Thanking the Father who rendered you suitable for your participation in the inheritance of the holy ones in the light."

**Eph. 1:1** "Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus through God's will, to the holy ones who are also faithful ones in union with Christ Jesus."

### **These Must Maintain Sanctification to Be Used by God and Receive Inheritance with Christ**

**Acts 20:32** "And now I commit you to God and to the word of his undeserved kindness, which word can build you up and give you the inheritance among all the sanctified ones."

**2 Tim. 2:20, 21** "Now in a large house there are vessels not only of gold and silver but also of wood and earthenware, and some for an honorable purpose but others for a purpose lacking honor. If, therefore, anyone keeps

clear of the latter ones, he will be a vessel for an honorable purpose, sanctified, useful to his

owner, prepared for every good work."

See "Baptism".

# Devil and Demons

## DEFINITION

The Devil—a mighty spirit person, an angel. Originally a righteous cherub of God's creation by means of the Word, the First-begotten Son of God. He was not created a devil or Satan, but made himself such by his rebellion against Almighty God. He was the beginner and introducer of sin in the universe, and is extremely wicked, the great enemy of God and all his righteous creatures. Sentenced to death at the time of his rebellion, but permitted to remain in order that God's supremacy might be proved. He will be abyssed at Armageddon by Christ Jesus, and finally annihilated at the end of Christ's millennial reign. Also known as Satan. A false, mimic god.

### Originally a Righteous Creature of God—Placed as Protectorate over Adam and Eve in Eden

Ezek. 28:12-15 "Take up a lamentation over the king of Tyre, and say unto him, . . . Thou sealest up the sum, full of wisdom, and perfect in beauty. Thou wast in Eden, the garden of God; . . . the workmanship of thy tabrets and of thy pipes was in thee; in the day that thou wast created they were prepared. Thou wast the anointed cherub that covereth: and I set thee, so that thou wast upon the holy mountain of God; thou hast walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire. Thou wast perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created, till unrighteousness was found in thee."

Dan. 4:10-12 "Behold, a tree in the midst of the earth; and the height thereof was great. The tree grew, and was strong, and the height thereof reached unto heaven, and the sight thereof to the end of all the earth. The leaves thereof were fair, and the fruit thereof much, and in it was food for all: the beasts of the field had shadow under it, and the birds of the heavens dwelt

in the branches thereof, and all flesh was fed from it."

### How Sin, Disobedience, Lies and Murder Were Brought In by 'Covering Cherub'

Jas. 1:13-15 "Let no one say: 'I am being tried by God.' No; for with evil things God cannot be tried nor does he himself try anyone. But each one is tried by being drawn out and enticed by his own desire. Then the desire, when it has become fertile, gives birth to sin; in turn, sin, when it has been accomplished, brings forth death."

Ezek. 28:15, 16 "Thou wast perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created, till unrighteousness was found in thee. By the abundance of thy traffic they filled the midst of thee with violence, and thou hast sinned."

John 8:44 "You are from your father the Devil and you wish to do the desires of your father. That one was a manslayer when he began, and he did not stand fast in the truth, because truth is not in him. When he speaks the lie, he speaks according to his own disposition, because he is a liar and the father of the lie."

1 John 3:8 "He who practices sin originates with the Devil, because the Devil has been sinning from when he began."

### Instituted Rebellion Against Jehovah

Isa. 14:13, 14 "Thou saidst in thy heart, I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; and I will sit upon the mount of congregation, in the uttermost parts of the north; I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will make myself like the Most High."

1 Tim. 3:6 "Not a newly converted man, for fear that he might get puffed up with pride and fall into the judgment passed upon the Devil."

Eph. 2:2 "You at one time walked according to the system of things of this world, according to the ruler of the authority of the air, the spirit that now operates in the sons of disobedience."

Ezek. 28:17, 18 "Thy heart was lifted up because of thy beauty; thou hast corrupted thy wisdom by reason of thy brightness: ... By the multitude of thine iniquities, in the unrighteousness of thy traffic, thou hast profaned thy sanctuaries."

### Brought Challenge Against God's Supremacy, Truthfulness, Justice

Gen. 3:4, 5 "The serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die: for God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil."

See: Job, chapters 1, 2, below; Isa. 14:13, 14, above.

### Raised Question of Man's Integrity Toward God and Challenged God's Way of Ruling Universe by Love

Job 1:9-11; 2:3-5 "Then Satan answered Jehovah, and said, Doth Job fear God for nought? Hast

thou not made a hedge about him, and about his house, and about all that he hath, on every side? thou hast blessed the work of his hands, and his substance is increased in the land. But put forth thy hand now, and touch all that he hath, and he will renounce thee to thy face."

"And Jehovah said unto Satan, Hast thou considered my servant Job? for there is none like him in the earth, a perfect and an upright man, one that feareth God, and turneth away from evil: and he still holdeth fast his integrity, although thou movedst me against him, to destroy him without cause. And Satan answered Jehovah, and said, Skin for skin, yea, all that a man hath will he give for his life. But put forth thy hand now, and touch his bone and his flesh, and he will renounce thee to thy face."

Rev. 12:10 "The accuser of our brothers has been hurled down, who accuses them day and night before our God."

### Names Given to Him After His Rebellion

Rev. 12:9 "So down the great dragon was hurled, the original serpent, the one called Devil and Satan, who is misleading the entire inhabited earth."

Rev. 20:2 "He seized the dragon, the original serpent, who is the Devil and Satan."

### Introduced False Religion, Creature Worship

Rom. 1:22 "Although asserting they were wise, they became foolish and turned the glory of the incorruptible God into something like the image of corruptible man and of birds and four-footed creatures and creeping things."

Jude 9 "Michael the archangel had a difference with the Devil and was disputing about Moses' body."

See: Gen. 3:4, 5, above.

## The Cause of Sin and Death and Earth's Woes

**Isa. 14:12, 16, 17, 20** "How art thou cut down to the ground, that didst lay low the nations! ... Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms; that made the world as a wilderness, and overthrew the cities thereof; that let not loose his prisoners to their home? ... Thou hast slain thy people."

**Acts 10:38** "Jesus ... went through the land doing good and healing all those oppressed by the Devil."

**Rom. 5:12, 19** "Through one man sin entered into the world and death through sin, and thus death spread to all men because they had all sinned."

## Important to Know About Satan and His Activities so as to Avoid His Snares

**2 Cor. 2:11** "That we may not be overreached by Satan, for we are not ignorant of his designs."

**2 Tim. 2:25, 26** "Instructing with mildness ... as ... they may come back to their proper senses out from the snare of the Devil, seeing that they have been caught alive by him for the will of that one."

**2 Thess. 2:9, 10** "The lawless one's presence is according to the operation of Satan with every powerful work and lying signs and wonders and with every unrighteous deception."

## Satan Is a Person, Not the Abstract Quality of Evil

**Matt. 4:1-11** "The Tempter came and said to him: ... In reply he said: ... Then the Devil took him along into the holy city, and he stationed him upon the battlement of the temple and said to him: ... Jesus said to him: ... Again the Devil took him along to an unusually high mountain, and showed him all the kingdoms of the world and their glory, and he said to him: 'All

these things I will give you if you fall down and do an act of worship to me.' Then Jesus said to him: 'Go away, Satan!' ... Then the Devil left him."

**See also:** Luke, chapter 4.

**Jude 9** "When Michael the archangel had a difference with the Devil and was disputing about Moses' body, he did not dare to bring a judgment against him in abusive terms, but said: 'May Jehovah rebuke you.'"

**Zech. 3:1, 2** "And he showed me Joshua the high priest standing before the angel of Jehovah, and Satan standing at his right hand to be his adversary. And Jehovah said unto Satan, Jehovah rebuke thee, O Satan."

**Mark 3:22** "Also the scribes ... were saying: 'He has Beelzebub, and he expels the demons by means of the ruler of the demons.'"

**See also:** Job, chapters 1, 2; Rev. 12:3-17, regarding the conversation between God and Satan and the war in heaven between Michael and Satan.

## He Appears as Benefactor, Light-Bearer, to Deceive

**2 Cor. 11:3, 14** "But I am afraid that somehow, as the serpent seduced Eve by its craftiness, your minds might be corrupted away from the sincerity and the chastity that are due the Christ. And no wonder, for Satan himself keeps transforming himself into an angel of light."

**Rev. 3:9** "Look! I will give those from the synagogue of Satan who say they are Jews, and yet they are not but are lying—look! I will make them come and do obeisance before your feet."

**See:** Gen. 3:1-5.

**Cast Out from God's Organization, Sentenced to Death at Time of Rebellion in Eden—No Light,**

## Appointment or Assignment from God Thereafter

**Gen. 3:14, 15** "And Jehovah God said unto the serpent, Be-



cause thou hast done this, cursed art thou above all cattle, and above every beast of the field; upon thy belly shalt thou go, and dust shalt thou eat all the days of thy life: and I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed: he shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel."

**Dan. 4:13, 14** "A watcher and a holy one came down from heaven. He cried aloud, and said thus, Hew down the tree, and cut off its branches, shake off its leaves, and scatter its fruit: let the beasts get away from under it, and the fowls from its branches."

**Ezek. 28:16, 18, 19** "Therefore have I cast thee as profane out of the mountain of God; . . . therefore have I brought forth a fire from the midst of thee; it hath devoured thee, and I have turned thee to ashes upon the earth in the sight of all them that behold thee. All they that know thee among the peoples shall be astonished at thee: thou art become a terror, and thou shalt nevermore have any being."

**Ps. 94:20** "Shall the throne of wickedness have fellowship with thee?"

**2 Cor. 6:15** "What harmony is there between Christ and Belial?"

**Nah. 1:3** "Jehovah . . . will by no means clear the guilty."

**Hab. 1:13** "Thou that art of purer eyes than to behold evil, and that canst not look on perverseness."

**Permitted to Exist for a Time, that the Issue of Jehovah's Supremacy and Faithful Men's Integrity Be Settled Forever**

**Ex. 9:16** "In very deed for this cause have I made thee to stand [spared you, AT], to show thee my power, and that my name may be declared throughout all the earth."

**Rom. 9:17** "For the Scripture says to Pharaoh: 'For this very purpose I have let you remain, that in connection with you I

may demonstrate my power and that my name may be published throughout all the earth.'"

**Eccl. 3:1, 7, 8, 16, 17** "For everything there is a season, and a time for every purpose under heaven: . . . a time to keep silence, and a time to speak; . . . a time for war, and a time for peace. . . In the place of justice, . . . wickedness was there; and in the place of righteousness, . . . wickedness was there. . . God will judge the righteous and the wicked; for there is a time there for every purpose and for every work."

**Nah. 1:9** "What do ye devise against Jehovah? he will make a full end; affliction shall not rise up the second time."

**Prov. 27:11** "My son, be wise, and make my heart glad, that I may answer him that reproacheth me."

**Ps. 74:10, 22, 23** "How long, O God, shall the adversary reproach? Shall the enemy blaspheme thy name for ever? Arise, O God, plead thine own cause: remember how the foolish man reproacheth thee all the day. Forget not the voice of thine adversaries: the tumult of those that rise up against thee ascendeth continually."

**Ps. 83:17, 18** "Let them be put to shame and dismayed for ever; yea, let them be confounded and perish; that they may know that thou alone, whose name is Jehovah, art the Most High over all the earth."

**Rev. 6:10** "And they cried with a loud voice, saying: 'Until when, Sovereign Lord holy and true, are you refraining from judging and avenging our blood upon those who dwell on the earth?'"

**Still Retains Personal Power and Acts as Outlaw Against God, Assaults God's Servants**

**1 Pet. 5:8** "Your adversary, the Devil, walks about like a roaring lion, seeking to devour."

**Luke 22:31** "Simon, Simon, look! Satan has demanded to have you men to sift you as wheat."

**2 Cor. 12:7** "That I might not be overly exalted, there was given me a thorn in the flesh, an angel of Satan, to keep striking me."

**1 Thess. 2:18** "We wanted to come to you, yes, I Paul, both once and a second time, but Satan cut across our path."

**Rev. 2:10** "Look! the Devil will keep on throwing some of you into prison that you may be fully put to the test, and that you may have tribulation ten days."

**Gen. 3:15** "He shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel."

**John 13:2** "So, while the evening meal was going on, the Devil having already put it into the heart of Judas Iscariot, the son of Simon, to betray him."

See also: Matthew, chapter 4, and Luke, chapter 4.

### **Through Sin and His Organization, Satan Brings Temptation and Distress**

**Heb. 2:14, 15** "Therefore, since the 'young children' are sharers of blood and flesh, he also similarly partook of the same things, that through his death he might destroy the one having the means to cause death, that is, the Devil, and might emancipate all those who for fear of death were subject to slavery all through their lives."

**Jas. 3:14-16** "If you have bitter jealousy and contentiousness in your hearts, . . . This is not the wisdom that comes down from above, but is the earthly, animal, demonic. For where jealousy and contentiousness are, there disorder and every vile thing are."

**1 Chron. 21:1, 8** "And Satan stood up against Israel, and moved David to number Israel. And David said unto God, I have sinned greatly, in that I have done this thing."

**Acts 5:3** "Peter said: 'Ananias, to what end has Satan em-

boldened you to play false to the holy spirit and to hold back secretly some of the price of the field?'"

**Nah. 3:1** "Woe to the bloody city! it is all full of lies and rapine; the prey departeth not."

**Rev. 18:2, 3** "Babylon the great has fallen, and she has become a dwelling-place of demons . . . and a lurking-place of every unclean and hated bird! For because of the passion-arousing wine of her fornication all the nations have fallen victim, and the kings of the earth committed fornication with her, and the merchants of the earth became rich due to the power of her shameless luxury."

**Matt. 24:9** "Then people will deliver you up to tribulation and will kill you, and you will be hated by all the nations on account of my name."

### **Has Built Up a Great "Seed" Organization Composed of Invisible "Heavens" (Demons), and Visible "Earth" (Humans)**

**Gen. 3:15** "I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed."

**Dan. 2:31-33** "Thou, O king, sawest, and, behold, a great image. This image, which was mighty, and whose brightness was excellent, stood before thee; and the aspect thereof was terrible. As for this image, its head was of fine gold, its breast and its arms of silver, its belly and its thighs of brass, its legs of iron, its feet part of iron, and part of clay."

**2 Pet. 3:7-13** "The heavens and the earth that are now are stored up for fire and are being reserved to the day of judgment and of destruction . . . the heavens will pass away . . . and earth and the works in it will be discovered . . . the heavens being on fire will be dissolved and the elements being intensely hot will melt!"

**Isa. 47:1, 5** "Come down, and sit in the dust, O virgin daughter

of Babylon; sit on the ground without a throne...thou shalt no more be called The mistress of kingdoms."

***His organization of demons***

**Rev. 12:3, 4** "And another sign was seen in heaven, and look! a great fiery-colored dragon, with seven heads and ten horns and upon its heads seven diadems; and its tail draws a third of the stars of heaven, and it hurled them down to the earth."

**Matt. 12:24** "The Pharisees said: 'This fellow does not expel the demons except by means of Beelzebub, the ruler of the demons.'"

**Eph. 6:11, 12** "Stand firm against the machinations of the Devil; because we have a fight, not against blood and flesh, but against the governments, against the authorities, against the world-rulers of this darkness, against the wicked spirit forces in the heavenly places."

**Dan. 10:13** "The prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me one and twenty days; but, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me."

***His organization of humans***

**Matt. 13:38, 39** "The field is the world; ... the weeds are the sons of the wicked one, and the enemy that sowed them is the Devil."

**1 John 3:10** "The children of God and the children of the Devil are evident by this fact: Everyone who does not practice righteousness does not originate with God, neither does he who does not love his brother."

**Rev. 13:1, 2** "And I saw a wild beast ascending out of the sea, with ten horns and seven heads, and upon its horns ten diadems, but upon its heads blasphemous names. Now the wild beast that I saw was like a leopard, but its feet were as those of a bear, and its mouth was as a lion's mouth. And the dragon gave the beast its power and its throne and great authority."

**Satan's First World Destroyed by the Flood**

**2 Pet. 3:6** "The world of that time suffered destruction when it was deluged with water."

**Satan Is the God of This Present Evil System of Things**

**2 Cor. 4:4** "The god of this system of things has blinded the minds of the unbelievers, that the illumination of the glorious good news about the Christ, who is the image of God, might not shine through."

**1 John 5:19** "The whole world is lying in the power of the wicked one."

**Became "God of World" in the Broadest Sense in 607 B.C. at Time of Fall of Jehovah's Typical Theocratic Government at Jerusalem**

**Ezek. 21:25-27** "And thou, O deadly wounded wicked one, the prince of Israel, whose day is come, ... thus saith the Lord Jehovah: Remove the mitre, and take off the crown; this shall be no more the same; exalt that which is low, and abase that which is high. I will overturn, overturn, overturn it: this also shall be no more, until he come whose right it is; and I will give it him."

**Isa. 14:13** "I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; and I will sit upon the mount of congregation, in the uttermost parts of the north."

**See: Ps. 48:1, 2.**

**Satan's Uninterrupted Rule of Nations Extended "7 Times" (2,520 Years) till His Failure to Overthrow the Newborn Kingdom in Heaven, A.D. 1914**

**Dan. 4:16, 25** "Let his heart be changed from man's and let a beast's heart be given unto him; and let seven times pass over him...till thou know that the Most High ruleth in the kingdom

of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will."

**Rev. 12:4, 5, 7, 9** "And the dragon kept standing before the woman who was about to give birth, that, when she did give birth, it might devour her child. And she gave birth to a son, a male, who is destined to shepherd all the nations with an iron rod. And her child was caught away to God and to his throne. And war broke out in heaven: Michael and his angels battled with the dragon,... So down the great dragon was hurled."

**Jesus' Earthly Course Fully Proved Satan a Liar and Brought a Judgment of Condemnation on Satan's World**

**John 12:31** "Now there is a judging of this world; now the ruler of this world will be cast out."

**John 14:30** "The ruler of the world is coming. And yet he has no hold on me."

**John 16:33** "Cheer up! I have conquered the world."

**Luke 10:18** "He said to them: 'I began to behold Satan already fallen like lightning from heaven.'"

**Cast Down from Heaven to Earth by the King Christ Jesus, A.D. 1914-1918, Satan's Activities Are Now Confined to Earth**

**Rev. 12:9-17** "So down the great dragon was hurled, the original serpent, the one called Devil and Satan, who is misleading the entire inhabited earth; he was hurled down to the earth, and his angels were hurled down with him. And I heard a loud voice in heaven say: 'Now have come to pass the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God and the authority of his Christ,... Now when the dragon saw it was hurled down to the earth, it persecuted the woman that gave birth to the male child.... And the dragon... went off to wage

war with the remaining ones of her seed, who observe the commandments of God and have the work of bearing witness to Jesus."

**Rev. 18:2** "She has fallen! Babylon the great has fallen, and she has become a dwelling-place of demons and a lurking-place of every unclean exhalation and a lurking-place of every unclean and hated bird!"

**Satan Causes Earth's Present Distress; He Gathers Nations to Final Battle Against God**

**Rev. 12:12** "On this account be glad, you heavens and you who reside in them! Woe for the earth and for the sea, because the Devil has come down to you, having great anger, knowing he has a short period of time."

**Rev. 16:13-16** "I saw three unclean inspired expressions that looked like frogs come out of the mouth of the dragon and out of the mouth of the wild beast and out of the mouth of the false prophet. They are, in fact, expressions inspired by demons and perform signs, and they go forth to the kings of the entire inhabited earth, to gather them together to the war of the great day of God the Almighty.... And they gathered them together to the place that is called in Hebrew Har-Magedon."

**Taunt Song Against Satan Now Applies in Fullest Sense, Reaches Crescendo at Armageddon**

**Isa. 14:4-20** "Sheol from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming;... Thy pomp is brought down to Sheol,... How art thou fallen from heaven, O day-star, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground,... thou shalt be brought down to Sheol, to the uttermost parts of the pit.... Thou art cast forth away from thy sepulchre like an abominable branch, clothed with the slain, that are thrust through with the sword, that go down to the stones of the

pit; as a dead body trodden under foot. Thou shalt not be joined with them in burial."

**Will Be Cast into Abyss of Deathlike Inactivity After His Organization Is Destroyed at Armageddon**

**Rev. 19:19-20:3** "The wild beast ...and...the false prophet... both were hurled into the fiery lake that burns with sulphur. But the rest were killed off with the long sword of the one seated on the horse... And I saw an angel coming down out of heaven with the key of the abyss and a great chain in his hand. And he seized the dragon, the original serpent, who is the Devil and Satan, and bound him for a thousand years. And he hurled him into the abyss and shut it and sealed it over him, that he might not mislead the nations any more until the thousand years were ended."

**Rom. 16:20** "The God who gives peace will crush Satan under your feet shortly."

**Jer. 25:15-26** "Take this cup of the wine of wrath at my hand, and cause all the nations, to whom I send thee, to drink it. ... and the king of Sheshach shall drink after them."

**Dan. 2:34, 35** "Thou sawest till that a stone was cut out without hands, which smote the image upon its feet that were of iron and clay, and brake them in pieces. Then was the iron, the clay, the brass, the silver, and the gold, broken in pieces together, and became like the chaff of the summer threshing-floors; and the wind carried them away, so that no place was found for them: and the stone that smote the image became a great mountain, and filled the whole earth."

**All Traces of Satan's Works Erased Forever from Universe by Christ Jesus**

**Heb. 2:14** "Therefore, since the 'young children' are sharers of blood and flesh, he also similarly

partook of the same things, that through his death he might destroy the one having the means to cause death, that is, the Devil."

**1 John 3:8** "For this purpose the Son of God was made manifest, namely, to break up the works of the Devil."

**1 Cor. 15:24-27** "Next, the accomplished end, when he hands over the kingdom to his God and Father, when he has destroyed all government and all authority and power. For he must rule as king until God has put all enemies under his feet. As the last enemy, death is to be destroyed. For God 'subjected all things under his feet'."

**Satan Resuscitated at the End of 1,000 Years of Christ's Peaceful Reign, Then Eternally Destroyed in Final Vindication of God's Sovereign Supremacy**

**Rev. 20:3, 7-10** "Now as soon as the thousand years have been ended, Satan will be let loose out of his prison, and he will go out to mislead those nations in the four quarters of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together for the war... But fire came down out of heaven and devoured them. And the Devil who was misleading them was hurled into the lake of fire and sulphur, where both the wild beast and the false prophet already were; and they will be tormented day and night for ever and ever."

**Truth and Spirit of God with Service and Prayer the Protection Against Satan**

**Ps. 91:4** "His truth is a shield and a buckler."

**Jas. 4:7** "Subject yourselves, therefore, to God; but oppose the Devil, and he will flee from you."

**John 8:32** "The truth will set you free."

**Acts 26:18** "To open their eyes, to turn them from darkness to light and from the authority of Satan to God."

**Matt. 4:10, 11** "Then Jesus said to him: 'Go away, Satan! For

it is written, "It is Jehovah your God you must worship, and it is to him alone you must render sacred service." Then the Devil left him, and, look! angels came and began to minister to him."

**Eph. 6:14-18** "Stand firm, therefore, with your loins girded about with truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness, and with your feet shod with the equipment of the good news of peace. Above all things, take up the large shield of faith, with which you will be able to quench all the wicked one's burning missiles. Also accept the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the spirit, that is, God's word, while with every form of prayer and supplication you carry on prayer on every occasion in spirit."

#### **Satan Is Restrained by God's Angels from Destroying God's Servants**

**Ps. 34:7** "The angel of Jehovah encampeth round about them that fear him, and delivereth them."

**Ps. 91:11, 12** "He will give his angels charge over thee, to keep thee in all thy ways. They shall bear thee up in their hands, lest thou dash thy foot against a stone."

**Matt. 18:10** "Keep watching that you men do not despise one of these little ones, for I tell you that their angels in heaven always have access to my Father who is in heaven."

**Heb. 1:14** "Are they [angels] not all spirits for public service, sent forth to minister for those who are going to inherit salvation?"

**2 Ki. 6:16, 17** "He answered, Fear not; for they that are with us are more than they that are with them. And Elisha prayed, and said, Jehovah, I pray thee, open his eyes, that he may see. And Jehovah opened the eyes of the young man; and he saw: and, behold, the mountain was full of

horses and chariots of fire round about Elisha."

#### **Satan Has Never Been God over Those Serving Jehovah**

**Luke 20:36-38** "He calls Jehovah 'the God of Abraham and God of Isaac and God of Jacob'. He is a God, not of the dead, but of the living, for they are all living from his standpoint."

**Heb. 11:32, 16** "The time will fail me if I go on to relate about Gideon, Barak, Samson, Jephthah, David as well as Samuel and the other prophets. Hence God is not ashamed of them, to be called upon as their God, for he has made a city ready for them."

#### **Those Maintaining Integrity and Who Prove Satan a Liar Rewarded with Everlasting Life**

**2 Tim. 4:7, 8** "I have fought the right fight, I have run the course to the finish, I have observed the faith. From this time on there is reserved for me the crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, will give me as a reward in that day, yet not only to me, but also to all those who have loved his manifestation."

**Rev. 2:10** "Prove yourself faithful even with the danger of death, and I will give you the crown of life."

**1 Pet. 4:14, 19** "If you are being reproached for the name of Christ, you are happy, because the spirit of glory, even the spirit of God, is resting upon you. So, then, also let those who are suffering in harmony with the will of God keep on commending their souls to a faithful Creator while they are doing good."

**Matt. 25:46** "And these [the goats] will depart into everlasting cutting-off, but the righteous ones [the sheep] into everlasting life."

**DEMONS**

**Originally Angels of God; These Rebelled, Joined Satan Before Flood, Becoming Devils, Demons—Materialized as Humans**

**Gen. 6:4** "The Nephilim were in the earth in those days, and also after that, when the sons of God came in unto the daughters of men, and they bare children to them: the same were the mighty men that were of old, the men of renown."

**1 Pet. 3:19, 20** "In this state also he went his way and preached to the spirits in prison, which had once been disobedient when the patience of God was waiting in Noah's days, while the ark was being constructed."

**Such Demons Were Cast Out from God's Organization, Sentenced to Death**

**Jude 6** "And the angels that did not keep their original position but forsook their own proper dwelling-place he has reserved with eternal bonds under dense darkness for the judgment of the great day."

**2 Pet. 2:4** "God did not hold back from punishing the angels that sinned, but, by throwing them into Tartarus, delivered them to pits of dense darkness to be reserved for judgment."

**Restrained from Materializing Since the Flood, They Use Human Mediums to Communicate with Men**

**Lev. 19:31** "Turn ye not unto them that have familiar spirits, nor unto the wizards."

**Rev. 18:23** "By your spiritistic practice all the nations were misled."

**Acts 16:16-19** "A certain servant girl with a spirit, a demon of divination, . . . used to furnish her masters with much gain by practicing the art of prediction. . . . Paul . . . said to the spirit: 'I order you in the name of Jesus

Christ to come out of her.' And it came out that very hour."

**May Possess Humans, Controlling Their Minds and Actions**

**Luke 4:41** "Demons also would come out of many, shouting and saying: 'You are the Son of God.' But, rebuking them, he would not permit them to speak, because they knew him to be the Christ."

**Luke 8:27-29** "A certain man from the city who had demons met him. And for a considerable time he had not worn clothing, and he was staying, not at home, but among the tombs. At the sight of Jesus he cried aloud and fell down before him, and with a loud voice he said: 'What have I to do with you, Jesus Son of the Most High God? I beg you, do not torment me.' (For he had been ordering the unclean spirit to come out of the man. For over a long time it had held him fast, and he was repeatedly bound with chains and fetters under guard, but he would burst the bonds and be driven by the demon into the lonely places.)"

**May Impersonate Dead Humans, Deceive Men**

**1 Sam. 28:11-14** "Then said the woman, Whom shall I bring up unto thee? And he said, Bring me up Samuel. . . . And the king said unto her, Be not afraid: for what seest thou? And the woman said unto Saul, I see a god coming up out of the earth. And he said unto her, What form is he of? And she said, An old man cometh up; and he is covered with a robe. And Saul perceived that it was Samuel."

**To Consult Such Means Disfavor of God and Death**

**1 Tim. 4:1** "Some will fall away from the faith, paying attention to misleading inspired utterances and teachings of demons."

**Rev. 21:8** "As for . . . those practicing spiritism . . . their portion will be in the lake that burns

with fire and sulphur. This means the second death."

See "Spiritism".

**Demons Know God and Christ Are Superior, Know About Sentence of Destruction, but Do Not Exercise Faith or Serve God**

**Jas. 2:19** "You believe there is one God, do you? You are doing quite well. And yet the demons believe and shudder."

**Acts 19:15, 16** "The wicked spirit said to them: 'I know Jesus and I am acquainted with Paul; but who are you?' With that the man in whom the wicked spirit was leaped upon them, got the mastery of the two of them, and prevailed against them, so that they fled naked and wounded out of that house."

**Demons Receive Worship of Those Not Serving God**

**Deut. 32:16, 17** "They moved him to jealousy with strange gods; with abominations provoked they him to anger. They sacrificed unto demons, which were no God."

**Ps. 106:37** "Yea, they sacrificed their sons and their daughters unto demons."

**1 Cor. 10:20** "The things which the nations sacrifice they sacrifice to demons, and not to God, and I do not want you to become sharers with the demons."

**Rev. 9:20** "But the rest of the men... did not repent of the works of their hands, so that they should not worship the demons and the idols of gold and silver and copper and stone and wood, which can neither see nor hear nor walk."

**Demons Control This Evil World, Permeate the World Religions**

**Rev. 18:2** "And he cried out with a strong voice, saying: 'She has fallen! Babylon the great has fallen, and she has become a dwelling-place of demons... and a lurking-place of every unclean and hated bird!'"

**Demons Reproach God by Blaspheming Him, Degrading His Creatures**

**1 Tim. 4:1** "However, the inspired utterance says definitely that in later periods of time some will fall away from the faith, paying attention to misleading inspired utterances and teachings of demons."

**Ps. 74:10** "How long, O God, shall the adversary reproach? Shall the enemy blaspheme thy name for ever?"

**Luke 4:33-35** "Now in the synagogue there was a man with a spirit, an unclean demon, and he shouted with a loud voice: 'Ah! what have we to do with you, Jesus you Nazarene? Did you come to destroy us? I know exactly who you are, the Holy One of God.' But Jesus rebuked it, saying: 'Be silent, and come out of him.' So, after throwing the man down in their midst, the demon came out of him without hurting him."

**Satan and Demons Foment Wars, Enjoy Seeing Creatures Kill One Another**

**Jas. 3:15, 16; 4:1** "This is not the wisdom that comes down from above, but is the earthly, animal, demonic. For where jealousy and contentiousness are, there disorder and every vile thing are." "From what source are there wars and from what source are there fights among you? Are they not from this source, namely, from your cravings for sensual pleasure which carry on a conflict in your members?"

**Isa. 14:16, 17, 20** "They that see thee shall gaze at thee, they shall consider thee, saying, Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms; that made the world as a wilderness, and overthrew the cities thereof; that let not loose his prisoners to their home?... Thou hast destroyed thy land, thou hast slain thy people; the



seed of evil-doers shall not be named forever."

**Demons Will Be Abyssed with Satan at Armageddon**

**Luke 8:31** "They [demons] kept entreating him not to order them to go away into the abyss."

**Matt. 8:29** "And, look! they screamed, saying: 'What have we to do with you, Son of God? Did you come here to torment us before the right time?'"

**Rev. 20:2, 3** "And he [Christ] seized the dragon, the original serpent, who is the Devil and Satan, and bound him for a thousand years. And he hurled him

into the abyss and shut it and sealed it over him."

**Brought Back with Satan at End of 1,000 Years, Then Eternally Destroyed**

**Matt. 25:41** "Be on your way from me, you who have been cursed, into the everlasting fire prepared for the Devil and his angels."

**Rev. 20:10** "The Devil who was misleading them was hurled into the lake of fire and sulphur where both the wild beast and the false prophet already were."

See also "Spiritism", "Kingdom," "Heavens," "Sin."

# **Earth and Its Destiny**

## **DEFINITION**

**Earth** applies literally to this inanimate globe as well as symbolically to human society of mankind and its organization on earth. The earth to be destroyed at the world's end is Satan's system of human society composed of his visible government with all human supporters. The earthly globe will remain forever, will never be burned up or desolated, but will be restored to paradisaic conditions. God will restore right conditions by a "new earth" of righteously governed human society under the "new heavens" of Christ Jesus' invisible rule.

**Purpose of God Toward Earth Stated in Eden Certain to Be Accomplished; that Is, Populated, Subdued, Under Man's Dominion**

**Gen. 1:28** "And God blessed them: and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it; and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the birds of the heavens, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth."

**Isa. 45:18** "For thus saith Jehovah that created the heavens, the God that formed the earth and made it, that established it and created it not a waste [or, in vain, *footnote*], that formed it to be inhabited: I am Jehovah; and there is none else."

**Isa. 46:9-11** "I am God and there is none else; I am God, and there is none like me; declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times things that are not yet done; saying, My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure; . . . yea, I have spoken, I will also bring it to pass; I have purposed, I will also do it."

**Mal. 3:6** "For I, Jehovah, change not."

**Literal Earth as Permanent as God's Throne, Hence Never Destroyed**

**Isa. 66:1** "Thus saith Jehovah, Heaven is my throne, and the earth is my footstool."

**Ps. 78:69** "And he built his sanctuary like the heights, like

the earth which he hath established for ever."

**Eccl. 1:4** "One generation goeth, and another generation cometh; but the earth abideth for ever."

### **Permanence of Sun, Moon and Stars Also Assured**

**Ps. 89:35-37** "Once have I sworn by my holiness: I will not lie unto David: his seed shall endure for ever, and his throne as the sun before me. It shall be established for ever as the moon, and as the faithful witness in the sky. Selah."

**Ps. 72:5, 7** "They shall fear thee while the sun endureth, and so long as the moon, throughout all generations. In his days shall the righteous flourish, and abundance of peace, till the moon be no more."

### **Earth to Be Destroyed Is Satan's Visible Organization of Human Society**

**2 Pet. 3:10** "Yet Jehovah's day will come as a thief, in which the heavens will pass away with a hissing noise, but the elements being intensely hot will be dissolved, and earth and the works in it will be discovered [be burned up; not be found, *foot-note*]."

**Isa. 13:9** "Behold, the day of Jehovah cometh, cruel, with wrath and fierce anger; to make the land a desolation, and to destroy the sinners thereof out of it."

**Rev. 20:11** "And I saw a great white throne and the one seated on it. From before him the earth and the heaven fled away, and no place was found for them."

### **Human Governments Pictured by "Beast" and "False Prophet"**

**Rev. 19:20, 21** "And the wild beast was caught, and along with it the false prophet that performed in front of it the signs with which he misled those who received the mark of the wild beast and those who render worship to its image. While still alive,

they both were hurled into the fiery lake that burns with sulphur. But the rest were killed off with the long sword of the one seated on the horse and which proceeded out of his mouth. And all the birds were filled from the fleshy parts of them."

### **Supporters of Satan's System and Those Ruining Earth to Be Destroyed**

**Rev. 11:18** "But the nations became wrathful, and your own wrath came, and the appointed time...to bring to ruin those ruining the earth."

**Jer. 25:31, 33** "Jehovah hath a controversy with the nations; he will enter into judgment with all flesh: as for the wicked, he will give them to the sword, saith Jehovah. And the slain of Jehovah shall be at that day from one end of the earth even unto the other end of the earth: they shall not be lamented, neither gathered, nor buried; they shall be dung upon the face of the ground."

### **Prophecy of Desolation of Jerusalem Also to Be Fulfilled on Modern-Day Christendom**

**Isa. 24:1-6** "Behold, Jehovah maketh the earth empty, and maketh it waste, and turneth it upside down, and scattereth abroad the inhabitants thereof. ...The earth shall be utterly emptied, and utterly laid waste; for Jehovah hath spoken this word. The earth mourneth and fadeth away, the world languisheth and fadeth away, the lofty people of the earth do languish. The earth also is polluted under the inhabitants thereof; because they have transgressed the laws, violated the statutes, broken the everlasting covenant. Therefore hath the curse devoured the earth, and they that dwell therein are found guilty: therefore the inhabitants of the earth are burned, and few men left."

***Not a complete end was made;  
a remnant was spared***

**Jer. 4:23-28** "I beheld the earth, and, lo, it was waste and void; and the heavens, and they had no light. . . . I beheld, and, lo, there was no man, and all the birds of the heavens were fled. I beheld, and, lo, the fruitful field was a wilderness, and all the cities thereof were broken down at the presence of Jehovah, and before his fierce anger. For thus saith Jehovah, The whole land shall be a desolation; yet will I not make a full end. For this shall the earth mourn."

**Ezek. 6:8** "Yet will I leave a remnant, in that ye shall have some that escape the sword among the nations."

***Never a depopulated earth, as  
some other sheep of the Lord  
will be spared through  
Armageddon***

**John 10:16** "And I have other sheep, which are not of this fold; those also I must bring, and they will listen to my voice, and they will become one flock, one shepherd."

**Matt. 24:37-39** "For just as the days of Noah were, so the presence of the Son of man will be. For as people were in those days before the flood, eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, until the day that Noah entered into the ark; and they took no note until the flood came and swept them all away, so the presence of the Son of man will be."

**1 Pet. 3:20** "In Noah's days, . . . a few people, that is, eight souls, were carried safely through the water."

**Survivors of This World's End  
to Form Nucleus of "New Earth"  
of a New-World Society as  
Subjects of Kingdom**

**2 Pet. 3:13** "But there are new heavens and a new earth that we are awaiting according to his

promise, and in these righteousness is to dwell."

**Isa. 66:22** "For as the new heavens and the new earth, which I will make, shall remain before me, saith Jehovah, so shall your seed and your name remain."

**Some, with Faithful Men of Old,  
to Represent on Earth Christ's  
Reign from Heaven**

**Isa. 32:1** "Behold, a king shall reign in righteousness, and princes shall rule in justice."

**Ps. 45:16** "Instead of thy fathers shall be thy children, whom thou shalt make princes in all the earth."

**Only Footstep Followers of Christ  
Will Reign 1,000 Years with Him  
as "New Heavens"**

**1 Cor. 6:2, 3** "Or do you not know that the holy ones will judge the world? And if the world is to be judged by you, are you unfit to try very trivial matters? Do you not know that we shall judge angels? Why, then, not things of this life?"

**Rev. 20:4** "And I saw thrones, and there were those who sat down on them, and power of judging was given them. Yes, I saw the souls of those executed with the ax for the witness they bore to Jesus and for speaking about God, and those who had worshiped neither the wild beast nor its image and who had not received the mark upon their forehead and upon their hand. And they came to life and ruled as kings with the Christ for a thousand years."

**Isa. 65:17** "For, behold, I create new heavens and a new earth; and the former things shall not be remembered, nor come into mind."

**Procreation Mandate to Be Re-  
stated to Armageddon Survivors**

**Gen. 9:1** "And God blessed Noah and his sons, and said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth."

**Matt. 24:37** "For just as the days of Noah were, so the presence of the Son of man will be."

**Literal Earth to Be Brought Under Subjection as a Paradise Before Resurrection Begins**

**Ps. 67:6, 7** "The earth hath yielded its increase: God, even our own God, will bless us... and all the ends of the earth shall fear him."

**Isa. 35:1, 2, 7** "The wilderness and the dry land shall be glad; and the desert shall rejoice, and blossom as the rose. It shall blossom abundantly, and rejoice even with joy and singing; the glory of Lebanon shall be given unto it, the excellency of Carmel and Sharon: they shall see the glory of Jehovah, the excellency of our God. And the glowing sand shall become a pool, and the thirsty ground springs of water: in the habitation of jackals, where they lay, shall be grass with reeds and rushes."

**Isa. 55:13** "Instead of the thorn shall come up the fir-tree; and instead of the brier shall come up the myrtle-tree: and it shall be to Jehovah for a name, for an everlasting sign that shall not be cut off."

**Luke 23:42, 43** "And he went on to say: 'Jesus, remember me when you get into your kingdom.' And he said to him: 'Truly I tell you today, You will be with me in Paradise.'"

**God Will Resurrect Many Who Will Be Trained and Tested as to His Will**

**John 5:28, 29** "Do not marvel at this, because the hour is coming in which all those in the memorial tombs will hear his voice and come out, those who did good things to a resurrection of life, those who practiced vile things to a resurrection of judgment."

**Isa. 65:20** "There shall be no more thence an infant of days, nor an old man that hath not filled his days; for the child shall

die a hundred years old, and the sinner being a hundred years old shall be accursed."

**Rev. 20:12-15** "And I saw the dead, the great and the small, standing before the throne, and scrolls were opened. But another scroll was opened; it is the scroll of life. And the dead were judged out of those things written in the scrolls according to their deeds. And the sea gave up those dead in it, and death and Hades gave up those dead in them, and they were judged individually according to their deeds. And death and Hades were hurled into the lake of fire. This means the second death, the lake of fire. Furthermore, whoever was not found written in the book of life was hurled into the lake of fire."

See "Resurrection", "Judgment Days."

**Man's Dominion over Animals to Be Restored**

**Isa. 11:6-9** "And the wolf shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them. And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox. And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the adder's den. They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of Jehovah, as the waters cover the sea."

**Perfect Health Will Be Mankind's**

**Isa. 33:24** "And the inhabitant shall not say, I am sick: the people that dwell therein shall be forgiven their iniquity."

**Peace and Prosperity Will Prevail**

**Mic. 4:3, 4** "And he will judge between many peoples, and will decide concerning strong nations

afar off: and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruning-hooks; nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more. But they shall sit every man under his vine and under his fig-tree; and none shall make them afraid: for the mouth of Jehovah of hosts hath spoken it."

**Final Testing and God's Declaring Righteous of Faithful Come at End of 1,000-Year Reign**

**Rev. 20:5, 7-10** "(The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were ended.) This is the first resurrection. Now as soon as the thousand years have been ended, Satan will be let loose out of his prison, and he will go out to mislead those nations in the four quarters of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together for the war. The number of these is as the sand of the sea. And they advanced over the breadth of the earth and encircled the camp of the holy ones and the beloved city. But fire came down out of heaven and devoured them. And the Devil who was misleading them was hurled into the lake of fire and sulphur, where both the wild beast and the false prophet already were; and they

will be tormented day and night for ever and ever."

**God's Original Purpose with Earth Fulfilled**

**Rev. 21:1-4** "And I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the former heaven and the former earth had passed away, and the sea is no more. I saw also the holy city, New Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God and prepared as a bride adorned for her husband. With that I heard a loud voice from the throne say: 'Look! the tent of God is with humankind, and he will reside with them, and they will be his peoples. And God himself will be with them. And he will wipe out every tear from their eyes, and death will be no more, neither will mourning nor outcry nor pain be any more. The former things have passed away.'"

**1 Cor. 15:25, 26, 28** "For he must rule as king until God has put all enemies under his feet. As the last enemy, death is to be destroyed. But when all things will have been subjected to him, then the Son himself will also subject himself to the one who subjected all things to him, that God may be all things to everyone."

See "Creation", "Kingdom," "Judgment Days."

# Evolution

## DEFINITION

The teaching that life spontaneously sprang from inanimate matter and that the higher life forms came about by gradual (or sudden) changes in lower organism; that this accounts for not only the varieties, but also for the different "kinds". No Creator exists, according to this theory. Some evolutionists believe God created some primitive forms, but evolution, as above described, brought about changes that led to the present-day higher forms; this denies special creation of the various "kinds".

"Kind": A family or group of living creatures or things that are interfertile among themselves, but not fertile with others outside

their family. (That is, whose sex cells will unite to form, or begin to form, an offspring; but with those of another "kind" or family are absolutely incompatible and unable to unite.)

### **An Evolutionist's Description of the Theory**

"The theory of evolution asserts that (1) the beings now living have descended from different beings which have lived in the past; (2) the discontinuous variation observed at our time level—the gaps now existing between clusters of forms—have arisen gradually, so that if we could assemble all the individuals which have ever inhabited the earth, a fairly continuous array of forms would emerge; (3) all these changes have arisen from causes which now continue to be in operation and which therefore can be studied experimentally."—Theodosius Dobzhansky, *Genetics and the Origin of Species*, pp. 7, 8.

### **Denies Great Central Principle of Bible—the Existence of Almighty God**

Ps. 14:1 "The fool hath said in his heart, There is no God."

Ps. 10:4 "The wicked, in the pride of his countenance, saith, He will not require it. All his thoughts are, There is no God."

Rom. 1:19-21 "What may be known about God is manifest among them, for God made it manifest to them. For his invisible qualities are clearly seen from the world's creation onward, because they are understood by the things made, even his eternal power and Godship, so that they are inexcusable; because, although they knew God, they did not glorify him as God nor did they thank him, but they became empty-headed in their reasonings and their unintelligent heart became darkened."

Ps. 19:1 "The heavens declare the glory of God; and the firmament sheweth his handiwork."

Ps. 8:3, 4 "When I consider thy heavens, the work of thy fingers,

the moon and the stars, which thou hast ordained; what is man, that thou art mindful of him? And the son of man, that thou visitest him?"

### **Life—in Jehovah God—Existed Before Inanimate Matter**

1 Tim. 1:17 "Now to the King of eternity, incorruptible, invisible, the only God, be honor and glory for ever and ever. Amen."

Ps. 90:2 "Before the mountains were brought forth, or ever thou hadst formed the earth and the world, even from everlasting to everlasting, thou art God."

Jer. 10:10 "But Jehovah is the true God; he is the living God, and an everlasting King: at his wrath the earth trembleth, and the nations are not able to abide his indignation."

### **God's First Creative Work Possessed Life—No Experimental Model, but Superior to Other Creatures**

Rev. 3:14 "These are the things the Amen says, the faithful and true witness, the beginning of the creation by God."

Prov. 8:22, 23 "Jehovah possessed me in the beginning of his way, before his works of old. I was set up from everlasting, from the beginning, before the earth was."

### **Inanimate Matter and Living Things All the Result of Jehovah's Creative Power Through His Only-begotten Son**

Gen. 1:1 "In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth."

Heb. 11:3 "By faith we understand that the systems of things were put in order by God's word, so that what is beheld came to be out of things that do not appear."

**Rev. 4:11** "You are worthy, Jehovah, even our God, to receive the glory and the honor and the power, because you created all things, and because of your will they existed and were created."

**John 1:1-3, 10** "Originally the Word was, and the Word was with God, and the Word was a god. This one was originally with God. All things came into existence through him, and apart from him not even one thing came into existence. He was in the world, and the world came into existence through him, but the world did not take note of him."

**Col. 1:16** "By means of him all other things were created in the heavens and upon the earth, the things visible and the things invisible, no matter whether they are thrones or lordships or governments or authorities. All other things have been created through him and for him."

**Isa. 40:26** "Lift up your eyes on high, and see who hath created these, that bringeth out their host by number; he calleth them all by name; by the greatness of his might, and for that he is strong in power, not one is lacking."

**Isa. 42:5** "Thus saith God Jehovah, he that created the heavens, and stretched them forth; he that spread abroad the earth and that which cometh out of it; he that giveth breath unto the people upon it, and spirit to them that walk therein."

**Isa. 45:12, 18** "I have made the earth, and created man upon it: I, even my hands, have stretched out the heavens; and all their host have I commanded. For thus saith Jehovah that created the heavens, the God that formed the earth and made it, that established it and created it not a waste, that formed it to be inhabited: I am Jehovah; and there is none else."

**Acts 17:25, 26, 28, 29** "He himself gives to all persons life and

breath and all things. He made out of one man every nation of men, to dwell upon the entire surface of the earth... For by him we have life and move and exist, even as certain ones of the poets among you have said, 'For we are also his progeny.'... we are the progeny of God."

**Mark 13:19** "The creation which God created."

**Rev. 10:6** "By the One who lives for ever and ever, who created the heaven and the things in it and the earth and the things in it and the sea and the things in it, he swore."

**No Evolution from One Created Kind to Another**

**Gen. 1:11, 12, 21, 24, 25** "God said, Let the earth put forth grass, herbs yielding seed, and fruit-trees bearing fruit after their kind, wherein is the seed thereof, upon the earth: and it was so. And the earth brought forth grass, herbs yielding seed after their kind, and trees bearing fruit, wherein is the seed thereof, after their kind: and God saw that it was good. And God created the great sea-monsters, and every living creature that moveth, wherewith the waters swarmed, after their kind, and every winged bird after its kind. ... And God said, Let the earth bring forth living creatures after their kind, cattle, and creeping things, and beasts of the earth after their kind, ... and the cattle after their kind, and everything that creepeth upon the ground after its kind."

**Jas. 3:12** "My brothers, a fig tree cannot produce olives or a vine figs, can it? Neither can salt water produce sweet water."

**Matt. 7:16** "Never do people gather grapes from thorns or figs from thistles, do they?"

**1 Cor. 15:39** "Not all flesh is the same flesh, but there is one of mankind, and there is another flesh of cattle, and another flesh of birds, and another of fish."

**Lev. 11:13-22, 29** "The eagle, and the gier-eagle, and the ospray, and the kite, and the falcon after its kind, every raven after its kind, and the ostrich, and the night-hawk, and the sea-mew, and the hawk after its kind, and the little owl, and the cormorant, and the great owl, and the horned owl, and the pelican, and vulture, and the stork, the heron after its kind, and the hoopoe, and the bat. . . . even these of them ye may eat: the locust after its kind, . . . and the cricket after its kind, and the grasshopper after its kind. And these are they which are unclean unto you among the creeping things that creep upon the earth: the weasel, and the mouse, and the great lizard after its kind."

**Each Organ of Body Designed,  
Created Directly in First Man,  
Passed On by Heredity**

**Ps. 139:16** "Thine eyes did see mine unformed substance; and in thy book they were all written."

**Prov. 20:12** "The hearing ear, and the seeing eye, Jehovah hath made even both of them."

**Ps. 94:9** "He that planted the ear, shall he not hear? He that formed the eye, shall he not see?"

**Varieties the Result of Qualities  
Within Genetic Cells  
of Created Kind**

"The number of distinct types (gene combinations) grows to more than a thousand when parents differ in 10 genes, to more than a million with 20, and to more than a billion with 30 gene differences. With 31 gene differences it becomes about equal to the total number of humans now living in the world, which is estimated as close to 2,200 millions. With still greater numbers of gene differences the numbers of possible gene combinations become immense. With about 250 genes the number of theoretically possible gene combinations is of

the same order as that of the electrons and protons in the universe as estimated by some physicists. . . . How many genes there are in man is unknown, but it would seem reasonable to believe that man has at least as many as the vinegar-fly, *Drosophila*. To be sure, the number of genes is not precisely known even in that insect, which has been studied more than any other animal; but it is estimated that a *Drosophila* has several thousands, perhaps as many as ten thousand genes in each sex cell. . . . The variety which is characteristic of all human groups is due to gene mutation and to recombination."—L. C. Dunn and Th. Dobzhansky, *Heredity, Race and Society*, pp. 52, 53, 61.

**Kinds of Plants and Trees Sprang  
from Directly Created Seed**

**Gen. 1:11, 12** "God said, Let the earth put forth grass, herbs yielding seed, and fruit-trees bearing fruit after their kind, wherein is the seed thereof, upon the earth: and it was so. And the earth brought forth grass, herbs yielding seed after their kind, the trees bearing fruit, wherein is the seed thereof, after their kind: and God saw that it was good."

**Each Living Thing Created to  
Fit the Element in Which It  
Lives, Not Evolved to Fit**

**Gen. 1:20, 24** "God said, Let the waters swarm with swarms of living creatures, and let birds fly above the earth in the open firmament of heaven. And God said, Let the earth bring forth living creatures after their kind, cattle, and creeping things, and beasts of the earth after their kind: and it was so."

**Harmony, Balance in Nature,  
Provisions for Life of All, the  
Work of Supreme Designer**

**Matt. 6:26-29** "Observe intently the birds of heaven, because they



do not sow seed or reap or gather into storehouses; still your heavenly Father feeds them. Are you not worth more than they are? Who of you by being anxious can add one cubit to his life span? Also on the matter of clothing, why are you anxious? Take a lesson from the lilies of the field, how they are growing; they do not toil nor do they spin, but I say to you that not even Solomon in all his glory was arrayed as one of these."

**Job 38:39, 41** "Canst thou hunt the prey for the lioness, or satisfy the appetite of the young lions? Who provideth for the raven his prey?"

**Gen. 2:9** "Out of the ground made Jehovah God to grow every tree that is pleasant to the sight, and good for food."

**Ps. 65:9** "Thou visitest the earth, and waterest it, thou greatly enrichest it; the river of God is full of water: thou providest them grain, when thou hast so prepared the earth."

#### Limited Life Span Intended for Lower Animals—No Dread of Death for Them

**Job 39:13-17, 19, 22 (mar.)** "The wings of the ostrich wave proudly; but are they the pinions and plumage of a stork? For she leaveth her eggs on the earth, and warmeth them in the dust, and forgetteth that the foot may crush them, or that the wild beast may trample them. She dealeth hardly with her young ones, as if they were not hers: though her labor be in vain, she is without fear; because God hath deprived her of wisdom, neither hath he imparted to her understanding. Hast thou given the horse his might?... He mocketh at fear, and is not dismayed; neither turneth he back from the sword."

#### Man the Highest Earthly Creation of God

**Gen. 1:26-28** "And God said, Let us make man in our image,

after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the birds of the heavens, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth. And God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them. And God blessed them: and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it; and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the birds of the heavens, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth."

#### Man Far Superior to Beasts, Not Related to Them; Anyone Lowering Self to Equality with Them or Mixing Seeds Abominable

**Lev. 18:23, 24** "And thou shalt not lie with any beast to defile thyself therewith; neither shall any woman stand before a beast, to lie down thereto: it is confusion. Defile not ye yourselves in any of these things: for in all these the nations are defiled which I cast out from before you."

**Lev. 20:15, 16** "And if a man lie with a beast, he shall surely be put to death: and ye shall slay the beast. And if a woman approach unto any beast, and lie down thereto, thou shalt kill the woman, and the beast: they shall surely be put to death; their blood shall be upon them."

#### Man Created Perfect, to Live Forever

**Gen. 1:27, 28, 31** "And God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them. And God blessed them: and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth,... And God saw everything that he had made, and, behold, it was very good."

**Deut. 32:4** "The Rock, his work is perfect; for all his ways are justice."

**Gen. 5:5, 20, 27; 9:29** "All the days that Adam lived were nine hundred and thirty years: . . . and all the days of Jared were nine hundred sixty and two years: . . . and all the days of Methuselah were nine hundred sixty and nine years: . . . And all the days of Noah were nine hundred and fifty years."

### **Only One Human Pair Created**

**Acts 17:26** "He made out of one man every nation of men, to dwell upon the entire surface of the earth."

**Gen. 3:20** "The man called his wife's name Eve; because she was the mother of all living."

**Gen. 5:4** "The days of Adam after he begat Seth were eight hundred years; and he begat sons and daughters."

### **No Evolution in Mankind**

**Gen. 5:3** "Adam lived a hundred and thirty years, and begat a son in his own likeness, after his image; and called his name Seth."

### **Gift of Perfect Language Given to Man by God—Not Evolved**

**Gen. 2:19, 20** "Out of the ground Jehovah God formed every beast of the field, and every bird of the heavens; and brought them unto the man to see what he would call them: and whatsoever the man called every living creature, that was the name thereof. And the man gave names to all cattle, and to the birds of the heavens, and to every beast of the field."

**Jas. 1:17** "Every good gift and every perfect present is from above, for it comes down from the Father of the celestial lights, and with him there is not a variation of the turning of the shadow."

### **Man Degraded Rather than Evolving Higher**

**Deut. 32:5** "They have dealt corruptly with him, they are not his children, it is their blemish;

they are a perverse and crooked generation."

**Eccl. 7:29** "Behold, this only have I found: that God made man upright; but they have sought out many inventions."

**Ps. 90:10** "The days of our years are threescore years and ten, or even by reason of strength fourscore years; yet is their pride but labor and sorrow; for it is soon gone, and we fly away."

### **Because of Forsaking Jehovah Man's Mind Went Wrong, Brought Death to Organism**

**John 17:3** "This means everlasting life, their taking in knowledge of you, the only true God, and of the one whom you sent forth, Jesus Christ."

**Jas. 1:14, 15** "But each one is tried by being drawn out and enticed by his own desire. Then the desire, when it has become fertile, gives birth to sin; in turn, sin, when it has been accomplished, brings forth death."

**Hos. 4:6** "My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge."

### **Earth's Production Degraded by Man's Abuses**

**Gen. 13:10** "And Lot lifted up his eyes, and beheld all the Plain of the Jordan, that it was well watered every where, before Jehovah destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah, like the garden of Jehovah, like the land of Egypt, as thou goest unto Zoar."

**Num. 13:23** "And they came unto the valley of Eshcol, and cut down from thence a branch with one cluster of grapes, and they bare it upon a staff between two; they brought also of the pomegranates, and of the figs."

**Rev. 11:18** "Bring to ruin those ruining the earth."

**Isa. 14:17** "That made the world as a wilderness, and overthrew the cities thereof; that let not loose his prisoners to their home."

**Ps. 67:6** "The earth hath yielded its increase."

# Children Affected by Corruption of Adam Their Father

**Matt. 7:17, 18** "Likewise every good tree produces fine fruit, but every rotten tree produces bad fruit; a good tree cannot bear bad fruit, neither can a rotten tree produce fine fruit."

**Matt. 12:33** "Either you people make the tree fine and its fruit fine or make the tree rotten and its fruit rotten; for by its fruit the tree is known."

**Lam. 5:7** "Our fathers sinned, and are not; and we have borne their iniquities."

**Jer. 31:29, 30** "In those days they shall say no more, The fathers have eaten sour grapes, and the children's teeth are set on edge. But every one shall die for his own iniquity: every man that eateth the sour grapes, his teeth shall be set on edge."

**Ps. 51:5** "Behold, I was brought forth in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me."

## Deformities the Result of Man's Imperfectly Functioning Body

**Lev. 21:17-23; 22:23** "Whosoever he be of thy seed throughout their generations that hath a blemish, let him not approach to offer the bread of his God. For whatsoever man he be that hath a blemish, he shall not approach: a blind man, or a lame, or he that hath a flat nose, or anything superfluous, or a man that is broken-footed, or broken-handed, or crook-backed, or a dwarf, or that hath a blemish in his eye, or is scurvy, or scabbed, or hath his stones broken; no man of the seed of Aaron the priest, that hath a blemish, shall come nigh to offer the offerings of Jehovah made by fire: he hath a blemish; he shall not come nigh to offer the bread of his God. He shall eat the bread of his God, both of the most holy, and of the holy: only he shall not go in unto the veil, nor come nigh unto the altar, because he hath a blemish; that he profane not my sanc-

tuaries: ... Either a bullock or a lamb that hath anything superfluous or lacking in his parts, that mayest thou offer for a freewill-offering; but for a vow it shall not be accepted."

## Sickness, Infirmary, Not Natural

**Gen. 3:16-19** "Unto the woman he said, I will greatly multiply thy pain and thy conception; in pain thou shalt bring forth children; ... And unto Adam he said, ... cursed is the ground for thy sake; in toil shalt thou eat of it all the days of thy life; thorns also and thistles shall it bring forth to thee; and thou shalt eat the herb of the field; in the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread, till thou return unto the ground."

**Matt. 8:17** "He himself took our sicknesses and carried our diseases."

**Luke 5:23** "Which is easier, to say, 'Your sins are forgiven you,' or to say, 'Get up and walk?'"

## "Brute-Type" Men Found Are Result of Degradation, False Religion; God's Servants Were Never Such

**Gen. 6:12** "And God saw the earth, and, behold, it was corrupt; for all flesh had corrupted their way upon the earth."

**Job 2:3** "Jehovah said unto Satan, Hast thou considered my servant Job? for there is none like him in the earth, a perfect and an upright man, one that feareth God, and turneth away from evil."

**Jer. 2:21** "Yet I had planted thee a noble vine, wholly a right seed: how then art thou turned into the degenerate branches of a foreign vine unto me?"

**Prov. 28:18** "Whoso walketh uprightly shall be delivered; but he that is perverse in his ways shall fall at once."

**Gen. 6:9-12** "Noah was a righteous man, and perfect in his generations: Noah walked with

God... all flesh had corrupted their way upon the earth."

### **Faith Without Proof or Foundation Required for Evolution**

"The evolution doctrine is not a creed to be accepted on faith, as are religious faiths or creeds. It appeals entirely to the logical faculties, not to the spiritual, and is not to be accepted until proved." (From H. H. Newman's list of "What Organic Evolution Is Not")—*Evolution, Creation, and Science*, by Frank Lewis Marsh.

"Professor T. L. More, University of Cincinnati: 'The more one studies palaeontology, the more certain one becomes that evolution is based on faith alone; exactly the same sort of faith which it is necessary to have when one encounters the great mysteries of religion.'

"Professor Bateson stated: 'Though we must hold to our faith in the evolution of species there is little evidence as to how it came about, and no clear proof that the process is continuing in any considerable degree at the present time.'"—*Let God Be True*, p. 86.

**Heb. 11:1** "Faith is the assured expectation of things hoped for, the evident demonstration of realities though not beheld."

### **Hostility of Evolutionists Toward Bible Based on Misunderstanding and Not on True Science**

**2 Pet. 3:16** "Speaking about these things as he does also in all his other letters. In them, however, are some things hard to understand, the meaning of which the untaught and unsteady are twisting, as they do also the rest of the Scriptures, to their own destruction."

**Col. 2:8** "Look out: perhaps there may be some man that will carry you off as his prey through the philosophy and empty deception according to the tradition of men, according to the elementary things of the world and not according to Christ."

**1 Tim. 4:7** "But turn down the false stories which violate what is holy and which old women tell. On the other hand, be training yourself with godly devotion as your aim."

See "Creation," "Races of Mankind," "Jehovah," "Soul."

# Faith

## DEFINITION

"Faith is the assured expectation of things hoped for, the evident demonstration of realities though not beheld." (Heb. 11:1) Faith is an intellectual understanding and appreciation of God's Word and a confident reliance upon that Word. The true "Christian faith" is the sum of beliefs concerning Jehovah God and his kingdom as delivered to us by his chosen Seed, Jesus Christ, and his inspired disciples. It is based upon the ancient Hebrew Scriptures, to which Jesus constantly made reference to support what he taught and to which later the inspired Greek Scriptures were added as a source of accurate knowledge for developing faith.

### **Jehovah, the Faithful God**

**Deut. 7:9** "Know therefore that Jehovah thy God, he is God, the faithful God, who keepeth cove-

nant and lovingkindness with them that love him and keep his commandments to a thousand generations."

**Faith Necessary for Relationship with God**

**Heb. 11:6** "Without faith it is impossible to win his [God's] good pleasure, for he that approaches God must believe that he is and that he becomes the rewarder of those earnestly seeking him."

**Rom. 10:13, 14** "For 'anyone that calls upon the name of Jehovah will be saved'. However, how will they call upon him in whom they have not put faith? How, in turn, will they put faith in him of whom they have not heard? How, in turn, will they hear without someone to preach?"

**God's Legal Recognition and Hope of New World Based on Faith**

**Gen. 15:6** "And he [Abraham] believed in Jehovah; and he reckoned it to him for righteousness."

**Rom. 5:1, 2** "Now that we have been declared righteous as a result of faith, let us enjoy peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ, through whom also we have gained our approach by faith into this undeserved kindness in which we now stand."

**Rom. 4:13** "For it was not through law that Abraham or his seed had the promise that he should be heir of a world, but it was through the righteousness by faith."

**Faith Is a Gift from God That Draws Men to Christ**

**Eph. 2:8** "By this undeserved kindness, indeed, you have been saved through faith; and this not owing to you, it is God's gift."

**John 6:44, 45, 47** "No man can come to me unless the Father, who sent me, draws him, and I will resurrect him in the last day. It is written in the Prophets, 'And they will all be taught by Jehovah.' Everyone that has heard the Father's teaching and has learned comes to me. Most truly I say to you, He that believes has everlasting life."

**True Faith Founded upon Christ Jesus**

**Heb. 12:2** "We look intently at the leader and perfecter of our faith, Jesus."

**Col. 1:23** "Provided, of course, that you continue in the faith, established on the foundation and steadfast and not being shifted away from the hope of that good news which you heard, and which was preached in all creation that is under heaven."

**Acts 3:13, 15, 16** "The God of Abraham and of Isaac and of Jacob, the God of our forefathers, has glorified his Servant, Jesus, whom you, for your part, delivered up and disowned before Pilate's face, when he had decided to release him. . . . you killed the Chief Agent of life. But God raised him up from the dead, of which fact we are witnesses. Consequently, his name, by our faith in his name, has made this man strong whom you behold and know, and the faith that is through him has given the man this complete soundness in the sight of all of you."

**1 Tim. 3:16** "Indeed, the sacred secret of this godly devotion is admittedly great: 'He was made manifest in flesh, was declared righteous in spirit, appeared to angels, was preached about among nations, was believed upon in the world, was received up in glory.'"

**Faith in Christ's Ransom Leads to Salvation**

**Rom. 3:24, 25** "It is as a free gift that they are being declared righteous by his undeserved kindness through the release by the ransom paid by Christ Jesus. God set him forth as an offering for propitiation through faith in his blood."

**1 Pet. 1:8, 9** "Though you never saw him, you love him. Though you are not looking upon him at present, yet you exercise faith in him and are greatly rejoicing with an unspeakable and glorified joy, as you receive the accom-

plished end of your faith, the salvation of your souls."

### **Gift of Faith Must Be Developed According to Accurate Knowledge**

**2 Thess. 1:3** "We are obligated to give God thanks...because your faith is growing exceedingly and the love of each and all of you is increasing one toward the other."

**Eph. 4:13** "Until we all attain to the oneness in the faith and in the accurate knowledge of the Son of God."

**Heb. 6:1** "For this reason, now that we have left the elementary doctrine about the Christ, let us press on to maturity, not laying a foundation again, namely, repentance from dead works, and faith toward God."

### **By Trials One's Faith Is Tested to Prove Its Quality**

**Jas. 1:2, 3** "Consider it all joy, my brothers, when you meet with various trials, knowing as you do that this tested quality of your faith works out endurance."

**1 Pet. 1:6, 7** "You have been grieved by various trials, in order that the tested quality of your faith, of much greater value than gold that perishes despite its being proved by fire, may be found a cause for praise and glory and honor at the revelation of Jesus Christ."

**1 Cor. 10:13** "But God is faithful and he will not let you be tempted beyond what you can bear."

### **Added to Your Faith Must Be Works and Virtue**

**Jas. 2:17, 26** "Faith, if it does not have works, is dead in itself. Indeed, as the body without breath is dead, so also faith without works is dead."

**2 Pet. 1:5** "Supply to your faith virtue."

### **Faith Removes Obstacles Hindering True Worship**

**Matt. 17:20** "For truly I say to you, If you have faith the size

of a mustard grain, you will say to this mountain, 'Transfer from here to there,' and it will transfer, and nothing will be impossible for you."

**1 Cor. 13:2** "If I have all the faith so as to transplant mountains, but do not have love, I am nothing."

**1 Tim. 6:12** "Contend for victory in the right contest of the faith, get a firm hold on the everlasting life for which you were called."

**Heb. 11:33** "Who through faith defeated kingdoms in conflict."

### **Overcomes the Devil and the World**

**1 Pet. 5:9** "But take your stand against him [the Devil], solid in the faith, knowing that the same things in the way of sufferings are being accomplished in the entire association of your brothers in the world."

**1 John 5:4** "And this is the conquest that has conquered the world, our faith."

### **Keep Healthy in the Faith**

**2 Cor. 13:5** "Keep testing whether you are in the faith, keep proving what you yourselves are."

**Titus 1:13** "For this very cause keep on reproving them with severity, that they may be healthy in the faith."

### **Faith Governs a Christian's Life-Course**

**2 Cor. 5:7** "We are walking by faith, not by sight."

**Heb. 10:38; Hab. 2:4** "But my righteous one will live by reason of faith."

**2 Tim. 4:7** "I have run the course to the finish, I have observed the faith."

### **Lack of Faith the 'Sin That Easily Entangles'**

**Heb. 3:12** "Beware, brothers, for fear there should ever develop in any one of you a wicked heart lacking faith by drawing away from the living God."

**Rom. 11:20** "For their lack of faith they were broken off, but you are standing by faith. Quit having lofty ideas, but be in fear."

**Heb. 12:1** "Let us also put off every weight and the sin that easily entangles us, and let us run with endurance the race that is set before us."

**Matt. 13:58** "And he [Jesus] did not do many powerful works

there on account of their lack of faith."

### **Strong Faith Gives Protection Against Wicked Demons**

**Eph. 6:16** "Above all things, take up the large shield of faith, with which you will be able to quench all the wicked one's burning missiles."

**1 Thess. 5:8** "Let us keep our senses and have on the breastplate of faith."

## **Freedom**

### **DEFINITION**

In its broadest sense and as used in the Bible and in the field of government it means merely "acting at will". It is the acting and the performance of acts freely according to one's will, with or without restraints, for the general welfare. The subject of freedom involves the faculty of "free will", which God as Creator Superior has given to angels and men so that they can conduct themselves voluntarily in a way pleasing to their Maker. It is this field of "free will" action wherein governments, both theocratic and man-made, grant controlled liberties and freedoms.

### **Jehovah as Sovereign Superior Solely Enjoys Absolute Freedom; Acts at Will Without Restraint.**

#### **He Alone Is Independent**

**Isa. 40:13, 15** "Who hath directed the spirit of Jehovah, or being his counsellor hath taught him? Behold, the nations are as a drop of a bucket, and are accounted as the small dust of the balance: behold, he taketh up the isles as a very little thing."

**Rom. 9:20, 21** "O man, who, then, really are you to be answering back to God? Shall the thing molded say to him that molded it, 'Why did you make me this way?' What? Does not the potter have authority over the clay to make from the same lump one vessel for an honorable use, another for a dishonorable use?"

**Isa. 45:11, 12, Mo** "And would you question me about the future? would you dictate to me about my work? says the Eternal [Jehovah, AS], Israel's Maker, Is-

rael's Majestic One, I, I who made the earth, I who created man on earth, I who stretched out the heavens with my own hands, I who ordered all their host!"

### **Jehovah a God of Freedom; His Organization Dwells in Climate of Freedom**

**2 Cor. 3:17** "Now Jehovah is the spirit; and where the spirit of Jehovah is, there is freedom."

**Gal. 4:25, 26** "Now this Hagar means Sinai, a mountain in Arabia, and she corresponds with the Jerusalem today, for she is in slavery with her children. But the Jerusalem above is free, and she is our mother."

### **Man Made in God's Image Granted Climate of Freedom, a Vast Field of Freewill Action**

**Gen. 1:26, 28-30** "And God said, Let us make man in our image,

after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the birds of the heavens, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.... and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it; and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the birds of the heavens, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth. And God said, Behold, I have given you every herb yielding seed, which is upon the face of all the earth, and every tree, in which is the fruit of a tree yielding seed; to you it shall be for food: and to every beast of the earth, and to every bird of the heavens, and to everything that creepeth upon the earth, wherein there is life, I have given every green herb for food: and it was so."

**Perfect Man's Original Freedom  
Relative. Restricted by Law  
for Man's Good**

**Gen. 2:16, 17** "And Jehovah God commanded the man, saying, Of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat: but of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die."

**Man Loses Original Freedom,  
Enters Slavery of Sin and Death.  
He Went Beyond the Bounds of  
His Safe Freedom**

**Gen. 3:11, 12, 17-19** "Hast thou eaten of the tree, whereof I commanded thee that thou shouldest not eat? And the man said, The woman whom thou gavest to be with me, she gave me of the tree, and I did eat. And unto Adam he said, Because thou hast hearkened unto the voice of thy wife, and hast eaten of the tree, of which I commanded thee, saying, Thou shalt not eat of it: cursed is the ground for thy sake; in toil shalt thou eat of it all

the days of thy life; thorns also and thistles shall it bring forth to thee; and thou shalt eat the herb of the field; in the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread, till thou return unto the ground; for out of it wast thou taken: for dust thou art, and unto dust shalt thou return."

**Rom. 5:12** "Just as through one man sin entered into the world and death through sin, and thus death spread to all men because they had all sinned."

**Also: Rom. 6:16.**

**Faithful Mankind Promised Restoration of Original Safe Freedom in a Jubilee**

**Rom. 8:21** "The creation itself also will be set free from enslavement to corruption and have the glorious freedom of the children of God."

**Lev. 25:10** "And ye shall hallow the fiftieth year, and proclaim liberty throughout the land unto all the inhabitants thereof: it shall be a jubilee unto you; and ye shall return every man unto his possession, and ye shall return every man unto his family."

**Isa. 49:8, 9** "Thus saith Jehovah, In an acceptable time have I answered thee, and in a day of salvation have I helped thee; and I will preserve thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, to raise up the land, to make them inherit the desolate heritages; saying to them that are bound, Go forth; to them that are in darkness, Show yourselves. They shall feed in the ways, and on all bare heights shall be their pasture."

**Mosaic Law Foreshadows Redemption from Slavery by  
a Near Kinsman**

**Lev. 25:47, 48** "And if a stranger or sojourner with thee be waxed rich, and thy brother be waxed poor beside him, and sell himself unto the stranger... after that he is sold he may be redeemed; one of his brethren may redeem him."



### **Christ Jesus, the "Son of Man", Is Man's Kinsman, Redeemer, Liberator**

**John 1:14** "So the Word became flesh and resided among us, and we had a view of his glory, a glory such as belongs to an only-begotten son from a father."

**Matt. 20:28** "Just as the Son of man came, not to be ministered to, but to minister and to give his soul a ransom in exchange for many."

**1 Tim. 2:5, 6** "For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, a man Christ Jesus, who gave himself a corresponding ransom for all—this is what is to be witnessed to at its own particular times."

**John 8:36** "If the Son sets you free, you will be actually free."

**Rom. 5:18, 19** "As through one trespass the result to men of all kinds was condemnation, likewise also through one act of justification the result to men of all kinds is a declaring of them righteous for life. For just as through the disobedience of the one man many were constituted sinners, likewise also through the obedience of the one person many will be constituted righteous."

### **Accepted Bible Truth as to Christ Leads to Freedom**

**John 8:31, 32** "If you remain in my word, you are really my disciples, and you will know the truth, and the truth will set you free."

**Gal. 5:1** "For such freedom Christ set us free. Therefore stand fast and do not let yourselves be confined again in a yoke of slavery."

**Rom. 6:18** "Since you were set free from sin, you became slaves to righteousness."

**Luke 4:18** "Jehovah's spirit is upon me, because he anointed me to declare good news to the poor, he sent me forth to preach a release to the captives."

### **Christians Now Set Free from Bondage of False Religion and Satan's Organization**

**2 Cor. 6:17** "'Therefore get out from among them, and separate yourselves,' says Jehovah, 'and quit touching the unclean thing.'"

**Rev. 18:4** "And I heard another voice out of heaven say: 'Get out of her, my people, if you do not want to share with her in her sins, and if you do not want to receive part of her plagues.'"

**Col. 1:13, 14** "He delivered us from the authority of the darkness and transplanted us into the kingdom of the Son of his love, by means of whom we have our release by ransom, the forgiveness of our sins."

### **Beware of Those Falsely Offering Freedom and Endeavoring to Destroy Our Christian Rel- ative Freedom**

**2 Pet. 2:18-20** "For they utter swelling expressions of no profit, and by the desires of the flesh and by loose habits they entice those who are just escaping from people who conduct themselves in error. While they are promising them freedom, they themselves are existing as slaves of corruption. For whoever is overcome by another is enslaved by this one. Certainly if, after having escaped from the defilements of the world by an accurate knowledge of the Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, they get involved again with these very things and are overcome, the final conditions have become worse for them than the first."

**Gal. 2:4** "But because of the false brothers brought in quietly, who sneaked in to spy upon our freedom which we have in union with Christ Jesus."

### **Follow the Kingly "Law of Freedom"**

**Jas. 1:25** "He who peers into the perfect law that belongs to freedom and who persists in it, this man, because he has become,

not a forgetful hearer, but a doer of the work, will be happy in his doing it."

**Jas. 2:12, 13** "Keep on speaking in such a way and keep on doing in such a way as those do who are going to be judged by the law of a free people. For the one that does not practice mercy will have his judgment without mercy. Mercy exults triumphantly over judgment."

**Jas. 2:8, 9** "If, now, you practice carrying out the kingly law according to the Scriptures, 'You must love your neighbor as yourself,' you are doing quite well. But if you continue showing favoritism, you are working a sin, for you are reproved by the law as transgressors."

### **Assured New World Freedoms Now Near**

#### ***Freedom from want***

**Isa. 65:21, 22** "And they shall build houses, and inhabit them; and they shall plant vineyards, and eat the fruit of them. They shall not build, and another inhabit; they shall not plant, and another eat: for as the days of a tree shall be the days of my people, and my chosen shall long enjoy the work of their hands."

#### ***Freedom from fear***

**Mic. 4:4** "But they shall sit every man under his vine and under his fig-tree; and none shall make them afraid: for the mouth of Jehovah of hosts hath spoken it."

#### ***Freedom of worship***

**John 4:23** "The hour is coming, and it is now, when the genuine worshipers will worship the Father with spirit and truth, for, indeed, the Father is looking for such kind to worship him."

**Zech. 14:16** "And it shall come to pass, that every one that is left of all the nations that came against Jerusalem shall go up from year to year to worship the King, Jehovah of hosts, and to keep the feast of tabernacles."

### ***Freedom of speech***

**Eph. 3:11, 12** "According to the eternal purpose which he formed in connection with the Christ, Jesus our Lord, by means of whom we have this freeness of speech and an approach with confidence through our faith in him."

### ***Freedom from sickness***

**Rev. 21:4** "And he will wipe out every tear from their eyes, ... neither will mourning nor outcry nor pain be any more. The former things have passed away."

### ***Freedom from death***

**Rev. 21:4** "And death will be no more."

### ***Freedom from gravedom, Hades***

**Rev. 20:12, 13** "And I saw the dead, the great and the small, standing before the throne.... And the sea gave up those dead in it, and death and Hades gave up those dead in them, and they were judged individually according to their deeds."

### ***Freedom from animal hostility***

**Ezek. 34:25, 28** "And I will make with them a covenant of peace, and will cause evil beasts to cease out of the land; and they shall dwell securely in the wilderness, and sleep in the woods. And they shall no more be a prey to the nations, neither shall the beasts of the earth devour them; but they shall dwell securely, and none shall make them afraid."

### ***Freedom from attack or injury***

**Isa. 11:9** "They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of Jehovah, as the waters cover the sea."

### ***Freedom from war***

**Mic. 4:3** "And they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruning-hooks: nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more."

**Freedom from past record of sin**

**Jer. 31:34** "For I will forgive their iniquity, and their sin will I remember no more."

**1 John 2:2** "And he [Christ Jesus] is a propitiatory sacrifice for our sins, yet not for ours only but also for the whole world's."

**Freedom of education for life**

**Rev. 22:17** "And let anyone thirsting come; let anyone that wishes take life's water free."

**Isa. 55:1** "Ho, everyone that thirsteth, come ye to the waters, and he that hath no money; come ye, buy, and eat."

# Friendship with the World

## DEFINITION

Love of the present evil system of things ruled by Satan the Devil (the world, composed of a "heavens"—the demons; an "earth"—the visible organization of false religion, politics, commerce). Taking part in and supporting its political, commercial and false religious schemes or participating in its debauchery, reveling and inordinate pleasures. The person who takes a course parallel to the ways of this world, though he may claim to be Christian, is showing love for and friendship with this world.

**This World Consists of Demon "Heavens" and Wicked Visible "Earth"**

**2 Pet. 3:7** "The heavens and the earth that are now are stored up for fire and are being reserved to the day of judgment and of destruction of the ungodly men."

**This World Is Controlled by Satan**

**Matt. 4:8, 9** "Again the Devil took him along to an unusually high mountain, and showed him all the kingdoms of the world and their glory, and he said to him: 'All these things I will give you if you fall down and do an act of worship to me.'"

**2 Cor. 4:4** "The god of this system of things has blinded the minds of the unbelievers, that the illumination of the glorious good news about the Christ, who is the image of God, might not shine through."

**1 John 5:19** "The whole world is lying in the power of the wicked one."

**Ps. 96:5** "For all the gods of the peoples are idols; but Jehovah made the heavens."

**Eph. 6:12** "Because we have a fight, not against blood and flesh, but against the governments, against the authorities, against the world-rulers of this darkness, against the wicked spirit forces in the heavenly places."

**Things This World Loves**

**Jer. 5:30, 31** "A wonderful and horrible thing is come to pass in the land: the prophets prophesy falsely, and the priests bear rule by their means; and my people love to have it so: and what will ye do in the end thereof?"

**1 John 2:16** "Because everything in the world—the desire of the flesh and the desire of the eyes and the showy display of one's means of life—does not originate with the Father, but originates with the world."

**Luke 12:29, 30** "So quit seeking what you might eat and what you might drink, and quit being in anxious suspense, for all these are the things the nations of the world are eagerly pursuing."

**Rev. 18:3, 23** "For because of the passion-arousing wine of her fornication all the nations have

fallen victim, and the kings of the earth committed fornication with her, and the merchants of the earth became rich due to the power of her shameless luxury.' 'And no light of a lamp will ever shine in you again, and no voice of a bridegroom and of a bride will ever be heard in you again; because your merchants were the top-ranking men of the earth, for by your spiritistic practice all the nations were misled.'"

### World Hates God's Servants

**John 17:14** "I have given your word to them, but the world has hated them, because they are no part of the world just as I am no part of the world."

**1 Cor. 4:13** "We have become as the refuse of the world, the offscouring of all things, and we are so now."

**1 John 3:13** "Do not marvel, brothers, that the world hates you."

**Rev. 18:24** "Yes, in her was found the blood of prophets and of holy ones and of all those who have been slaughtered on the earth."

### This World's Thinking Is Out of Harmony with God

**1 Cor. 1:20-28** "Where is the wise man? Where the scribe? Where the debater of this system of things? Did not God make the wisdom of the world foolish? For since, in the wisdom of God, the world through its wisdom did not get to know God, God saw good through the foolishness of what is preached to save those believing. . . . Because a foolish thing of God is wiser than men, and a weak thing of God is stronger than men. . . . and God chose the ignoble things of the world and the things looked down upon, the things that are not, that he might bring to nothing the things that are."

**1 Cor. 2:6-8, 12** "Now we speak wisdom among those who are adults, but not the wisdom of

this system of things nor that of the rulers of this system of things who are to come to nothing. But we speak God's wisdom in a sacred secret, the hidden wisdom, which God foreordained before the systems of things for our glory. This wisdom not one of the rulers of this system of things came to know, for if they had known it they would not have impaled the glorious Lord. Now we received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is from God, that we might know the things that have been kindly given us by God."

**1 Cor. 3:18, 19** "Let no one be seducing himself: If anyone among you thinks he is wise in this system of things, let him become a fool, that he may become wise. For the wisdom of this world is foolishness with God; for it is written: 'He catches the wise in their own craftiness.'"

**Rom. 8:6** "For the minding of the flesh means death, but the minding of the spirit means life and peace."

### World's Course of Action

**2 Tim. 3:1-5** "But know this, that in the last days critical times hard to deal with will be here. For men will be lovers of themselves, lovers of money, self-assuming, haughty, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, without gratitude, with no loving-kindness, having no natural affection, not open to any agreement, slanderers, without self-control, fierce, without love of goodness, betrayers, headstrong, puffed up with self-esteem, lovers of pleasures rather than lovers of God, having a form of godly devotion but proving false to its power; and from these turn away."

**Jas. 3:14-16** "But if you have bitter jealousy and contentiousness in your hearts, do not be bragging and lying against the truth. This is not the wisdom that comes down from above, but

is the earthly, animal, demonic. For where jealousy and contentiousness are, there disorder and every vile thing are."

**1 Pet. 4:3, 4** "For the time that has passed by is sufficient for you to have worked out the will of the nations when you proceeded in deeds of loose conduct, lusts, excesses with wine, revelries, drinking matches, and idolatries that are without legal restraint. Because you do not continue running with them in this course to the same low sink of debauchery, they are puzzled and go on speaking abusively of you."

**Gal. 5:19-21** "Now the works of the flesh are manifest, and they are fornication, uncleanness, loose conduct, idolatry, practice of spiritism, hatreds, strife, jealousy, fits of anger, contentions, divisions, sects, envies, drunken bouts, revelries, and things like these."

**Rom. 1:29-31** "Filled as they were with all unrighteousness, wickedness, covetousness, injuriousness, being full of envy, murder, strife, deceit, malicious disposition, being whisperers, backbiters, haters of God, insolent, haughty, self-assuming, inventors of injurious things, disobedient to parents, without understanding, false to agreements, having no natural affection, merciless."

**2 Pet. 3:3, 4** "For you know this first, that in the last days there will come ridiculers with their ridicule, proceeding according to their own desires and saying: 'Where is this promised presence of his? Why, from the day our forefathers fell asleep in death, all things are continuing exactly as from creation's beginning.'"

#### World's Deceptive Propaganda

**Matt. 24:4, 5, 11, 24** "And in answer Jesus said to them: 'Look out that nobody misleads you; for many will come on the basis of my name, saying: "I am the Christ," and will mislead many. And many false prophets will

arise and mislead many. For false Christs and false prophets will arise and will give great signs and wonders so as to mislead, if possible, even the chosen ones.'"

**Rev. 16:14** "They are, in fact, expressions inspired by demons and perform signs, and they go forth to the kings of the entire inhabited earth, to gather them together to the war of the great day of God the Almighty."

**1 John 4:1** "Beloved ones, do not believe every inspired expression, but test the inspired expressions to see whether they originate with God, because many false prophets have gone forth into the world."

**2 John 7** "The reason why is that many deceivers have gone forth into the world, persons not confessing Jesus Christ as coming in the flesh."

**Rev. 12:9** "Down the great dragon was hurled, the original serpent, the one called Devil and Satan, who is misleading the entire inhabited earth."

**Rev. 13:13, 14** "And it [the two-horned beast] performs great signs, so that it should even make fire come down out of heaven to the earth in the sight of mankind."

**Rev. 17:8** "The wild beast that you saw was, but is not, and yet is destined to ascend out of the abyss, and it is to go off into destruction. And when they see how the wild beast was, but is not, and yet will be present, those who dwell on the earth will wonder admiringly, but their names have not been written upon the scroll of life from the world's foundation."

**Col. 2:8** "Look out: perhaps there may be some man that will carry you off as his prey through the philosophy and empty deception according to the tradition of men, according to the elementary things of the world and not according to Christ."

### Friendship with World Is Enmity Toward God

**Jas. 4:4** "Adulteresses, do you not know that the friendship with the world is enmity with God? Whoever, therefore, wants to be a friend of the world is constituting himself an enemy of God."

**1 John 2:15** "Do not be loving either the world or the things in the world. If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him."

### Christian Must Not Even Take a Course Parallel to This World

**Rom. 6:13-16** "Neither go on presenting your members to sin as weapons of unrighteousness, but present yourselves to God as those alive from the dead, also your members to God as weapons of righteousness. For sin must not be master over you, seeing that you are not under law but under undeserved kindness. What follows? Shall we commit a sin because we are not under law but under undeserved kindness? Never may that happen! Do you not know that if you keep presenting yourselves to anyone as slaves to obey him, you are slaves of him because you obey him, either of sin with death in view or of obedience with righteousness in view?"

**Jas. 1:27** "The form of worship that is clean and undefiled from the standpoint of our God and Father is this: to care for orphans and widows in their tribulation, and to keep oneself without spot from the world."

**Rom. 13:14** "But put on the Lord Jesus Christ, and do not be planning ahead for the desires of the flesh."

### Friendship with This World Results in Destruction with It

**Isa. 13:11** "And I will punish the world for their evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; and I will cause the arrogance of the proud to cease, and will lay low the haughtiness of the terrible."

**Isa. 24:5, 6** "The earth also is polluted under the inhabitants thereof; because they have transgressed the laws, violated the statutes, broken the everlasting covenant. Therefore hath the curse devoured the earth, and they that dwell therein are found guilty: therefore the inhabitants of the earth are burned, and few men left."

**Matt. 16:26** "For what benefit will it be to a man if he gains the whole world but forfeits his soul? or what will a man give in exchange for his soul?"

**2 Pet. 2:20** "Certainly if, after having escaped from the defilements of the world by an accurate knowledge of the Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, they get involved again with these very things and are overcome, the final conditions have become worse for them than the first."

**1 Cor. 11:32** "However, when we are judged, we are disciplined by Jehovah, that we may not become condemned with the world."

### World's Manner of Thinking, Doing Things Will Pass Away

**1 Cor. 7:31** "The scene of this world is changing."

**Isa. 65:17** "For, behold, I create new heavens and a new earth; and the former things shall not be remembered, nor come into mind."

**1 John 2:17** "Furthermore, the world is passing away and so is its desire, but he that does the will of God remains forever."

**Col. 2:20** "If you died together with Christ toward the elementary things of the world, why do you, as if living in the world, further subject yourselves to the decrees?"

**Eph. 2:1-3** "Furthermore, it is you God made alive though you were dead in your trespasses and sins, in which you at one time walked according to the system of things of this world, according to the ruler of the authority of the air, the spirit that now

operates in the sons of disobedience. Yes, among them we all at one time conducted ourselves in harmony with the desires of our flesh, doing the things the flesh and the thoughts willed, and we were naturally children of wrath even as the rest."

**Jesus' Course Brought Judgment of Condemnation on This World**

**John 12:31** "Now there is a judging of this world; now the ruler of this world will be cast out."

**John 16:11** "The ruler of this world has been judged."

**Christian Must Overcome This World by Maintaining Integrity to God**

**John 16:33** "In the world you will have tribulation, but cheer up! I have conquered the world."

**Rev. 2:7** "To him that conquers I will grant to eat of the tree of life, which is in the paradise of God."

**1 John 5:4, 5** "Because everything that has been born from God conquers the world. And this is the conquest that has conquered the world, our faith. Who is the one that conquers the world but he who has faith that Jesus is the Son of God?"

**Christian Must Be No Part of This World**

**John 15:19** "If you were part of the world, the world would be fond of what is its own. Now because you are no part of the world, but I have chosen you out of the world, on this account the world hates you."

**John 17:16** "They are no part of the world just as I am no part of the world."

**Rev. 18:4** "Get out of her, my people, if you do not want to share with her in her sins, and if you do not want to receive part of her plagues."

**Gal. 1:4** "He gave himself for our sins that he might take us out for himself from the present

wicked system of things according to the will of our God and Father."

**God's Spirit Causes Christians to Maintain Integrity to God in This World**

**John 14:17; 16:8** "The spirit of the truth, which the world cannot receive, because it neither beholds it nor knows it. You know it, because it remains with you and is in you." "And when that one arrives he will give the world convincing evidence concerning sin and concerning righteousness and concerning judgment."

**Christian Must Love, Be Kind and Friendly to All Living in the World**

**Gal. 6:10** "Really, then, as long as we have time favorable for it, let us work what is good toward all, but especially toward those related to us in the faith."

**Luke 6:27-36** "But I say to you who are listening, Continue to love your enemies, to do good to those hating you, to bless those cursing you, to pray for those who do you injury. . . . Also just as you want men to do to you, do the same way to them. And if you love those loving you, of what credit is it to you? For even the sinners love those loving them. And if you do good to those doing good to you, really of what credit is it to you? Even the sinners do the same. . . . To the contrary, continue to love your enemies and to do good and to lend without interest, not hoping for anything back, and your reward will be great, and you will be sons of the Most High, because he is kind toward the unthankful and wicked. Continue becoming compassionate, just as your Father is compassionate."

**1 Cor. 9:22, 23** "To the weak I became weak, that I might gain the weak. I have become all things to people of all kinds, that I might by all means save some. But I do all things for the sake

of the good news, that I may become a sharer of it with others."

**Heb. 12:14** "Pursue peace with all people, and the sanctification without which no man will see the Lord."

**Rom. 12:18-21** "If possible, as far as it depends upon you, be peaceable with all men. Do not avenge yourselves, beloved, but yield place to the wrath; for it is written: 'Vengeance is mine, I will repay, says Jehovah.' But, 'if your enemy is hungry, feed him; if he is thirsty, give him something to drink; for by doing this you will heap fiery coals upon his head.' Do not let yourself be conquered by the evil, but keep conquering the evil with the good."

**No Enmity Toward Rulers, but in Full Harmony with All Righteous Laws Because of Conscience**

**Acts 25:8, 11** "But Paul said in defense: 'Neither against the Law of the Jews nor against the temple nor against Caesar have I committed any sin.' If, on the one hand, I am really a wrongdoer and have committed anything deserving of death, I do not beg off from dying; if, on the other hand, none of those things exists of which these men accuse me, no man can hand me over to them as a favor. I appeal to Caesar!"

**Acts 26:28, 29** "But Agrippa said to Paul: 'In a short time you would persuade me to become a Christian.' At this Paul said: 'I could wish to God that whether in a short time or in a long time not only you but also all those who hear me today would become men such as I also am, with the exception of these bonds.'"

**Gen. 47:7** "And Joseph brought in Jacob his father, and set him before Pharaoh; and Jacob blessed Pharaoh."

**1 Pet. 4:15** "However, let none of you suffer as a murderer or a thief or an evildoer or as a busybody in other people's matters."

**Christians Do Not Pray for Continuance of This World, but that Rulers May Have Reasonable Attitude Toward Kingdom Work**

**John 17:9** "I make request concerning them; I make request, not concerning the world, but concerning those you have given me."

**1 Tim. 2:1, 2** "I therefore exhort first of all that supplications, prayers, intercessions, offerings of thanks, be made concerning all kinds of men, concerning kings and all those who are in high station, in order that we may go on leading a calm and quiet life with full godly devotion and seriousness."

**Courts Respected as Proper Places to Appeal for Defense**

**Acts 24:10** "And Paul, when the governor nodded to him to speak, answered: 'Knowing well that this nation has had you as judge for many years, I readily speak in my defense the things about myself.'"

**Acts 26:2, 25** "'Concerning all the things of which I am accused by Jews, King Agrippa, I count myself happy that it is before you I am to make my defense this day.' But Paul said: 'I am not going mad, Your Excellency Festus, but I am uttering sayings of truth and of soundness of mind.'"

**Christian Must Have Some Dealings with World (Witnessing, Secular Work)**

**John 17:15** "I request you, not to take them out of the world, but to watch over them because of the wicked one."

**1 Cor. 5:9-11** "In my letter I wrote you to quit mixing in company with fornicators, not meaning entirely with the fornicators of this world or the greedy persons and extortioners or idolaters. Otherwise, you would actually have to get out of the world. But



now I am writing you to quit mixing in company with anyone called a brother that is a fornicator or a greedy person or an idolater or a reviler or a drunkard or an extortioner, not even eating with such a man."

**Matt. 28:19, 20** "Go therefore and make disciples of people of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the holy spirit, teaching them to observe all the things I have commanded you. And, look! I am with you all the days until the consummation of the system of things."

### Christians Do Not Let Money-making Hinder Their Kingdom Work

**Jas. 4:13, 14** "Come, now, you who say, 'Today or tomorrow we will travel to this city and will spend a year there, and we will engage in business and make profits,' whereas you do not know what your life will be tomorrow. For you are a mist appearing for a little while and then disappearing."

**1 Tim. 6:10** "For the love of money is a root of all sorts of injurious things, and by reaching out for this love some have been led astray from the faith and have stabbed themselves all over with many pains."

**Matt. 6:19-21, 25-34** "Stop storing up for yourselves treasures upon the earth, where moth and rust consume, and where thieves break in and steal. Rather, store up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust consume, and where thieves do not break in and steal. For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also. On this account I say to you: Stop being anxious about your souls as to what you will eat or what you will drink, or about your bodies as to what you will wear. . . . So never be anxious and say: 'What are we to eat?' or, 'What are we to drink?' or, 'What are we to

put on?' For all these are the things the nations are eagerly pursuing. For your heavenly Father knows you need all these things. Keep on, then, seeking first the kingdom and his righteousness, and all these other things will be added to you."

**Ecd. 7:12** "For wisdom is a defence, even as money is a defence; but the excellency of knowledge is, that wisdom preserveth the life of him that hath it."

**Prov. 1:19** "So are the ways of every one that is greedy of gain; it taketh away the life of the owners thereof."

**Prov. 15:27** "He that is greedy of gain troubleth his own house; but he that hateth bribes shall live."

### Christian's Conscience Not Inherent; Must Be Trained by God's Word

**Jer. 17:9** "The heart is deceitful above all things, and it is exceedingly corrupt: who can know it?"

**Titus 1:15** "All things are clean to clean persons. But to persons defiled and faithless nothing is clean, but both their minds and their consciences are defiled."

**1 Tim. 1:13** "Although formerly I was a blasphemer and a persecutor and an insolent man. Nevertheless, I was shown mercy, because I was ignorant and acted with a lack of faith."

**Rom. 10:2, 3** "For I bear them witness that they have a zeal for God; but not according to accurate knowledge; for, because of not knowing the righteousness of God but seeking to establish their own, they did not subject themselves to the righteousness of God."

**John 8:31, 32** "If you remain in my word, you are really my disciples, and you will know the truth, and the truth will set you free."

**2 Tim. 3:16, 17** "All Scripture is inspired of God and beneficial for teaching, for reproving, for

setting things straight, for disciplining in righteousness, that the man of God may be fully competent, completely equipped for every good work."

**1 Tim. 4:2** "By the hypocrisy of men who speak lies, marked in their conscience as with a branding iron."

### **Violation of Conscience Means God's Disfavor**

**Acts 24:16** "In this respect, indeed, I am exercising myself continually to have a consciousness of committing no offense against God and men."

**1 Tim. 1:19** "Holding faith and a good conscience, which some have thrust aside and have experienced shipwreck concerning their faith."

### **Christians Respect Consciences of Others**

**1 Cor. 8:7-12** "But keep watching that this authority of yours does not somehow become a stumblingblock to those who are weak. For if anyone should see you with your knowledge reclining at a meal in an idol temple, will not the conscience of that one who is weak be emboldened to the point of eating foods offered to idols? Really, by your knowledge, the man that is weak is being ruined, your brother for whose sake Christ died. But when you people thus sin against your brothers and wound their conscience that is weak, you are sinning against Christ."

**1 Cor. 10:27-29** "If anyone of the unbelievers invites you and you wish to go, proceed to eat everything that is set before you, making no inquiry on account of your conscience. But if anyone should say to you: 'This is something offered to a god,' do not eat on account of the one that disclosed it and on account of conscience. 'Conscience,' I say, not yours, but that of the other person."

### **Christians Stand Among Nations as Ambassadors**

**2 Cor. 5:20** "We are therefore ambassadors substituting for Christ, as though God were making entreaty through us. As substitutes for Christ we beg: 'Become reconciled to God.'"

**Eph. 6:19, 20** "The good news, for which I am acting as an ambassador in chains."

**Phil. 3:20** "As for us, our citizenship exists in the heavens."

### **Christians Neutral, Do Not Interfere with World's Conflicts, Schemes or Politics**

**2 Tim. 2:3, 4** "As a right kind of soldier of Christ Jesus take your part in suffering evil. No man serving as a soldier involves himself in the commercial businesses of life, in order that he may meet the approval of the one who enrolled him as a soldier."

**John 6:15** "Therefore Jesus, realizing they were about to come and seize him to make him king, withdrew again into the mountain all alone."

**John 18:36** "Jesus answered: 'My kingdom is no part of this world. If my kingdom were part of this world, my attendants would have fought that I should not be delivered up to the Jews. But, as it is, my kingdom is not from this source.'"

**1 Tim. 5:22** "Never lay your hands hastily upon any man; neither be a sharer in the sins of others; preserve yourself pure."

**1 Cor. 14:8** "For, truly, if the bugle sounds an indistinct call, who will get ready for battle?"

### **God's Law to Israelite Nation Exempted Ministers**

**Num. 1:47-54** "For Jehovah spake unto Moses, saying, Only the tribe of Levi thou shalt not number, neither shalt thou take the sum of them among the children of Israel; but appoint thou the Levites over the tabernacle of the testimony, and over

all the furniture thereof, and over all that belongeth to it: they shall bear the tabernacle, and all the furniture thereof and they shall minister unto it, and shall encamp round about the tabernacle."

### Christians Required to Stick to Work of Preaching

**Matt. 6:33** "Keep on, then, seeking first the kingdom and his righteousness, and all these other things will be added to you."

**Matt. 6:24** "No one can be a slave to two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or he will stick to the one and despise the other. You cannot be slaves to God and to Riches."

**Matt. 15:24** "In answer he said: 'I was not sent forth to any but to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.'"

**Luke 4:43** "But he said to them: 'Also to other cities I must declare the good news of the kingdom of God, because for this I was sent forth.'"

**Matt. 10:5, 6** "These twelve Jesus sent forth, giving them these orders: 'Do not go off into the road of the nations, and do not enter into a Samaritan city; but, instead, go continually to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.'"

**Matt. 28:19** "Go therefore and make disciples of people of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the holy spirit."

### Christians Must Speak Truth in God's Commanded Way, Without Censorship

**2 Cor. 4:2** "But we have renounced the underhanded things of which to be ashamed, not walking in craftiness neither adulterating the word of God, but by making the truth manifest recommending ourselves to every human conscience in the sight of God."

**Acts 4:18-20** "With that they called them and charged them in general not to make any utterance nor to teach upon the

basis of the name of Jesus. But in reply Peter and John said to them: '... As for us, we cannot stop speaking about the things we have seen and heard.'"

**Ex. 8:25, 26** "And Pharaoh called for Moses and for Aaron, and said, Go ye, sacrifice to your God in the land. And Moses said, It is not meet so to do."

**Ex. 10:8-26** "And Moses and Aaron were brought again unto Pharaoh: and he said unto them, Go, serve Jehovah your God; but who are they that shall go? And Moses said, We will go with our young and with our old; with our sons and with our daughters, with our flocks and with our herds will we go; for we must hold a feast unto Jehovah. And he said unto them, So be Jehovah with you, as I will let you go, and your little ones: look to it; for evil is before you. Not so: go now ye that are men, and serve Jehovah; for that is what ye desire. And they were driven out from Pharaoh's presence. . . . And Pharaoh called unto Moses; and said, Go ye, serve Jehovah; only let your flocks and your herds be stayed: let your little ones also go with you. And Moses said, Thou must also give into our hand sacrifices and burnt-offerings, that we may sacrifice unto Jehovah our God. Our cattle also shall go with us; there shall not a hoof be left behind; for thereof must we take to serve Jehovah . . . until we come thither."

### Christians Must Work Together as One Man

**Phil. 1:27, 28** "Only behave in a manner worthy of the good news about the Christ, in order that, whether I come and see you or be absent, I may hear about the things which concern you, that you are standing firm in one spirit, with one soul fighting side by side for the faith of the good news."

See "Jehovah's Witnesses", "Caesar's Things to Caesar."

# Gifts from God

## DEFINITION

Qualities, abilities, attributes and other beneficial things granted by the love, mercy and undeserved kindness of Jehovah God to his creatures. Some are given as rewards. All are given to be used to his praise and glory, to serve his purposes and for the good of his creatures and his organization. Divine gifts bring rights to the ones receiving them, which all others are duty bound to recognize.

### **Jehovah God the Chief Giver. All His Gifts Good, Perfect, Beneficial**

**Jas. 1:17** "Every good gift and every perfect present is from above, for it comes down from the Father of the celestial lights, and with him there is not a variation of the turning of the shadow."

**Prov. 10:22** "The blessing of Jehovah, it maketh rich; and he addeth no sorrow therewith."

**1 Tim. 4:4** "Every creation of God is right and nothing is to be rejected if it is received with thanksgiving."

**Deut. 32:4** "The Rock, his work is perfect."

### **All His Gifts Serve in Carrying Out His Purpose**

**Rom. 11:29** "The gifts and the calling of God are not things he will regret."

**Eph. 4:8, 12-14** "'He gave gifts in men.' . . . with a view to the training of the holy ones for ministerial work, for the building up of the body of the Christ."

### **All Gifts Come Through Christ Jesus by His Direction of Jehovah's Active Force**

**Acts 2:32, 33** "This Jesus . . . because he was exalted to the right hand of God and received the promised holy spirit from the Father, he has poured out this which you see and hear."

**Eph. 4:7, 8** "Now to each one of us undeserved kindness was given according to how the Christ

measured out the free gift. Wherefore he says: 'When he ascended on high he led captive a multitude; he gave gifts in men.'"

**Col. 2:9** "It is in him that all the fullness of the divine quality dwells for the body."

**1 Cor. 12:11** "But all these operations the one and the same spirit performs, making a distribution to each one respectively just as it wills."

**John 3:34** "The one whom God sent forth speaks the sayings of God, for he does not give the spirit sparingly."

### **Gifts of God Are Impartially Given, Not Earned, Not a Due Belonging to Us**

**John 1:16, 17** "For we all received from out of his fullness, even undeserved kindness upon undeserved kindness. Because the law was given through Moses, the undeserved kindness and the truth came to be through Jesus Christ."

**Matt. 5:45** "He makes his sun rise upon wicked people and good and makes it rain upon righteous people and unrighteous."

**Eph. 2:8, 9** "By this undeserved kindness, indeed, you have been saved through faith; and this not owing to you, it is God's gift. No, it is not owing to works, in order that no man should have grounds for boasting."

**1 Pet. 1:17** "Furthermore, if you are calling upon the Father who judges impartially according

to each one's work, conduct yourselves with fear."

**Deut. 10:17** "Jehovah your God, he is God of gods, and Lord of lords, the great God, the mighty, and the terrible, who regardeth not persons, nor taketh reward."

**Life and God's Provisions for Us to Get Eternal Life Are Gifts**

**Rom. 6:23** "For the wages sin pays is death, but the gift God gives is everlasting life by Christ Jesus our Lord."

**Job 33:4** "The spirit of God hath made me, and the breath of the Almighty giveth me life."

**2 Cor. 9:15** "Thanks be to God for his indescribable free gift."

**Ps. 115:16** "The heavens are the heavens of Jehovah; but the earth hath he given to the children of men."

**Spiritual Sonship a Gift**

**1 John 3:1, 2** "See what kind of love the Father has given us, so that we should be called children of God; and such we are. . . . Beloved ones, now we are children of God, but as yet it has not been made manifest what we shall be. We do know that whenever he is made manifest we shall be like him, because we shall see him just as he is."

**John 1:12** "However, as many as did receive him, to them he gave authority to become God's children, because they were exercising faith in his name."

**Immortality a Reward to Christ and His 144,000 Body Members for Faithfulness**

**1 Tim. 6:14-16** "Jesus Christ . . . the one alone having immortality."

**Phil. 2:8, 9** "He humbled himself and became obedient as far as death, yes, death on a torture stake. For this very reason also God exalted him to a superior position and kindly gave him the name that is above every other name."

**1 Cor. 9:25** "Every man taking part in a contest exercises self-

control in all things. Now they, of course, do it that they may get a corruptible crown, but we an incorruptible one."

**Rom. 2:6, 7** "He will render to each one according to his works: everlasting life to those who are seeking glory and honor and incorruptibleness by endurance in work that is good."

**2 Pet. 1:10** "Brothers, all the more do your utmost to render the calling and choosing of you firm for yourselves."

**Rev. 2:10** "Prove yourself faithful even with the danger of death, and I will give you the crown of life."

**Human Sonship a Gift of God**

**Rom. 8:21** "The creation itself also will be set free from enslavement to corruption and have the glorious freedom of the children of God."

**1 Cor. 15:28** "But when all things will have been subjected to him, then the Son himself will also subject himself to the one who subjected all things to him, that God may be all things to everyone."

**Also: Gen. 1:26; Luke 3:38.**

**To Be Valid, All Gifts Must Be Accepted and Cultivated (Except Miraculous Gifts)**

**1 Cor. 12:31** "Keep striving after the greater gifts."

**John 1:12** "As many as did receive him, to them he gave authority to become God's children, because they were exercising faith in his name."

**1 Tim. 3:1** "If any man is reaching out for an office of overseer, he is desirous of a right kind of work."

**2 Tim. 2:1, 5, 6** "You, therefore, my child, keep on acquiring power in the undeserved kindness that is in connection with Christ Jesus. Moreover, if anyone contends even in the games, he is not crowned unless he has contended according to the rules. The hard-working farmer must be the first to partake of the fruits."

**Prov. 13:4** "The soul of the sluggard desireth, and hath nothing; but the soul of the diligent shall be made fat."

### **Gifts Bestowed on Christian Congregation Foreshadowed**

**Gen. 24:22, 53** "And it came to pass, as the camels had done drinking, that the man took a golden ring of half a shekel weight, and two bracelets for her hands of ten shekels weight of gold. And the servant brought forth jewels of silver, and jewels of gold, and raiment, and gave them to Rebekah: he gave also to her brother and to her mother precious things."

### **Miraculous Gifts to Early Christian Congregation**

**1 Cor. 12:4-10, 28-30** "Now there are varieties of gifts, but there is the same spirit; ... to one there is given through the spirit speech of wisdom, to another speech of knowledge according to the same spirit, to another faith by the same spirit, to another gifts of healings by that one spirit, to yet another operations of powerful works, to another prophesying, to another discernment of inspired utterances, to another different tongues, and to another interpretation of tongues. And God has set the respective ones in the congregation, first, apostles; second, prophets; third, teachers; then powerful works; then gifts of healings; helpful services, abilities to direct, different tongues ... translators."

**Acts 21:8, 9** "Philip the missionary, ... This man had four daughters, virgins, that prophesied."

**1 Cor. 14:18** "I thank God, I speak in more tongues than all of you do."

### **Purpose of Miraculous Gifts to Establish and Mature the Congregation and Show Change from Dealing with the Old Systems of Things to the New Christian System**

**Acts 2:22** "Men of Israel, hear these words: Jesus the Nazarene, a man publicly shown by God to you through powerful works and wonders and signs which God did through him in your midst, just as you yourselves know."

**Heb. 2:4** "God joined in bearing witness with signs as well as wonders and various powerful works and with distributions of holy spirit according to his will."

**Eph. 4:11-16** "And he gave some as apostles, some as prophets, some as missionaries, some as shepherds and teachers, with a view to the training of the holy ones for ministerial work, for the building up of the body of the Christ, until we all attain to the oneness in the faith and in the accurate knowledge of the Son of God, to a full-grown man, to the measure of growth that belongs to the fullness of the Christ; in order that we should no longer be babes, tossed about as by waves and carried hither and thither by every wind of teaching by means of the trickery of men, by means of craftiness in contriving error. But speaking the truth, let us by love grow up in all things into him who is the head, Christ. From him all the body, by being harmoniously joined together and being made to co-operate through every joint which gives what is needed, according to the functioning of each respective member in due measure, makes for the growth of the body for the building up of itself in love."

**1 Cor. 14:21-25** "In the law it is written: 'With the tongues of foreigners and with the lips of strangers I will speak to this people, and yet not even then will they give heed to me,' says Jehovah. Consequently, tongues

are for a sign, not to the believers, but to the unbelievers, whereas prophesying is, not for the unbelievers, but for the believers. Therefore, if the whole congregation comes together to one place and they all speak in tongues, but ordinary people or unbelievers come in, will they not say that you are mad? But if you are all prophesying and any unbeliever or ordinary person comes in, he is put right by them all, he is closely examined by all, the secrets of his heart become manifest, so that he will prostrate himself and worship God, declaring, 'God is really among you.'"

**1 Cor. 1:7, 8** "So that you do not fall short in any gift at all, while you are eagerly waiting for the revelation of our Lord Jesus Christ. He will also make you unshakable to the end, that you may be open to no accusation in the day of our Lord Jesus Christ."

**Miraculous Gifts Always Transmitted Only When One or More of the 12 Apostles Were Present**

**Acts 2:4, 14** "They all became filled with holy spirit and started to speak with different tongues, . . . But Peter stood up with the eleven and raised his voice."

**Acts 8:14-17** "When the apostles in Jerusalem heard that Samaria had accepted the word of God, they dispatched Peter and John to them, and these went down and prayed for them to get holy spirit. For it had not yet fallen upon any one of them, but they had only been baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus. Then they went to laying their hands upon them, and they began to receive holy spirit."

**Acts 10:44** "While Peter was yet speaking about these matters the holy spirit fell upon all those hearing the word."

**Acts 19:6** "And when Paul laid his hands upon them, the holy spirit came upon them, and they

began speaking with tongues and prophesying."

**Rom. 1:11** "I am longing to see you, that I may impart some spiritual gift to you in order for you to be made firm."

**Miraculous Gifts No Longer Present Since Shortly After the Apostles' Day**

**1 Cor. 13:8-13** "Love never fails. But whether there are gifts of prophesying, they will be done away with; whether there are tongues, they will cease; whether there is knowledge, it will be done away with. For we have partial knowledge and we prophesy partially; but when that which is complete arrives, that which is partial will be done away with. When I was a babe, I used to speak as a babe, to think as a babe, to reason as a babe; but now that I have become a man, I have done away with the traits of a babe. For at present we see in hazy outline by means of a metal mirror, but then it will be face to face. At present I know partially, but then I shall know accurately even as I am accurately known. Now, however, there remain faith, hope, love, these three, but the greatest of these is love."

**Gifts Make the Christian Congregation on Earth Complete to Do the Work Assigned**

**1 Cor. 12:12-26** "For just as the body is one thing but has many members, and all the members of that body, although being many, are one body, so also is the Christ. . . . For the body, indeed, is not one member, but is many. If the foot should say: 'Because I am not a hand, I am no part of the body,' it is not for this reason no part of the body. And if the ear should say: 'Because I am not an eye, I am no part of the body,' it is not for this reason no part of the body. If the whole body were an eye, where would the sense of hearing

be? If it were all hearing, where would the smelling be? But now God has set the members in the body, each one of them, just as he pleased. If they were all one member, where would the body be? But now they are many members, yet one body. The eye cannot say to the hand: 'I have no need of you'; or, again, the head cannot say to the feet: 'I have no need of you.' But much rather is it the case that the members of the body which seem to be weaker are necessary, and the parts of the body which we think to be less honorable, these we surround with more abundant honor, and so our unseemly parts have the more abundant comeliness, whereas our comely parts do not need anything. Nevertheless, God compounded the body, giving honor more abundant to the part which had a lack, so that there should be no division in the body, but that its members should have the same care for one another."

### **Ministry of Prophesying by House-to-House Work**

**Acts 20:20** "I did not hold back from telling you any of the things that were profitable nor from teaching you publicly and from house to house."

**Rev. 3:20** "Look! I am standing at the door and knocking."

**Matt. 10:12-14** "When you are entering into the house, greet the household; and if the house is deserving, let the peace you wish it come upon it; but if it is not deserving, let the peace from you return upon you. Wherever anyone does not take you in or listen to your words, on going out of that house or that city shake the dust off your feet."

### **By Return Calls and Home Bible Studies**

**Acts 15:36** "Now after some days Paul said to Barnabas: 'Above all things, let us return and visit the brothers in every one of the cities in which we pub-

lished the word of Jehovah to see how they are.'"

**1 Cor. 3:6-8** "I planted, Apollos watered, but God kept making it grow.... Now he that plants and he that waters are one, but each person will receive his own reward according to his own labor."

**Also: Matt. 13:3-23.**

**Prov. 11:25** "The liberal soul shall be made fat; and he that watereth shall be watered also himself."

**John 21:15-17** "He said to him: 'Feed my young lambs.' ... 'Shepherd my little sheep.' ... 'Feed my little sheep.'"

**Gal. 6:6** "Moreover, let anyone who is being orally taught the word share in all good things with the one who gives such oral teaching."

**Also: Acts 17:11; Rev. 3:20.**

### **By Street Work**

**Acts 17:17** "Consequently he began to reason in the synagogue with the Jews and the other people who worshiped God and every day in the market-place with those who happened to be on hand."

**Also: Jer. 17:19; Ezekiel 4.**

### **In Your Own Home and Every Other Place**

**Acts 28:30, 31** "So he remained for an entire two years in his own hired house, and he would kindly receive all those who came in to him, preaching the kingdom of God to them and teaching the things concerning the Lord Jesus Christ with the greatest freeness of speech, without hindrance."

**Acts 16:25, 32** "About the middle of the night Paul and Silas were praying and praising God with song; yes, the prisoners were hearing them. And they spoke the word of Jehovah to him together with all those in his house."

**Phil. 1:13, 14** "My prison bonds have become public knowledge in association with Christ among all the praetorian guard and all the



rest, and most of the brothers in the Lord, feeling confidence by reason of my prison bonds, are more than outdoing themselves in courage to speak the word of God fearlessly."

**Also:** Matt. 5:1, 2; Mark 4:1; Matt. 26:6-13; Luke 10:38-42; 19:2-8; Acts 8:26-40.

**The Christian Congregation Today Is Mature; Accomplishes Work Through More Excellent Way of Love**

**1 Cor. 12:31; 13:13** "Keep striving after the greater gifts. And yet I show you a surpassing way." "Now, however, there remain faith, hope, love, these three, but the greatest of these is love."

**Heb. 6:1-3** "For this reason, now that we have left the elementary doctrine about the Christ, let us press on to maturity, not laying a foundation again, namely, repentance from dead works, and faith toward God, the teaching on baptisms and the laying on of the hands, the resurrection of the dead and everlasting judgment. And this we will do, if God indeed permits."

**Acts 1:8** "You will receive power when the holy spirit arrives upon you, and you will be witnesses of me both in Jerusalem and in all Judea and Samaria and to the most distant part of the earth."

**Matt. 24:14** "This good news of the kingdom will be preached in all the inhabited earth for the purpose of a witness to all the nations, and then the accomplished end will come."

**Rev. 14:6, 7** "I saw another angel flying in midheaven, and he had everlasting good news to declare as glad tidings to those who dwell on the earth, and to every nation and tribe and tongue and people, saying in a loud voice: 'Fear God and give him glory, because the hour of the judgment by him has arrived.'"

**2 Ki. 2:9** "Elijah said unto Elisha, Ask what I shall do for

thee, before I am taken from thee. And Elisha said, I pray thee, let a double portion of thy spirit be upon me."

**Rev. 11:3, 7, 11** "I will cause my two witnesses to prophesy . . . the wild beast . . . will . . . kill them. And after the three and a half days spirit of life from God entered into them, and they stood upon their feet, and great fear fell upon those beholding them."

**Other Gifts Within Reach of All Today if Cultivated**

**Ministry**

**2 Cor. 3:5, 6; 4:1** "Our being adequately qualified issues from God, who has indeed adequately qualified us to be ministers of a new covenant, not of a written code, but of spirit; . . . That is why, since we have this ministry according to the mercy that was shown us, we do not behave improperly."

**Rom. 11:13** "I glorify my ministry."

**2 Tim. 4:11** "Take Mark and bring him with you, for he is useful to me for ministering."

**Prophecy**

**1 Cor. 14:1-5** "Pursue love, yet keep striving after the spiritual gifts, but preferably that you may prophesy. . . . he that prophesies upbuilds and encourages and consoles men by his speech. . . . he that prophesies upbuilds a congregation. . . . I prefer that you prophesy. Indeed, he that prophesies is greater than he that speaks in tongues."

**Public speaking**

**Acts 18:4, 24** "He would give a talk in the synagogue every sabbath and would win over Jews and Greeks. Now a certain Jew named Apollos, a native of Alexandria, an eloquent man, arrived in Ephesus, and he was well versed in the Scriptures."

**Acts 19:9, 10** "He . . . separated the disciples from them, daily giving talks in the school auditorium

of Tyrannus. This took place for two years, so that all those inhabiting the district of Asia heard the word of the Lord, both Jews and Greeks."

**1 Tim. 4:13** "While I am coming, continue applying yourself to public reading."

### ***Conducting congregational studies***

**Rom. 12:8** "He that presides, let him do it in real earnest."

### ***Overseeing***

**1 Tim. 3:2-7** "The overseer should therefore be irreprehensible, a husband of one wife, moderate in habits, sound in mind, orderly, a lover of strangers, qualified to teach, not a drunken brawler, not a smiter, but reasonable, not belligerent, not a lover of money, a man presiding over his own household in a right manner, having children in subjection with all seriousness; . . . not a newly converted man, . . . he should also have a favorable testimony from people on the outside."

**1 Pet. 5:1-3** "To the older men . . . : Shepherd the flock of God in your care, not under compulsion, but willingly, . . . neither as lording it over those who are God's inheritance, but becoming examples to the flock."

**Matt. 25:21** "Well done, good and faithful slave! You were faithful over a few things. I will appoint you over many things."

**Also: Matt. 24:45-47; Luke 19:12-27.**

### ***Assistant ministerial servants***

**1 Tim. 3:8-12** "Ministerial servants should likewise be serious, not double-tongued, not giving themselves to a lot of wine, not greedy of dishonest gain, holding the sacred secret of the faith with a clean conscience. Also let these be tested as to fitness first, then let them serve as ministers, as they are free from accusation. Women should likewise be serious, not slanderous, moderate in

habits, faithful in all things. Let ministerial servants be husbands of one wife, presiding in a right manner over children and their own households."

### ***Organizing***

**Acts 6:1-3** "So the twelve . . . said: 'It is not pleasing for us to abandon the word of God to distribute food to tables. So, brothers, search out for yourselves seven certified men . . . that we may appoint them over this necessary business.'"

**Also: Ex. 18:19-26.**

### ***Teaching in the congregation [limited to male members]***

**1 Tim. 3:2** "The overseer should therefore be . . . qualified to teach."

**1 Tim. 4:16** "Pay constant attention to yourself and to your teaching."

**1 Tim. 2:12** "I do not permit a woman to teach, or to exercise authority over a man, but to be in silence."

**1 Cor. 14:33-35** "As in all the congregations of the holy ones, let the women keep silent in the congregations, for it is not permitted for them to speak, . . . If then, they want to learn something, let them question their husbands at home, for it is disgraceful for a woman to speak in a congregation."

**Jas. 3:1** "Not many of you should become teachers, my brothers, knowing that we shall receive heavier judgment."

### ***Defending and legally establishing the good news***

**Phil. 1:7** "All of you being sharers with me in the undeserved kindness both in my prison bonds and in the defending and legally establishing of the good news."

**Also: Acts 4:19, 20; 5:27-32; 25:11, 21; Rom. 16:1, 2.**

### ***Admonishing, exhorting, comforting, strengthening***

**1 Thess. 5:14** "We exhort you, brothers, admonish the disorder-

ly, speak comfortingly to the depressed souls, support the weak, be longsuffering toward all."

**Heb. 12:12** "Lift up the hands that hang down and strengthen the enfeebled knees."

**2 Cor. 1:3, 4** "Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of tender mercies and the God of all comfort, who comforts us in all our tribulation, that we may be able to comfort those in any kind of tribulation through the comfort with which we ourselves are being comforted by God."

**Also: Rom. 15:14; 1 Thess. 5:12; 2 Thess. 3:15.**

### ***Reproving, correcting, counseling***

**1 Tim. 5:20** "Reprove before all onlookers persons who practice sin, that the rest also may have fear."

**Titus 1:9** "He [the overseer] may be able both to exhort by the teaching that is healthful and to reprove those who contradict."

**Titus 1:13** "Keep on reproving them with severity, that they may be healthy in the faith."

### ***Understanding***

**2 Tim. 2:7** "The Lord will really give you discernment in all things."

### ***Gift of singleness***

**Matt. 19:11, 12** "Not all men make room for the saying, but only those who have the gift.... there are eunuchs that have made themselves eunuchs because of the kingdom of the heavens."

**1 Cor. 7:27, 32** "Are you loosed from a wife? Stop seeking a wife. Indeed, I want you to be free from anxiety. The single man is anxious for the things of the Lord, how he may gain the Lord's approval."

### ***Gift of Service with Marriage***

**1 Cor. 7:7, 17, 27, 29, 38** "I wish all men were as I myself am. Nevertheless, each one has his

own gift from God, one in this way, another in that way. ... let each one so walk as God has called him.... Are you bound to a wife? Stop seeking a release.... Henceforth let those who have wives be as though they had none, ... he also that gives his virginity in marriage does well, but he that does not give it in marriage will do better."

### ***Other Natural Abilities and Talents May Be Used in the Theocratic Organization***

**Ex. 31:2-6; 35:25 to 36:3** "I have called by name Bezalel the son of Uri, ... of the tribe of Judah: and I have filled him with the spirit of God, in wisdom, and in understanding, and in knowledge, and in all manner of workmanship, to devise skilful works, to work in gold, and in silver, and in brass, and in cutting of stones for setting, and in carving of wood, to work in all manner of workmanship. ... and in the hearts of all that are wise-hearted I have put wisdom, that they may make all that I have commanded thee." "And all the women that were wise-hearted did spin with their hands, and brought that which they had spun, ... The children of Israel brought a freewill offering unto Jehovah; every man and woman, whose heart made them willing to bring for all the work."

**Heb. 11:7** "By faith Noah, after being given divine warning of things not yet beheld, showed godly fear and constructed an ark for the saving of his household."

**Also: Gen. 6:14, 15; 7:5.**

### ***Cultivating These Present Gifts of the Spirit***

**1 Tim. 4:14-16** "Do not be neglecting the gift in you which was given you through a prediction and when the body of older men laid their hands upon you. Ponder over these things, be absorbed in them, that your advancement may be manifest to

all persons. Pay constant attention to yourself and to your teaching. Stay by these things, for by doing this you will save both yourself and those who listen to you."

**2 Tim. 4:5** "You, though, keep your balance in all things, suffer evil, do missionary work, thoroughly accomplish your ministry."

**2 Tim. 1:6, 7** "Stir up like a fire the gift of God which is in you through the laying of my hands upon you. For God gave us not a spirit of cowardice, but that of power and of love and of soundness of mind."

**Matt. 19:11, 12** "Not all men make room for the saying, but only those who have the gift. ...there are eunuchs that have made themselves eunuchs because of the kingdom of the heavens. Let him that can make room for it make room for it."

**1 Pet. 4:7, 8, 10, 11** "The complete end of all things has drawn close. Be sound in mind, therefore, and be vigilant with a view to prayers. Above all things, have intense love for one another, because love covers a multitude of sins. In proportion as each one has received a gift, use it in ministering to one another as the right kind of stewards over God's undeserved kindness which is expressed in various ways. If anyone speaks, let him speak as it were the sacred pronouncements of God; if anyone ministers, let him minister as dependent on the strength which God supplies; so that in all things God may be glorified through Jesus Christ."

#### **Anyone Can Cultivate Ability to Do Any Theocratic Assignment Given**

**Phil. 4:13** "For all things I have the strength by virtue of him who imparts power to me."

**2 Tim. 2:15** "Do your utmost to present yourself approved to God, a workman with nothing

to be ashamed of, handling the word of the truth aright."

**Zech. 4:6** "Not by might, nor by power, but by my spirit, saith Jehovah of hosts."

**Ex. 4:10-12** "And Moses said unto Jehovah, Oh, Lord, I am not eloquent, neither heretofore, nor since thou hast spoken unto thy servant; for I am slow of speech, and of a slow tongue. And Jehovah said unto him, Who hath made man's mouth? or who maketh a man dumb, or deaf, or seeing, or blind? is it not I, Jehovah? Now therefore go, and I will be with thy mouth, and teach thee what thou shalt speak."

#### **All Gifts Are for the Purpose of Being Used to Jehovah's Praise**

**Eph. 1:3-8, 14** "Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, ... For he foreordained us to the adoption through Jesus Christ as sons to himself, ... in praise of his glorious undeserved kindness which he kindly conferred upon us by means of his loved one. ... This he caused to abound toward us in all wisdom and good sense, ... to his glorious praise."

**Eph. 5:18-20** "Keep getting filled with spirit, speaking to yourselves with psalms and praises to God and spiritual songs, singing and accompanying yourselves with music in your hearts to Jehovah, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ giving thanks always for all things to our God and Father."

**Ps. 107:15, 21, 32** "Oh that men would praise Jehovah for his lovingkindness, and for his wonderful works to the children of men! Let them exalt him also in the assembly of the people, and praise him in the seat of the elders."

#### **We Should Not Envy Others Having Gifts**

**1 Cor. 12:11, 28-30** "All these operations the one and the same spirit performs, making a distri-

bution to each one respectively just as it wills. And God has set the respective ones in the congregation, first, apostles; second, prophets; third, teachers; then powerful works; then gifts of healings; helpful services, abilities to direct, different tongues. Not

all are apostles, are they? Not all are prophets, are they? Not all are teachers, are they? Not all perform powerful works, do they? Not all have gifts of healings, do they? Not all speak in tongues, do they? Not all are translators, are they?"

# Healing

## DEFINITION

The restoration of the spiritually or physically sick ones to good health. A special gift of the holy spirit given by Jehovah God to certain ones before Christ and also in the early congregation that enabled the gifted one to perform miraculous cures of physical sickness and even raise the dead. It was used as a sign of God's power usually performed on those outside the congregation. Like all special gifts of the spirit from and after Pentecost, A.D. 33, it was administered by Jesus Christ through the twelve apostles or in their presence. At the apostles' death it was impossible to pass on this special gift to others, and it therefore ceased.

### Jehovah God Has Power to Make Sick and to Heal

**Deut. 28:27, 35** "Jehovah will smite thee with the boil of Egypt, and with the emerods, and with the scurvy, and with the itch, whereof thou canst not be healed. Jehovah will smite thee in the knees, and in the legs, with a sore boil, whereof thou canst not be healed, from the sole of thy foot unto the crown of thy head."

**Ex. 15:23-26** "And when they came to Marah, they could not drink of the waters of Marah, for they were bitter: . . . And he cried unto Jehovah; and Jehovah showed him a tree, and he cast it into the waters, and the waters were made sweet. . . and he said, If thou wilt diligently hearken to the voice of Jehovah thy God, and wilt do that which is right in his eyes, and wilt give ear to his commandments, and keep all his statutes, I will put none of the diseases upon thee, which I have put upon the Egyptians: for I am Jehovah that healeth thee."

### Power Given to Christ Jesus to Heal During First Advent

**Matt. 9:35** "And yet Jesus set out on a tour of all the cities and villages, teaching in their synagogues and preaching the good news of the kingdom and curing every kind of disease and every kind of ailment."

**Acts 10:38** "Jesus who was from Nazareth, how God anointed him with holy spirit and power, and he went through the land doing good and healing all those oppressed by the Devil, because God was with him."

**Matt. 11:5** "The blind are seeing again, and the lame are walking about, the lepers are being cleansed and the deaf are hearing, and the dead are being raised up, and the poor are having the good news declared to them."

### Jesus Gave Gift of Healing First to Twelve Apostles, Later to Seventy Other Disciples

**Matt. 10:1-8** "So he summoned his twelve disciples and gave

them authority over unclean spirits, in order to expel these and to cure every kind of disease and every kind of ailment. The names of the twelve apostles are these: . . . These twelve Jesus sent forth, giving them these orders: ' . . . Cure sick people, raise up dead persons, make lepers clean, expel demons. You received free, give free.' "

**Luke 10:1, 2, 8-10** "After these things the Master designated seventy others and sent them forth by twos . . . Then he began to say to them: ' . . . wherever you enter into a city . . . cure the sick ones in it, and go on telling them: "The kingdom of God has come near to you." ' "

### **Through Holy Spirit Which He Began to Pour Out at Pentecost, Jesus Gave Gift to Heal and Raise Dead Only to Certain Ones**

**Acts 2:1-4** "Now while the day of the feast of Pentecost was in progress they were all together at the same place. . . . And tongues as if of fire became visible and were distributed to them, and one sat upon each one of them, and they all became filled with holy spirit."

**1 Cor. 12:4, 8, 9** "Now there are varieties of gifts, but there is the same spirit. For example, to one there is given through the spirit speech of wisdom, . . . to another gifts of healings by that one spirit."

**Acts 5:12, 16** "Moreover, through the hands of the apostles many signs and wonders continued to occur among the people; and they were all with one accord in Solomon's colonnade. Also the multitude from the cities around Jerusalem kept coming together, bearing sick people and those troubled with unclean spirits, and they would one and all be cured."

### **Healing and Other Gifts Passed On Only by Apostles or in Their Presence**

**Acts 8:18-20** "Now when Simon saw that through the laying on of the hands of the apostles the spirit was given, he offered them money, saying: 'Give me also this authority, that anyone upon whom I lay my hands may receive holy spirit.' But Peter said to him: 'May your silver perish with you, because you thought through money to get possession of the free gift of God.' "

**Acts 10:44** "While Peter was yet speaking about these matters the holy spirit fell upon all those hearing the word."

### **Physical Healing by Jesus Was Also a Forgiveness of Sins**

**Mark 2:3-12** "And when Jesus saw their faith he said to the paralytic: 'Child, your sins are forgiven.' Now there were some of the scribes there, sitting and reasoning in their hearts: 'What is it this man is saying in this manner? He is blaspheming. Who can forgive sins except one, God?' But Jesus, having discerned immediately by his spirit that they were reasoning that way in themselves, said to them: 'Why are you reasoning these things in your hearts? Which is easier, to say to the paralytic, "Your sins are forgiven," or to say, "Get up and pick up your cot and walk"? But in order for you men to know that the Son of man has authority to forgive sins upon the earth,' —he said to the paralytic: 'I say to you, Get up, pick up your cot, and go to your home.' At that he did get up and immediately picked up his cot and walked out in front of them all, so that they were all simply carried away and they glorified God, saying: 'We never saw the like of it.' "

# **Jesus' Disciples Also Had Special Gift to Forgive and Retain Sins, Which Modern "Divine Healing" Impostors Lack**

**John 20:21-23** "Jesus, therefore, said to them again: 'May you have peace. Just as the Father has sent me forth, I also am sending you.' And after he said this he blew upon them and said to them: 'Receive holy spirit. If you forgive the sins of any persons, they stand forgiven to them; if you retain those of any persons, they stand retained.'"

**Acts 9:17, 18** "So Ananias went off and entered into the house, and he laid his hands upon him and said: 'Saul, brother, the Lord, the Jesus that appeared to you on the road over which you were coming, has sent me forth in order that you may recover sight and be filled with holy spirit.' And immediately there fell from his eyes what looked like scales, and he recovered sight."

**Acts 13:9-12** "Saul, who is also Paul, becoming filled with holy spirit, looked at him intently and said: '...look! Jehovah's hand is upon you, and you will be blind, not seeing the sunlight for a period of time.' Instantly a thick mist and darkness fell upon him, and he went around seeking men to lead him by the hand."

**Also: Acts 5:1-11; "Sin."**

## **James Speaks of Forgiveness of Sins Leading to Spiritual, Not Physical, Sickness—Otherwise All Sinners Would Be Seriously Sick Bodily**

**Jas. 5:13-16** "Is there anyone suffering evil among you? Let him carry on prayer. Is there anyone in good spirits? Let him sing psalms. Is there anyone sick among you? Let him call the older men of the congregation to him, and let them pray over him, rubbing him with oil in the name of Jehovah. And the prayer of faith will make the indisposed one well, and Jehovah will raise him up. Also if he has committed sins,

it will be forgiven him. Therefore openly confess your sins to one another and pray for one another, that you may get healed."

**Deut. 9:16-20** "And I looked, and, behold, ye had sinned against Jehovah your God; ye had made you a molten calf: ye had turned aside quickly out of the way which Jehovah had commanded you.... And I fell down before Jehovah, as at the first, forty days and forty nights; I did neither eat bread nor drink water; because of all your sin which ye sinned, in doing that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, to provoke him to anger.... But Jehovah hearkened unto me that time also."

## ***Rubbing with oil shows application of God's healing word in correction***

**Ps. 133:1, 2** "Behold, how good and how pleasant it is for brethren to dwell together in unity! It is like the precious oil upon the head, that ran down upon the beard, even Aaron's beard; that came down upon the skirt of his garment."

**Ps. 141:5** "Let the righteous smite me, it shall be a kindness; and let him reprove me, it shall be as oil upon the head; let not my head refuse it: for even in their wickedness shall my prayer continue."

## ***Example of Elijah's prayer was occasion of spiritual sickness in Israel***

**Jas. 5:16-18** "A righteous man's supplication when it is at work has much force. Elijah was a man with feelings like ours, and yet in prayer he prayed for it not to rain, and it did not rain upon the land for three years and six months. And he prayed again, and the heaven gave rain and the land put forth its fruit."

**1 Ki. 16:29-33; 17:1; 18:1, 36, 37, 45** "Ahab the son of Omri [began] to reign over Israel:...

And Ahab the son of Omri did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah. . . . And he reared up an altar for Baal in the house of Baal, which he had built in Samaria. And Ahab made the Asherah; and Ahab did yet more to provoke Jehovah, the God of Israel, to anger than all the kings of Israel that were before him." "And Elijah the Tishbite, who was of the sojourners of Gilead, said unto Ahab, As Jehovah, the God of Israel, liveth, before whom I stand, there shall not be dew nor rain these years, but according to my word." "And it came to pass, after many days, that the word of Jehovah came to Elijah, in the third year, saying, Go, show thyself unto Ahab; and I will send rain upon the earth. . . . Elijah the prophet came near, and said, . . . Hear me, O Jehovah, hear me, that this people may know that thou, Jehovah, art God, and that thou hast turned their heart back again. And it came to pass in a little while, that the heavens grew black with clouds and wind, and there was a great rain."

***Spiritual sickness is result of being misled from truth. Turning back saves from death***

Jas. 5:19, 20 "My brothers, if anyone among you is misled from the truth and another turns him back, know that he who turns a sinner back from the error of his way will save his soul from death and will cover a multitude of sins."

Matt. 18:15 "Moreover, if your brother commits a sin, go lay bare his fault between you and him alone. If he listens to you, you have gained your brother."

1 Tim. 4:16 "Pay constant attention to yourself and to your teaching. Stay by these things, for by doing this you will save both yourself and those who listen to you."

**Healing Powers Were Given as a Sign to Outsiders**

Luke 4:25-27 "For instance, I tell you in truth, There were many widows in Israel in the days of Elijah, when the heaven was shut up three years and six months, so that a great famine fell upon all the land, yet Elijah was sent to none of those women, but only to Zarephath in the land of Zidon to a widow. Also there were many lepers in Israel in the time of Elisha the prophet, yet none of them was cleansed, but only Naaman the man of Syria was."

**Purpose of Healing Was Not to Cure Those Close to Gifted One**

Phil. 2:25-30 "He fell sick nearly to the point of death; but God had mercy on him, in fact, not only on him, but also on me, that I should not get grief upon grief. . . . On account of the Lord's work he came quite near to death, exposing his soul to danger, that he might fully make up for your not being here to render private service to me."

2 Tim. 4:20 "I left Trophimus sick at Miletus."

**Paul's One Exception Was to Free Himself from Blame Due to Accident**

Acts 20:7-12 "Paul began discoursing to them, as he was going to depart the next day, and he prolonged his speech until midnight. . . . Seated at the window, a certain young man named Eutychus fell into a deep sleep while Paul kept talking on, and, collapsing from sleep, he fell down from the third story and was picked up dead. But Paul went downstairs, threw himself upon him and embraced him and said: 'Stop raising a clamor, for his soul is in him.' . . . So they took the boy away alive and were comforted beyond measure."



## Healing Powers Were Not Used by the Gifted One on Self

**Luke 4:23, 24** "At this he said to them: 'No doubt you will apply this illustration to me, "Physician, cure yourself"; the things we heard as having happened in Capernaum do also here in your native territory.' But he said: 'Certainly I tell you that no prophet is accepted in his native territory.'"

## Jesus used natural means to recover from fatigue

**John 4:6** "Now Jesus, tired out from the journey, was sitting at the fountain just as he was."

**Mark 4:38** "But he was in the stern sleeping upon a pillow."

**Luke 8:23** "But as they were sailing he fell asleep."

**Mark 6:30-33** "And the apostles assembled before Jesus and reported to him all the things they had done and taught. And he said to them: 'Come, you yourselves, privately into a lonely place and rest up a bit.' For there were many coming and going, and it was not convenient even to eat a meal. So off they went in the boat for a lonely place to themselves. But people saw them going and many got to know it, and from all the cities they ran there together on foot and got ahead of them."

## Elisha had great healing powers, but died of sickness

**2 Ki. 4:32-35** "And when Elisha was come into the house, behold, the child was dead, and laid upon his bed. He went in therefore, and shut the door upon them twain, and prayed unto Jehovah. And he went up, and lay upon the child, and put his mouth upon his mouth, and his eyes upon his eyes, and his hands upon his hands: and he stretched himself upon him: and the flesh of the child waxed warm. . . . and the child opened his eyes."

**2 Ki. 5:9, 10, 14** "So Naaman came with his horses and with

his chariots, and stood at the door of the house of Elisha. And Elisha sent a messenger unto him, saying, Go and wash in the Jordan seven times, and thy flesh shall come again to thee, and thou shalt be clean. Then went he down, and dipped himself seven times in the Jordan, according to the saying of the man of God; and his flesh came again like unto the flesh of a little child, and he was clean."

**2 Ki. 13:14, 20, 21** "Now Elisha was fallen sick of his sickness whereof he died. And Elisha died, and they buried him. Now the bands of the Moabites invaded the land at the coming in of the year. And it came to pass, as they were burying a man, that, behold, they spied a band; and they cast the man into the sepulchre of Elisha: and as soon as the man touched the bones of Elisha, he revived, and stood up on his feet."

## Paul's gift of healing did not enable him to cure himself

**2 Cor. 12:7-9** "Therefore, that I might not be overly exalted, there was given me a thorn in the flesh, an angel of Satan, to keep striking me, that I might not be overly exalted. In this behalf I three times entreated the Lord that it might depart from me; and yet he really said to me: 'My undeserved kindness is sufficient for you; for my power is being made perfect in weakness.'"

## Natural Means of Healing Were Used Even at Time Gift Was Present

**1 Tim. 5:23** "Do not drink water any longer, but use a little wine for the sake of your stomach and your frequent cases of sickness."

**Col. 4:14** "Luke the beloved physician sends you his greetings."

### Receiving Pay or Taking a Money Collection Not Permitted Those Who Practiced Divine Healing

2 Ki. 5:15-27 "And he returned to the man of God, he and all his company, and came, and stood before him; and he said, Behold now, I know that there is no God in all the earth, but in Israel: now therefore, I pray thee, take a present of thy servant. But he said, As Jehovah liveth, before whom I stand, I will receive none. And he urged him to take it; but he refused. . . . But Gehazi, the servant of Elisha the man of God, said, Behold my master hath spared this Naaman the Syrian, in not receiving at his hands that which he brought: as Jehovah liveth, I will run after him, and take somewhat of him. So Gehazi followed after Naaman. . . . And Naaman said, Be pleased to take two talents. And he urged him, and bound two talents of silver in two bags, with two changes of raiment, and laid them upon two of his servants; and they bare them before him. . . . But he [Gehazi] went in, and stood before his master. And Elisha said unto him, . . . Is it a time to receive money, and to receive garments, and oliveyards and vineyards, and sheep and oxen, and men-servants and maid-servants? The leprosy therefore of Naaman shall cleave unto thee, and unto thy seed for ever. And he went out from his presence a leper as white as snow."

Matt. 10:8 "Cure sick people, raise up dead persons, make lepers clean, expel demons. You received free, give free."

### Divine Healing as the Fifth-Rate Gift Not the Evidence of God's True Organization Today, but Love and Gift of Preaching Are

1 Cor. 12:28 "And God has set the respective ones in the congregation, first, apostles; second, prophets; third, teachers; then

powerful works; then gifts of healings."

1 Cor. 14:1 "Pursue love, yet keep striving after the spiritual gifts, but preferably that you may prophesy."

Acts 2:17, 18 "'And in the last days,' God says, 'I shall pour some of my spirit out upon every kind of flesh, and your sons and your daughters will prophesy and your young men will see visions and your old men will dream dreams; and even upon my men slaves and upon my women slaves I will pour out some of my spirit in those days, and they will prophesy.'"

1 Cor. 13:2 "And if I have the gift of prophesying and understand all the sacred secrets and all knowledge, and if I have all the faith so as to transplant mountains, but do not have love, I am nothing."

### Not All in Early Congregation Possessed Gift of Healing

1 Cor. 12:19, 20, 30 "If they were all one member, where would the body be? But now they are many members, yet one body. Not all have gifts of healings, do they? Not all speak in tongues, do they?"

### Divine Physical Healing Not Experienced Today, Since Special Gifts Passed Away After Death of Apostles

1 Cor. 13:8-12 "Whether there are gifts of prophesying, they will be done away with; whether there are tongues, they will cease; whether there is knowledge, it will be done away with. . . . When I was a babe, I used to speak as a babe, to think as a babe, to reason as a babe; but now that I have become a man, I have done away with the traits of a babe. For at present we see in hazy outline by means of a metal mirror, but then it will be face to face. At present I know partially, but then I shall know accurately even as I am accurately known."

### **Last Recorded Miraculous Healings Occurred About A.D. 59**

Acts 28:8, 9 "It happened that the father of Publius was lying down afflicted with fever and dysentery, and Paul went in to him and prayed, laid his hands upon him and healed him. After this occurred, the rest of the people on the island who had sicknesses also began to come to him and be cured."

### **Divine Healing Through Christ Jesus Will Be Accomplished Completely During His 1,000-Year Reign**

Isa. 33:24 "And the inhabitant shall not say, I am sick: the people that dwell therein shall be forgiven their iniquity."

Jer. 33:6 "Behold, I will bring it health and cure, and I will cure them; and I will reveal unto them abundance of peace and truth."

John 8:51 "Most truly I say to you, if anyone observes my word, he will never see death at all."

Isa. 35:6 "Then shall the lame man leap as a hart, and the tongue of the dumb shall sing."

Rev. 21:4, 5 "'And he will wipe out every tear from their eyes, and death will be no more, neither will mourning nor outcry nor pain be any more. The former things have passed away.' And the one seated on the throne said: 'Look! I am making all things new.'"

# Heavens

## DEFINITION

(1) Jehovah God's own dwelling place; the "highest heavens"; a spirit realm invisible to human eyes.

(2) The great invisible organization of Jehovah God, composed of mighty spirit creatures: the only-begotten Son (the Word or Logos, "Michael the Archangel"), who is now Christ Jesus, and the holy angelic host, with ranks of cherub, seraph and other angel messengers or deputies. This organization is often called God's "woman", "Zion," "Jerusalem." The 144,000 (Revelation 14) at resurrection become part of this heavens.

(3) The "New Heavens" (the Kingdom composed of Christ Jesus and [when resurrected] his 144,000 anointed followers or New Jerusalem, members of the royal family, immortal and incorruptible, a part [the capital] of God's invisible organization).

(4) The invisible 'covering cherub' over the original righteous earth.

(5) The preflood arrangement of Satan and the angels who rebelled and joined him.

(6) The present-day invisible organization of Satan and his wicked demons, the fallen angels.

(7) The visible (physical) universe, the "starry heavens".

(8) The atmosphere surrounding the earth.

(9) The position of glorified Kingdom ministry to which the anointed remnant are now exalted.

(10) The lofty position occupied in Satan's wicked visible organization of politics, commerce and false religion by Satan's ministers of false religion who claim to be ministers of God.

**(1) God's Dwelling Place**

**1 Ki. 8:27, 30** "But will God in very deed dwell on the earth? behold, heaven and the heaven of heavens cannot contain thee; how much less this house that I have builded! And hearken thou to the supplication of thy servant, and of thy people Israel, when they shall pray toward this place: yea, hear thou in heaven thy dwelling-place; and when thou hearest, forgive."

**Ps. 11:4** "Jehovah, his throne is in heaven."

**Ps. 14:2** "Jehovah looked down from heaven upon the children of men."

**Ps. 33:13** "Jehovah looketh from heaven."

**Isa. 66:1** "Thus saith Jehovah, Heaven is my throne."

**Heb. 9:24** "For Christ entered, not into a holy place made with hands which is a copy of the reality, but into heaven itself, now to appear before the person of God for us."

**2 Cor. 12:2, 4** "I know a man in union with Christ who, fourteen years ago—whether in the body I do not know, or out of the body I do not know; God knows—was caught away as such to the third heaven. . . . that he was caught away into paradise and heard unutterable words which it is not lawful for a man to speak."

**Rev. 2:7** "Let the one who has an ear hear what the spirit says to the congregations: To him that conquers I will grant to eat of the tree of life, which is in the paradise of God." ["Paradise" here represents heaven.]

**Job 1:6** "Now it came to pass on the day when the sons of God came to present themselves before Jehovah, that Satan also came among them."

**Heb. 8:1** "We have such a high priest as this, and he has sat down at the right hand of the throne of the majesty in the heavens."

**Deut. 10:14** "Behold, unto Jehovah thy God belongeth heaven

and the heaven of heavens, the earth, with all that is therein."

**(2) God's Great Invisible Organization**

**Rev. 12:12** "On this account be glad, you heavens and you who reside in them."

**Eph. 1:20, 21** "Christ . . . seated . . . at his right hand in the heavenly places, far above every government and authority and power and lordship and every name named."

**Gal. 4:26** "But the Jerusalem above is free, and she is our mother."

**Rev. 12:1** "And a great sign was seen in heaven, a woman arrayed with the sun, and the moon was beneath her feet, and on her head was a crown of twelve stars, and she was pregnant."

**Isa. 54:1, 5, 6** "Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry aloud, thou that didst not travail with child: for more are the children of the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith Jehovah. For thy Maker is thy husband; Jehovah of hosts is his name: . . . For Jehovah hath called thee as a wife forsaken and grieved in spirit, even a wife of youth, when she is cast off, saith thy God."

**Rev. 9:16 (mar.)** "And the number of the armies of cavalry was 200,000,000: I heard the number of them."

**Dan. 7:10** "A fiery stream issued and came forth from before him: thousands of thousands ministered unto him, and ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him."

**Heb. 12:22, 23** "But you have approached a mount Zion and a city of the living God, heavenly Jerusalem, and myriads of angels, in general assembly."

**2 Pet. 2:11** "Whereas angels, although they are greater in strength and power, do not bring against them an accusation in

abusive terms, not doing so out of respect for Jehovah."

**2 Ki. 19:35** "And it came to pass that night, that the angel of Jehovah went forth, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians a hundred fourscore and five thousand: and when men arose early in the morning, behold, these were all dead bodies."

**(3) Christ and His Joint Kingdom Heirs "New Heavens"**

**Isa. 65:17** "Behold, I create new heavens and a new earth."

**Rev. 21:1** "And I saw a new heaven and a new earth."

**2 Pet. 3:13** "But there are new heavens and a new earth that we are awaiting according to his promise, and in these righteousness is to dwell."

**Rev. 21:2** "I saw also the holy city, New Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God and prepared as a bride adorned for her husband."

**Ps. 19:1** "The heavens declare the glory of God."

***Begins with Christ's enthronement, lasts forever***

**Rev. 12:5** "And she gave birth to a son, a male, who is destined to shepherd all the nations with an iron rod."

**Rev. 11:15** "And the seventh angel blew his trumpet. And loud voices occurred in heaven saying: 'The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ, and he will rule as king for ever and ever.'"

**Isa. 66:22** "For as the new heavens and the new earth, which I will make, shall remain before me, saith Jehovah, so shall your seed and your name remain."

**(4) The Invisible 'Covering Cherub' over the Original Righteous Earth**

**Heb. 1:10** "And: 'You, O Lord, founded the earth at the beginning, and the heavens are works of your hands.'"

**2 Pet. 3:5** "For, according to their wish, this fact escapes their

notice, that there were heavens in ancient times and an earth standing compactly out of water and in the midst of water by the word of God."

**Ezek. 28:14** "Thou wast the anointed cherub that covereth: and I set thee, so that thou wast upon the holy mountain of God; thou hast walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire."

**(5) Preflood Arrangement of Satan and Rebellious Angels**

**Gen. 6:4, 11** "The Nephilim were in the earth in those days, and also after that, when the sons of God came in unto the daughters of men, and they bare children to them: the same were the mighty men that were of old, the men of renown. And the earth was corrupt before God, and the earth was filled with violence."

**Jude 6** "And the angels that did not keep their original position but forsook their own proper dwelling-place he has reserved with eternal bonds under dense darkness for the judgment of the great day."

**2 Pet. 2:4** "Certainly if God did not hold back from punishing the angels that sinned, but, by throwing them into Tartarus, delivered them to pits of dense darkness to be reserved for judgment."

**1 Pet. 3:19, 20** "In this state also he went his way and preached to the spirits in prison, which had once been disobedient when the patience of God was waiting in Noah's days, while the ark was being constructed, in which a few people, that is, eight souls, were carried safely through the water."

***Disrupted at the Flood***

**2 Pet. 3:6** "The world of that time suffered destruction when it was deluged with water."

**(6) Satan's Present-Day Invisible Organization of Demons**

**2 Pet. 3:7** "But by the same word the heavens and the earth

that are now are stored up for fire and are being reserved to the day of judgment and of destruction of the ungodly men."

**Eph. 6:12** "Because we have a fight, not against blood and flesh, but against the governments, ... against the world-rulers of this darkness, against the wicked spirit forces in the heavenly places."

**Mark 13:31** "Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will not pass away."

**Isa. 50:3** "I clothe the heavens with blackness, and I make sackcloth their covering."

**Began with reorganization after Flood; destroyed at Armageddon**

**Heb. 1:10, 11** "And: 'You, O Lord, founded the earth at the beginning, and the heavens are works of your hands. They will perish, but you are to remain continually; and they will all grow old like an outer garment.'"

**Rev. 12:3** "And another sign was seen in heaven, and look! a great fiery-colored dragon, with seven heads and ten horns and upon its heads seven diadems."

**Isa. 34:4** "And all the host of heaven shall be dissolved, and the heavens shall be rolled together as a scroll; and all their host shall fade away, as the leaf fadeth from off the vine, and as a fading leaf from the fig-tree."

**2 Pet. 3:10** "Yet Jehovah's day will come as a thief, in which the heavens will pass away with a hissing noise."

**Rev. 20:11** "And I saw a great white throne and the one seated on it. From before him the earth and the heaven fled away, and no place was found for them."

### (7) The Physical Universe

**Gen. 1:1** "In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth."

**Gen. 22:17** "I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heavens."

**Isa. 40:12** "Who hath measured the waters in the hollow of his hand, and meted out heaven with the span."

**Ps. 19:1** "The heavens declare the glory of God; and the firmament sheweth his handiwork."

### (8) Earth's Atmosphere "the Sky"

**Gen. 1:6-8** "And God said, Let there be a firmament in the midst of the waters, and let it divide the waters from the waters. And God made the firmament, and divided the waters which were under the firmament from the waters which were above the firmament: and it was so. And God called the firmament Heaven. And there was evening and there was morning, a second day."

**Gen. 7:11** "In the six hundredth year of Noah's life, in the second month, on the seventeenth day of the month, on the same day were all the fountains of the great deep broken up, and the windows of heaven were opened."

**2 Ki. 2:1, 11** "And it came to pass, when Jehovah would take up Elijah by a whirlwind into heaven, that Elijah went with Elisha from Gilgal. And it came to pass, as they still went on, and talked, that, behold, there appeared a chariot of fire, and horses of fire, which parted them both asunder; and Elijah went up by a whirlwind into heaven."

**Luke 17:24** "For even as the lightning, by its flashing, shines from one part under heaven to another part under heaven, so the Son of man will be."

**Deut. 1:28** "Whither are we going up? our brethren have made our heart to melt, saying, The people are greater and taller than we; the cities are great and fortified up to heaven; and moreover we have seen the sons of the Anakim there."

### (9) The Remnant's Position of Glorified Kingdom Ministry

**Rev. 11:12** "And they heard a loud voice out of heaven say to them: 'Come on up here.' And they went up into heaven in the cloud, and their enemies beheld them."

**Rev. 8:1** "And when he opened the seventh seal, a silence occurred in heaven for about a half hour."

**Rev. 13:6** "And it opened its mouth in blasphemies against God, to blaspheme his name and his residence, even those residing in heaven."

**1 Thess. 4:17** "Afterward we the living who are surviving will together with them be caught away in clouds to meet the Lord in the air; and thus we shall always be with the Lord."

**Eph. 1:3, 4** "Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, for he has blessed us with every spiritual blessing in the heavenly places in union with Christ, just as he chose us in union with him before the world's foundation, that we should be holy and without blemish before him in love."

**Eph. 2:6** "And he raised us up together and seated us together in the heavenly places in union with Christ Jesus."

#### **(10) Position of Satan's Ministers of False Religion, False "Stars"**

**Rev. 12:4** "Its tail draws a third of the stars of heaven, and it hurled them down to the earth. And the dragon kept standing before the woman."

**Rev. 6:13** "And the stars of heaven fell to the earth, as when a fig tree shaken by a high wind casts its early figs."

**2 Cor. 11:13-15** "For such men are false apostles . . . of Christ. And no wonder, for Satan himself keeps transforming himself into an angel of light. It is therefore nothing great if his ministers also keep transforming themselves into ministers of righteousness. But their end shall be according to their works."

**Jude 12, 13** "These are . . . stars with no set course, for which the blackness of darkness stands reserved forever."

#### **"Heavens Opened" Means Discernment of Spiritual Things**

**Rev. 4:1** "After these things I saw, and, look! an opened door in heaven, and the first voice that I heard was as of a trumpet, speaking with me, saying: 'Come on up here, and I shall show you the things which must take place.'"

**Mark 1:10** "And immediately on coming up out of the water he saw the heavens being parted, and, like a dove, the spirit coming down upon him."

**Acts 7:56** "And he said: 'Look! I behold the heavens opened up and the Son of man standing at God's right hand.'"

**Rev. 11:19** "And the temple sanctuary of God that is in heaven was opened, and the ark of his covenant was seen in his temple sanctuary."

# Hell

## DEFINITION

False religion teaches that hell is a place where the wicked suffer a twofold punishment: the pain of loss, and the pain of sense. The pain of loss consists in the eternal separation of the sinner from God and the realization that the failure to reach heaven is due to his own fault. The pain of sense consists in the torment of unquenchable fire. It is claimed that the body by itself is incapable of pain; it is the soul that suffers. [See "Soul".] This unreasonable doctrine

contradicts the Bible, the truth of which has been confused by misrepresenting in translation the original meaning of three distinct Greek words and one Hebrew word. *Sheol*, Hebrew, and *Hades*, Greek, were originally used by Bible writers to represent gravedom or the common grave of mankind. *Gehenna*, Greek, was used as a symbol of annihilation or everlasting death in unconsciousness from which there was to be no awakening. *Tartaros*, Greek, meant a degraded or debased condition only for rebellious spirit creatures during their conscious lifetime with the certainty of annihilation awaiting them at the time of their execution. These original words have been indiscriminately translated "hell", "hell-fire," "grave," "pit" and "death". The English word "hell" is taken from the Anglo-Saxon, *helan*, literally meaning "to conceal". Hence the English word "hell", to conform with the original expression of the condition for the dead and according to its own original meaning, Scripturally applies to gravedom, the common grave of all mankind, good and bad alike, in an unconscious state without suffering or pleasure. After Jesus introduced the truth about life and immortality, only the willfully wicked were spoken of as being in *Gehenna*, the expression *Hades* [translated "hell" in English] being applied to the dead in God's memory, those with opportunity or hope of a resurrection.

## ORIGIN

The false conception of eternal torment after death was introduced early into apostate Christianity, and by the fourth century after Christ was firmly entrenched in false religion. It is based on Satan's original lie in Eden.

### All Men Being Sinners Are Condemned by God and Liable to Punishment

**Rom. 5:12** "That is why, just as through one man sin entered into the world and death through sin, and thus death spread to all men because they had all sinned."

**Rom. 3:23** "For all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God."

**Rom. 6:23** "For the wages sin pays is death."

### True Meaning of "Hell" Confused by Translation of Four Original Words That Mean Three Different Conditions

**Ps. 16:10** "For thou wilt not leave my soul to *Sheol* ["hell," AV; *Dy* at Ps. 15:10]."

**Acts 2:27** "Because you will not forsake my soul in *Hades* ["hell," AV; *Dy*]."

**Luke 12:5** "Fear him who after killing has authority to throw into *Gehenna* ["hell," AV; *Dy*]."

**2 Pet. 2:4** "God did not hold back from punishing the angels that sinned, but, by throwing them into *Tartarus* ["hell," AV; "lower hell," *Dy*], delivered them to pits of dense darkness to be reserved for judgment."

**Ps. 30:3** "O Jehovah, thou hast brought up my [David's] soul from *Sheol* ["the grave," AV; "hell," *Dy* at Ps. 29:4]; thou hast kept me alive, that I should not go down to the pit."

**Num. 16:33** "So they, and all that appertained to them, went down alive into *Sheol* ["the pit," AV; "hell," *Dy*]: and the earth closed upon them, and they perished."



**Sheol, Hades Translated "Hell," "Grave," "Pit," "Death"; Mean Gravedom or Common Grave, Without Pain or Pleasure**

**Job 7:9** "As the cloud is consumed and vanisheth away, so he that goeth down to Sheol ["grave," AV; "hell," Dy] shall come up no more."

**Job 17:13-16** "If I look for Sheol ["the grave," AV; "hell," Dy] as my house; if I have spread my couch in the darkness; if I have said to corruption, Thou art my father; to the worm, Thou art my mother, and my sister; where then is my hope? And as for my hope, who shall see it? It shall go down to the bars of Sheol ["the pit," AV; "the deep-pit," Dy], when once there is rest in the dust."

**Job 24:19, 20** "Drought and heat consume the snow waters: so doth Sheol ["the grave," AV] those that have sinned. The womb shall forget him; the worm shall feed sweetly on him; he shall be no more remembered; and unrighteousness shall be broken as a tree." [Dy reads: "Let him pass from the snow waters to excessive heat: and his sin even to hell. Let mercy forget him: may worms be his sweetness. Let him be remembered no more, but be broken in pieces as an unfruitful tree."]

**Amos 9:2** "Though they dig into Sheol ["hell," AV; Dy], thence shall my hand take them."

**Job 14:13** "Oh that thou wouldest hide me in Sheol ["the grave," AV; "hell," Dy], that thou wouldest keep me secret, until thy wrath be past, that thou wouldest appoint me a set time, and remember me!"

**Hos. 13:14** "I will ransom them from the power of Sheol ["the grave," AV; "death," Dy]; I will redeem them from death

[also AV and Dy]: O death, where are thy plagues? O Sheol ["grave," AV; "hell," Dy], where is thy destruction?"

**Num. 16:30-33** "But if Jehovah make a new thing, and the ground open its mouth and swallow them up, with all that appertain unto them, and they go down alive into Sheol ["the pit," AV; "hell," Dy]; ... So they, and all that appertained to them, went down alive into Sheol ["the pit," AV; "hell," Dy]: and the earth closed upon them, and they perished."

**Rev. 1:18** "I became dead, but, look! I am living for ever and ever, and I have the keys of death and of Hades ["hell," AV; Dy]."

**Rev. 6:8** "And I saw, and, look! a pale horse, and the one seated upon it had the name Death. And Hades ["hell," AV; Dy] was closely following him. And authority was given them ... to kill."

**Nonexistence in the Land of the Dead or Gravedom (Sheol-Hades) Contrasted to Full Existence in "Land of the Living"**

**Isa. 38:10, 11** "I said, in the noontide of my days I shall go into the gates of Sheol: I am deprived of the residue of my years. I said, I shall not see Jehovah, even Jehovah in the land of the living: I shall behold man no more with the inhabitants of the world."

**Ps. 52:5** "God will likewise destroy thee for ever; he will take thee up, and pluck thee out of thy tent, and root thee out of the land of the living."

**Ps. 116:9** "I will walk before Jehovah in the land of the living."

**See also:** Job 28:13; Ps. 27:13; Ps. 142:5; Isa. 53:8; Jer. 11:19; Ezek. 26:20; 32:23-26.

**Actual Individual Burial Places, Graves or Tombs, Referred to by Different Original Language Words, Just as Individual Locations in the "Land of the Living" Are Indicated by Names of Places or Cities**

**Keber (Hebrew), burying place or grave (English)**

**Gen. 23:4** "I am a stranger and a sojourner with you: give me a possession of a burying-place with you, that I may bury my dead out of my sight."

**Judg. 16:31** "Then his brethren and all the house of his father came down, and took him, and brought him up, and buried him between Zorah and Eshtaol in the burying-place of Manoah his father. And he judged Israel twenty years."

See also: Ex. 14:11; Num. 19:16.

**K'boorah (Hebrew), grave, burying place, sepulchre (English)**

**Gen. 35:20** "And Jacob set up a pillar upon her grave: the same is the Pillar of Rachel's grave unto this day."

**Deut. 34:6** "And he buried him in the valley in the land of Moab over against Beth-peor: but no man knoweth of his sepulchre unto this day."

See also: Gen. 47:30; 1 Sam. 10:2.

**Ga-dish' (Hebrew), tomb (English)**

**Job 21:32** "Yet shall he be borne to the grave, and men shall keep watch over the tomb."

**Taphos (Greek), grave (English)**

**Matt. 23:27** "Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! because you resemble whitewashed graves, which outwardly indeed appear beautiful but inside are full of dead men's bones and of every kind of uncleanness."

**Matt. 27:64** "Therefore command the grave to be made secure until the third day, that his disciples may never come and

steal him and say to the people, 'He was raised up from the dead!' and this last imposture will be worse than the first."

**Mnema (Greek), tomb (English)**

**Mark 5:3** "He had his haunt among the tombs, and up to that time absolutely nobody was able to bind him fast even with a chain."

**Luke 23:53** "And he took it down and wrapped it up in fine linen, and he laid him in a tomb carved in the rock and in which no man had yet lain."

**Acts 2:29** "Brothers, it is allowable to speak with freeness of speech to you concerning the family head David, that he both deceased and was buried and his tomb is among us to this day."

See also: Acts 7:16; Rev. 11:9.

**Mnemeion (Greek), memorial tomb (English)**

**Matt. 28:8** "So, quickly leaving the memorial tomb, with fear and great joy, they ran to report to his disciples."

**John 5:28, 29** "Do not marvel at this, because the hour is coming in which all those in the memorial tombs will hear his voice and come out."

See also: Matt. 8:28; Luke 11:44; John 19:41.

**Adam Was Not Sent to "Eternal Torment" but to Unconscious Annihilation in Dust of the Ground. Thus, No "Pain of Loss" Is Possible, and "Separation from God" Is Not Realized**

**Gen. 3:3-5, 17, 19** "Of the fruit of the tree which is in the midst of the garden, God hath said, Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, lest ye die. And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die: for God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil. And unto Adam he [Jehovah] said, Because

thou hast hearkened unto the voice of thy wife, and hast eaten of the tree, of which I commanded thee, saying, Thou shalt not eat of it: cursed is the ground for thy sake; . . . in the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread, till thou return unto the ground; for out of it wast thou taken: for dust thou art, and unto dust shalt thou return."

**Gen. 5:5** "And all the days that Adam lived were nine hundred and thirty years: and he died."

**Rom. 6:23** "For the wages sin pays is death."

**Ps. 6:5** "For in death there is no remembrance of thee: in Sheol ["the grave," AV; "hell," *Dy* at Ps. 6:6] who shall give thee thanks?"

**Eccl. 9:5, 10** "For the living know that they shall die: but the dead know not anything, neither have they any more a reward; for the memory of them is forgotten. Whatsoever thy hand findeth to do, do it with thy might; for there is no work, nor device, nor knowledge, nor wisdom, in Sheol ["the grave," AV; "hell," *Dy*], whither thou goest."

### **Always Associated with Death and the Dead, Not Life and the Living**

**2 Sam. 22:5, 6** "For the waves of death compassed me; the floods of ungodliness made me afraid: the cords of Sheol ["hell," AV; *Dy*] were round about me; the snares of death came upon me."

**Prov. 5:5** "Her feet go down to death; her steps take hold on Sheol ["hell," AV; *Dy*]."

**Prov. 7:27** "Her house is the way to Sheol ["hell," AV; *Dy*], going down to the chambers of death."

**Prov. 9:18** "But he knoweth not that the dead are there; that her guests are in the depths of Sheol ["hell," AV; *Dy*]."

**Hab. 2:5** "Yea, moreover, wine is treacherous, a haughty man, that keepeth not at home; who

enlargeth his desire as Sheol ["hell," AV; *Dy*], and he is as death, and cannot be satisfied."

**Rev. 20:13** "And the sea gave up those dead in it, and death and Hades ["hell," AV; *Dy*] gave up those dead in them."

### **Before Jesus All Spoken of as Going to Same Place of Unconsciousness**

**Eccl. 3:19-21** "For that which befalleth the sons of men befalleth beasts; even one thing befalleth them: as the one dieth, so dieth the other; yea, they have all one breath; and man hath no pre-eminence above the beasts: for all is vanity. All go unto one place; all are of the dust, and all turn to dust again. Who knoweth the spirit of man, whether it goeth upward, and the spirit of the beast, whether it goeth downward to the earth?"

**Ps. 31:17** "Let me not be put to shame, O Jehovah; for I have called upon thee: let the wicked be put to shame, let them be silent in Sheol ["the grave," AV; "hell," *Dy* at Ps. 30:18]."

**Ps. 49:14** "They are appointed as a flock for Sheol ["the grave," AV; "hell," *Dy* at Ps. 48:15]; death shall be their shepherd: and the upright shall have dominion over them in the morning; and their beauty shall be for Sheol ["the grave," AV; "hell," *Dy*] to consume, that there be no habitation for it."

**Ps. 141:7** "As when one ploweth and cleaveth the earth, our bones are scattered at the mouth of Sheol ["grave's," AV; "hell," *Dy*]."

### **Good as Well as Bad People Go to Hell**

**Jonah 2:2** "I called by reason of mine affliction unto Jehovah, and he answered me; out of the belly of Sheol ["hell," AV; *Dy*] cried I, and thou heardest my voice."

**Job 14:13** "Oh that thou wouldst hide me in Sheol ["the grave," AV; "hell," *Dy*], that thou would-

est keep me secret, until thy wrath be past, that thou wouldest appoint me a set time, and remember me!"

**Ps. 139:8** "If I ascend up into heaven, thou art there: if I make my bed in Sheol ["hell," *AV; Dy* at Ps. 138:8], behold, thou art there."

**Ps. 16:10** "For thou wilt not leave my soul to Sheol ["hell," *AV; Dy* at Ps. 15:10]; neither wilt thou suffer thy holy one to see corruption."

### **Soldiers That Die Go to Hell and Not to Heaven**

**Ezek. 32:21, 27** "The strong among the mighty shall speak to him out of the midst of Sheol ["hell," *AV; Dy*] with them that help him: they are gone down, they lie still, even the uncircumcised, slain by the sword. And they shall not lie with the mighty that are fallen of the uncircumcised [in battle], that are gone down to Sheol ["hell," *AV; Dy*] with their weapons of war, and have laid their swords under their heads, and their iniquities are upon their bones; for they were the terror of the mighty in the land of the living."

**Ezek. 31:17** "They also went down into Sheol ["hell," *AV; Dy*] with him unto them that are slain by the sword; yea, they that were his arm, that dwelt under his shadow in the midst of the nations."

### **Hope Held Out for Those in Hell Since Some Have Been Delivered**

**Acts 2:31, 32** "He saw beforehand and spoke concerning the resurrection of the Christ, that neither was he forsaken in Hades ["hell," *AV; Dy*] nor did his flesh see corruption. This Jesus God resurrected."

**1 Sam. 2:6** "Jehovah killeth, and maketh alive: he bringeth down to Sheol ["the grave," *AV; "hell," Dy*], and bringeth up."

**Ps. 86:13** "For great is thy lovingkindness toward me; and

thou hast delivered my soul from the lowest Sheol ["lowest hell," *AV; "lower hell," Dy* at Ps. 85:13]."

**Prov. 15:24** "To the wise the way of life goeth upward, that he may depart from Sheol ["hell," *AV; "lowest hell," Dy*] beneath."

**Rev. 20:13** "Death and Hades ["hell," *AV; Dy*] gave up those dead in them."

### **Hell Spoken of as Powerless Against God's Chosen**

**Matt. 16:18** "On this rock-mass I will build my congregation, and the gates of Hades ["hell," *AV; Dy*] will not overpower it."

**Isa. 38:9, 10, 17** "The writing of Hezekiah king of Judah, when he had been sick, and was recovered of his sickness. I said, In the noontide of my days I shall go into the gates of Sheol ["the grave," *AV; "hell," Dy*]: I am deprived of the residue of my years. . . . But thou hast in love to my soul delivered it from the pit of corruption."

**Prov. 23:13, 14** "Withhold not correction from the child. . . . Thou shalt beat him with the rod, and shalt deliver his soul from Sheol ["hell," *AV; Dy*]."

### **Willfully Wicked Cannot Escape Death; Are Abased as Low as Sheol, Hades**

**Matt. 11:23, 24** "And you, Capernaum, will you perhaps be exalted to heaven? Down to Hades ["hell," *AV; Dy*] you will come; . . . It will be more endurable for the land of Sodom on Judgment Day than for you."

**Ps. 9:17** "The wicked shall be turned back unto Sheol ["hell," *AV; Dy*], even all the nations that forget God."

**Isa. 26:14** "They are dead, they shall not live; they are deceased, they shall not rise: therefore hast thou visited and destroyed them, and made all remembrance of them to perish."

**Isa. 28:15, 18** "Because ye have said, We have made a covenant

with death, and with Sheol ["hell," AV; Dy] are we at agreement; when the overflowing scourge shall pass through, it shall not come unto us;... And your covenant with death shall be annulled and your agreement with Sheol ["hell," AV; Dy] shall not stand; when the overflowing scourge shall pass through, then ye shall be trodden down by it."

**Prov. 15:10, 11 (footnote)**  
 "There is grievous correction for him that forsaketh the way; and he that hateth reproof shall die. Sheol ["hell," AV; Dy] and Destruction are before Jehovah."

**1 Ki. 2:9** "Now therefore hold him not guiltless, for thou art a wise man; and thou wilt know what thou oughtest to do unto him, and thou shalt bring his hoar head down to Sheol ["the grave," AV; "hell," Dy at 3 Kings 2:9] with blood."

### **Hell to Be Finally Destroyed by Casting into "Lake of Fire", Meaning Destruction**

**Rev. 20:14** "And death and Hades ["hell," AV; Dy] were hurled into the lake of fire. This means the second death, the lake of fire."

**Hos. 13:14** "I will ransom them from the power of Sheol ["the grave," AV; "death," Dy]; I will redeem them from death: O death, where are thy plagues? O Sheol ["grave," AV; "hell," Dy], where is thy destruction?"

### **"Limbo" (Not Found in Bible). Those Dying Before Jesus Not in Some Such Separate Place**

Jesus' account of Lazarus in Abraham's bosom and rich man in hell shown to be a symbolic illustration.

**Gen. 37:35** "And all his sons and all his daughters rose up to comfort him; but he refused to be comforted; and he said, For I will go down to Sheol ["the grave," AV; "hell," Dy] to my son mourning."

**Gen. 42:38** "And he said, My son shall not go down with you; for his brother is dead, and he only is left: if harm befall him by the way in which ye go, then will ye bring down my gray hairs with sorrow to Sheol ["the grave," AV; "hell," Dy]."

**Isa. 38:18** "For Sheol ["the grave," AV; "hell," Dy] cannot praise thee, death cannot celebrate thee: they that go down into the pit cannot hope for thy truth."

### **Jews of Jesus' Day Realized Abraham and Men of Old Not in Heaven or "Limbo"**

**John 8:52, 53** "The Jews said to him: 'Now we do know you have a demon. Abraham died, also the prophets, but you say, "If anyone observes my word, he will never taste death at all." You are not greater than our father Abraham, who died, are you? Also the prophets died. Who do you claim to be?'"

**John 3:10-13** "Jesus said to him: '... Moreover, no man has ascended into heaven but he that descended from heaven, the Son of man.'"

**Matt. 11:11** "Truly I say to you people, Among those born of women there has not been raised up a greater than John the Baptist; but a person that is a lesser one in the kingdom of the heavens is greater than he is."

### **Jesus Did Not Take Anyone with Him Out of Hell or "Limbo"**

**Acts 2:14, 29, 34** "But Peter stood up with the eleven and raised his voice and made this utterance to them [ten days after Jesus had ascended to heaven]: 'Brothers, it is allowable to speak with freeness of speech to you concerning the family head David, that he both deceased and was buried and his tomb is among us to this day. Actually David did not ascend to the heavens, but he himself says, "Jehovah said to my Lord, 'Sit at my right

hand, until I make your enemies a stool for your feet.'""

### Even Faithful Christians Had to Sleep Until Christ's Return

**1 Thess. 4:15, 16** "We the living who survive to the presence of the Lord shall in no way precede those who have fallen asleep in death, because the Lord himself will descend from heaven ... and those who are dead in union with Christ will rise first."

**2 Tim. 4:7, 8** "I have fought the right fight, I have run the course to the finish, I have observed the faith. From this time on there is reserved for me the crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, will give me as a reward in that day, yet not only to me, but also to all those who have loved his manifestation."

### Jesus Used Hades, Not Gehenna, in Order to Show Deathlike Condition of Rich Man

**Luke 16:22, 23** "Now in course of time the beggar died and he was carried off by the angels to the bosom position of Abraham. Also the rich man died and was buried. And in Hades ["hell," AV; *Dy*] he lifted up his eyes, he existing in torments ["and was buried in Hades he," *Sinaitic MS.*; "and he was buried in the infernus. But he," *Vulgate MS.*]."

### Gehenna Was the Literal Valley of Hinnom (Topheth) Outside the Walls of Jerusalem

**Josh. 15:8** "And the border went up by the valley of the son of Hinnom unto the side of the Jebusite southward (the same is Jerusalem)."

**Josh. 18:16** "And the border went down to the uttermost part of the mountain that lieth before the valley of the son of Hinnom, which is in the vale of Rephaim northward; and it went down to the valley of Hinnom, to the side of the Jebusite southward."

**Jer. 19:2, 6** "And go forth unto the valley of the son of Hinnom,

which is by the entry of the gate Harsith, and proclaim there the words that I shall tell thee; ... therefore, behold, the days come, saith Jehovah, that this place shall no more be called Topheth, nor The valley of the son of Hinnom, but The valley of Slaughter."

### Under Later Kings of Judah Gehenna or Valley of Hinnom Became Used for Idolatrous Worship

**2 Chron. 28:3** "Moreover he burnt incense in the valley of the son of Hinnom, and burnt his children in the fire, according to the abominations of the nations whom Jehovah cast out before the children of Israel."

**2 Chron. 33:6** "He also made his children to pass through the fire in the valley of the son of Hinnom."

**Jer. 32:35** "And they built the high places of Baal, which are in the valley of the son of Hinnom, to cause their sons and their daughters to pass through the fire unto Molech; which I commanded them not, neither came it into my mind, that they should do this abomination, to cause Judah to sin."

**1 Ki. 11:5-7** "Then did Solomon build a high place for Chemosh the abomination of Moab, in the mount that is before Jerusalem, and for Molech the abomination of the children of Ammon."

### King Josiah Had the Valley Polluted and Turned into Dumping Place

**2 Ki. 23:10, 14** "And he defiled Topheth, which is in the valley of the children of Hinnom, that no man might make his son or his daughter to pass through the fire to Molech. And he brake in pieces the pillars, and cut down the Asherim, and filled their places with the bones of men."

**2 Chron. 34:4, 5** "And they brake down the altars of the Baalim in his presence; and the sun-images that were on high

above them he hewed down; and the Asherim, and the graven images, and the molten images, he brake in pieces, and made dust of them, and strewed it upon the graves of them that had sacrificed unto them. And he burnt the bones of the priests upon their altars, and purged Judah and Jerusalem."

### **Under Jewish Law No Creatures Were Cast Alive into the Valley**

**Isa. 66:24** "And they shall go forth, and look upon the dead bodies of the men that have transgressed against me: for their worm shall not die, neither shall their fire be quenched; and they shall be an abhorring unto all flesh."

**Deut. 21:22, 23** "And if a man have committed a sin worthy of death, and he be put to death, and thou hang him on a tree; his body shall not remain all night upon the tree, but thou shalt surely bury him the same day; for he that is hanged is accursed of God; that thou defile not thy land which Jehovah thy God giveth thee for an inheritance."

**Josh. 8:29** "And the king of Ai he hanged on a tree until the eventide: and at the going down of the sun Joshua commanded, and they took his body down from the tree, and cast it at the entrance of the gate of the city, and raised thereon a great heap of stones, unto this day."

**Jer. 7:31, 32** "And they have built the high places of Topheth, which is in the valley of the son of Hinnom, to burn their sons and their daughters in the fire; which I commanded not, neither came it into my mind. Therefore, behold, the days come, saith Jehovah, that it shall no more be called Topheth, nor The valley of the son of Hinnom, but The valley of Slaughter: for they shall bury in Topheth, till there be no place to bury."

### **Symbol of "Lake of Fire" Taken from Literal Place of Gehenna (Topheth)**

**Rev. 1:1** "The revelation by Jesus Christ, which God gave him, to show his slaves the things that must shortly take place. And he sent forth his angel and presented it in signs through him to his slave John."

**Rev. 20:14, 15** "And death and Hades were hurled into the lake of fire. This means the second death, the lake of fire. Furthermore, whoever was not found written in the book of life was hurled into the lake of fire."

**Rev. 21:8** "But as for the cowards and those without faith and those who are disgusting in their filth and murderers and fornicators and those practicing spiritism and idolaters and all the liars, their portion will be in the lake that burns with fire and sulphur. This means the second death."

### **Conscious Eternal Torment Not in Scriptures but Eternal Destruction Is, Symbolized by Gehenna and "Lake of Fire"**

**Matt. 23:33** "Serpents, offspring of vipers, how are you to flee from the judgment of Gehenna ["hell," AV; Dy]?"

**Matt. 10:28** "And do not become fearful of those who kill the body but can not kill the soul; but rather be in fear of him that can destroy both soul and body in Gehenna ["hell," AV; Dy]."

**Jer. 19:12, 13** "Thus will I do unto this place, saith Jehovah, and to the inhabitants thereof, even making this city as Topheth: and the houses . . . shall be as the place of Topheth."

**Jer. 7:32, 33** "Therefore, behold, the days come, saith Jehovah, that it shall no more be called Topheth, nor The valley of the son of Hinnom, but The valley of Slaughter: for they shall bury in Topheth, till there be no place to bury. And the dead bodies of this people shall be food for the

birds of the heavens, and for the beasts of the earth; and none shall frighten them away."

**Obad. 16** "For as ye have drunk upon my holy mountain, so shall all the nations drink continually; yea, they shall drink, and swallow down, and shall be as though they had not been."

### "Fire" a Symbol of Destruction, and "Everlasting" Shows No Recovery Possible

**Rev. 17:11** "And the wild beast that was but is not, . . . goes off into destruction."

**Rev. 20:10** "And the Devil who was misleading them was hurled into the lake of fire and sulphur, where both the wild beast and the false prophet already were; and they will be tormented day and night for ever and ever."

**Ezek. 28:13-15, 18, 19** "Thou wast in Eden, the garden of God; . . . Thou wast the anointed cherub that covereth: and I set thee, so that thou wast upon the holy mountain of God; . . . Thou wast perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created, till unrighteousness was found in thee. . . . therefore have I brought forth a fire from the midst of thee; it hath devoured thee, and I have turned thee to ashes upon the earth . . . and thou shalt nevermore have any being."

**Matt. 3:10-12** "Already the ax is lying at the root of the trees; every tree, then, that does not produce fine fruit is to be cut down and thrown into the fire. . . . the one coming . . . will baptize you people with holy spirit and with fire. His winnowing shovel is in his hand, and he will completely clean up his threshing-floor, and will gather his wheat into the storehouse, but the chaff he will burn up with fire that cannot be put out."

**Gen. 19:24-29** "Then Jehovah rained upon Sodom and upon Gomorrah brimstone and fire from Jehovah out of heaven; . . . and, lo, the smoke of the land went

up as the smoke of a furnace. And it came to pass, when God destroyed the cities of the Plain."

**Jude 7** "So, too, Sodom and Gomorrah and the cities about them . . . are placed before us as a warning example by undergoing the judicial punishment of everlasting fire."

**2 Pet. 2:6** "And by reducing the cities Sodom and Gomorrah to ashes he condemned them, setting a pattern for ungodly persons of things to come."

**Luke 17:29, 30** "But on the day that Lot came out of Sodom it rained fire and sulphur from heaven and destroyed them all. The same way it will be on that day when the Son of man is to be revealed."

### Abyss Symbolizes Condition of Helpless Impotence, Deathlike Inactivity

Used in reference to spirit creatures or to those symbolic representations of organizations and of classes of people.

**Rev. 9:1-3, 11** "And I saw a star that had fallen from heaven to the earth, and the key of the pit of the abyss was given him. And he opened the pit of the abyss, and smoke ascended out of the pit as the smoke of a great furnace, . . . And out of the smoke locusts came forth upon the earth, and authority was given them, . . . They have over them a king, the angel of the abyss."

**Rev. 11:7** "And when they have finished their witnessing, the wild beast that ascends out of the abyss will make war with them and conquer them and kill them."

**Rev. 17:8** "The wild beast that you saw was, but is not, and yet is destined to ascend out of the abyss, and it is to go off into destruction."

### Demons Dread Prospects of Going into the Abyss

**Matt. 8:28, 29** "When he got to the other side, into the country of the Gadarenes, there met him



two demon-possessed men coming out from among the memorial tombs, unusually fierce, so that nobody had the courage to pass by on that road. And, look! they screamed, saying: 'What have we to do with you, Son of God? Did you come here to torment us before the right time?'"

**Luke 8:30, 31** "Jesus asked him: 'What is your name?' He said: 'Legion,' because many demons had entered into him. And they kept entreating him not to order them to go away into the abyss."

### **Jesus in Abyss (Also in Sheol-Hades) Since Flesh Did Not See Corruption**

**Acts 2:24-27** "But God resurrected him by loosing the pangs of death, because it was not possible for him to continue to be held fast by it. For David says respecting him, '... Moreover, even my flesh will dwell in hope: because you will not forsake my soul in Hades ["hell," AV; *Dy*], neither will you grant your man of loving-kindness to see corruption.'"

**Rom. 10:6, 7** "The righteousness resulting from faith speaks in this manner: 'Do not say in your heart, ... "Who will descend into the abyss?" that is, to bring Christ up from the dead.'"

### **Satan's Gravelike Place Is Abyss of Inactivity Where He Will Be Bound for 1,000 Years Before Final Destruction**

**Rev. 20:1-3, 7-10** "And I saw an angel coming down out of heaven with the key of the abyss and a great chain in his hand. And he seized the dragon, the original serpent, who is the Devil and Satan, and bound him for a thousand years. And he hurled him into the abyss and shut it and sealed it over him, that he might not mislead the nations any more until the thousand years were ended. After these things he must be let loose for a little while. Now as soon as the

thousand years have been ended, Satan will be let loose out of his prison, and he will go out to mislead those nations in the four quarters of the earth, ... And the Devil who was misleading them was hurled into the lake of fire and sulphur."

### **Tartarus (Unrelated to Hades) a Deep Place of Darkness**

**Job 40:15, LXX** "And when he has gone up to a steep mountain, he causes joy to the quadrupeds in the deep [tartaros]."

**Job 41:22, 23, LXX** "He makes the deep boil like a brazen caldron; and he regards the sea as a pot of ointment, and the lowest part of the deep [the tartaros of the abyss] as a captive: he reckons the deep as his range."

### **Tartarus a Symbol of Debased Condition for Rebellious Angels**

**2 Pet. 2:4** "Certainly if God did not hold back from punishing the angels that sinned, but, by throwing them into Tartarus, delivered them to pits of dense darkness to be reserved for judgment."

### **Eternal Torment as Inducement to Obey God Repugnant to Him**

**1 John 4:8, 9** "He that does not love has not come to know God, because God is love. By this the love of God was made manifest in our case, because God sent forth his only-begotten Son into the world that we might gain life through him."

**Ezek. 33:11** "Say unto them, As I live, saith the Lord Jehovah, I have no pleasure in the death of the wicked; but that the wicked turn from his way and live: turn ye, turn ye from your evil ways; for why will ye die?"

**Jer. 7:31** "And they have built the high places of Topheth, which is in the valley of the son of Hinnom, to burn their sons and their daughters in the fire; which I commanded not, neither came it into my mind."

# Holidays

## DEFINITION

A day or days fixed by law, custom or religion [holydays] on which ordinary business is suspended or certain things are done or abstained from, in commemoration of some event or in honor of some person.

### Christians Not Commanded to Observe Any Holiday

**Rom. 14:4-6** "Who are you to judge the house servant of another? To his own master he stands or falls. Indeed, he will be made to stand, for Jehovah can make him stand. One man judges one day as above another; another man judges one day as all others; let each man be fully convinced in his own mind.... Also he who eats eats to Jehovah, for he gives thanks to God; and he who does not eat does not eat to Jehovah, and yet gives thanks to God."

**Gal. 4:9-11** "But now that you have come to know God, or rather now that you have come to be known by God, how is it that you are turning back again to the weak and inadequate elementary things and want to be slaves to them over again? You are scrupulously observing days and months and seasons and years. I fear for you, that somehow I have toiled to no purpose respecting you."

**Col. 2:16, 17** "Therefore let no man judge you in eating and drinking or in respect of a feast day or of an observance of the new moon or of a sabbath, for those things are a shadow of the things to come, but the reality belongs to the Christ."

**Acts 15:28, 29** "For the holy spirit and we ourselves have favored adding no further burden to you, except these necessary things, to keep yourselves free from things sacrificed to idols and from blood and from things killed without

draining their blood and from fornication. If you carefully keep yourselves from these things, you will prosper."

**Rom. 1:25** "Even those who exchanged the truth of God for the lie and venerated and rendered sacred service to the creation rather than the One who created."

### Christians Should Praise God, Give Thanks Every Day

**Heb. 13:15** "Through him let us always offer to God a sacrifice of praise, that is, the fruit of lips which make public declaration to his name."

**Acts 2:46, 47** "And day after day they were in constant attendance at the temple with one accord, and they took their meals in private homes and partook of nourishment with great rejoicing and sincerity of heart, praising God and finding acceptance with all the people."

**Rev. 7:9, 10, 15** "After these things I saw, and, look! a great crowd, which no man was able to number, out of all nations and tribes and peoples and tongues, standing before the throne and before the Lamb, dressed in white robes, and there were palm branches in their hands. And they keep on crying with a loud voice, saying: 'Salvation we owe to our God, who is seated on the throne, and to the Lamb.' 'That is why they are before the throne of God, and they are rendering him sacred service day and night in his temple.'"

## Birthdays

*Scriptures mention observance only by pagans*

**Gen. 40:20** "And it came to pass the third day, which was Pharaoh's birthday, that he made a feast unto all his servants."

**Matt. 14:6-10** "But when Herod's birthday was being celebrated the daughter of Herodias danced at it and so delighted Herod that he promised with an oath to give her whatever she asked. Then she under her mother's coaching said: 'Give me here upon a plate the head of John the Baptist.' Pained though he was, the king out of regard for his oaths and for those reclining with him commanded it to be given, and he sent and had John beheaded in the prison."

**Mark 6:21** "But a convenient day came along when Herod spread an evening meal on his birthday for his top-ranking men and the military commanders and the foremost ones of Galilee."

**Isa. 65:11 (mar.)** "But ye that forsake Jehovah, that forget my holy mountain, that prepare a table for fortune, and that fill up mingled wine unto Meni [celebration of birthday of "the Lord Moon"]."

*One's birthday not the thing of greatest importance in his life; not to be commemorated*

**Ecc. 6:3; 7:1, 8** "If a man beget a hundred children, and live many years, so that the days of his years are many, but his soul be not filled with good, and moreover he have no burial; I say that an untimely birth is better than he." "A good name is better than precious oil; and the day of death, than the day of one's birth. Better is the end of a thing than the beginning thereof; and the patient in spirit is better than the proud in spirit."

*God not responsible for, does not bless each birth; counts all except Christians as dead in sins. Fleshly births are due to will or passion of earthly parents*

**Ps. 51:5** "Behold, I was brought forth in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me."

**John 1:12, 13** "However, as many as did receive him, to them he gave authority to become God's children, because they were exercising faith in his name; and they were born not from blood or from a fleshly will or from man's will, but from God."

**Luke 9:60** "But he said to him: 'Let the dead bury their dead, but you go away and declare abroad the kingdom of God.'"

**Eph. 2:1, 5** "Furthermore, it is you God made alive though you were dead in your trespasses and sins, . . . made us alive together with the Christ."

**1 John 3:14** "We know we have passed over from death to life, because we love the brothers."

*Only exceptions are certain ones God specially used*

**Examples:** Isaac (**Gen. 18:9-14**; **Rom. 4:17-21**; **Gal. 4:28, 29**); Samson (**Judg. 13:2-5**); Samuel (**1 Sam. 1:11, 19, 20**); Jeremiah (**Jer. 1:4, 5**); John the Baptist (**Luke 1:5-20**); Jesus (**Matt. 1:18-25**; **Luke 1:26-37**).

*Christ's death to be observed by Memorial evening meal, but no commandment to observe his birthday as at a "Christmas"*

**Luke 22:19** "Also he took a loaf, gave thanks, broke it, and gave it to them, saying: 'This means my body which is to be given in your behalf. Keep doing this in remembrance of me.'"

**1 Cor. 11:24-26** "And, after giving thanks, he broke it and said: 'This means my body which is in your behalf. Keep doing this in remembrance of me.' He did likewise respecting the cup also. . . . 'Keep doing this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of me.'"

For as often as you eat this loaf and drink this cup, you keep proclaiming the death of the Lord, until he arrives."

***Jesus' birth not in cold December***

**Luke 2:8, 12** "There were also in that same country shepherds living out of doors and keeping watches in the night over their flocks. 'And this is a sign for you: you will find an infant bound in cloth bands and lying in a manger.'"

**Luke 2:1-7** "Now in those days a decree went forth from Caesar Augustus for all the inhabited earth to be registered; . . . and all people went traveling to be registered, each one to his own city. Of course, Joseph also went up from Galilee, out of the city of Nazareth, into Judea, to David's city which is called Bethlehem, because of his being a member of the house and family of David, to get registered with Mary, who had been given him in marriage as promised, at present heavy with child."

***Jesus' birth in the fall (about Oct. 1, 2 B.C.); John the Baptist's father serving as priest in the latter part of June, 3 B.C., when John was conceived (hence born in the latter part of March, 2 B.C.)***

**Luke 1:5, 8-24** "In the days of Herod, king of Judea, there happened to be a certain priest named Zechariah of the division of Abijah, and he had a wife from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. Now as he was acting as priest in the assignment of his division before God. . . . To him Jehovah's angel appeared, . . . the angel said to him: '... your wife Elizabeth will be the mother of a son to you, and you are to call his name John.' . . . after these days Elizabeth his wife became pregnant."

**1 Chron. 24:10, 18** [Regarding the courses of the priests]: "The seventh to Hakkoz, the eighth

to Abijah." [Of the 24 courses the second round of the eighth would fall in the fourth Jewish month, or the latter part of June, our calendar.]

***Jesus was conceived in the early part of January (hence born early October)***

**Luke 1:26-39** "In her [Elizabeth's] sixth month the angel Gabriel was sent forth from God to a city of Galilee named Nazareth, to a virgin promised in marriage to a man named Joseph of David's house; and the name of the virgin was Mary. . . . the angel said to her: 'Holy spirit will come upon you, and power of the Most High will overshadow you. For that reason also what is born will be called holy, God's Son. And, look! Elizabeth your relative has also herself conceived a son, in her old age, and this is the sixth month for her.'"

***John came baptizing in the spring of A.D. 29***

**Luke 3:1-3** "In the fifteenth year [A.D. 29] of the reign of Tiberius Caesar [who began to reign August 19, A.D. 14, after Augustus' death], . . . God's declaration came to John the son of Zechariah in the wilderness. So he came into all the country around the Jordan, preaching baptism of those repenting for forgiveness of sins." [John would start priestly preaching duties at the age of 30. See Numbers, chapter 4.]

***Jesus was baptized at the age of 30, 6 months later***

**Luke 3:23** "Furthermore, Jesus himself, when he commenced his work, was about thirty years old."

[Hence his birth was 30 years earlier, about October 1, 2 B.C.]

***The "star" was a light Satan used to guide astrologers (demon worshippers) in his scheme to locate Jesus for destruction by Herod***

**Matt. 2:1-16** "After Jesus had been born in Bethlehem of Judea

in the days of Herod the king, look! astrologers from eastern parts came to Jerusalem, saying: 'Where is the one born king of the Jews? For we saw his star when we were in the east and we have come to do him obeisance.' At hearing this King Herod was agitated and all Jerusalem along with him.... Then Herod secretly summoned the astrologers and carefully ascertained from them the time of the star's appearing, and, when sending them to Bethlehem, he said: 'Go make a careful search for the young child, and when you have found it report back to me.'... and, look! the star they had seen when they were in the east went ahead of them, until it came to a stop above where the young child was.... However, because they were given divine warning in a dream not to return to Herod, they withdrew to their country by another route.... Then Herod, seeing he had been outwitted by the astrologers, fell into a great rage, and he sent out and had all the boys in Bethlehem and in all its districts killed, from two years of age and under, according to the time that he had carefully ascertained from the astrologers."

***Astrologers were the ones who brought gifts***

**Matt. 2:11** "And when they went into the house they saw the young child with Mary its mother, and, falling down, they did obeisance to it. They also opened their treasures and presented it with gifts, gold and frankincense and myrrh." [As to astrologers' being condemned by God's law, see Deuteronomy 4:19; 2 Kings 17:16; Isaiah 47:13, 14.]

**Easter**

***Ashtoreth, Astarte ("a wife") the "queen of heaven"—a Babylonian pagan goddess***

**1 Ki. 11:5** "For Solomon went after Ashtoreth the goddess of the Sidonians."

**2 Ki. 23:13** "And the high places that were before Jerusalem, which were on the right hand of the mount of corruption, which Solomon the king of Israel had builded for Ashtoreth the abomination of the Sidonians."

**Jer. 7:18** "The children gather wood, and the fathers kindle the fire, and the women knead the dough, to make cakes to the queen of heaven, and to pour out drink-offerings unto other gods, that they may provoke me to anger."

Also: Jer. 44:17-19.

***Easter egg, rabbit, "symbols of life" are phallic emblems, worship of a creation rather than the Creator***

**Rom. 6:23** "For the wages sin pays is death, but the gift God gives is everlasting life by Christ Jesus our Lord."

**Ps. 36:9** "For with thee [Jehovah God] is the fountain of life."

**Rom. 1:22-25** "Although asserting they were wise, they became foolish and turned the glory of the incorruptible God into something like the image of corruptible man and of birds and four-footed creatures and creeping things. Therefore God in keeping with the desires of their hearts gave them up to uncleanness, that their bodies might be dishonored among them, even those who exchanged the truth of God for the lie and venerated and rendered sacred service to the creation rather than the One who created, who is blessed forever. Amen."

***Such connected with phallic worship of sex in Baal-peor, "lord of the opening," and Ashtoreth, "a wife"***

**Num. 25:1-3** "And Israel abode in Shittim; and the people began to play the harlot with the daughters of Moab: . . . And Israel joined himself unto Baal-peor: and the anger of Jehovah was kindled against Israel."

**Deut. 4:3** "Your eyes have seen what Jehovah did because of Baal-peor; for all the men that followed Baal-peor, Jehovah thy God hath destroyed them from the midst of thee."

**Hos. 9:10** "They came to Baal-peor, and consecrated themselves unto the shameful thing, and became abominable like that which they loved."

**Jude 10, 11** "Yet these men are speaking abusively of all the things they really do not know, but all the things they do understand naturally like the unreasoning animals, in these things they go on corrupting themselves. Too bad for them, because they have gone in the path of Cain, and have rushed into the erroneous course of Balaam for reward."

**Christ's death on Nisan 14 to be observed by Memorial evening meal, not his resurrection on Nisan 16, A.D. 33**

**Ex. 12:2, 6, 14** "This month [Abib or Nisan] shall be unto you the beginning of months: it shall be the first month of the year to you. And ye shall keep it [the lamb] until the fourteenth day of the same month; and the whole assembly of the congregation of Israel shall kill it at even. And this day shall be unto you for a memorial, and ye shall keep it a feast to Jehovah: throughout your generations ye shall keep it a feast by an ordinance for ever."

**Matt. 26:17-27** "On the first day of the unleavened cakes the disciples came up to Jesus, saying: 'Where do you want us to prepare for you to eat the pass-over?' ... As they continued eating, Jesus took a loaf and, after saying a blessing, he broke it and, giving it to the disciples, he said: 'Take, eat. This means my body.' Also he took a cup and, having given thanks, he gave it to them, saying: 'Drink out of it, all of you.'"

**1 Cor. 11:25, 26** "[Jesus said]: 'Keep doing this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of me.' For as often as you eat this loaf and drink this cup, you keep proclaiming the death of the Lord, until he arrives."

**John 20:1** "On the first day of the week Mary Magdalene came to the memorial tomb early in the day, while there was still darkness, and she beheld the stone already taken away from the memorial tomb." [This was Sunday, Nisan 16, A.D. 33, while Jesus was put to death Friday, Nisan 14.]

**Day of Memorial on Nisan 14 (so-called "Good Friday") does not always fall on the same day of the week**

**John 19:31** "Then the Jews, since it was Preparation, in order that the bodies might not remain upon the torture stakes on the sabbath, (for the day of that sabbath was a great one, [a double sabbath, which did not happen every Passover time]) requested Pilate to have their legs broken and the bodies taken away."

[Also, Nisan 14 is not always on a Friday, but is the night of full moon.]

**The meal on the first day of the week at Acts 20:7 not the Memorial, but eating of an ordinary meal**

**Acts 20:7** "On the first day of the week, when we were gathered together to have a meal, Paul began discoursing to them."

**Acts 2:42, 46** "And they continued devoting themselves to the teaching of the apostles and to association together, to taking of meals and to prayers. ... and they took their meals in private homes."

**Acts 6:1-6** "Their widows were being overlooked in the daily distribution. So the twelve ... said: 'It is not pleasing for us to aban-

don the word of God to distribute food to tables."

**Pascha, at Acts 12:4, mistranslated "Easter" in "King James Version"**

Acts 12:4 "And laying hold of him, he [Herod] put him [Peter] in prison, turning him over to four shifts of four soldiers each to guard him, as he intended to produce him for the people after the passover."

**The Day People Waved Palms for Jesus Was Not Sunday, but Was Monday, Nisan 10, A.D. 33**

John 12:1, 12, 13 "Accordingly, Jesus, six days before the passover, [the passover day itself being counted as the sixth day] arrived at Bethany, where Lazarus was whom Jesus had raised up from the dead. The next day the great crowd that had come to the feast, on hearing that Jesus was coming to Jerusalem, took the branches of palm trees and went out to meet him. And they began to shout: 'Save, we pray you! Blessed is he that comes in Jehovah's name, even the king of Israel!'"

Matt. 21:8, 12 "Others began cutting down branches from the trees and spreading them on the road. And Jesus entered into the temple, and threw out all those selling and buying in the temple and overturned the tables of the money-changers and the benches of those selling doves."

Ex. 12:3-5 "In the tenth day of this month [Abib or Nisan] they shall take to them every man a lamb, . . . Your lamb shall be without blemish."

**Lent Corresponds to Preliminary of Annual Festival of Death and Resurrection of Tammuz ("the Perfecting Fire", "Purifier")—a Pagan "Purgatory" God**

Ezek. 8:14, 15 "Then he brought me to the door of the gate of Jehovah's house which was toward the north; and behold, there

sat the women weeping for Tammuz. Then said he unto me, Hast thou seen this, O son of man? thou shalt again see yet greater abominations than these."

**Denying Oneself Meats, Food, Certain Proper Things on Certain Days, Not Required of Christians**

1 Tim. 4:1-6 "However, the inspired utterance says definitely that in later periods of time some will fall away from the faith, paying attention to misleading inspired utterances and teachings of demons, by the hypocrisy of men who speak lies, marked in their conscience as with a branding iron, forbidding to marry, commanding to abstain from foods which God created to be partaken of with thanksgiving by those who have faith and accurately know the truth. The reason for this is that every creation of God is right and nothing is to be rejected if it is received with thanksgiving, for it is sanctified through God's word and prayer over it."

Rom. 14:1-17 "One man has faith to eat everything, but the man who is weak eats vegetables. Let the one eating not look down on the one not eating, and let the one not eating not judge the one eating, for God has welcomed that one. Who are you to judge the house servant of another? . . . One man judges one day as above another, another man judges one day as all others; . . . He who observes the day observes it to Jehovah. Also he who eats eats to Jehovah. . . . For the kingdom of God does not mean eating and drinking, but means righteousness and peace and joy with holy spirit."

Col. 2:20-22 "If you died together with Christ toward the elementary things of the world, why do you, as if living in the world, further subject yourselves to the decrees, 'Do not handle nor taste, nor touch,' respecting

things that are all destined to destruction by being used up, in accordance with the commands and teachings of men? Those very things are, indeed, possessed of an appearance of wisdom in a self-imposed form of worship and mock humility, a severe treatment of the body, but they are of no value in combating the satisfying of the flesh."

**1 Cor. 8:8** "But food will not commend us to God; if we do not eat, we do not fall short, and, if we eat, we have no credit to ourselves."

**Heb. 13:9** "Do not be carried away with various and strange teachings; for it is right for the heart to be given firmness by undeserved kindness, not by eatables, by which those who occupy themselves with them have not been benefited."

**1 Tim. 4:8** "For bodily training is beneficial for a little, but godly devotion is beneficial for all things, as it holds promise of the life now and that which is to come."

**Isa. 58:5-7** "Is such the fast that I have chosen? the day for a man to afflict his soul? Is it to

bow down his head as a rush, and to spread sackcloth and ashes under him? Wilt thou call this a fast, and an acceptable day to Jehovah? Is not this the fast that I have chosen: to loose the bonds of wickedness, to undo the bands of the yoke, and to let the oppressed go free, and that ye break every yoke?"

**Christendom's Holydays Abominable to Jehovah**

**Isa. 1:10, 13, 14, 17** "Hear the word of Jehovah, ye rulers of Sodom; give ear unto the law of our God, ye people of Gomorrah. Bring no more vain oblations; incense is an abomination unto me; new moon and sabbath, the calling of assemblies,—I cannot away with iniquity and the solemn meeting. Your new moons and your appointed feasts my soul hateth; they are a trouble unto me; I am weary of bearing them. Learn to do well; seek justice, relieve the oppressed, judge the fatherless, plead for the widow."

**Rev. 11:8** "The great city which is in a spiritual sense called Sodom and Egypt, where their Lord was also impaled."

See also "Sabbath".

## Honorary Titles

### DEFINITION

Titles that elevate one and cause him to be looked up to or worshiped, or that distinguish him from others as being a higher personage.

#### God's Word Forbids

**Job 32:21, 22** "Let me not, I pray you, respect any man's person; neither will I give flattering titles unto any man. For I know not to give flattering titles; else would my Maker soon take me away."

**Matt. 23:6-12** "You, do not you be called 'Rabbi' [My great one; My excellent one, *footnote*], for one is your teacher, whereas all

you are brothers. Moreover, do not call anyone your father on earth, for One is your Father, the heavenly One. Neither be called 'leaders', for your Leader is one, the Christ. But the greatest one among you must be your minister. Whoever exalts himself will be humbled, and whoever humbles himself will be exalted."

**Luke 18:18, 19** "And a certain ruler questioned him, saying:



'Good Teacher, by doing what shall I inherit everlasting life?' Jesus said to him: 'Why do you call me good? Nobody is good, except one, God.'

**Luke 22:24-26** "The kings of the nations lord it over them, and those having authority over them are called 'Benefactors'. You, though, are not to be that way."

**Jas. 2:4** "You have class distinctions among yourselves and you have become judges rendering corrupt decisions, is that not so?"

**Only God "Reverend",  
"Holy Father"**

**Ps. 111:9** "Holy and reverend is his [Jehovah's] name."

**John 17:11** "Holy Father, watch over them out of respect for your own name."

**Jehovah and Christ Jesus Only  
Kings by Divine Right**

**1 Tim. 1:17** "Now to the King of eternity, incorruptible, invisible, the only God, be honor and glory for ever and ever. Amen."

**Jer. 10:10** "Jehovah is the true God; he is the living God, and an everlasting King."

**Rev. 19:16** "[Christ Jesus] has a name written, King of kings and Lord of lords."

**Also: Rev. 17:14.**

**Isa. 42:8** "I am Jehovah, . . . my glory will I not give to another."

**Also: Isa. 33:22.**

**Scriptural Designations  
Misapplied**

"Elder," "deacon," "bishop," "estate of the elders," or "presbytery", from *Authorized Version* and *Douay* rendering of the following texts:

**Acts 14:23** "They appointed older men ["elders," AV] to office for them in the congregation."

**Titus 1:5** "Make appointments of older men ["elders," AV] in city after city."

**Acts 22:5** "Both the high priest and all the assembly of older men of influence ["estate of the elders," AV] can bear me witness."

**1 Tim. 3:1, 2, 8** "If any man is reaching out for an office of overseer ["bishop," AV], he is desirous of a right kind of work. The overseer should therefore be irreprehensible, . . . Ministerial servants ["deacons," AV] should likewise be serious."

**Phil. 1:1** "To all the holy ones in union with Christ Jesus who are in Philippi, along with overseers ["bishops," AV] and ministerial servants ["deacons," AV]."

**Paying Official Respect**

Official titles of rulers, judges, etc., used by Christians in addressing them as civil servants or rulers, not in worship nor as spiritual leaders.

**Acts 26:2, 25** "'Concerning all the things of which I am accused by Jews, King Agrippa.' . . . Paul said: 'I am not going mad, Your Excellency Festus.'"

# **Idolatry**

## **DEFINITION**

Speaking generally, it is the veneration, excessive love, worship or adoration of any made image, idol, representation or symbol of anything, whether the idol is material or fancied in the mind. According to the Scriptures idolatry is a snare of the Devil and its practice is demonism. It is considered an abomination in God's sight. Idolatry is generally practiced toward a real or supposed higher

power, whether it is believed to have animate existence (as a human or animal god or "saint") or whether it is inanimate (as a force or object of nature or a government or any other organization). It usually involves some form, ceremony or ritual. It exacts devotion. However, idolatry can be self-worship, worship of one's family or ancestry, or any other human or even an animal without any made representation. It is sometimes claimed that what is worshiped is not the image itself, but what is represented by the image. This is relative worship. All idolatry, whether relative or actual, is *false worship*.

### **Snare of Satan and Abomination (Detestable) to God**

**Deut. 7:16, 25** "And thou shalt consume all the peoples that Jehovah thy God shall deliver unto thee; thine eye shall not pity them: neither shalt thou serve their gods; for that will be a snare unto thee. The graven images of their gods shall ye burn with fire: thou shalt not covet the silver or the gold that is on them, nor take it unto thee, lest thou be snared therein; for it is an abomination to Jehovah thy God."

**Ps. 106:36** "And served their idols, which became a snare unto them."

**Deut. 32:17** "They sacrificed unto demons, which were no God, to gods that they knew not."

**1 Cor. 10:20, 21** "The things which the nations sacrifice they sacrifice to demons, and not to God, and I do not want you to become sharers with the demons. You cannot be drinking the cup of Jehovah and the cup of demons."

**Ex. 32:7, 8, 10** "And Jehovah spake unto Moses, Go, get thee down; for thy people, that thou broughtest up out of the land of Egypt, have corrupted themselves: they have turned aside quickly out of the way which I commanded them: they have made them a molten calf, and have worshipped it, and have sacrificed unto it, . . . now therefore let me alone, that my wrath may wax hot against them, and that I may consume them."

### **Images Have No Life or Power to Help in Themselves**

**Jer. 10:3-5** "For the customs of the peoples are vanity; for one cutteth a tree out of the forest, the work of the hands of the workman with the axe. They deck it with silver and with gold; they fasten it with nails and with hammers, that it move not. They are like a palm-tree, of turned work, and speak not: they must needs be borne, because they cannot go."

**Hab. 2:18, 19** "What profiteth the graven image, that the maker thereof hath graven it; the molten image, even the teacher of lies, that he that fashioneth its form trusteth therein, to make dumb idols? Woe unto him that saith to the wood, Awake; to the dumb stone, Arise! Shall this teach? Behold, it is overlaid with gold and silver, and there is no breath at all in the midst of it."

### **Jehovah God Forbade Nation of Israel to Practice Idolatry**

**Ex. 20:4, 5** "Thou shalt not make unto thee a graven image, nor any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth: thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them."

**2 Ki. 17:35** "With whom Jehovah had made a covenant, and charged them, saying, Ye shall not fear other gods, nor bow yourselves to them, nor serve them, nor sacrifice to them."

**No Image of God Possible**

**Deut. 4:15-19** "Take ye therefore good heed unto yourselves; for ye saw no manner of form on the day that Jehovah spake unto you in Horeb out of the midst of the fire; lest ye corrupt yourselves, and make you a graven image in the form of any figure, the likeness of male or female, the likeness of any beast that is on the earth, the likeness of any winged bird that flieth in the heavens, the likeness of anything that creepeth on the ground, the likeness of any fish that is in the water under the earth; and lest thou lift up thine eyes unto heaven, and when thou seest the sun and the moon and the stars, even all the host of heaven, thou be drawn away and worship them, and serve them."

**Law Served as a Safeguard  
Against Idolatry of  
Surrounding Nations**

**Deut. 29:14-18** "Neither with you only do I make this covenant and this oath, but with him that standeth here with us this day before Jehovah our God, and also with him that is not here with us this day (for ye know how we dwelt in the land of Egypt, and how we came through the midst of the nations through which ye passed; and ye have seen their abominations, and their idols, wood and stone, silver and gold, which were among them); lest there should be among you man, or woman, or family, or tribe, whose heart turneth away this day from Jehovah our God, to go to serve the gods of those nations."

**Stubbornness and Rebellion  
Against God Is Self-Worship  
and Idolatry**

**1 Sam. 15:22-24, 30** "Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken than the fat of rams. For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft [Heb., "divination"; footnote], and stubbornness is as

idolatry and teraphim. . . . And Saul said unto Samuel, I have sinned; . . . yet honor me now, I pray thee, before the elders of my people, and before Israel, and turn again with me, that I may worship Jehovah thy God."

**Practice of Idolatry Brought  
Punishment from God**

**Lev. 26:1, 27, 28, 30** "Ye shall make you no idols, neither shall ye rear you up a graven image, or a pillar, neither shall ye place any figured stone in your land, to bow down unto it; for I am Jehovah your God. And if ye will not for all this hearken unto me, but walk contrary unto me; then I will walk contrary unto you in wrath; and I also will chastise you seven times for your sins. And I will destroy your high places, and cut down your sun-images, and cast your dead bodies upon the bodies of your idols; and my soul shall abhor you."

**Judg. 2:11-15** "And the children of Israel did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, and served the Baalim; . . . and followed other gods, of the gods of the peoples that were round about them, and bowed themselves down unto them: . . . And the anger of Jehovah was kindled against Israel, and he delivered them into the hands of spoilers that despoiled them; and he sold them into the hands of their enemies round about, so that they could not any longer stand before their enemies. Whithersoever they went out, the hand of Jehovah was against them for evil, as Jehovah had spoken, and as Jehovah had sworn unto them."

**Finally Brought Complete Re-  
jection of Nation of Israel**

**Deut. 4:25-27** "When thou shalt beget children, and children's children, and ye shall have been long in the land, and shall corrupt yourselves, and make a graven image in the form of anything, and shall do that which is

evil in the sight of Jehovah thy God, to provoke him to anger; I call heaven and earth to witness against you this day, that ye shall soon utterly perish from off the land... And Jehovah will scatter you among the peoples, and ye shall be left few in number among the nations."

**Jer. 22:8, 9** "And many nations shall pass by this city, and they shall say every man to his neighbor, Wherefore hath Jehovah done thus unto this great city? Then they shall answer, Because they forsook the covenant of Jehovah their God, and worshipped other gods, and served them."

### **Willful Rebellion and Stubbornness of Religious Leaders in Jesus' Day Was Idolatry That Brought Such Desolation**

**Matt. 15:1-3, 7-9** "Then there came to Jesus from Jerusalem Pharisees and scribes, saying: 'Why is it your disciples overstep the tradition of the men of former times?'... In reply he said to them: 'Why is it you also overstep the commandment of God because of your tradition? You hypocrites, Isaiah aptly prophesied about you, when he said: "This people honors me with their lips, yet their hearts are far removed from me. It is in vain that they keep paying respect to me, because they teach commands of men as doctrines."'"

**Matt. 23:37, 38** "Jerusalem, Jerusalem, the killer of the prophets and stoner of those sent forth to her,—how often I wanted to gather your children together, the way a hen gathers her chicks together under her wings! But you people did not want it. Look! your house is abandoned to you."

### **Idolatry Specifically Forbidden to Christians**

**1 Cor. 10:7, 14** "Neither become idolaters, as some of them did; just as it is written: 'The people sat down to eat and drink, and they rose up to revel boisterous-

ly.' Therefore, my beloved ones, flee from idolatry."

**Acts 17:29** "Seeing, therefore, that we are the progeny of God, we ought not to imagine that the Divine Being is like gold or silver or stone, like something sculptured by the art and contrivance of man."

**1 John 5:21** "Little children, guard yourselves from idols."

### **Those Practicing Are a Reproach to God and Make Liars of Themselves**

**Rom. 1:22, 23, 25** "Although asserting they were wise, they became foolish and turned the glory of the incorruptible God into something like the image of corruptible man and of birds and four-footed creatures and creeping things. Even those who exchanged the truth of God for the lie and venerated and rendered sacred service to the creation rather than the One who created, who is blessed forever."

### **Meat Sacrificed to Idols Could Be Eaten, After Its Dedicated Purpose Had Been Fulfilled; but This Authority Must Not Be Abused**

**1 Cor. 8:4, 7-10, 13** "Now concerning the eating of foods offered to idols, we know that an idol is nothing in the world and that there is no God but one. Nevertheless, there is not this knowledge in all persons; but some, being accustomed until now to the idol, eat food as something sacrificed to an idol, and their conscience, as it is weak, becomes vile. But food will not commend us to God; if we do not eat, we do not fall short, and, if we eat, we have no credit to ourselves. But keep watching that this authority of yours does not somehow become a stumbling-block to those who are weak. For if anyone should see you with your knowledge reclining at a meal in an idol temple, will not the conscience of that one who

is weak be emboldened to the point of eating foods offered to idols? Therefore, if food makes my brother stumble, I will never again eat flesh at all, that I may not make my brother stumble."

**1 Cor. 10:25-29, 31, 32** "Everything that is sold in a meat market keep eating, making no inquiry on account of your conscience, for 'the earth belongs to Jehovah, and so does its fullness'. If anyone of the unbelievers invites you and you wish to go, proceed to eat everything that is set before you, making no inquiry on account of your conscience. But if anyone should say to you: 'This is something offered to a god,' do not eat on account of the one that disclosed it and on account of conscience. 'Conscience,' I say, not yours, but that of the other person. . . . Therefore, whether you are eating or drinking or doing anything else, do all things for God's glory. Keep from becoming causes for stumbling."

**1 Tim. 4:4, 5** "The reason for this is that every creation of God is right and nothing is to be rejected if it is received with thanksgiving, for it is sanctified through God's word and prayer over it."

### **Example Taken from David's Eating of Showbread on the Sabbath After Its Use in Sacrifice to Jehovah Was Completed, Considered Common**

**Lev. 24:5-8** "And thou shalt take fine flour, and bake twelve cakes thereof: . . . And thou shalt set them in two rows, six on a row, upon the pure table before Jehovah. . . . Every sabbath day he shall set it in order before Jehovah continually."

**1 Sam. 21:2-6 (footnote)** "And David said unto Ahimelech the priest, . . . Now therefore what is under thy hand? give me five loaves of bread in my hand, or whatsoever there is present. And the priest answered David, and said, There is no common bread

under my hand, but there is holy bread; if only the young men have kept themselves from women. And David answered the priest, and said unto him, Of a truth women have been kept from us about these three days; when I came out, the vessels of the young men were holy, [and it may be used as common bread; and especially since to-day it will be holy in respect of their vessels]. So the priest gave him holy bread; for there was no bread there but the showbread, that was taken from before Jehovah, to put hot bread in the day when it was taken away."

### **Worship of State Powers a Definite Form of Idolatry**

**Rev. 13:14, 15** "It tells those who dwell on the earth to make an image to the wild beast that had the sword-stroke and yet revived. And there was granted it to give breath to the image of the wild beast, so that the image of the wild beast should both speak and cause to be killed all those who would not in any way worship the image of the wild beast."

**Rev. 14:9, 10** "If anyone worships the wild beast and its image, and receives a mark on his forehead or upon his hand, he will also drink of the wine of the anger of God that is poured out undiluted into the cup of his wrath."

**Rev. 17:11** "And the wild beast that was but is not, it is also itself an eighth king, but owes its existence to the seven, and it goes off into destruction."

### **Saluting Flags (Which Often Bear Likenesses) Also Condemned**

**Acts 7:43** "But it was the tent of Moloch and the star of the god Rephan that you took up, the figures which you made to worship them. Consequently, I will deport you beyond Babylon."

**Amos 5:26** "Yea, ye have borne the tabernacle of your king and

the shrine of your images, the star of your god, which ye made to yourselves."

**Job 31:26-28** "If I have beheld the sun when it shined, or the moon walking in brightness, and my heart hath been secretly enticed, and my mouth hath kissed my hand: this also were an iniquity to be punished by the judges; for I should have denied the God that is above."

**1 Ki. 19:18** "Yet will I leave me seven thousand in Israel, all the knees which have not bowed unto Baal, and every mouth which hath not kissed him."

**Hos. 13:2** "And now they sin more and more, and have made them molten images of their silver, even idols according to their own understanding, all of them the work of the craftsmen: they say of them, Let the men that sacrifice kiss the calves."

### **Refusal of Faithful Jews to Worship State Symbol Was Approved by God**

**Dan. 3:1, 4-6, 8, 9, 12, 19, 20, 26-28** "Nebuchadnezzar the king made an image of gold, . . . Then the herald cried aloud, To you it is commanded, O peoples, nations, and languages, that at what time ye hear the sound of . . . all kinds of music, ye fall down and worship the golden image that Nebuchadnezzar the king hath set up; and whoso falleth not down and worshippeth shall the same hour be cast into the midst of a burning fiery furnace. Wherefore at that time, certain Chaldeans came near, and brought accusation against the Jews. They answered and said to Nebuchadnezzar the king, . . . There are certain Jews whom thou hast appointed over the affairs of the province of Babylon: Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego; these men, O king, have not regarded thee: they serve not thy gods, nor worship the golden image which thou hast set up. Then was Nebuchadnezzar full of fury, . . . And he

commanded certain mighty men that were in his army to bind Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, and to cast them into the burning fiery furnace. Then Nebuchadnezzar came near to the mouth of the burning fiery furnace: he spake and said, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, ye servants of the Most High God, come forth, and come hither. Then Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego came forth out of the midst of the fire. . . . the fire had no power upon their bodies, nor was the hair of their head singed, neither were their hosen changed, nor had the smell of fire passed on them. Nebuchadnezzar spake and said, Blessed be the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, who hath sent his angel, and delivered his servants that trusted in him, and have changed the king's word."

### **Salvation Comes Only from Jehovah Through Christ**

**Acts 4:12** "Furthermore, there is no salvation in anyone else, for there is not another name under heaven that has been given among men by which we must get saved."

See also "Caesar's Things to Caesar".

### **"Relative" Worship Not Allowed**

**Isa. 42:8** "I am Jehovah, that is my name; and my glory will I not give to another, neither my praise unto graven images."

**2 Cor. 4:18** "While we keep our eyes, not on the things seen, but on the things unseen. For the things seen are temporary, but the things unseen are everlasting."

### **Is contrary to Christian principle of worship**

**2 Cor. 5:7** "For we are walking by faith, not by sight."

**Rom. 8:24, 25** "For we were saved in this hope; but hope that is seen is not hope, for when a man sees a thing, does he hope for it? But if we hope for what

we do not see, we keep on waiting for it with endurance."

**Prayers to "saints" (as to Mary) not authorized**

**Jer. 7:18** "The children gather wood, and the fathers kindle the fire, and the women knead the dough, to make cakes to the queen of heaven, and to pour out drink-offerings unto other gods, that they may provoke me to anger."

See "Worship of Mary".

**Direct prayer only is allowed; images not needed**

**John 14:13** "Also, whatever it is you ask in my name, I will do this, in order that the Father may be glorified in connection with the Son."

**John 15:16** "No matter what you ask the Father in my name he might give it to you."

**Matt. 6:6, 9** "You, however, when you pray, go into your private room and, after shutting your door, pray to your Father who is in secret; then your Father who looks on in secret will repay you. You must pray, then, this way: 'Our Father in the heavens.'"

See "Prayer".

**Bowing before men or even angels as "relative" worship forbidden**

**Acts 10:25, 26** "As Peter entered, Cornelius met him, fell down at his feet and did obeisance to him. But Peter lifted him up, saying: 'Rise; I myself am also a man.'"

**Acts 14:11-15** "And the crowds, seeing what Paul had done, raised their voices, saying in the Lycaonian tongue: 'The gods have become like men and have come down to us!' And they went to calling Barnabas 'Zeus', but Paul 'Hermes', since he was the one taking the lead in speaking. And the priest of Zeus, whose

temple was before the city, brought bulls and garlands to the gates and was desiring to offer sacrifices with the crowds. However, when the apostles Barnabas and Paul heard of it, they ripped their outer garments and leaped out into the crowd, crying out and saying: 'Men, why are you doing these things? We also are human creatures.'"

**Rev. 19:10** "At that I fell down before his feet to worship him. But he tells me: 'Be careful! Do not do that! All I am is a fellow slave of you and of your brothers who have the work of witnessing to Jesus. Worship God.'"

**Images Unable to Help in Time of Judgment**

**Deut. 32:37, 38** "And he will say, Where are their gods, the rock in which they took refuge; which did eat the fat of their sacrifices, and drank the wine of their drink-offering? Let them rise up and help you. Let them be your protection."

**Ps. 115:4-8** "Their idols are silver and gold, the work of men's hands. They have mouths, but they speak not; eyes have they, but they see not; they have ears, but they hear not; noses have they, but they smell not; they have hands, but they handle not; feet have they, but they walk not; neither speak they through their throat. They that make them shall be like unto them; yea, every one that trusteth in them."

**Jer. 10:14, 15** "Every man is become brutish and is without knowledge; every goldsmith is put to shame by his graven image; for his molten image is falsehood, and there is no breath in them. They are vanity, a work of delusion: in the time of their visitation they shall perish."

See "Caesar's Things to Caesar".

# Incarnation

## DEFINITION

Incarnation is a clothing, or state of being clothed, with flesh; taking on, or being manifested in, a body of flesh. Scripturally, it describes the condition of angels appearing to mankind on earth. *False religion* claims it is the "union of Christ's divinity with his humanity".

### Angels in Noah's Day Took On Flesh and Bore Children Contrary to God's Will

Gen. 6:1-5 "And it came to pass, when men began to multiply on the face of the ground, and daughters were born unto them, that the sons of God saw the daughters of men that they were fair; and they took them wives of all that they chose. . . . The Nephilim were in the earth in those days, and also after that, when the sons of God came in unto the daughters of men, and they bare children to them: the same were the mighty men that were of old, the men of renown. And Jehovah saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every imagination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually."

### Were Sentenced by God and Power of Incarnation Taken Away

2 Pet. 2:4 "God did not hold back from punishing the angels that sinned, but, by throwing them into Tartarus, delivered them to pits of dense darkness to be reserved for judgment."

Jude 6 "And the angels that did not keep their original position but forsook their own proper dwelling-place he has reserved with eternal bonds under dense darkness for the judgment of the great day."

1 Pet. 3:19, 20 "He went his way and preached to the spirits in prison, which had once been disobedient when the patience

of God was waiting in Noah's days."

### Holy Angels Appeared in Flesh to Man at God's Command

Gen. 19:1-5, 15, 16 "And the two angels came to Sodom at even; and Lot sat in the gate of Sodom: and Lot saw them, and rose up to meet them; and he bowed himself with his face to the earth; and he said, Behold now, my lords, turn aside, I pray you, into your servant's house, and tarry all night. . . . But before they lay down, the men of the city . . . called unto Lot, and said unto him, Where are the men that came in to thee this night?"

Luke 1:26-28 "The angel Gabriel was sent forth from God to a city of Galilee named Nazareth, to a virgin promised in marriage to a man named Joseph of David's house; and the name of the virgin was Mary. And when he went in before her he said: 'Good day, highly favored one, Jehovah is with you.'"

### John the Baptist Not an Incarnation of Elijah

Matt. 17:10-13 "The disciples put the question to him: 'Why, then, do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?' In reply he said: ' . . . I say to you that Elijah has already come and they did not recognize him but did with him the things they wanted. . . . ' Then the disciples perceived that he spoke to them about John the Baptist."

Matt. 11:11-14 "Truly I say to you people, Among those born of



women there has not been raised up a greater than John the Baptist. . . . For all, the Prophets and the Law, prophesied until John; and if you want to accept it, This is 'Elijah who is destined to come'."

**John Merely Extended Work of Elijah Under Influence of Holy Spirit**

**Mal. 4:5, 6** "Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the great and terrible day of Jehovah come. And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers."

**Luke 1:13-17** "Your wife Elizabeth will be the mother of a son to you, and you are to call his name John. And you will have joy and great gladness, and many will rejoice over his birth; . . . and he will be filled with holy spirit right from his mother's womb, and many of the sons of Israel will he turn back to Jehovah their God. Also he will go before him with Elijah's spirit and power, to turn back the hearts of fathers to children and the disobedient ones to the practical wisdom of righteous ones, to get ready for Jehovah a prepared people."

**John Admitted He Was Not Elijah**

**John 1:19-21** "Now this is the witness of John when the Jews sent forth priests and Levites from Jerusalem to him to ask him: 'Who are you?' And he confessed and did not deny, but confessed: 'I am not the Christ.' And they asked him: 'What, then? Are you Elijah?' And he said: 'I am not.'"

**Jesus Was Not an Incarnation. Was Born of Woman, Made Flesh**

**Gal. 4:4** "But when the full limit of the time arrived, God sent forth his Son, who was produced out of a woman and who came to be under law."

**John 1:14** "So the Word became flesh and resided among us, and we had a view of his glory, a glory such as belongs to an only-begotten son from a father."

**Had Jesus Been an Incarnation He Would Not Have Needed Birth as a Child, but Could Have Assumed Flesh as After Resurrection**

**Luke 1:30, 31** "So the angel said to her: 'Have no fear, Mary, for you have found favor with God; and, look! you will conceive in your womb and give birth to a son, and you are to call his name Jesus.'"

**Luke 2:6, 7** "The days came to the full for her to give birth. And she gave birth to her son, the firstborn, and she bound him with cloth bands and laid him in a manger."

**John 20:19** "Therefore, when it was late on that day, the first of the week, and although out of fear of the Jews the doors were locked where the disciples were, Jesus came and stood in their midst."

**Luke 24:15, 16, 30, 31, 33-43** "Now as they were conversing and discussing Jesus himself approached and began traveling with them; but their eyes were kept from recognizing him. And as he was reclining with them at the meal he took the loaf, blessed it, broke it and began to hand it to them. At that their eyes were fully opened and they recognized him; and he disappeared from them. And in that very hour they rose and returned to Jerusalem. . . . Now they themselves described the events on the road and how he became known to them by the breaking of the loaf. While they were speaking of these things he himself stood in their midst. . . . But while they were still not believing for sheer joy and were wondering, he said to them: 'Do you have something there to eat?' And they handed him a piece of broiled

fish; and he took it and ate it before their eyes."

**Peter Spoke of Himself as "in This Tabernacle", Yet He Was No Incarnation**

**2 Pet. 1:13, 14** "But I consider it right, as long as I am in this tabernacle, to rouse you up by way of reminding you, knowing as I do that the putting off of my tabernacle is soon to be."

**Jesus Left Behind Things of Spirit When Made a Man**

**Phil. 2:7, 8** "[Jesus] emptied himself and took a slave's form and came to be in the likeness of men. More than that, when he found himself in fashion as a man, he humbled himself and became obedient as far as death."

**Heb. 2:9** "We behold Jesus, who has been made a little lower than angels."

**Jesus Had to Become All Flesh in Order to Provide Corresponding Price for Mankind's Ransom**

**Heb. 2:14-17** "Therefore, since the 'young children' are sharers of blood and flesh, he also similarly partook of the same things, ... For he is really not assisting angels at all, but he is assisting Abraham's seed. Consequently he was obliged to become like his 'brothers' in all respects, ... in order to offer propitiatory sacrifice for the sins of the people."

**Ex. 21:23, 24** "Thou shalt give life for life, eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot."

See also "Ransom".

**If Jesus Had Combined Divinity with Humanity He Could Not Have Died**

**Rom. 5:6** "For, indeed, Christ, while we were yet weak, died for ungodly men at the appointed time."

**1 Pet. 3:18** "Why even Christ died once for all time concerning sins, a righteous person for unrighteous ones, that he might lead you to God, he being put to death in the flesh, but being made alive in the spirit."

**1 Cor. 15:3, 4** "Christ died for our sins according to the Scriptures, and that he was buried, yes, that he has been raised up the third day according to the Scriptures."

**Appearance of Prophets at Transfiguration of Jesus Was a Vision, Not an Incarnation**

**Matt. 17:1-3, 9** "Jesus took Peter and James and John his brother along and brought them up into a lofty mountain by themselves. And he was transfigured before them, and his face shone as the sun, and his garments became brilliant as the light. And, look! there appeared to them Moses and Elijah, conversing with him. And as they were descending from the mountain, Jesus commanded them, saying, 'Tell the vision to no one.'"

See also "Jesus Christ", "Trinity", "Born Again."

# Interfaith

## DEFINITION

Belief in the "Fatherhood of God and the brotherhood of man", that all men are God's children and therefore have a common bond and union in Him however differently they may conceive Him. The doctrine that any belief in God is acceptable to Him if practiced sincerely; and, therefore, organizations having differing creeds can

unite in order to accomplish a common purpose. *A false, misleading conception.*

## ORIGIN

Effort was made to integrate false worship early in man's apostasy. Nimrod tried to unite men in a common cause as opposed to Noah's commission from God to establish seventy patriarchal family units as a token fulfillment of the procreation mandate.

### Jehovah God Would Not Sanction Interfaith by Accepting Both Cain's and Abel's Worship

Gen. 4:3-7 "And in process of time it came to pass, that Cain brought of the fruit of the ground an offering unto Jehovah. And Abel, he also brought of the firstlings of his flock and of the fat thereof. And Jehovah had respect unto Abel and to his offering: but unto Cain and to his offering he had not respect. And Cain was very wrath, and his countenance fell. And Jehovah said unto Cain, Why art thou wrath? and why is thy countenance fallen? If thou doest well, shall it not be lifted up? and if thou doest not well, sin coucheth at the door; and unto thee shall be its desire; but do thou rule over it."

Heb. 9:22 "Yes, nearly all things are cleansed with blood according to the Law, and unless blood is poured out no forgiveness takes place."

### Cain Showed Religious Intolerance by Murdering Abel

Gen. 4:8 "And Cain told Abel his brother. And it came to pass, when they were in the field, that Cain rose up against Abel his brother, and slew him."

1 John 3:11, 12 "For this is the message which you have heard from the beginning, that we should have love for one another; not like Cain, who originated with the wicked one and slaughtered his brother. And for the sake of what did he slaughter him? Because his own works were wicked, but those of his brother were righteous."

### Jehovah God's Opposition to Interfaith Demonstrated in Delivering True Worshipers from Demon-worshipping Egypt

Ex. 8:25, 26 "And Pharaoh called for Moses and for Aaron, and said, Go ye, sacrifice to your God in the land. And Moses said, It is not meet so to do; for we shall sacrifice the abomination of the Egyptians to Jehovah our God: lo, shall we sacrifice the abomination of the Egyptians before their eyes, and will they not stone us?"

### Against the Nile god

Ex. 7:16-18 "And thou shalt say unto him, Jehovah, the God of the Hebrews, hath sent me unto thee, saying, Let my people go, that they may serve me in the wilderness: and, behold, hitherto thou hast not hearkened. Thus saith Jehovah, In this thou shalt know that I am Jehovah: behold, I will smite with the rod that is in my hand upon the waters which are in the river, and they shall be turned to blood. And the fish that are in the river shall die, and the river shall become foul; and the Egyptians shall loathe to drink water from the river."

### Against Imhotep, god of medicine

Ex. 9:1-3 "Then Jehovah said unto Moses, Go in unto Pharaoh, and tell him, Thus saith Jehovah, the God of the Hebrews, Let my people go, that they may serve me. For if thou refuse to let them go, and wilt hold them still, behold, the hand of Jehovah is upon thy cattle which are in the field,

upon the horses, upon the asses, upon the camels, upon the herds, and upon the flocks: there shall be a very grievous murrain."

***Against Reshpu and Qetesh,  
gods of storm and battle***

**Ex. 9:22, 23** "And Jehovah said unto Moses, Stretch forth thy hand toward heaven, that there may be hail in all the land of Egypt upon man, and upon beast, and upon every herb of the field, throughout the land of Egypt. And Moses stretched forth his rod toward heaven: and Jehovah sent thunder and hail, and fire ran down unto the earth; and Jehovah rained hail upon the land of Egypt."

***Against Thoth, god of the moon***

**Ex. 10:21-23** "And Jehovah said unto Moses, Stretch out thy hand toward heaven, that there may be darkness over the land of Egypt, even darkness which may be felt. And Moses stretched forth his hand toward heaven; and there was a thick darkness in all the land of Egypt three days; they saw not one another, neither rose any one from his place for three days: but all the children of Israel had light in their dwellings."

See also "Animal Worship".

**Brotherhood or Compromise with  
False Worshipers in Promised  
Land Was Forbidden God's Own  
Chosen People Israel**

**Deut. 7:1-6, 16, 25, 26** "When Jehovah thy God shall bring thee into the land whither thou goest to possess it, and shall cast out many nations before thee, . . . thus shall ye deal with them: ye shall break down their altars, and dash in pieces their pillars, and hew down their Asherim, and burn their graven images with fire. For thou art a holy people unto Jehovah thy God: Jehovah thy God hath chosen thee to be a people for his own possession, above all peoples that are upon the face of

the earth. And thou shalt consume all the peoples that Jehovah thy God shall deliver unto thee; thine eye shall not pity them: neither shalt thou serve their gods; for that will be a snare unto thee. The graven images of their gods shall ye burn with fire: thou shalt not covet the silver or the gold that is on them, nor take it unto thee, lest thou be snared therein; for it is an abomination to Jehovah thy God. And thou shalt not bring an abomination into thy house, and become a devoted thing like unto it: thou shalt utterly detest it, and thou shalt utterly abhor it; for it is a devoted thing."

**Interfaith Led to Disaster  
Among Israelites**

**Judg. 2:1-3** "I made you to go up out of Egypt, and have brought you unto the land which I swore unto your fathers; and I said, I will never break my covenant with you: and ye shall make no covenant with the inhabitants of this land; ye shall break down their altars. But ye have not hearkened unto my voice: why have ye done this? Wherefore I also said, I will not drive them out from before you; but they shall be as thorns in your sides, and their gods shall be a snare unto you."

**Israel's Wisest Human King  
Brought Religious Peace to  
Own Household Through Interfaith  
but Failed in Peace  
with God**

**1 Ki. 11:1-11** "Now king Solomon loved many foreign women, . . . And he had seven hundred wives, princesses, and three hundred concubines; and his wives turned away his heart. For it came to pass, when Solomon was old, that his wives turned away his heart after other gods; and his heart was not perfect with Jehovah his God, as was the heart of David his father. For Solomon went after Ashtoreth the goddess of the Sidonians, and af-

ter Milcom the abomination of the Ammonites. And Solomon did that which was evil in the sight of Jehovah, and went not fully after Jehovah, as did David his father. Then did Solomon build a high place for Chemosh the abomination of Moab, in the mount that is before Jerusalem, and for Molech the abomination of the children of Ammon. And so did he for all his foreign wives, who burnt incense and sacrificed unto their gods. And Jehovah was angry with Solomon, because his heart was turned away from Jehovah, the God of Israel, who had appeared unto him twice, and had commanded him concerning this thing, that he would not go after other gods: but he kept not that which Jehovah commanded. Wherefore Jehovah said unto Solomon, Forasmuch as this is done of thee, and thou hast not kept my covenant and my statutes, which I have commanded thee, I will surely rend the kingdom from thee, and will give it to thy servant."

#### **As a "Jealous God" He Exacts Exclusive Devotion**

**Deut. 6:5** "And thou shalt love Jehovah thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy might."

**Ps. 119:113** "I hate them that are of a double mind; but thy law do I love."

**Ex. 20:5** "Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them; for I Jehovah thy God am a jealous God."

#### **Indifferent Compromise Is "Fence-straddling"**

**Rev. 3:15, 16** "I know your deeds, that you are neither cold nor hot. I wish you were cold or else hot. So, because you are lukewarm and neither hot nor cold, I am going to vomit you out of my mouth."

#### **Uniting for a Common Purpose Brought No Real Unity to Religious Sects of Jews**

**Acts 23:6-10** "Now when Paul took note that the one part was of Sadducees but the other of Pharisees, he proceeded to cry out in the Sanhedrin: 'Brothers, I am a Pharisee, a son of Pharisees. Over the hope of resurrection of the dead I am being judged.' Because he said this a dissension arose between the Pharisees and Sadducees, and the multitude was split. For Sadducees say there is neither resurrection nor angel nor spirit, but the Pharisees publicly declare them all. So there broke out a loud screaming, and some of the scribes of the party of the Pharisees rose and began contending fiercely, saying: 'We find nothing wrong in this man; but if a spirit or an angel spoke to him,—.' Now when the dissension grew great, the military commander became afraid that Paul would be pulled to pieces by them, and commanded the force of soldiers to go down and snatch him from their midst and bring him into the soldiers' quarters."

#### **Jesus' Permitting Separate Works in His Name Before Pentecost Not Advocating Separate Religious Organizations**

**Mark 9:38-40** "John said to him: 'Teacher, we saw a certain man expelling demons by the use of your name and we tried to prevent him, because he was not accompanying us.' But Jesus said: 'Do not try to prevent him, for there is no one that will do a powerful work on the basis of my name that will quickly be able to revile me; for he that is not against us is for us.'"

#### **Not all believers in Jesus worked along with apostles**

**Mark 5:18-20** "Now as he was boarding the boat the man that had been demon-possessed began entreating him for permission to

continue with him. However, he did not let him, but said to him: 'Go home to your relatives, and report to them all the things Jehovah has done for you and the mercy he had on you.' And he went away and started to proclaim in the Decapolis all the things Jesus did for him, and all the people began to wonder."

***Jesus not at that time building congregations; commissioned followers only to preach, going into synagogues and private homes***

**Luke 4:15, 16** "Also he began to teach in their synagogues, being held in honor by all. However, he came to Nazareth, where he had been reared, and according to his custom on the sabbath day he entered into the synagogue, and he stood up to read aloud."

**Matt. 10:1, 5-7, 12-14** "So he summoned his twelve disciples and gave them authority over unclean spirits, in order to expel these and to cure every kind of disease and every kind of ailment. These twelve Jesus sent forth, giving them these orders: 'Do not go off into the road of the nations, and do not enter into a Samaritan city; but, instead, go continually to the lost sheep of the house of Israel. As you go, preach, saying, "The kingdom of the heavens has drawn near." When you are entering into the house, greet the household; and if the house is deserving, let the peace you wish it come upon it; but if it is not deserving, let the peace from you return upon you. Wherever anyone does not take you in or listen to your words, on going out of that house or that city shake the dust off your feet.'"

**Luke 10:1, 2, 16** "After these things the Master designated seventy others and sent them forth by twos in advance of him into every city and place to which he himself was going to come. Then he began to say to them: 'The harvest, indeed, is great,

but the workers are few. Therefore beg the Master of the harvest to send out workers into his harvest. He that listens to you listens to me too. And he that disregards you disregards me too. Moreover, he that disregards me disregards also him that sent me forth.'"

**Jesus Did Not Accept and Overlook "Differences" as Petty, but Thoroughly Condemned Them**

**Matt. 23:1-3, 23, 24, 33** "Then Jesus spoke to the crowds and to his disciples, saying: 'The scribes and the Pharisees have seated themselves in the seat of Moses. Therefore all the things they tell you, do and observe, but do not do according to their deeds, for they say but do not perform. Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! because you give the tenth of the mint and the dill and the cummin, but you have disregarded the weightier matters of the Law, namely, judgment and mercy and faithfulness. These things it was binding to do, yet not to disregard the other things. Blind guides, who strain out the gnat but gulp down the camel! Serpents, offspring of vipers, how are you to flee from the judgment of Gehenna?'"

**Jesus Would Not Recognize Religious Leaders as "Brothers"**

**John 8:42-44** "Jesus said to them: 'If God were your Father, you would love me, for from God I came forth and am here. Neither have I come of my own initiative at all, but that One sent me forth. Why is it you do not know what I am speaking? Because you cannot listen to my word. You are from your father the Devil and you wish to do the desires of your father.'"

**Heb. 12:4-11** "It is for discipline you are enduring. God is dealing with you as with sons. For what son is he that a father does not discipline? But if you are with-

out the discipline of which all have become partakers, you are really illegitimate children, and not sons. Furthermore, we used to have fathers who were of our flesh to discipline us and we used to give them respect. Shall we not much more subject ourselves to the Father of our spiritual life and live?"

### Early Christians Resisted Efforts of "Interfaith" by Emperor

2 Cor. 6:14-18 "Do not become unevenly yoked with unbelievers. For what partnership do righteousness and lawlessness have? Or what fellowship does light have with darkness? Further, what harmony is there between Christ and Belial? Or what portion does a faithful person have with an unbeliever? And what agreement does God's temple have with idols? For we are the temple of the living God; just as God said: 'I shall reside among them and walk among them, and I shall be their God, and they will be my people.' 'Therefore get out from among them, and separate yourselves,' says Jehovah, 'and quit touching the unclean thing,' 'and I will take you in.' 'And I shall be a father to you, and you will be sons and daughters to me,' says Jehovah the Almighty."

### "Many Roads, One Destiny" a False Religious Principle

*Proved disastrous to those not true Christians, while sincere converts took right course*

Acts 19:13-20 "But certain ones of the traveling Jews who practiced the casting out of demons also undertook to name the name of the Lord Jesus over those having the wicked spirits, saying: 'I solemnly charge you by Jesus whom Paul preaches.' Now there were seven sons of a certain Sceva, a Jewish chief priest, doing this. But in answer the wicked spirit said to them: 'I know Jesus and I am acquainted with Paul;

but who are you?' With that the man in whom the wicked spirit was leaped upon them, got the mastery of the two of them, and prevailed against them, so that they fled naked and wounded out of that house. This became known to all, both the Jews and the Greeks that dwelt in Ephesus, and a fear fell upon them all, and the name of the Lord Jesus went on being magnified. And many of those who had become believers would come and confess and report their practices openly. Indeed, quite a number of those who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them up before everybody. And they calculated together the prices of them and found them worth fifty thousand pieces of silver. Thus in a mighty way the word of Jehovah kept growing and prevailing."

### Merely taking name of God not sufficient for approval

Matt. 7:20-23 "Really, then, by their fruits you will recognize those men. Not everyone saying to me, 'Master, Master,' will enter into the kingdom of the heavens, but the one doing the will of my Father who is in the heavens will. Many will say to me in that day: 'Master, Master, did we not prophesy in your name, and expel demons in your name, and perform many powerful works in your name?' And yet then I will confess to them: I never knew you at all. Get away from me, you workers of lawlessness."

Matt. 25:40, 45 "And in reply the king will say to them: 'Truly I say to you, to the extent that you did it to one of the least of these my brothers, you did it to me.' Then he will answer them with the words: 'Truly I say to you, To the extent that you did not do it to one of these least ones, you did not do it to me.'"

Matt. 12:30 "He that is not on my side is against me, and he

that does not gather with me scatters."

***Christ opposed to mingling of faiths; was building a new system that was no part of religious system of Jews***

**Luke 5:33-39** "They said to him: 'The disciples of John fast frequently and offer supplications, and so do those of the Pharisees, but yours eat and drink.' Jesus said to them: 'You cannot make the friends of the bridegroom fast while the bridegroom is with them, can you? Yet days will come when the bridegroom will indeed be taken away from them; then they will fast in those days.' Further he went on to give an illustration to them: 'No one cuts a patch from a new outer garment and sews it onto an old outer garment; but if he does, then both the new patch tears away and the patch from the new garment does not match the old. Moreover, no one puts new wine into old wineskins; but if he does, then the new wine will burst the wineskins, and it will be spilled out and the wineskins will be ruined. But new wine must be put into new wineskins. No one that has drunk old wine wants new; for he says, "The old is nice."'"

**Matt. 15:14** "Let them be. Blind guides is what they are. If, then, a blind man guides a blind man, both will fall into a pit."

**Matt. 16:6-12** "Jesus said to them: 'Be on the alert and watch out for the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.' So they began to reason among themselves, saying: 'We did not take any loaves along.' Knowing this, Jesus said: 'Why are you doing this reasoning among yourselves, because you have no loaves, you with little faith? ... How is it you do not discern that I did not talk to you about loaves? But watch out for the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.' Then they grasped that he said to watch out, not for

the yeast of the loaves, but for the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees."

**Gal. 5:9, 10** "A little yeast ferments the whole lump. I am confident about you who are in union with the Lord that you will not come to think otherwise; but the one who is disturbing you will bear his judgment, no matter who he may be."

***Paul showed unity of thinking among Christians was essential***

**1 Cor. 1:10-13** "Now I exhort you, brothers, through the name of our Lord Jesus Christ that you should all speak in agreement, and that there should not be divisions among you, but that you may be fitly united in the same mind and in the same line of thought. For the disclosure was made to me about you, my brothers, by those of the house of Chloe, that dissensions exist among you. What I mean is this, that each one of you says: 'I belong to Paul,' 'But I to Apollos,' 'But I to Cephas,' 'But I to Christ.' Does the Christ exist divided? Paul was not impaled for you, was he? Or were you baptized in the name of Paul?"

***Only two roads to follow—a right and a wrong***

**Matt. 7:13, 14** "Go in through the narrow gate; because broad and spacious is the road leading off into destruction, and many are the ones going in through it; whereas narrow is the gate and cramped the road leading off into life, and few are the ones finding it."

**Luke 13:24** "Exert yourselves vigorously to get in through the narrow door, because many, I tell you, will seek to get in but will not be strong enough."

**Prov. 16:25** "There is a way which seemeth right unto a man, but the end thereof are the ways of death."



# Jehovah

## DEFINITION

Greatest Personality in the universe, distinguished by that exclusive name. The Great Theocrat, the Unfailing Purposer, the True and Living God, Creator and Supreme Sovereign of the universe. Not a triune god, which false doctrine would deny his almighty supremacy. A translation of God's name in Hebrew, יהוה.

### His Name

**Ex. 6:3** "And I appeared unto Abraham, unto Isaac, and unto Jacob, as God Almighty; but by my name Jehovah I was not known to them."

**Ps. 83:18** "That they may know that thou alone, whose name is Jehovah, art the Most High over all the earth."

**Isa. 42:8** "I am Jehovah, that is my name; and my glory will I not give to another, neither my praise unto graven images."

### Principal Attributes

#### Love

**1 John 4:8** "God is love."

#### Wisdom

**Job 12:13** "With God is wisdom and might."

**Rom. 11:33** "Oh the depth of God's riches and wisdom and knowledge!"

#### Justice

**Ps. 97:2** "Righteousness and justice are the foundation of his throne."

#### Power

**Ps. 62:11** "Power belongeth unto God."

**Job 37:23** "The Almighty, ... he is excellent in power."

### The Happy God

**1 Tim. 1:11** "According to the glorious good news of the happy God."

### Without Beginning or End of Existence

**Ps. 90:2** "From everlasting to everlasting, thou art God."

**Ps. 93:2** "Thy throne is established of old: thou art from everlasting."

**1 Tim. 1:17** "Now to the King of eternity, incorruptible, invisible, the only God, be honor and glory for ever and ever."

**Jer. 10:10** "But Jehovah is the true God; he is the living God, and an everlasting King."

**Job 36:26** "Behold, God is great, and we know him not; the number of his years is unsearchable."

### Is One Person

**John 8:17, 18** "The witness of two men is true. I am one that bears witness about myself and the Father who sent me bears witness about me."

**Heb. 10:38** "But my righteous one will live by reason of faith, ... if he shrinks back, my soul has no pleasure in him."

**Deut. 6:4** "Hear, O Israel: Jehovah our God is one Jehovah."

**Has an Incorruptible Body, with Qualities of Sight, Hearing, etc.**

**Isa. 45:9** "Shall the clay say to him that fashioneth it, What makest thou? or thy work, He hath no hands?"

**Ps. 94:9** "He that planted the ear, shall he not hear? He that formed the eye, shall he not see?"

**1 Cor. 15:44** "If there is a physical body, there is also a spiritual one."

**2 Chron. 16:9** "The eyes of Jehovah run to and fro throughout the whole earth, to show himself strong in the behalf of them whose heart is perfect toward him."

**1 Tim. 1:17** "Now to the King of eternity, incorruptible, invisible, the only God, be honor and glory for ever and ever. Amen."

### **Supreme Sovereign of the Universe**

**Acts 4:24** "Sovereign Lord, you are the One who made the heaven and the earth and the sea and all the things in them."

**1 Pet. 5:11** "To him be the might forever. Amen."

**1 Cor. 15:28** "When all things will have been subjected to him, then the Son himself will also subject himself to the one who subjected all things to him, that God may be all things to everyone."

**Isa. 33:22** "Jehovah is our judge, Jehovah is our lawgiver, Jehovah is our king; he will save us."

### **Impossible to Be Seen with Human Eyes**

**1 John 4:12** "At no time has anyone beheld God."

**Ex. 33:20** "He said, Thou canst not see my face; for man shall not see me and live."

**1 John 3:2, 3** "Beloved ones, now we are children of God, but as yet it has not been made manifest what we shall be. We do know that whenever he is made manifest we shall be like him, because we shall see him just as he is."

**1 Tim. 1:17** "Now to the King of eternity, incorruptible, invisible, ... be honor."

### **Has Made Manifestations of His Existence by Means of Angels or Visions**

**Isa. 6:5** "Then said I, Woe is me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips: for mine eyes have seen the King, Jehovah of hosts."

**Ex. 33:11, 22, 23** "Jehovah spake unto Moses face to face, as a man speaketh unto his friend. And it shall come to pass, while my glory passeth by, that I will

put thee in a cleft of the rock, and will cover thee with my hand until I have passed by: and I will take away my hand, and thou shalt see my back; but my face shall not be seen."

**Ex. 24:10, 11** "They saw the God of Israel; and there was under his feet as it were a paved work of sapphire stone, and as it were the very heaven for clearness. And upon the nobles of the children of Israel he laid not his hand: and they beheld God, and did eat and drink."

**Isa. 63:9** "In all their affliction he was afflicted, and the angel of his presence saved them: in his love and in his pity he redeemed them."

**Gal. 3:19** "Why, then, the Law? It was added to make transgressions manifest, until the seed should arrive to whom the promise had been made, and it was transmitted through angels by the hand of a mediator."

**Heb. 2:2** "The word spoken through angels became certain of execution, and every transgression and disobedient act received a retribution in harmony with justice."

**Dan. 7:7, 9, 13** "I saw in the night-visions, . . . and one that was ancient of days did sit: his raiment was white as snow, and the hair of his head like pure wool; his throne was fiery flames, and the wheels thereof burning fire. I saw in the night-visions, and, behold, there came with the clouds of heaven one like unto a son of man, and he came even to the ancient of days."

**Rev. 4:2, 3** "A throne was in its position in heaven, and there is one seated upon the throne. And the one seated is, in appearance, like a jasper stone."

### **Impossible to Make Likeness or Comparison to Him**

**Isa. 40:18, 25** "To whom then will ye liken God? or what likeness will ye compare unto him? To whom then will ye liken me,

that I should be equal to him? saith the Holy One."

**Deut. 4:15, 16** "Take ye therefore good heed unto yourselves; for ye saw no manner of form on the day that Jehovah spake unto you in Horeb out of the midst of the fire; lest you corrupt yourselves, and make you a graven image in the form of any figure."

**Num. 4:5, 6** "When the camp setteth forward, Aaron shall go in, and his sons, and they shall take down the veil of the screen, and cover the ark of the testimony with it, and shall put thereon a covering of sealskin, and shall spread over it a cloth all of blue."

### **Knows Everything About His Creation**

**Heb. 4:13** "There is not a creation that is not manifest to his sight, but all things are naked and openly exposed to the eyes of him with whom we have an accounting."

**Rom. 14:12** "Each of us will render an account for himself to God."

### **God of the Free and the Only Liberator**

**2 Cor. 3:17** "Now Jehovah is the spirit; and where the spirit of Jehovah is, there is freedom."

**John 8:31-38** "Jesus went on to say to the Jews that had believed him: 'If you remain in my word, you are really my disciples, and you will know the truth, and the truth will set you free. . . . Therefore if the Son sets you free, you will be actually free. . . . What things I have seen with my Father I speak.'"

**Rom. 8:21** "The creation itself also will be set free from enslavement to corruption and have the glorious freedom of the children of God."

**Jas. 1:25** "He who peers into the perfect law that belongs to freedom and who persists in it, this man . . . will be happy."

**Isa. 58:6** "Is not this the fast that I have chosen: to loose the bonds of wickedness, to undo the bands of the yoke, and to let the oppressed go free, and that ye break every yoke?"

**Isa. 61:1-3** "The spirit of the Lord Jehovah is upon me; because Jehovah hath anointed me . . . he hath sent me . . . to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound."

**Also: Luke 4:18.**

**Isa. 49:9, AV** "Say to the prisoners, Go forth."

**Isa. 42:7** "To open the blind eyes, to bring out the prisoners from the dungeon, and them that sit in darkness out of the prison-house."

### **Obedience the Governing Principle of His Organization**

**Rom. 13:1** "Let every soul be in subjection to the superior authorities, for there is no authority except by God; the existing authorities stand placed in their relative positions by God."

**Acts 3:23** "Indeed, any soul that does not listen to that Prophet will be completely destroyed from among the people."

**1 Sam. 15:22, 23** "Hath Jehovah as great delight in burnt-offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of Jehovah? Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken than the fat of rams. For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as idolatry and teraphim."

**Acts 5:29** "Peter and the other apostles said: 'We must obey God as ruler rather than men.'"

**2 Thess. 1:8** "He [Jesus] brings due punishment upon those who do not know God and those who do not obey the good news about our Lord Jesus."

**1 Pet. 4:17, 18** "What will the complete end be of those who are not obedient . . . if the righteous man is being saved with difficulty, where will the ungodly man and the sinner make a showing?"

### Does Not Gain from His Creatures

**Acts 17:24, 25** "The God that made the world and all the things in it... does not dwell in handmade temples, neither is he attended to by human hands as if he needed anything, because he himself gives to all persons life and breath and all things."

**Job 41:11** "Who hath first given unto me, that I should repay him? Whatsoever is under the whole heaven is mine."

**Isa. 40:15-17** "Behold, the nations are as a drop of a bucket, and are accounted as the small dust of the balance: ... And Lebanon is not sufficient to burn, nor the beasts thereof sufficient for a burnt-offering. All the nations are as nothing before him; they are accounted by him as less than nothing, and vanity."

**Rom. 11:35** "Who has first given to him, so that it must be repaid to him?"

### Life Comes by Knowing, Praising Him

**John 17:3** "This means everlasting life, their taking in knowledge of you, the only true God, and of the one whom you sent forth, Jesus Christ."

**Rom. 6:23** "The wages sin pays is death, but the gift God gives is everlasting life by Christ Jesus our Lord."

**John 6:57, 63** "I live because of the Father... The sayings that I have spoken to you are spirit and are life."

**Phil. 2:10, 11** "So that in the name of Jesus every knee should bend of those in heaven and those on earth and those under the ground, and every tongue should openly confess that Jesus Christ is Lord to the glory of God the Father."

Also: Psalm 148.

### Always Reasonable, Cannot Lie

**Isa. 1:18** "Come now, and let us reason together, saith Jehovah."

**Jas. 3:17** "The wisdom from above is first of all chaste, then peaceable, reasonable, ready to obey, full of mercy and good fruits, not making partial distinctions, not hypocritical."

**Heb. 6:18** "It is impossible for God to lie."

**Titus 1:2** "God, who cannot lie."

### Not Omnipresent, but Power Extends Everywhere

**Matt. 23:9, 22** "One is your Father, the heavenly one. And he that swears by heaven is swearing by the throne of God and by him that is sitting on it."

**1 Ki. 8:30** "When they shall pray toward this place: yea, hear thou in heaven thy dwelling-place."

**Job 22:12** "Is not God in the height of heaven?"

**Ps. 102:19** "He hath looked down from the height of his sanctuary; from heaven did Jehovah behold the earth."

**Ps. 11:4** "Jehovah is in his holy temple; Jehovah, his throne is in heaven."

**Ps. 14:2** "Jehovah looked down from heaven upon the children of men."

**Amos 9:2** "Though they dig into Sheol, thence shall my hand take them; and though they climb up to heaven, thence will I bring them down."

**Isa. 43:13** "Yea, since the day was I am he; and there is none that can deliver out of my hand: I will work, and who can hinder it?"

**Isa. 50:2, 3** "Is my hand shortened at all, that it cannot redeem? or have I no power to deliver? ... I clothe the heavens with blackness, and I make sackcloth their covering."

**Isa. 59:1** "Behold, Jehovah's hand is not shortened, that it cannot save; neither his ear heavy, that it cannot hear."

**Can Never Be Fully Searched Out**

**Rom. 11:33, 34** "Oh the depth of God's riches and wisdom and knowledge! How unsearchable his judgments are and past tracing out his ways are! For 'who has come to know Jehovah's mind, or who has become his counselor?'"

**Isa. 40:28** "There is no searching of his understanding."

**Job 36:26** "Behold, God is great, and we know him not."

**Job 37:23** "Touching the Almighty, we cannot find him out."

**Christ His Intimate**

**Matt. 11:27** "All things have been delivered to me by my Father, and no one fully knows the Son but the Father, neither does anyone fully know the Father but the Son and anyone to whom the Son is willing to reveal him."

**Cannot Be Blocked in His Purposes**

**Matt. 19:26** "With God all things are possible."

**Isa. 46:11** "I have spoken, I will also bring it to pass; I have purposed, I will also do it."

**Isa. 55:11** "So shall my word be that goeth forth out of my mouth: it shall not return unto me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please, and it shall prosper in the thing whereto I sent it."

**Job 41:10** "Who then is he that can stand before me?"

**Does Not Tempt Anyone to Sin or Create Wickedness**

**Jas. 1:13, 14** "When under trial, let no one say: 'I am being tried by God.' No; for with evil things God cannot be tried nor does he himself try anyone. But each one is tried by being drawn out and enticed by his own desire."

**Deut. 32:4, 5** "All his ways are justice: a God of faithfulness and without iniquity, just and right is he."

**Hab. 1:13** "Thou that art of purer eyes than to behold evil,

and that canst not look on perverseness."

**Ezek. 28:12-15** "Thou sealest up the sum, full of wisdom, and perfect in beauty. Thou wast in Eden, the garden of God. . . . Thou wast the anointed cherub that covereth: and I set thee, so that thou wast upon the holy mountain of God. . . . Thou wast perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created, till unrighteousness was found in thee."

**His Vindication the Most Important Thing**

**Rom. 3:4** "As it is written: 'That you [God] might be vindicated in your words and might win when you are being judged.'"

**See: Ps. 51:4.**

**Matt. 6:9** "Our Father in the heavens, let your name be sanctified."

**Rom. 9:17** "For the Scripture says to Pharaoh: 'For this very purpose I have let you remain, that in connection with you I may demonstrate my power and that my name may be published throughout all the earth.'"

**Also: Ex. 9:16.**

**Prov. 27:11** "My son, be wise, and make my heart glad, that I may answer him that reproacheth me."

**Job 32:2** "Then was kindled the wrath of Elihu . . . against Job . . . because he justified himself rather than God."

**Isa. 63:12-14** "That caused his glorious arm to go at the right hand of Moses? . . . to make himself an everlasting name? . . . so didst thou lead thy people, to make thyself a glorious name."

**Ps. 111:9** "Holy and reverend is his name."

**Now Rules as King Through Christ**

**Rev. 19:6** "Praise Jah, you people, because Jehovah our God, the Almighty, has begun to rule as king."

**Rev. 11:15** "Loud voices occurred in heaven saying: 'The

kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ, and he will rule

as king for ever and ever.'"  
See: Matthew 24 and Revelation 6.

# Jehovah's Witnesses

## DEFINITION

Servants of Jehovah, the Almighty God, and active witnesses to his sovereign supremacy. Since the time of Christ Jesus they are Christian ministers, doing the will of God by following the course exemplified by Christ their Leader. The name Jehovah meaning "The Purposer", his witnesses declare him as the only true God, who is now working out his purpose of vindicating his name and sovereignty and blessing all faithful mankind through his kingdom. Not a sect or cult that follows or adulates human leaders or rites and ceremonies.

### Jesus Christ the Chief Witness of Jehovah

**Rev. 1:5** "Jesus Christ, 'the Faithful Witness,' 'The firstborn from the dead,' and 'The Ruler of the kings of the earth'."

**Rev. 3:14** "These are the things the Amen says, the faithful and true witness, the beginning of the creation by God."

**John 18:37** "Jesus answered: '... For this purpose I have been born and for this purpose I have come into the world, that I should bear witness to the truth. Everyone that is on the side of the truth listens to my voice.'"

**John 17:6, 26** "I have made your name manifest to the men you gave me out of the world. ... And I have made your name known to them and will make it known."

**John 14:9** "He that has seen me has seen the Father also."

The name "Jesus" means "Jehovah is salvation".

### Abel the First of an Unbroken Line of Jehovah's Witnesses on Earth

**Heb. 11:1-40; 12:1** "By faith Abel offered God a sacrifice of greater worth than Cain, through which faith he had witness borne to him that he was righteous, God bearing witness respecting

his gifts, ... the time will fail me if I go on to relate about Gideon, Barak, Samson, Jephthah, David as well as Samuel and the other prophets, ... we have so great a cloud of witnesses surrounding us."

### God Has Raised Up Witnesses with a Special Warning During Each Judgment Period

**Jer. 44:4** "I sent unto you all my servants the prophets, rising up early and sending them."

**Amos 3:7** "Surely the Lord Jehovah will do nothing, except he reveal his secret unto his servants the prophets."

### *Preflood world*

**Heb. 11:7** "By faith Noah, after being given divine warning of things not yet beheld, showed godly fear and constructed an ark for the saving of his household, and through this faith he condemned the world, and he became an heir of the righteousness which is according to faith."

**1 Pet. 3:20** "The patience of God was waiting in Noah's days, while the ark was being constructed, in which a few people, that is, eight souls, were carried safely through the water."

**2 Pet. 2:5** "He did not hold back from punishing an ancient

world, but kept Noah, a preacher of righteousness, safe with seven others when he brought a deluge upon a world of ungodly people."

See: Genesis, chapters 6, 7.

### ***Egypt***

**Ex. 3:15** "And God said more-over unto Moses, Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, Jehovah, the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, hath sent me unto you: this is my name for ever, and this is my memorial unto all generations."

### ***Kingdom of Judah***

**Jer. 1:4-10** "To whomsoever I shall send thee thou shalt go, and whatsoever I shall command thee thou shalt speak... Behold, I have put my words in thy mouth: see, I have this day set thee over the nations and over the kingdoms, to pluck up and to break down and to destroy and to overthrow, to build and to plant."

**Ezek. 3:17** "Son of man, I have made thee a watchman unto the house of Israel: therefore hear the word at my mouth, and give them warning from me."

### ***Jewish systems of things***

**John 12:31** "Now there is a judging of this world; now the ruler of this world will be cast out."

### ***Present system of things***

**Matt. 24:14** "And this good news of the kingdom will be preached in all the inhabited earth for the purpose of a witness to all the nations, and then the accomplished end will come."

**Matt. 25:31-33** "When the Son of man arrives in his glory and all the angels with him, then he will sit down on his glorious throne. And all the nations will be gathered before him, and he will separate people one from another, just as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats. And he will put the sheep on his

right hand, but the goats on his left."

**Scriptural Names Such as "Christian", "Church of Christ", "Church of God" and Others Applying to Christian Congregation Are Proper Now**

**Acts 11:26** "It was first in Antioch that the disciples were by divine providence called 'Christians'."

**1 Pet. 4:16** "But if he suffers as a Christian, let him not feel shame, but let him keep on glorifying God in this name."

**Acts 26:28, 29** "But Agrippa said to Paul: 'In a short time you would persuade me to become a Christian.' At this Paul said: 'I could wish to God that whether in a short time or in a long time not only you but also all those who hear me today would become men such as I also am, with the exception of these bonds.'"

**Acts 20:28** "Shepherd the congregation of God, which he purchased with the blood of his own [Son]."

**1 Tim. 3:15** "God's household, which is the congregation of the living God."

**Matt. 16:17, 18** "In response Jesus said to him: '...on this rock-mass I will build my congregation.'"

**Ancient Faithful Israel Was an Entire Nation of Jehovah's Witnesses**

**Ex. 6:7** "I will take you to me for a people, and I will be to you a God; and ye shall know that I am Jehovah your God, who bringeth you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians."

**Ex. 19:5, 6** "If ye will obey my voice indeed, and keep my covenant, then ye shall be mine own possession from among all peoples: for all the earth is mine: and ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."

**2 Sam. 7:23** "And what one nation in the earth is like thy people, even like Israel, whom God went to redeem unto himself for a people, and to make him a name, and to do great things for you, and terrible things for thy land, before thy people, whom thou redeemedst to thee out of Egypt, from the nations and their gods?"

**Christian Congregation Under Christ Is the Present-Day "Nation" of Jehovah's Witnesses**

**Rev. 14:1-3** "And I saw, and look! the Lamb standing upon the mount Zion, and with him a hundred and forty-four thousand having his name and the name of his Father written on their foreheads.... And they are singing as if a new song... and no one was able to master that song but the hundred and forty-four thousand, who have been purchased from the earth."

**1 Pet. 2:9** "On the other hand, you are 'a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for special possession, that you should declare abroad the excellencies' of the one that called you out of darkness into his wonderful light."

**Ps. 33:12** "Blessed is the nation whose God is Jehovah."

**Acts 15:14** "Symeon has related thoroughly how God for the first time turned his attention to the nations to take out of them a people for his name."

**Matt. 21:43** "The kingdom of God will be taken from you and be given to a nation producing its fruits."

**Eph. 3:14, 15** "I bend my knees to the Father, to whom every family in heaven and on earth owes its name."

**Jehovah, Not Man, Is the Founder of His Witnesses and Giver of Name**

**Isa. 43:9-12** "Let all the nations be gathered together, and let the

peoples be assembled: who among them can declare this, and show us former things? let them bring their witnesses, that they may be justified; or let them hear, and say, It is truth. Ye are my witnesses, saith Jehovah, and my servant whom I have chosen; that ye may know and believe me, and understand that I am he: before me there was no God formed, neither shall there be after me. I, even I, am Jehovah; and besides me there is no saviour. I have declared, and I have saved, and I have showed; and there was no strange god among you: therefore ye are my witnesses, saith Jehovah, and I am God."

**Isa. 44:8** "Fear ye not, neither be afraid: have I not declared unto thee of old, and showed it? and ye are my witnesses. Is there a God besides me? yea, there is no Rock; I know not any."

**1 Cor. 3:7** "So that neither is he that plants anything nor is he that waters, but God who makes it grow."

**Christ, Not Any Man, Is the Leader and Ever-living Head of Jehovah's Witnesses**

**Matt. 23:10** "Neither be called 'leaders', for your Leader is one, the Christ."

**Isa. 55:4** "Behold, I have given him for a witness to the peoples, a leader and commander to the peoples."

**Acts 3:23** "Indeed, any soul that does not listen to that Prophet will be completely destroyed from among the people."

**Eph. 5:23** "Christ also is head of the congregation, he being a savior of this body."

**Col. 1:18** "He is the head of the body, the congregation."

**Not a Sect or Cult, as Men Call Them**

**Acts 24:14** "According to the way which they call a 'sect', in this manner I am rendering sacred service to the God of my forefathers."



**John 4:24** "God is a Spirit, and those worshiping him must worship with spirit and truth."

**Not a Part of This World**

**John 17:16, 17** "They are no part of the world just as I am no part of the world. Sanctify them by means of the truth; your word is truth."

**Jas. 4:4** "Adulteresses, do you not know that the friendship with the world is enmity with God? Whoever, therefore, wants to be a friend of the world is constituting himself an enemy of God."

**Not Seeking to Establish a Political Government**

**2 Pet. 3:13, 14** "But there are new heavens and a new earth that we are awaiting according to his promise, and in these righteousness is to dwell. Hence, beloved ones, since you are awaiting these things, do your utmost to be found finally by him spotless and unblemished and in peace."

**1 Pet. 4:15** "However, let none of you suffer as a murderer or a thief or an evildoer or as a busybody in other people's matters."

**1 Tim. 2:1, 2** "I therefore exhort first of all that supplications, prayers, intercessions, offerings of thanks, be made concerning all kinds of men, concerning kings and all those who are in high station, in order that we may go on leading a calm and quiet life with full godly devotion and seriousness."

**Only 144,000 Followers of Christ Will Go to Heaven**

**Luke 12:32** "Have no fear, little flock, because your Father has approved of giving you the kingdom."

**Rev. 14:1-3** "I saw, and look! the Lamb standing upon the mount Zion, and with him a hundred and forty-four thousand... And I heard a sound out of heaven... and the sound that I heard was as of singers... And they are singing as if a new song before the throne... and no one was

able to master that song but the hundred and forty-four thousand who have been purchased from the earth."

**Other Witnesses Have Hopes of Everlasting Life on Earth**

**John 10:16** "I have other sheep, which are not of this fold; those also I must bring, and they will listen to my voice, and they will become one flock, one shepherd."

**Matt. 25:31-46** "The king will say to them [the sheep]: 'Truly I say to you, To the extent that you did it to one of the least of these my brothers, you did it to me.'... the righteous ones [will depart] into everlasting life."

**Members of "Other Sheep" Class Are Also Properly Termed Jehovah's Witnesses Because of Their Work, in Harmony with the Heavenly Class**

**Rev. 7:4, 9-15** "I heard the number of those who were sealed, a hundred and forty-four thousand... After these things I saw, and, look! a great crowd, which no man was able to number, out of all nations and tribes and peoples and tongues, standing before the throne and before the Lamb, ... And they keep on crying with a loud voice, saying: 'Salvation we owe to our God, who is seated on the throne, and to the Lamb.' ... 'they are rendering him sacred service day and night.'"

**Rev. 22:17** "And the spirit and the bride keep on saying, 'Come!' And let anyone hearing say, 'Come!' And let anyone thirsting come; let anyone that wishes take life's water free."

**Isa. 56:6-8** "Also the foreigners that join themselves to Jehovah, to minister unto him, and to love the name of Jehovah, to be his servants, every one that keepeth the sabbath from profaning it, and holdeth fast my covenant; even them will I bring to my holy mountain, and make them joyful in my house of prayer: their burnt-offerings and

their sacrifices shall be accepted upon mine altar; for my house shall be called a house of prayer for all peoples. The Lord Jehovah, who gathereth the outcasts of Israel, saith, Yet will I gather others to him, besides his own that are gathered."

**Heb. 12:1** "So, then, because we have so great a cloud of witnesses surrounding us, let us also put off every weight."

### **Active Service, Not Ritual, Comprises Their Worship; They Must Preach**

**Luke 3:8, 9** "Produce fruits that befit repentance. . . . every tree, therefore, not producing fine fruit is to be cut down and thrown into the fire."

**Luke 19:40** "I tell you, If these remained silent, the stones would cry out."

**Isa. 6:9, 11** "And he said, Go, and tell this people, . . . Until cities be waste without inhabitant, and houses without man, and the land become utterly waste."

**Ezek. 3:10, 11** "Moreover he said unto me, Son of man, all my words that I shall speak unto thee receive in thy heart, and hear with thine ears. And go, get thee to them of the captivity, unto the children of thy people, and speak unto them, and tell them, Thus saith the Lord Jehovah; whether they will hear, or whether they will forbear."

**Matt. 28:19, 20** "Go therefore and make disciples of people of all the nations, . . . teaching them to observe all the things I have commanded you."

**Ezek. 33:8, 9** "When I say unto the wicked, O wicked men, thou shalt surely die, and thou dost not speak to warn the wicked from his way; that wicked man shall die in his iniquity, but his blood will I require at thy hand. Nevertheless, if thou warn the wicked of his way to turn from it, and he turn not from his way; he shall die in his iniquity, but thou hast delivered thy soul."

### **Each Witness Is a Minister; One Not Preaching Is Not One of Jehovah's Witnesses**

**Acts 2:46, 47** "Day after day they were in constant attendance at the temple with one accord, . . . praising God and finding acceptance with all the people."

**Acts 5:42** "And every day in the temple and from house to house they continued without letup teaching and declaring the good news about the Christ, Jesus."

**1 Pet. 2:21** "In fact, to this course you were called, because even Christ suffered for you, leaving you a model for you to follow his steps closely."

### **Each Anointed Witness Is an Ambassador of God's Kingdom**

**2 Cor. 5:20** "We are therefore ambassadors substituting for Christ, as though God were making entreaty through us. As substitutes for Christ we beg: 'Become reconciled to God.'"

**Eph. 6:19, 20** "The good news, for which I am acting as an ambassador in chains, that I may speak in connection with it with boldness as I ought to speak."

### **National, Racial, Social, Lingual Status No Divisive Barriers**

**Rev. 7:9** "I saw, and, look! a great crowd, which no man was able to number, out of all nations and tribes and peoples and tongues, standing before the throne and before the Lamb."

**Gal. 3:28** "There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor freeman, there is neither male nor female; for you are all one in union with Christ Jesus."

### **Love for God and Preaching the Kingdom Message the Unifying Tie**

**Mark 12:30, 31** "'You must love Jehovah your God with your whole heart and with your whole soul and with your whole mind and with your whole strength.' . . . 'You must love your neighbor as yourself.'"

**Matt. 6:33** "Keep on, then, seeking first the kingdom and his righteousness, and all these other things will be added to you."

**Luke 18:29, 30** "Truly I say to you, There is no one who has left house or wife or brothers or parents or children for the sake of the kingdom of God that is not certain to get many times more in this period of time and in the coming system of things everlasting life."

**John 13:35** "By this all will know that you are my disciples, if you have love among yourselves."

### **Their Preaching Results in Salvation to Themselves and Others**

**1 Tim. 4:16** "Pay constant attention to yourself and to your teaching. Stay by these things, for by doing this you will save both yourself and those who listen to you."

**Prov. 14:25** "A true witness delivereth souls."

**Dan. 12:3** "And they that are wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmament; and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars for ever and ever."

### **Many More to Join with Jehovah's Witnesses in Kingdom Proclamation**

**Zeph. 2:2, 3** "Before the decree bring forth, before the day pass as the chaff, before the fierce anger of Jehovah come upon you. . . . Seek ye Jehovah, all ye meek of the earth, that have kept his ordinances; seek righteousness, seek meekness: it may be ye will be hid in the day of Jehovah's anger."

**Isa. 60:8, 22** "Who are these that fly as a cloud, and as the doves to their windows? The little one shall become a thousand, and the small one a strong nation: I, Jehovah, will hasten it in its time."

**Zech. 2:4** "Jerusalem shall be inhabited as villages without walls, by reason of the multitude of men and cattle therein."

**Isa. 2:2-4** "And it shall come to pass in the latter days, that the mountain of Jehovah's house shall be established on the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and all nations shall flow unto it. And many peoples shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of Jehovah, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of Jehovah from Jerusalem. And he will judge between the nations, and will decide concerning many peoples; and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruning-hooks; nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more."

**Zech. 8:20-23** "Thus saith Jehovah of hosts: It shall yet come to pass, that there shall come peoples, and the inhabitants of many cities; and the inhabitants of one city shall go to another, saying, Let us go speedily to entreat the favor of Jehovah, and to seek Jehovah of hosts: I will go also. Yea, many peoples and strong nations shall come to seek Jehovah of hosts in Jerusalem, and to entreat in the favor of Jehovah. Thus saith Jehovah of hosts: In those days it shall come to pass, that ten men shall take hold, out of all the languages of the nations, they shall take hold of the skirt of him that is a Jew, saying, We will go with you, for we have heard that God is with you."

**John 10:16** "I have other sheep, which are not of this fold; those also I must bring, and they will listen to my voice, and they will become one flock, one shepherd."

**Acts 2:47** "At the same time Jehovah continued to join to them daily those being saved."

**Also:** Matthew 25, illustration of sheep and goats.

## **Jehovah's Witnesses Will Defeat Persecution and Be Delivered into the New World of Righteousness**

**Rom. 8:31, 35-39** "If God is for us, who will be against us?... Who will separate us from the love of the Christ? Will tribulation or distress or persecution or hunger or nakedness or danger or sword?... To the contrary, in all these things we are coming off completely victorious through him that loved us. For I am convinced that neither death nor life nor angels nor governments nor things here nor things to come nor powers nor height nor depth nor any other creation will be able to separate us from God's love that is in Christ Jesus our Lord."

**2 Tim. 4:18** "The Lord will deliver me from every wicked work and will save me for his heavenly kingdom."

**Isa. 54:17** "No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall rise against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of Jehovah, and their righteousness which is of me, saith Jehovah."

**Prov. 18:10** "The name of Jehovah is a strong tower; the righteous runneth into it, and is safe."

**Prov. 29:25** "The fear of man bringeth a snare; but whoso putteth his trust in Jehovah shall be safe."

**Isa. 26:20** "Come, my people, enter thou into thy chambers, and shut thy doors about thee: hide thyself for a little moment, until the indignation be overpast."

### **ORGANIZATION OF JEHOVAH'S WITNESSES**

**Jehovah and Christ Their Superior Authorities and Law-makers, Judges**

**Rom. 13:1** "Let every soul be in subjection to the superior authorities, for there is no author-

ity except by God; the existing authorities stand placed in their relative positions by God."

**Isa. 33:22** "For Jehovah is our judge, Jehovah is our lawgiver, Jehovah is our king; he will save us."

**Jude 25** "To the only God our Savior through Jesus Christ our Lord, be glory, majesty, might and authority for all past eternity and now and into all eternity. Amen."

**Rom. 9:5** "God who is over all be blest forever."

**1 Tim. 1:17** "Now to the King of eternity, incorruptible, invisible, the only God, be honor and glory for ever and ever. Amen."

**1 Tim. 6:14-16** "Our Lord Jesus Christ... the King of those who rule as kings and Lord of those who rule as lords, the one alone having immortality."

**1 Pet. 2:17** "Be in fear of God, have honor for the king."

**Rev. 19:16** "And upon his outer garment, even upon his thigh, he [Christ] has a name written, King of kings and Lord of lords."

**John 5:22** "For the Father judges no one at all, but he has committed all the judging to the Son."

### **Their Constitution Is the Bible**

**Ps. 119:105** "Thy word is a lamp unto my feet, and light unto my path."

**John 8:31, 32** "If you remain in my word, you are really my disciples, and you will know the truth, and the truth will set you free."

**Isa. 8:20** "To the law and to the testimony! if they speak not according to this word, surely there is no morning for them."

**John 17:17** "Sanctify them by means of the truth; your word is truth."

### **Theocratic Organization Now Restored as in Days of the Apostles**

**Acts 3:20, 21** "That he may send forth the Christ appointed

for you, Jesus, whom heaven, indeed, must contain within itself until the times of restoration of all things of which God spoke through the mouth of his holy prophets."

**Matt. 24:31** "And he will send forth his angels with a great trumpet-sound and they will gather his chosen ones together from the four winds, from one extremity of the heavens to their other extremity."

**Isa. 60:17** "For brass I will bring gold, and for iron I will bring silver, and for wood brass, and for stones iron. I will also make thy officers peace, and thine exactors righteousness."

**Isa. 32:1** "Behold, a king shall reign in righteousness, and princes shall rule in justice."

**Eph. 4:11-13** "He gave some as apostles, . . . prophets, . . . missionaries, . . . for the building up of the body of the Christ, until we all attain to the oneness in the faith . . . to a full-grown man."

### **Anointed Remnant of Christ's Body Compose "Faithful and Discreet Slave"**

**Matt. 24:45-47** "Who really is the faithful and discreet slave whom his master appointed over his domestics to give them their food at the proper time? Happy is that slave if his master on arriving finds him doing so. Truly I say to you that he will appoint him over all his belongings."

**Acts 2:17** "'And in the last days,' God says, 'I shall pour some of my spirit out upon every kind of flesh, and your sons and your daughters will prophesy and your young men will see visions and your old men will dream dreams.'"

**1 Thess. 4:16, 17** "Those who are dead in union with Christ will rise first. Afterward we the living who are surviving will to-

gether with them be caught away in clouds to meet the Lord in the air; and thus we shall always be with the Lord."

### **Receive Counsel on Organization Through Representative Members of "Slave" Class, a "Visible Governing Body"—Its Authority and Duties**

**Acts 2:42** "And they continued devoting themselves to the teaching of the apostles."

**Acts 16:4, 5** "Now as they traveled on through the cities they would deliver to those there for observance the decrees that had been decided upon by the apostles and older men who were in Jerusalem. Therefore, indeed, the congregations continued to be made firm in the faith and to increase in number from day to day."

**2 Cor. 11:28** "Besides those things of an external kind, there is what rushes in on me from day to day, the anxiety for all the congregations."

**Heb. 13:17** "Be obedient to those who are governing you and be submissive, for they are keeping watch over your souls as those who will render an account, that they may do this with joy and not with sighing, for this would be damaging to you."

**1 Tim. 6:17** "Give orders to those who are rich in the present system of things not to be arrogant, and to rest their hope, not on uncertain riches, but on God, who furnishes us all things richly for our enjoyment."

### ***Taking the lead in actual preaching work***

**Acts 6:2, 4** "So the twelve called the multitude of the disciples to them and said: 'It is not pleasing for us to abandon the word of God to distribute food to tables. . . but we shall devote ourselves to prayer and to the ministry of the word.'"

**Acts 8:25** "Therefore, when they [Peter and John] had given the witness thoroughly and had spoken the word of Jehovah they turned back to Jerusalem, and they went declaring the good news to many villages of the Samaritans."

**Acts 10:42** "Also he ordered us to preach to the people and to give a thorough witness that this is the One decreed by God to be judge of the living and the dead."

**Acts 20:20** "While I did not hold back from telling you any of the things that were profitable nor from teaching you publicly and from house to house."

**1 Cor. 9:16** "If, now, I am declaring the good news, it is no reason for me to boast, for necessity is laid upon me. Really, woe is me if I did not declare the good news!"

***Making decisions, issuing counsel on doctrinal matters***

**Acts 15:6-31** "And the apostles and the older men gathered together to see about this affair. ... For the holy spirit and we ourselves have favored adding no further burden to you, except these necessary things, to keep yourselves free from things sacrificed to idols and from blood and from things killed without draining their blood and from fornication. If you carefully keep yourselves from these things, you will prosper. Good health to you!"

**1 Corinthians, chapter 7**, and other written admonition by the apostles and their associates.

***Reproving, correcting, settling disputes on organizational matters, directing conduct of organization***

**1 Tim. 5:19-22** "Do not admit an accusation against an older man, except only on the evidence of two or three witnesses. Reprove before all onlookers persons who practice sin, that the rest

also may have fear. ... Never lay your hands hastily upon any man; neither be a sharer in the sins of others; preserve yourself pure."

**1 Pet. 2:13, 15-17** "For the Lord's sake subject yourselves to every human creation: whether to a king as being superior or to governors as being sent by him to inflict punishment on evildoers but to praise doers of good. For so the will of God is, that by doing good you may muzzle the ignorant talk of the unreasonable men. Be as free people, and yet holding your freedom, not as a blind for moral badness, but as slaves of God. Honor men of all kinds, have love for the whole association of brothers, be in fear of God, have honor for the king."

**Jas. 2:1-4** "My brothers, you are not holding the faith of our Lord Jesus Christ, our glory, with acts of favoritism, are you? For, if a man with gold rings on his fingers and in splendid clothing enters into your assembly, but a poor man in filthy clothing also enters, yet you look with favor upon the one wearing the splendid clothing and say: 'You take this seat here in an honorable place,' and you say to the poor one: 'You keep standing,' or 'Take that seat there beside my footstool,' you have class distinctions among yourselves and you have become judges rendering corrupt decisions, is that not so?"

**Gal. 2:11-14** "However, when Cephas came to Antioch, I resisted him face to face, because he stood condemned. For before the arrival of certain men from James he used to eat with people of the nations; but when they arrived, he went to withdrawing and separating himself, in fear of those of the circumcised class. The rest of the Jews also joined him in putting on this pretense, so that even Barnabas was led along with them in their pretense. But when I saw they were not walking straight according to the truth of the good news, I said

to Cephas before them all: 'If you, though you are a Jew, live as the nations do, and not as Jews do, how is it that you are compelling people of the nations to live according to Jewish practice?'"

**Heb. 13:7, 24** "Remember those who are governing you, who have spoken the word of God to you, and as you contemplate how their conduct turns out imitate their faith. Give my greetings to all those who are governing you and to all the holy ones. Those in Italy send you their greetings."

***Making appointments to special service positions in congregations***

**Acts 6:1-6** "So the twelve called the multitude of the disciples to them and said: '... brothers, search out for yourselves seven certified men from among you, full of spirit and wisdom, that we may appoint them over this necessary business; ...' And the thing spoken was pleasing to the whole multitude, and they selected Stephen, ... and Philip ... and they placed them before the apostles, and after having prayed these laid their hands upon them."

**Acts 14:23** "They [Paul and Barnabas] appointed older men to office for them in the congregation."

**Acts 15:22, 23** "Then the apostles and the older men together with the whole congregation favored sending chosen men from among them to Antioch."

***Dividing territory, making territory and missionary assignments***

**Gal. 2:7-10** "When they saw that I had entrusted to me the good news for those who are uncircumcised, just as Peter had it for those who are circumcised —... James and Cephas and John, the ones who seemed to be pillars, gave me and Barnabas the right hand of joint participation, that we should go to the

nations, but they to those who are circumcised."

**Acts 8:14** "When the apostles in Jerusalem heard that Samaria had accepted the word of God, they dispatched Peter and John to them."

***Directing defense of the good news before courts and legal bodies***

**Acts 4:19, 20** "But in reply Peter and John said to them [the Sanhedrin]: 'Whether it is righteous in the sight of God to listen to you rather than to God, make your decision. But as for us, we cannot stop speaking about the things we have seen and heard.'"

**Acts 5:29-32** "In answer [to the Sanhedrin] Peter and the other apostles said: 'We must obey God as ruler rather than men.'"

**Acts 25:7-14** "But Paul said in defense: ... 'I am standing before the judgment seat of Caesar, where I ought to be judged.... I appeal to Caesar!'"

**Acts 26:32** "Agrippa said to Festus: 'This man could have been released if he had not appealed to Caesar.'"

**Acts 28:19** "But when the Jews kept speaking against it, I was compelled to appeal to Caesar, but not as though I had anything of which to accuse my nation."

**Acts 16:35-39** "When it became day, the civil magistrates dispatched the constables to say: 'Release those men.'... But Paul said to them [the constables]: 'They flogged us publicly uncondemned, men who are Romans, and threw us into prison; and are they now throwing us out secretly? No, indeed! but let them come themselves and bring us out.'"

**Phil. 1:7, 12-14** "All of you being sharers with me in the undeserved kindness both in my prison bonds and in the defending and legally establishing of the good news. Now I desire you to know, brothers, that my af-

airs have turned out for the advancement of the good news rather than otherwise, . . . and most of the brothers in the Lord, feeling confidence by reason of my prison bonds, are more than outdoing themselves in courage to speak the word of God fearlessly."

***Directing relief work to benefit the needy among the entire Christian congregation***

**Acts 11:29, 30** "So those of the disciples determined, each of them according as anyone could afford it, to send a relief ministration to the brothers dwelling in Judea; and this they did, dispatching it to the older men by the hand of Barnabas and Saul."

**1 Cor. 16:1-4** "Concerning the collection which is for the holy ones, just as I gave orders to the congregations of Galatia, do that way also yourselves. Every first day of the week let each of you at his own house set something aside in store as he may be prospering, so that when I arrive collections will not take place then. But when I get there, whatever men you approve of by letters, these I shall send to carry your kind gift to Jerusalem."

**2 Cor. 9:5-7** "I thought it necessary to encourage the brothers to come to you in advance and to get ready in advance your bountiful gift previously promised, that thus this might be ready as a bountiful gift and not as something extorted. . . . Let each one do just as he has resolved in his heart, not grudgingly or under compulsion, for God loves a cheerful giver."

***Supervising cleanness of the organization***

**1 Cor. 5:1-5** "I for one, although absent in body but present in spirit, have certainly judged already, as if I were present, the man who has worked in such a way as this, . . . when you are gathered together, . . . hand such a man over to Satan for the de-

struction of the flesh, in order that the spirit may be saved in the day of the Lord."

**2 Cor. 2:5-11** "This rebuke given by the majority is sufficient for such a man, so that, on the contrary now, you should kindly forgive and comfort him, that somehow such a man may not be swallowed up by his being overly sad."

**3 John 9, 10** "I wrote something to the congregation, but Diotrephes, who likes to have the first place among them, does not receive anything from us with respect. That is why, if I come, I will call to remembrance his works which he goes on doing, chattering about us with wicked words."

**1 Tim. 1:20** "Hymenaeus and Alexander belong to these, and I have handed them over to Satan that they may be taught by discipline not to blaspheme."

**Rom. 16:17** "Now I exhort you, brothers, to keep your eye on those who create divisions and causes for stumbling contrary to the teaching which you have learned, and avoid them."

**2 Thess. 3:6-15** "Now we are giving you orders, brothers, in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, to withdraw from every brother walking disorderly and not according to the tradition you received from us. . . . But if anyone is not obedient to our word through this letter, keep this one marked, stop associating with him, that he may become ashamed. And yet do not be considering him as an enemy, but continue admonishing him as a brother."

**2 John 10, 11** "If anyone comes to you and does not bring this teaching, never receive him into your homes or say farewell to him. For he that says farewell to him is a sharer in his wicked works."

**Jude**, entire letter.



*Some powers, such as making service appointments, territory assignments, disfellowshipping disobedient, may be delegated to special servants*

**Titus 1:5** "For this reason I left you in Crete, that you might correct the things that were defective and might make appointments of older men in city after city, as I gave you orders."

**1 Cor. 5:13** "Remove the wicked man from among yourselves."

**1 Tim. 3:8-10** "Ministerial servants should . . . be tested as to fitness first, then let them serve as ministers."

**1 Tim. 5:19-22** "Do not admit an accusation against an older man, except only on the evidence of two or three witnesses. Reprove before all onlookers persons who practice sin, that the rest also may have fear. . . . Never lay your hands hastily upon any man; neither be a sharer in the sins of others; preserve yourself pure."

**Members of the Other Sheep May Hold Service Positions Under Governing Body**

**Isa. 61:5** "And strangers shall stand and feed your flocks, and foreigners shall be your plowmen and your vinedressers."

**Ex. 18:13-26** "Moses' father-in-law [not a Jew] said unto him, The thing that thou doest is not good. Thou wilt surely wear away, both thou, and this people that is with thee: for the thing is too heavy for thee; thou art not able to perform it thyself alone. Hearken now unto my voice, I will give thee counsel, and God be with thee: . . . thou shalt provide out of all the people able men, . . . and place such over them, to be rulers of thousands, rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens: . . . So Moses hearkened to the voice of his father-in-law, and did all that he had said."

**Num. 10:29-31** "Moses said unto Hobab, the son of Reuel the Midianite, Moses' father-in-law,

We are journeying unto the place of which Jehovah said, I will give it you: come thou with us, and we will do thee good. . . . Leave us not, I pray thee; forasmuch as thou knowest how we are to encamp in the wilderness, and thou shalt be to us instead of eyes."

**Each Congregation Has Mature Ministers as Overseers**

**Phil. 1:1** "Paul and Timothy, slaves of Christ Jesus, to all the holy ones in union with Christ Jesus who are in Philippi, along with overseers and ministerial servants."

**Acts 20:17, 28** "However, from Miletus he sent to Ephesus and called for the older men of the congregation. ' . . . Pay attention to yourselves and to all the flock, among which the holy spirit has appointed you overseers, to shepherd the congregation of God, which he purchased with the blood of his own [Son].' "

**1 Pet. 5:1-11** "To the older men among you I give this exhortation, . . . Shepherd the flock of God in your care, not under compulsion, but willingly, neither for love of dishonest gain, but eagerly, neither as lording it over those who are God's inheritance, but becoming examples to the flock."

**Traveling Ministers, "Circuit Servants," Aid Congregations**

**Rom. 15:19** "From Jerusalem and in a circuit as far as Illyricum I have thoroughly preached the good news about the Christ."

**3 John 10, 13** "That is why, if I come, I will call to remembrance his works which he goes on doing, chattering about us with wicked words. Also, not being content with these things, neither does he himself receive the brothers with respect, and those who are wanting to receive them he tries to hinder and to throw out of the congregation. I had many things to write you,

yet I do not wish to go on writing you with ink and pen."

**1 Sam. 7:16** "And he [Samuel] went from year to year in circuit to Beth-el, and Gilgal, and Mizpah; and he judged Israel in all those places."

**Gal. 2:8** "For He who gave Peter powers necessary for an apostleship to those who are circumcised gave powers also to me for those who are of the nations."

### **Each Congregation Meets Regularly for Study in Homes or Halls**

**Heb. 10:25** "Not forsaking the gathering of ourselves together, as some have the custom, but encouraging one another, and all the more so as you behold the day drawing near."

**Matt. 18:20** "For where there are two or three met together in my name, there I am in their midst."

**Acts 28:30, 31** "So he remained for an entire two years in his own hired house, and he would kindly receive all those who came in to him, preaching the kingdom of God to them."

**Rom. 16:5** "And greet the congregation that is in their house."

**Acts 20:8** "So there were quite a few lamps in the upper chamber where we were gathered together."

### **Service Meetings to Consider Preaching Methods**

**Luke 10:1-16** "Then he began to say to them: '...Do not carry a purse, nor a food-pouch, nor sandals, and do not embrace anybody in greeting along the road. Wherever you enter into a house say first: "May this house have peace." And if a friend of peace is there, your peace will rest upon him. But if no such one is there, it will turn back to you. So stay in that house, eating and drinking the things they provide, for the worker is worthy of his wages. Do not be transferring from house to house. Also, wherever you enter into a city and they receive you, eat the things

set before you, and cure the sick ones in it, and go on telling them: "The kingdom of God has come near to you." But wherever you enter into a city and they do not receive you, go out into its broad ways and say: "Even the dust that got stuck to our feet from your city we wipe off against you."'"

**Acts 4:23-31** "After being released they went to their own people and reported what things the chief priests and the older men of influence had said to them. Upon hearing this they with one accord raised their voices to God. . . . And when they had made supplication, the place in which they were assembled was shaken, and they were one and all filled with the holy spirit and were speaking the word of God with boldness."

**Acts 6:1-7** "So the twelve called the multitude of the disciples to them. . . . And the thing spoken was pleasing to the whole multitude, and they selected Stephen."

**Acts 11:1-18** "So when Peter came up to Jerusalem, those insisting on circumcision began to contend with him. . . . If, therefore, God gave the same free gift to them as he also did to us who have believed upon the Lord Jesus Christ, who was I that I should be able to hinder God?' Now when they heard these things, they acquiesced, and they glorified God, saying: 'Well, then, God has granted repentance for the purpose of life to people of the nations also.'"

**Acts 15:6-32** "And the apostles and the older men gathered together to see about this affair. . . . At that the entire multitude became silent, and they began to listen to Barnabas and Paul relate the many signs and wonders that God did through them among the nations. . . . 'We have come to a unanimous accord and have favored choosing men to send to you together with our beloved Barnabas and Paul.'"

***Service meeting programs to contain various presentations or speaking features by mature servants for upbuilding of congregation***

**1 Cor. 14:26** "What is to be done, then, brothers? When you come together, one has a psalm, another has a teaching, another has a revelation, another has a tongue, another has an interpretation. Let all things take place for upbuilding."

**Ministry Schools for Training in Public Preaching**

**1 Tim. 4:13-15** "While I am coming, continue applying yourself to public reading, to exhortation, to teaching. Do not be neglecting the gift in you. . . . Ponder over these things, be absorbed in them, that your advancement may be manifest to all persons."

**1 Sam. 19:20** "They saw the company of the prophets prophesying, and Samuel standing as head over them, the spirit of God came upon the messengers of Saul, and they also prophesied."

**2 Tim. 2:15, 24, 25** "Do your utmost to present yourself approved to God, a workman with nothing to be ashamed of, handling the word of the truth aright. . . . But a slave of the Lord does not need to fight, but needs to be tactful toward all, qualified to teach, keeping himself restrained under evil, instructing with mildness those not favorably disposed."

**No Membership Roll Kept**

**2 Tim. 2:19** "Jehovah knows those who belong to him."

**Heb. 12:23** "The congregation of the firstborn who have been enrolled in the heavens."

**Record of Work Done by Each Minister Kept so Preaching May Be Properly Directed and Individuals Aided**

**1 Cor. 14:33** "For God is a God, not of disorder, but of peace."

**1 Tim. 1:18** "This mandate I commit to you, child, Timothy, in accord with the predictions which led directly on to you, that by these you may go on waging the right warfare."

**Ezek. 9:11** "And, behold, the man clothed in linen, who had the inkhorn by his side, reported the matter, saying, I have done as thou hast commanded me."

**Acts 2:41** "Therefore those who embraced his word heartily were baptized, and on that day about three thousand souls were added."

**Acts 4:4** "Many of those who had listened to the speech believed, and the number of the men became about five thousand."

**Acts 15:36** "Now after some days Paul said to Barnabas: 'Above all things, let us return and visit the brothers in every one of the cities in which we published the word of Jehovah to see how they are.'"

**1 Pet. 5:2** "Shepherd the flock of God in your care, not under compulsion, but willingly, neither for love of dishonest gain, but eagerly."

**District, National, International Assemblies Held**

**2 Chron. 30:1, 10, 11, 13, 23, 26, 27** "And Hezekiah sent to all Israel and Judah, and wrote letters also to Ephraim and Manasseh, that they should come to the house of Jehovah at Jerusalem, to keep the passover unto Jehovah, the God of Israel. . . . So the posts passed from city to city through the country of Ephraim and Manasseh, even unto Zebulun: but they laughed them to scorn, and mocked them. Nevertheless certain men of Asher and Manasseh and of Zebulun humbled themselves, and came to Jerusalem. And there assembled at Jerusalem much people to keep the feast of unleavened bread in the second month, a very great assembly. And the whole assembly took counsel to

keep other seven days; and they kept other seven days with gladness. So there was great joy in Jerusalem; for since the time of Solomon the son of David king of Israel there was not the like in Jerusalem. Then the priests the Levites arose and blessed the

people; and their voice was heard, and their prayer came up to his holy habitation, even unto heaven."

See "Jehovah", "Jesus Christ," "Superior Authorities," "Congregation of God," "Minister of God," "Friendship with the World."

# Jesus Christ

## DEFINITION

Jesus, the Christ, a created individual, is the second greatest Personage of the universe. Jehovah God and Jesus together constitute the Superior Authorities (Rom. 13:1, NW) toward all creation. He was formed countless millenniums ago as the first and the only direct creation by his Father, Jehovah, and, because of his proved, faultless integrity, was appointed by Jehovah as his Vindicator and the Chief Agent of life toward mankind. *Christ*, one of his titles, means "The Messiah", "The Anointed." *Jesus* or *Jeshua* is the shortened form of the Hebrew *Jehoshua*, meaning "Jehovah is the Savior".

### First-born Son of God, a Spirit

**Rev. 3:14** "These are the things the Amen says, the faithful and true witness, the beginning of the creation by God."

**Col. 1:15-17** "He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation, because by means of him all other things were created in the heavens and upon the earth, the things visible and the things invisible, no matter whether they are thrones or lordships or governments or authorities. All other things have been created through him and for him. Also he is before all other things and by means of him all other things were made to exist."

**John 1:1-3** "Originally the Word was, and the Word was with God, and the Word was a god. This one was originally with God. All things came into existence through him, and apart from him not even one thing came into existence."

**Prov. 8:22, 27-30 (mar.)** "Jehovah formed me as the beginning of his way, the first of his works of old. When he established

the heavens, I was there: when he set a circle upon the face of the deep, when he made firm the skies above, when the fountains of the deep became strong, when he gave to the sea its bound, that the waters should not transgress his commandment, when he marked out the foundations of the earth; then I was by him, as a master workman."

Also: John 6:62; 8:23, 58; 17:4, 5.

### Lesser than Jehovah

**Phil. 2:5-8** "Christ Jesus, who, although he was existing in God's form, gave no consideration to a seizure [scorned a thing to be seized, *mar.*], namely, that he should be equal to God. No, but he emptied himself and took a slave's form and came to be in the likeness of men. More than that, when he found himself in fashion as a man, he humbled himself and became obedient as far as death, yes, death on a torture stake."

**1 Cor. 11:3** "But I want you to know that the head of every man

is the Christ; in turn, the head of a woman is the man; in turn, the head of the Christ is God."

**John 14:28** "I am going my way to the Father, because the Father is greater than I am."

**Luke 22:42** "Let, not my will, but yours take place."

Also "Trinity".

**Born as a Human Son of God  
October, 2 B. C**

**Gal. 4:4, 5** "But when the full limit of the time arrived, God sent forth his Son, who was produced out of a woman and who came to be under law, that he might release by purchase those under law."

**John 1:14** "So the Word became flesh and resided among us, and we had a view of his glory, a glory such as belongs to an only-begotten son from a father, and he was full of undeserved kindness and truth."

**Luke 1:30-35** "The angel said to her: 'Have no fear, Mary, for you have found favor with God; and, look! you will conceive in your womb and give birth to a son, and you are to call his name Jesus. . . . Holy spirit will come upon you, and power of the Most High will overshadow you. For that reason also what is born will be called holy, God's Son.'"

**Luke 2:10-14** "The angel said to them: 'Have no fear, for, look! I am declaring to you good news of a great joy that all the people will have, because there was born to you today a Savior, who is Christ the Lord, in David's city.' . . . 'Glory in the heights above to God, and upon earth peace among men of good-will.'"

**Became the Messiah Seed  
in Fall, A.D. 29**

**Gen. 22:15-18** "And the angel of Jehovah called unto Abraham . . . and said, By myself have I sworn, saith Jehovah, because thou hast done this thing, and hast not withheld thy son, thine only son, that in blessing I will

bless thee, . . . and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies; and in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed."

**Gal. 3:16** "Now the promises were spoken to Abraham and to his seed. It says, not, 'And to seeds,' as in the case of many such, but as in the case of one, 'And to your seed,' who is Christ."

**Dan. 9:24-27** "Seventy weeks [of years, *AV*] are decreed upon thy people. . . . Know therefore and discern, that from the going forth of the commandment to restore and to build Jerusalem unto the anointed one [Messiah, *AV*], the prince, shall be seven weeks, and threescore and two weeks."

**Luke 3:21-23** "Jesus also was baptized and, as he was praying, the heaven was opened up and the holy spirit in bodily shape like a dove came down upon him, and a voice came out of heaven: 'You are my Son, the beloved; I have approved you.' Furthermore, Jesus himself, when he commenced his work, was about thirty years old."

**Acts 10:38** "Jesus who was from Nazareth, how God anointed him with holy spirit and power, and he went through the land doing good and healing all those oppressed by the Devil, because God was with him."

**Also: Gen. 3:15; Deut. 18:18, 19; 1 Chron. 17:11-14; Acts 3:20-23; Luke 1:32, 33.**

**Died on Stake as Ransomer  
in Spring, A.D. 33**

**Matt. 20:28** "Just as the Son of man came, not to be ministered to, but to minister and to give his soul [life, *AV*] a ransom in exchange for many."

**John 1:29** "The next day he beheld Jesus coming toward him, and he said: 'See, the Lamb of God that takes away the sin of the world!'"

**Heb. 2:9** "We behold Jesus, who was made a little lower than angels, crowned with glory and honor for having suffered death,

that he by God's undeserved kindness might taste death for every man."

Also: Vss. 14-17.

**Col. 1:19-23** "God saw good for all fullness to dwell in him and through him to reconcile again to himself all other things by making peace through the blood he shed on the torture stake, no matter whether they are the things upon the earth or the things in the heavens. Indeed, you who were once alienated and enemies because your minds were on the works that were wicked, he now has again reconciled by means of that one's fleshly body through his death, in order to present you holy and unblemished and open to no accusation before him, provided, of course, that you continue in the faith."

### Resurrected Immortal on Third Day

**John 10:17, 18** "I surrender my soul, in order that I may receive it again. No man has taken it away from me, but I surrender it of my own initiative. I have authority to let go of it, and I have authority to receive it again. The commandment on this I received from my Father."

**1 Pet. 3:18, 21, 22** "Christ died once for all time concerning sins, a righteous person for unrighteous ones, that he might lead you to God, he being put to death in the flesh, but being made alive in the spirit... through the resurrection of Jesus Christ. He is at God's right hand, for he went his way to heaven, and angels and authorities and powers were made subject to him."

**Rom. 1:4** "Who with power was declared God's Son according to the spirit of holiness by means of resurrection from the dead."

**Rom. 6:4, 9** "Christ was raised up from the dead through the glory of the Father.... For we know that Christ, now that he has been raised up from the dead,

dies no more; death is master over him no more."

**Acts 13:33** "God... resurrected Jesus; even as it is written in the second Psalm, 'You are my son, I have become your Father this day.'"

Also: Vss. 34-37.

**Rev. 1:5, 17, 18** "Jesus Christ, 'the Faithful Witness,' 'The first-born from the dead,' and 'The Ruler of the kings of the earth.' ... 'I am the First and the Last, and the living one; and I became dead, but, look! I am living for ever and ever.'"

### Alive Forever Over All Creation

**Heb. 4:15** "For we have as high priest, not one who cannot sympathize with our weaknesses, but one who has been tested in all respects like ourselves, but without sin."

**Luke 1:30, 32, 33** "The angel said to her: '... This one will be great and will be called Son of the Most High, and Jehovah God will give him the throne of David his Father, and he will be king over the house of Jacob forever, and there will be no end of his kingdom.'"

**John 5:22, 23** "For the Father judges no one at all, but he has committed all the judging to the Son, in order that all may honor the Son just as they honor the Father."

**Rev. 19:11, 15** "And I saw the heaven opened, and, look! a white horse. And one seated upon it is called Faithful and True, and he judges and carries on war in righteousness. And out of his mouth there protrudes a sharp long sword, that he may smite the nations with it, and he will shepherd them with a rod of iron."

**Eph. 1:20-23** "He has operated in the case of the Christ when he raised him up from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly places, far above every government and authority and power and lordship and every

name named, not only in this system of things, but also in that to come. He also subjected all things under his feet, and made him head over all things to the congregation, which is his body, the fullness of him who fills up all things in all."

**Phil. 2:9, 10** "For this very reason also God exalted him to a superior position and kindly gave him the name that is above every other name, so that in the name of Jesus every knee should bend of those in heaven and those on earth and those under the ground, and every tongue should openly confess that Jesus Christ is Lord to the glory of God the Father."

**Isa. 9:6, 7** "The government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace. Of the increase of his government and of peace there shall be no end."

**Christ as King of New World**

**John 18:36** "Jesus answered: 'My kingdom is no part of this world. If my kingdom were part of this world, my attendants would have fought that I should

not be delivered up to the Jews. But, as it is, my kingdom is not from this source.'"

**1 Tim. 6:14, 15** "...our Lord Jesus Christ. This manifestation the happy and only Potentate will show in its own appointed times, he the King of those who rule as kings and Lord of those who rule as lords."

**Ps. 2:6, 7, Mo** "The Eternal's [Jehovah's, AS] edict let me tell: 'I, I have installed my king on Sion, on my sacred hill.'"

**Dan. 7:13, 14** "I saw in the night-visions, and, behold, there came with the clouds of heaven one like unto a son of man, and he came even to the ancient of days, and they brought him near before him. And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all the peoples, nations, and languages should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed."

**Rev. 11:15** "The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ, and he will rule as king for ever and ever."

## **Jews' Return to Palestine**

### **DEFINITION**

The Bible foretells a restoration of Israel. The *false representation* of such restoration prophecies is to the effect "that Israel [meaning natural Jews] will be restored to its own land in unbelief, and be afterward converted by the appearance of Christ on its behalf".—See the magazine *Current Opinion* for February, 1918.

*The Bible itself* shows the restoration prophecies had a literal fulfillment in a miniature way upon natural Israel in the sixth century B.C., which was to serve as an exact pattern of a final fulfillment of these same prophecies in the last days. The return of the fleshly nation of Israel to God's favor is impossible, since Jesus uttered the irrevocable divorce decree of Jehovah God against the fleshly nation A.D. 33. Hence prophecies of restoration apply in the last days in a spiritual sense and refer to the "Israel of God" or the new nation of both individual Jews and Gentiles born of the spirit

of God and therefore spiritual Israelites. The restoration of this nation is part of the composite sign pointing to the beginning of Christ's reign and the end of Satan's rule.

**First Desolation of Jerusalem and Judah in Israel Occurred in Fulfillment of Prophecy in 607 B.C.**

**Ezek. 21:25-27, 30-32** "And thou, O deadly wounded wicked one, the prince of Israel, whose day is come, in the time of the iniquity of the end, thus saith the Lord Jehovah: Remove the mitre, and take off the crown; this shall be no more the same; exalt that which is low, and abase that which is high. I will overturn, overturn, overturn it: this also shall be no more, until he come whose right it is; and I will give it him.... In the place where thou wast created, in the land of thy birth, will I judge thee. And I will pour out mine indignation upon thee; I will blow upon thee with the fire of my wrath; and I will deliver thee into the hand of brutish men, skilful to destroy. Thou shalt be for fuel to the fire; thy blood shall be in the midst of the land; thou shalt be no more remembered: for I, Jehovah, have spoken it."

**Jer. 52:4-14** "Nebuchadrezzar king of Babylon came, he and all his army, against Jerusalem, and encamped against it; and they built forts against it round about.... Then they took the king, and carried him up unto the king of Babylon.... And he put out the eyes of Zedekiah; and the king of Babylon bound him in fetters, and carried him to Babylon, and put him in prison till the day of his death.... And he burned the house of Jehovah, and the king's house; and all the houses of Jerusalem, even every great house, burned he with fire. And all the army of the Chaldeans, that were with the captain of the guard, brake down all the walls of Jerusalem round about."

**Restoration Foretold to Come in 537 B.C. After 70 Years' Desolation**

**Ezek. 34:12-15, 23, 24, 29-31** "As a shepherd seeketh out his flock in the day that he is among his sheep that are scattered abroad, so will I seek out my sheep; and I will deliver them out of all places whither they have been scattered in the cloudy and dark day. And I will bring them out from the peoples, and gather them from the countries, and will bring them into their own land; and I will feed them upon the mountains of Israel, by the water-courses, and in all the inhabited places of the country. I will feed them with good pasture; and upon the mountains of the height of Israel shall their fold be: there shall they lie down in a good fold; and on fat pasture shall they feed upon the mountains of Israel. I myself will be the shepherd of my sheep, and I will cause them to lie down, saith the Lord Jehovah. And I will set up one shepherd over them, and he shall feed them, even my servant David; he shall feed them, and he shall be their shepherd. And I, Jehovah, will be their God, and my servant David prince among them; I, Jehovah, have spoken it. And I will raise up unto them a plantation for renown, and they shall be no more consumed with famine in the land, neither bear the shame of the nations any more. And they shall know that I, Jehovah their God, am with them, and that they, the house of Israel, are my people, saith the Lord Jehovah. And ye my sheep, the sheep of my pasture, are men, and I am your God, saith the Lord Jehovah."

**Ezek. 36:4, 7-10, 22-24, 37, 38** "Therefore, ye mountains of Israel, hear the word of the Lord



**Jehovah:** thus saith the Lord Jehovah to the mountains and to the hills, to the watercourses and to the valleys, to the desolate wastes and to the cities that are forsaken, which are become a prey and derision to the residue of the nations that are round about. Therefore thus saith the Lord Jehovah: I have sworn, saying, Surely the nations that are round about you, they shall bear their shame. But ye, O mountains of Israel, ye shall shoot forth your branches, and yield your fruit to my people Israel; for they are at hand to come. For, behold, I am for you, and I will turn unto you, and ye shall be tilled and sown; and I will multiply men upon you, all the house of Israel, even all of it; and the cities shall be inhabited, and the waste places shall be builded. Therefore say unto the house of Israel, Thus saith the Lord Jehovah: I do not this for your sake, O house of Israel, but for my holy name, which ye have profaned among the nations, whither ye went. And I will sanctify my great name, which hath been profaned among the nations, which ye have profaned in the midst of them; and the nations shall know that I am Jehovah, saith the Lord Jehovah, when I shall be sanctified in you before their eyes. For I will take you from among the nations, and gather you out of all the countries, and will bring you into your own land. Thus saith the Lord Jehovah: For this, moreover, will I be inquired of by the house of Israel, to do it for them: I will increase them with men like a flock. As the flock for sacrifice, as the flock of Jerusalem in her appointed feasts, so shall the waste cities be filled with flocks of men; and they shall know that I am Jehovah."

**Jer. 29:10** "For thus saith Jehovah, after seventy years are accomplished for Babylon, I will visit you, and perform my good

word toward you, in causing you to return to this place."

**Second Desolation a Complete Dispossession of the Land  
A. D. 70, as Foretold**

**Deut. 28:63-67** "And it shall come to pass, that, as Jehovah rejoiced over you to do you good, and to multiply you, so Jehovah will rejoice over you to cause you to perish, and to destroy you; and ye shall be plucked from off the land whither thou goest in to possess it. And Jehovah will scatter thee among all peoples, from the one end of the earth even unto the other end of the earth; and there thou shalt serve other gods, which thou hast not known, thou nor thy fathers, even wood and stone. And among these nations shalt thou find no ease, and there shall be no rest for the sole of thy foot: but Jehovah will give thee there a trembling heart, and failing of eyes, and pining of soul; and thy life shall hang in doubt before thee; and thou shalt fear night and day, and shalt have no assurance of thy life. In the morning thou shalt say, Would it were even! and at even thou shalt say, Would it were morning! for the fear of thy heart which thou shalt fear, and for the sight of thine eyes which thou shalt see."

**Luke 19:43, 44** "Because the days will come upon you when your enemies will build around you a fortification with pointed stakes and will encircle you and distress you from every side, and they will dash you and your children within you to the ground, and they will not leave a stone upon a stone in you, because you did not discern the time of your being inspected."

**Luke 21:20-24** "Furthermore, when you see Jerusalem surrounded by encamped armies, then understand that the desolating of her has drawn near.... because these are days for meeting out justice that all the things

written may be fulfilled...and they will fall by the edge of the sword and be led captive into all the nations, and Jerusalem will be trampled on by the nations, until the appointed times of the nations are fulfilled."

### **Second Restoration, According to Pattern of First, Not Fulfilled in Modern Israeli Government**

**1 Cor. 10:11** "Now these things went on befalling them as examples and they were written for a warning to us upon whom the accomplished ends of the systems of things have arrived."

**Rom. 15:4** "For all the things that were written aforetime were written for our instruction, that through our endurance and through the comfort from the Scriptures we might have hope."

### ***Repossessed land not uninhabited as in 537 B. C.***

**Jer. 33:10, 12** "Thus saith Jehovah: Yet again there shall be heard in this place, whereof ye say, It is waste, without man and without beast, even in the cities of Judah, and in the streets of Jerusalem, that are desolate, without man and without inhabitant and without beast. Thus saith Jehovah of hosts: Yet again shall there be in this place, which is waste, without man and without beast, and in all the cities thereof, a habitation of shepherds causing their flocks to lie down."

**Jer. 32:43** "And fields shall be bought in this land, whereof ye say, It is desolate, without man or beast; it is given into the hand of the Chaldeans."

### ***No modern government took the lead to decree or finance rehabilitation movement***

**Ezra 6:3-5** "In the first year of Cyrus the king, Cyrus the king made a decree: Concerning the house of God at Jerusalem, let the house be builded, the place where they offer sacrifices, and let the foundations thereof be strongly laid; the height thereof three-

score cubits, and the breadth thereof threescore cubits; with three courses of great stones, and a course of new timber: and let the expenses be given out of the king's house. And also let the gold and silver vessels of the house of God, which Nebuchadnezzar took forth out of the temple which is at Jerusalem, and brought unto Babylon, be restored, and brought again unto the temple which is at Jerusalem, every one to its place; and thou shalt put them in the house of God."

**Ezra 6:8-12** "Moreover I make a decree what ye shall do to these elders of the Jews for the building of this house of God: that of the king's goods, even of the tribute beyond the River, expenses be given with all diligence unto these men, that they be not hindered. And that which they have need of, both young bullocks, and rams, and lambs, for burnt-offerings to the God of heaven; also wheat, salt, wine, and oil, according to the word of the priests that are at Jerusalem, let it be given them day by day without fail; that they may offer sacrifices of sweet savor unto the God of heaven, and pray for the life of the king, and of his sons. ... I Darius have made a decree; let it be done with all diligence."

**Ezra 7:1-6, 10-15** "Now after these things, in the reign of Artaxerxes king of Persia, Ezra the son of Seraiah... went up from Babylon. And he was a ready scribe in the law of Moses, which Jehovah, the God of Israel, had given; and the king granted him all his request, according to the hand of Jehovah his God upon him. For Ezra had set his heart to seek the law of Jehovah, and to do it, and to teach in Israel statutes and ordinances. Now this is the copy of the letter that the king Artaxerxes gave unto Ezra the priest, ... I make a decree, that all they of the people of Israel, and their priests and the

Levites, in my realm, that are minded of their own free will to go to Jerusalem, go with thee. . . . and to carry the silver and gold, which the king and his counselors have freely offered unto the God of Israel, whose habitation is in Jerusalem."

**Neh. 2:5-8** "And I said unto the king, If it please the king, and if thy servant have found favor in thy sight, that thou wouldest send me unto Judah, unto the city of my father's sepulchres, that I may build it. And the king said unto me (the queen also sitting by him), For how long shall thy journey be? and when wilt thou return? So it pleased the king to send me; and I set him a time. Moreover I said unto the king, If it please the king, let letters be given me to the governors beyond the River, that they may let me pass through till I come unto Judah; and a letter unto Asaph the keeper of the king's forest, that he may give me timber to make beams for the gates of the castle which appertaineth to the house, and for the wall of the city, and for the house that I shall enter into. And the king granted me, according to the good hand of my God upon me."

**Modern repatriation not to rebuild temple. (Old temple site now occupied by Moslem mosque)**

**Ezra 1:1-5** "Jehovah stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, so that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and put it also in writing, saying, Thus saith Cyrus king of Persia, All the kingdoms of the earth hath Jehovah, the God of heaven, given me; and he hath charged me to build him a house in Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Whosoever there is among you of all his people, his God be with him and let him go up to Jerusalem, which is in Judah, and build the house of Jehovah, the God of Is-

rael (he is God), which is in Jerusalem. . . . Then rose up the heads of fathers' houses of Judah and Benjamin, and the priests, and the Levites, even all whose spirit God had stirred to go up to build the house of Jehovah which is in Jerusalem."

**Ezra 6:14, 15** "And the elders of the Jews builded and prospered, through the prophesying of Haggai the prophet and Zechariah the son of Iddo. And they builded and finished it, according to the commandment of the God of Israel, and according to the decree of Cyrus, and Darius, and Artaxerxes king of Persia. And this house was finished on the third day of the month Adar, which was in the sixth year of the reign of Darius the king."

**True worship not restored even according to Moses' law**

**Ezra 3:1-3** "And when the seventh month was come, and the children of Israel were in the cities, the people gathered themselves together as one man to Jerusalem. . . . and builded the altar of the God of Israel, to offer burnt-offerings thereon, as it is written in the law of Moses the man of God. And they set the altar upon its base; for fear was upon them because of the peoples of the countries: and they offered burnt-offerings thereon unto Jehovah, even burnt-offerings morning and evening."

**True priesthood could not be restored today since genealogies destroyed**

**Ezra 6:18-20** "And they set the priests in their divisions, and the Levites in their courses, for the service of God, which is at Jerusalem; as it is written in the book of Moses. And the children of the captivity kept the passover upon the fourteenth day of the first month. For the priests and the Levites had purified themselves together; all of them were pure: and they killed the passover for

all the children of the captivity, and for their brethren the priests, and for themselves."

Also: Ezra 8:15-30.

### Rejection of Jesus by Nation of Natural Jews Alienated Them from God. Only a Remnant Accepted

Matt. 21:5, 9, 15, 42 "Tell the daughter of Zion, 'Look! your King is coming to you, mild-tempered, and mounted upon an ass, yes, upon a colt, the offspring of a beast of burden.' As for the crowds, those going ahead of him and those following kept crying out: 'Save, we pray, the Son of David! Blessed is he that comes in Jehovah's name! Save him, we pray, in the heights above!' When the chief priests and the scribes saw the marvelous things he did and the boys that were crying out in the temple and saying, 'Save, we pray, the Son of David!' they became indignant. . . . Jesus said to them: 'Did you never read in the Scriptures, "The stone that the builders rejected is the one that has become the chief cornerstone. From Jehovah this has come to pass and it is marvelous in our eyes"?'"

Matt. 27:22, 24, 25 "Pilate said to them: 'What, then, shall I do with Jesus the so-called "Christ"?' They all said: 'Let him be impaled!' Seeing that it did no good but, rather, an uproar was arising, Pilate took water and washed his hands before the crowd, saying: 'I am innocent of the blood of this man. You must see to it.' At that all the people said in answer: 'His blood come upon us and upon our children.'"

Rom. 11:7, 8 "The very thing Israel is earnestly seeking he did not obtain, but the ones chosen obtained it. The rest had their sensibilities blunted; just as it is written: 'God has given them a spirit of stupor, eyes so as not to see and ears so as not to hear, down to this very day.'"

### Jesus Entered God's Irrevocable Divorce Decree Against Nation

Matt. 23:37-39 "Jerusalem, Jerusalem, the killer of the prophets and stoner of those sent forth to her,—how often I wanted to gather your children together, the way a hen gathers her chicks together under her wings! But you people did not want it. Look! your house is abandoned to you. For I say to you, You will by no means see me from henceforth until you say, 'Blessed is he that comes in Jehovah's name!'"

Deut. 24:1-4 "When a man taketh a wife, and marrieth her, then it shall be, if she find no favor in his eyes, because he hath found some unseemly thing in her, that he shall write her a bill of divorcement, and give it in her hand, and send her out of his house. And when she is departed out of his house, she may go and be another man's wife. And if the latter husband hate her, and write her a bill of divorcement, and give it in her hand, and send her out of his house; or if the latter husband die, who took her to be his wife; her former husband, who sent her away, may not take her again to be his wife, after that she is defiled; for that is abomination before Jehovah: and thou shalt not cause the land to sin, which Jehovah thy God giveth thee for an inheritance."

### No Sign to Be Given Faithless Nation Except Resurrection of Jesus. (Sign Already Rejected for Centuries)

Matt. 16:1-4 "Here the Pharisees and Sadducees approached him and, to tempt him, they asked him to display to them a sign from heaven. In reply he said to them: '... You know how to interpret the appearance of the sky, but the signs of the times you cannot interpret. A wicked and adulterous generation keeps on seeking for a sign, but no sign will be given it except the sign

of Jonah.' With that he went away, leaving them behind."

**Matt. 12:38-42** "Then as an answer to him some of the scribes and Pharisees said: 'Teacher, we want to see a sign from you.' In reply he said to them: 'A wicked and adulterous generation keeps on seeking for a sign, but no sign will be given it except the sign of Jonah the prophet. For just as Jonah was in the belly of the huge fish three days and three nights, so the Son of man will be in the heart of the earth three days and three nights. Men of Nineveh will rise up in the judgment with this generation and will condemn it; because they repented at what Jonah preached, but, look! something more than Jonah is here. The queen of the south will be raised up in the judgment with this generation and will condemn it; because she came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon, but, look! something more than Solomon is here.'"

**Only Sign Jesus Promised for  
Second Restoration Period Also  
Rejected by Modern  
Natural Israel**

**Matt. 24:30** "And then the sign of the Son of man will appear in heaven, and then all the tribes of the earth will go to wailing and they will see the Son of man coming on the clouds of heaven with power and great glory."

**Rev. 12:1-5** "And a great sign was seen in heaven, a woman arrayed with the sun, and the moon was beneath her feet, and on her head was a crown of twelve stars, and she was pregnant.... And she gave birth to a son, a male, who is destined to shepherd all the nations with an iron rod. And her child was caught away to God and to his throne."

See "Sign of Last Days".

**Modern Israeli Government Has  
Made League with World Gov-  
ernments Contrary to God's  
Commandments**

**Deut. 7:2** "And when Jehovah thy God shall deliver them up before thee, and thou shalt smite them; then thou shalt utterly destroy them: thou shalt make no covenant with them, nor show mercy unto them."

**Judg. 2:1, 2** "And the angel of Jehovah... said, I made you to go up out of Egypt, and have brought you unto the land which I swore unto your fathers; and I said, I will never break my covenant with you: and ye shall make no covenant with the inhabitants of this land: ye shall break down their altars."

**Isa. 52:11** "Depart ye, depart ye, go ye out from thence, touch no unclean thing; go ye out of the midst of her; cleanse yourselves, ye that bear the vessels of Jehovah."

**Isa. 31:1** "Woe to them that go down to Egypt for help, and rely on horses, and trust in chariots because they are many, and in horsemen because they are very strong, but they look not unto the Holy One of Israel, neither seek Jehovah!"

**Isa. 30:1** "Woe to the rebellious children, saith Jehovah, that take counsel, but not of me; and that make a league, but not of my spirit, that they may add sin to sin."

**Jas. 4:4** "Adulteresses, do you not know that the friendship with the world is enmity with God? Whoever, therefore, wants to be a friend of the world is constituting himself an enemy of God."

**True Nation of Restoration Is  
"New Nation" Founded on  
New Covenant**

**Jer. 31:31-34** "Behold, the days come, saith Jehovah, that I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel, and with the house of Judah: not according to the covenant that I made with

their fathers in the day that I took them by the hand to bring them out of the land of Egypt; which my covenant they brake, although I was a husband unto them, saith Jehovah. But this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith Jehovah: I will put my law in their inward parts, and in their heart will I write it; and I will be their God, and they shall be my people. And they shall teach no more every man his neighbor, and every man his brother, saying, Know Jehovah; for they shall all know me, from the least of them unto the greatest of them, saith Jehovah: for I will forgive their iniquity, and their sin will I remember no more."

See "Congregation of God".

### **New Priesthood to Be Founded on Christ Jesus, the Greater Cyrus, Who Is the One to Build God's Temple**

**Ps. 110:4** "Jehovah hath sworn, and will not repent: Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchizedek."

**Zech. 6:12, 13** "Thus speaketh Jehovah of hosts, saying, Behold, the man whose name is the Branch: and he shall grow up out of his place; and he shall build the temple of Jehovah; even he... shall bear the glory, and shall sit and rule upon his throne; and he shall be a priest upon his throne; and the counsel of peace shall be between them both."

### **New Nation Established Pentecost, A.D. 33, When God Poured Out His Spirit upon Faithful Jewish Remnant**

**Acts 2:1-42** "Now while the day of the feast of Pentecost was in progress they were all together at the same place. . . . And tongues as if of fire became visible and were distributed to them, and one sat upon each one of them, and they all became filled with holy spirit. . . . But Peter stood up

with the eleven and raised his voice and made this utterance to them: 'Men of Judea and all you inhabitants of Jerusalem, let this be known to you and give ear to my sayings. . . . this is what was said through the prophet Joel, "And in the last days," God says, "I shall pour some of my spirit out upon every kind of flesh, and your sons and your daughters will prophesy and your young men will see visions and your old men will dream dreams; and even upon my men slaves and upon my women slaves I will pour out some of my spirit in those days, and they will prophesy." . . . Men of Israel, hear these words: Jesus the Nazarene, a man publicly shown by God to you through powerful works and wonders and signs which God did through him in your midst, . . . This Jesus God resurrected, of which fact we are all witnesses. Therefore because he was exalted to the right hand of God and received the promised holy spirit from the Father, he has poured out this which you see and hear. . . . Therefore let all the house of Israel know for a certainty that God made him both Lord and Christ, this Jesus whom you impaled. . . . Repent, and let each one of you be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ for forgiveness of your sins, and you will receive the free gift of the holy spirit. For the promise is to you and to your children and to all those afar off, just as many as Jehovah our God may call to him.'"

### **True Jews of Promise Are Those Whose Heart Is Right Toward God**

**Deut. 10:16** "Circumcise therefore the foreskin of your heart, and be no more stiffnecked."

**Deut. 30:6** "And Jehovah thy God will circumcise thy heart, and the heart of thy seed, to love Jehovah thy God with all thy

heart, and with all thy soul, that thou mayest live."

**Jer. 4:4** "Circumcise yourselves to Jehovah, and take away the foreskins of your heart, ye men of Judah and inhabitants of Jerusalem; lest my wrath go forth like fire, and burn so that none can quench it, because of the evil of your doings."

**Rom. 2:28, 29** "For he is not a Jew that is one on the outside, nor is circumcision that which is on the outside upon the flesh. But he is a Jew that is one on the inside, and his circumcision is that of the heart by spirit, and not by a written code. The praise of that one comes, not from men, but from God."

Also: **Rom. 4:3-12.**

**New Nation Is "Israel of God" Composed of Individual Jews and Gentiles, Which Is Abraham's Seed of Promise and a Spiritual Nation**

**Gal. 6:13-16** "For not even do those who are getting circumcised keep the Law themselves, but they want you to be circumcised that they may have cause for boasting in your flesh. Never may it occur that I should boast, except in the torture stake of our Lord Jesus Christ, through whom the world has been impaled to me and I to the world. For neither is circumcision anything nor is uncircumcision, but a new creation is something. And all those who will walk orderly by this rule of conduct, upon them be peace and mercy, even upon the Israel of God."

**Gal. 3:8, 9, 16, 28, 29** "Now the Scripture, seeing in advance that God would declare people of the nations righteous due to faith, declared the good news beforehand to Abraham, namely: 'By means of you all the nations will be blessed.' Consequently, those who adhere to faith are being blessed together with faithful Abraham. Now the promises were spoken to Abraham and to

his seed. It says, not, 'And to seeds,' as in the case of many such, but as in the case of one, 'And to your seed,' who is Christ. There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free-man, there is neither male nor female; for you are all one in union with Christ Jesus. Moreover, if you belong to Christ, you are really Abraham's seed, heirs with reference to a promise."

**1 Pet. 2:5** "You yourselves also as living stones are being built up a spiritual house for the purpose of a holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices acceptable to God through Jesus Christ."

See "Born Again".

**New Spiritual Nation, Advancing True Worship, Restored to God's Favor in Fulfillment of Restoration Prophecies**

**Jer. 32:37** "Behold, I will gather them out of all the countries, whither I have driven them in mine anger, and in my wrath, and in great indignation; and I will bring them again unto this place, and I will cause them to dwell safely."

**Zech. 8:20-23** "Thus saith Jehovah of hosts: It shall yet come to pass, that there shall come peoples, and the inhabitants of many cities. . . . Yea, many peoples and strong nations shall come to seek Jehovah of hosts in Jerusalem, and to entreat the favor of Jehovah. Thus saith Jehovah of hosts: In those days it shall come to pass, that ten men shall take hold, out of all the languages of the nations, they shall take hold of the skirt of him that is a Jew, saying, We will go with you, for we have heard that God is with you."

**Heb. 12:22-24** "But you have approached a mount Zion and a city of the living God, heavenly Jerusalem, and myriads of angels, in general assembly, and the congregation of the firstborn who have been enrolled in the heavens, and God the Judge of all,

and the spiritual lives of righteous ones who have been made perfect, and Jesus the mediator

of a new covenant, and the blood of sprinkling which speaks in a better way than Abel's blood."

# Judgment Days

## DEFINITION

Judgment Days are periods of time during which the Supreme Court in heaven sits to render judgment. The heavenly court is made up of the Supreme Judge, Jehovah God, and his associate Judge, Jesus Christ. (Isa. 33:22) Judgment means the act of determining what is conformable to law, or, Scripturally, God's expressed will. Judgments with God are righteous and according to his own high standards of justice. Once pronounced they are never subject to reversal. They can be either judgments of divine favor or judgments of divine condemnation. The resulting favor or condemnation may extend individually or to an entire family, community or nation, depending on the nature of the offenses. In all judgment periods, past, present and future, the death sentence always means everlasting destruction with no hope of resurrection.

### Jehovah's Judgments Are Righteous and Occasions to Rejoice

**Ps. 96:10-13** "Say among the nations, Jehovah reigneth: the world also is established that it cannot be moved: he will judge the peoples with equity. Let the heavens be glad, and let the earth rejoice. . . . He will judge the world with righteousness, and the peoples with his truth."

**Isa. 26:9** "With my soul have I desired thee in the night; yea, with my spirit within me will I seek thee earnestly: for when thy judgments are in the earth, the inhabitants of the world learn righteousness."

**Rom. 11:33** "Oh the depth of God's riches and wisdom and knowledge! How unsearchable his judgments are and past tracing out his ways are!"

**Edenic Judgment Day (c.4025 B.C.) Brought Condemnation to Adam and Eve and Disabilities to Their Offspring**

**Gen. 3:8-21** "And unto Adam he said, Because thou hast hearkened unto the voice of thy wife, and hast eaten of the tree, of

which I commanded thee, saying, Thou shalt not eat of it: cursed is the ground for thy sake; in toil shalt thou eat of it all the days of thy life; thorns also and thistles shall it bring forth to thee; and thou shalt eat the herb of the field; in the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread, till thou return unto the ground; . . . for dust thou art, and unto dust shalt thou return."

**1 Tim. 2:14** "Also Adam was not deceived, but the woman was thoroughly deceived and came to be in transgression."

**Rom. 5:12, 16** "That is why, just as through one man sin entered into the world and death through sin, and thus death spread to all men because they had all sinned— . . . For the judgment resulted in condemnation from one trespass."

**Judgment of Noah's Day (Ending 2370 B.C.) a Pattern of End of World**

**Luke 17:26, 27** "Moreover, just as it occurred in the days of Noah, so it will be also in the days of the Son of man: they



were eating, they were drinking, men were marrying, women were being given in marriage, until that day when Noah entered into the ark, and the flood arrived and destroyed them all."

**Gen. 6:5, 7, 9, 13, 18, AT** "The LORD saw that the wickedness of man on the earth was great, and that the whole bent of his thinking was never anything but evil. [Jehovah determined:] 'I will blot the men that I have created off the face of the ground, both men and animals, reptiles, and birds of the air; for I regret that I ever made them.' . . . Noah alone among his contemporaries was a pious and exceedingly good man; Noah walked with God. . . . 'I have resolved on the extermination of all mortals; for the earth is full of wrong-doing through them; I am going to exterminate them from the earth. But with you I will make a covenant; you shall enter the ark, accompanied by your sons, your wife, and your sons' wives.'"

**2 Pet. 2:5** "And he did not hold back from punishing an ancient world, but kept Noah, a preacher of righteousness, safe with seven others when he brought a deluge upon a world of ungodly people."

**Judgment Day of Sodom and Gomorrah (a.1919 B. C.) Also Foretells Finality of Judgment**

**Luke 17:28-30** "Likewise, just as it occurred in the days of Lot: they were eating, they were drinking, they were buying, they were selling, they were planting, they were building. But on the day that Lot came out of Sodom it rained fire and sulphur from heaven and destroyed them all. The same way it will be on that day when the Son of man is to be revealed."

**Gen. 19:24, 25, 29** "Then Jehovah rained upon Sodom and upon Gomorrah brimstone and fire from Jehovah out of heaven; and he overthrew those cities, and all the Plain, and all the inhabitants

of the cities, and that which grew upon the ground. And it came to pass, when God destroyed the cities of the Plain, that God remembered Abraham, and sent Lot out of the midst of the overthrow, when he overthrew the cities in which Lot dwelt."

**2 Pet. 2:6-9** "And by reducing the cities Sodom and Gomorrah to ashes he condemned them, setting a pattern for ungodly persons of things to come, and he delivered righteous Lot. . . . Jehovah knows how to deliver people of godly devotion out of trial, but to reserve unrighteous people for the day of judgment to be cut off."

**Rom. 9:29** "Also just as Isaiah had said aforetime: 'Unless Jehovah of hosts had left a seed to us, we should have become as Sodom and we should have been made just like Gomorrah.'"

**Also: Jude 7.**

**Fleshly Israel's Day of Judgment  
A. D. 29-70**

**Matt. 3:10-12** "Already the ax is lying at the root of the trees; every tree, then, that does not produce fine fruit is to be cut down and thrown into the fire. I, on the one hand, baptize you with water because of your repentance; but the one coming after me is stronger than I am, . . . and will gather his wheat into the storehouse, but the chaff he will burn up with fire that cannot be put out."

**John 4:35-38** "You say, do you not, that there are yet four months before the harvest comes? Look! I say to you: Lift up your eyes and view the fields, that they are white for harvesting. Already the reaper is receiving a reward and gathering fruit for everlasting life."

**John 9:39-41** "And Jesus said: 'For this judgment I came into this world: that those not seeing might see and those seeing might become blind. . . . If you were blind, you would have no sin. But

now you say, "We see." Your sin remains."

**Heb. 9:26** "He has manifested himself once for all time at the consummation of the systems of things to put sin away through the sacrifice of himself."

**Matt. 23:33** "Serpents, offspring of vipers, how are you to flee from the judgment of Gehenna?"

**Acts 13:45-48** "Paul and Barnabas said: 'It was necessary for the word of God to be spoken first to you. Since you are thrusting it away from you and do not judge yourselves worthy of everlasting life, look! we turn to the nations. In fact, Jehovah has laid commandment upon us in these words, "I have appointed you as a light of nations, for you to be a salvation to the most distant part of the earth."'"

### **Christ Jesus Thoroughly Qualified as Judge**

**John 5:21, 22, 26-30** "For just as the Father raises the dead up and makes them alive, so the Son also makes those alive whom he wants to. For the Father judges no one at all, but he has committed all the judging to the Son. . . . And he has given him authority to do judging, because Son of man he is. . . . I cannot do a single thing of my own initiative; just as I hear, I judge, and the judgment that I render is righteous, because I seek not my own will but the will of him that sent me."

**Acts 10:42** "Also he ordered us to preach to the people and to give a thorough witness that this is the One decreed by God to be judge of the living and the dead."

**Isa. 11:1-4** "And there shall come forth a shoot out of the stock of Jesse, and a branch out of his roots shall bear fruit. And the spirit of Jehovah shall rest upon him, . . . the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of Jehovah. And his delight shall be in the fear of Jehovah; and he shall not judge after the sight of his

eyes, neither decide after the hearing of his ears; but with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and decide with equity for the meek of the earth; and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth; and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked."

**Also: Matt. 12:18-21; John 8:16.**

### **Jesus' Death of Integrity Brought Divine Condemnation to Satan and His Old World**

**John 14:30** "I shall not speak much with you any more, for the ruler of the world is coming. And yet he has no hold on me."

**John 16:11** "Concerning judgment, because the ruler of this world has been judged."

**John 12:31-33** "Now there is a judging of this world; now the ruler of this world will be cast out. And yet I, if I am lifted up from the earth, . . . This he was really saying to signify what sort of death he was about to die."

**1 Cor. 11:32** "When we are judged, we are disciplined by Jehovah, that we may not become condemned with the world."

### **144,000 Associate Judges After 1918**

**1 Cor. 6:2** "Do you not know that the holy ones will judge the world?"

**Rev. 20:4** "And I saw thrones, and there were those who sat down on them, and power of judging was given them. . . . And they came to life and ruled as kings with the Christ for a thousand years."

### **Judgment Day for God's House, Spiritual Israel, Begins A. D. 1918**

**1 Pet. 4:17, 18** "For it is the appointed time for the judgment to start with the house of God.

Now if it starts first with us, what will the complete end be of those who are not obedient to the good news of God? 'And if the righteous man is being saved with difficulty, where will the ungodly man and the sinner make a showing?'

**2 Tim. 4:6-8** "I have fought the right fight, I have run the course to the finish, I have observed the faith. From this time on there is reserved for me the crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, will give me as a reward in that day, yet not only to me, but also to all those who have loved his manifestation."

**1 John 4:17** "This is how love has been made perfect with us, that we may have freeness of speech in the day of judgment, because, just as that one is, so are we ourselves in this world."

**Also:** Ps. 50:3-6; Mal. 3:1-6; Rom. 2:2-11; 1 Cor. 4:2-5; Rev. 11:15-19.

### **Judgment Day for the Peoples of the Nations Since 1918**

**Matt. 24:14, 21, 22** "And this good news of the kingdom will be preached in all the inhabited earth for the purpose of a witness to all the nations, and then the accomplished end will come."

**John 3:19** "Now this is the basis for judgment, that the light has come into the world."

**Luke 19:40** "I tell you, If these remained silent, the stones would cry out."

**Isa. 55:11** "So shall my word be that goeth forth out of my mouth: it shall not return unto me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please, and it shall prosper in the thing whereto I sent it."

**Zeph. 3:8, 9** "Therefore wait ye for me, saith Jehovah, until the day that I rise up to the prey; for my determination is

to gather the nations, that I may assemble the kingdoms, to pour upon them mine indignation, even all my fierce anger; for all the earth shall be devoured with the fire of my jealousy."

**Matt. 25:31, 32, 46** "When the Son of man arrives in his glory and all the angels with him, then he will sit down on his glorious throne. And all the nations will be gathered before him, and he will separate people one from another, just as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats. And these will depart into everlasting cutting-off, but the righteous ones into everlasting life."

**Also:** Ezek. 9:4-6; Joel 3:9-13; Acts 24:25.

### **Judgment of Condemnation Enforced at Armageddon, Resulting in Annihilation**

**1 Tim. 5:24** "The sins of some men are publicly manifest, leading immediately to judgment, but as for other men their sins also become manifest later."

**Matt. 12:31, 32** "On this account I say to you, Every kind of sin and blasphemy will be forgiven men, but the blasphemy against the spirit will not be forgiven. For example, whoever speaks a word against the Son of man, it will be forgiven him; but whoever speaks against the holy spirit, it will not be forgiven him, no, not in the present system of things nor in that to come."

**Num. 35:31** "Moreover ye shall take no ransom for the life of a murderer, that is guilty of death; but he shall surely be put to death."

**Ps. 145:20** "Jehovah preserveth all them that love him; but all the wicked will he destroy."

**Prov. 10:7** "The memory of the righteous is blessed; but the name of the wicked shall rot."

**Jer. 51:57** "And they shall sleep a perpetual sleep, and not wake,

saith the King, whose name is Jehovah of hosts."

Also: Rom. 2:1-3; Heb. 10:26, 27; Jas. 2:13.

### **Family or Community Condemnation Includes Children with Wicked Parents**

**Ezek. 9:5, 6** "Let not your eye spare, neither have ye pity; slay utterly the old man, the young man and the virgin, and little children and women; but come not near any man upon whom is the mark."

**Num. 16:23-33** "And Dathan and Abiram came out, and stood at the door of their tents, and their wives, and their sons, and their little ones. . . . And it came to pass, as he made an end of speaking all these words, that the ground clave asunder . . . and swallowed them up . . . and the earth closed upon them, and they perished from among the assembly."

**Josh. 7:24-26** "And Joshua, and all Israel with him, took Achan the son of Zerah, and the silver, and the mantle, and the wedge of gold, and his sons, and his daughters, and his oxen, and his asses, and his sheep, and his tent, and all that he had: and they brought them up unto the valley of Achor. And Joshua said, Why hast thou troubled us? Jehovah shall trouble thee this day. And all Israel . . . stoned them with stones."

### **Meritorious Favor of Righteous Parents Extends to Dependent Children**

**2 Sam. 21:7** "But the king spared Mephibosheth, the son of Jonathan, the son of Saul, because of Jehovah's oath that was between them, between David and Jonathan the son of Saul."

**Josh. 2:12-14** "Now therefore, I pray you, swear unto me by Jehovah, since I have dealt kindly with you, that ye also will deal kindly with my father's house, and give me a true token; and that ye will save alive my father,

and my mother, and my brethren, and my sisters, and all that they have, and will deliver our lives from death. And the men said unto her, Our life for yours, if ye utter not this our business; and it shall be, when Jehovah giveth us the land, that we will deal kindly and truly with thee."

**1 Cor. 7:14** "For the unbelieving husband is sanctified in relation to his wife, and the unbelieving wife is sanctified in relation to the brother; otherwise, your children would really be unclean, but now they are holy."

### **Parents Not Responsible for Course of Children Who Have Reached Age of Individual Accountability**

**Gen. 19:12-14** "And the men said unto Lot, Hast thou here any besides? son-in-law, and thy sons, and thy daughters, and whomsoever thou hast in the city, bring them out of the place: for we will destroy this place. . . . And Lot went out, and spake unto his sons-in-law, who married his daughters, and said, Up, get you out of this place; for Jehovah will destroy the city. But he seemed unto his sons-in-law as one that mocked."

**Ezek. 18:20** "The soul that sinneth, it shall die: the son shall not bear the iniquity of the father, neither shall the father bear the iniquity of the son; the righteousness of the righteous shall be upon him, and the wickedness of the wicked shall be upon him."

**Num. 26:9-11** "And the earth opened its mouth, and swallowed them up together with Korah, when that company died; what time the fire devoured two hundred and fifty men, and they became a sign. Notwithstanding, the sons of Korah died not."

### **Community, National, Ruler Responsibility**

**Ex. 17:8, 14, 16** "Then came Amalek, and fought with Israel

in Rephidim. And Jehovah said unto Moses, Write this for a memorial in a book, and rehearse it in the ears of Joshua: that I will utterly blot out the remembrance of Amalek from under heaven. And he said, Jehovah hath sworn: Jehovah will have war with Amalek from generation to generation."

**2 Sam. 21:1** "And there was a famine in the days of David three years, year after year; and David sought the face of Jehovah. And Jehovah said, It is for Saul, and for his bloody house, because he put to death the Gibeonites."

**2 Sam. 24:10-17** "And David's heart smote him after that he had numbered the people. And David said unto Jehovah, I have sinned greatly in that which I have done: but now, O Jehovah, put away, I beseech thee, the iniquity of thy servant; for I have done very foolishly. . . . So Jehovah sent a pestilence upon Israel from the morning even to the time appointed; and there died of the people from Dan even to Beer-sheba seventy thousand men."

**2 Chron. 21:11-15** "Because thou hast not walked in the ways of Jehoshaphat thy father, nor in the ways of Asa king of Judah, but hast walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, and hast made Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem to play the harlot, like as the house of Ahab did, and also hast slain thy brethren of thy father's house, who were better than thyself: behold, Jehovah will smite with a great plague thy people, and thy children, and thy wives, and all thy substance."

**Matt. 10:14, 15** "Wherever anyone does not take you in or listen to your words, on going out of that house or that city shake the dust off your feet. Truly I say to you, It will be more endurable for the land of Sodom and Gomorrah on Judgment Day than for that city."

**Rom. 5:18, 19** "So, then, as through one trespass the result to men of all kinds was condemnation, likewise also through one act of justification the result to men of all kinds is a declaring of them righteous for life. For just as through the disobedience of the one man many were constituted sinners, likewise also through the obedience of the one person many will be constituted righteous."

**Also: Josh. 7:5, 13-21; Ex. 5:1, 2; 9:13-16; 1 Sam. 8:4-22; Gen. 12:17; 20:9, 17; 26:10; Deut. 13:12-18.**

### **Jehovah Sets Judgment Periods**

**Heb. 9:27** "And as it is reserved for men to die once for all time, but after this a judgment."

**Acts 17:30, 31** "True, God has overlooked the times of such ignorance, yet now he is telling mankind that they should all everywhere repent. Because he has set a day in which he purposes to judge the inhabited earth in righteousness by a man whom he has appointed, and he has furnished a guarantee to all men in that he has resurrected him from the dead."

**Ps. 72:4, 7, 8** "He will judge the poor of the people, he will save the children of the needy, and will break in pieces the oppressor. In his days shall the righteous flourish, and abundance of peace, till the moon be no more. He shall have dominion also from sea to sea, and from the river unto the ends of the earth."

### **1,000-Year Day of Test Comes After Armageddon**

**Rev. 20:1-3, 11-13** "And I saw an angel coming down out of heaven with the key of the abyss and a great chain in his hand. And he seized the dragon, the original serpent, who is the Devil and Satan, and bound him for a thousand years. And he hurled him into the abyss and shut it and sealed it over him, that he

might not mislead the nations any more until the thousand years were ended. After these things he must be let loose for a little while. And I saw a great white throne and the one seated on it. From before him the earth and the heaven fled away, and no place was found for them. And I saw the dead, the great and the small, standing before the throne, . . . and they were judged."

**2 Pet. 3:8** "However, let this one fact not be escaping your notice, beloved ones, that one day is with Jehovah as a thousand years and a thousand years as one day."

### **Comes upon Those on Earth in New World After Armageddon**

**Heb. 2:5** "For it is not to angels that he has subjected the inhabited earth to come, about which we are speaking."

**2 Tim. 4:1** "I earnestly beg you before God and Christ Jesus, who is destined to judge the living and the dead, and by his manifestation and his kingdom."

**Rev. 20:12** "And I saw the dead, the great and the small, standing before the throne, and scrolls were opened."

**John 5:28, 29** "Do not marvel at this, because the hour is coming in which all those in the memorial tombs will hear his voice and come out, those who did good things to a resurrection of life, those who practiced vile things to a resurrection of judgment."

### **Favorable Judgment Based on Right Stand on Kingdom Issue Now**

**Luke 17:29-35** "But on the day that Lot came out of Sodom it rained fire and sulphur from heaven and destroyed them all. The same way it will be on the day when the Son of man is to be revealed. . . . Remember the wife of Lot. . . . I tell you, In that night two men will be in one bed; the one will be taken along, but the other will be abandoned.

There will be two women grinding at the same mill; the one will be taken along, but the other will be abandoned."

**Matt. 25:34-40** "Then the king will say to those on his right: 'Come, you who have my Father's blessing, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the world's foundation. For I became hungry and you gave me something to eat, I got thirsty and you gave me something to drink. I was a stranger and you received me hospitably; naked, and you clothed me. I fell sick and you looked after me. I was in prison and you came to me. . . . To the extent that you did it to one of the least of these my brothers, you did it to me.'"

### **Individually Judged as to Those Works They Perform According to Requirements During That Test Day**

**Ezek. 18:20-23** "The soul that sinneth, it shall die: the son shall not bear the iniquity of the father, neither shall the father bear the iniquity of the son; the righteousness of the righteous shall be upon him, and the wickedness of the wicked shall be upon him. But if the wicked turn from all his sins that he hath committed, and keep all my statutes, and do that which is lawful and right, he shall surely live, he shall not die. None of his transgressions that he hath committed shall be remembered against him: in his righteousness that he hath done he shall live. Have I any pleasure in the death of the wicked? saith the Lord Jehovah; and not rather that he should return from his way, and live?"

**Rev. 20:12, 13** "And I saw the dead, the great and the small, standing before the throne, and scrolls were opened. But another scroll was opened; it is the scroll of life. And the dead were judged out of those things written in the scrolls according to their deeds. And the sea gave up those dead

in it, and death and Hades gave up those dead in them, and they were judged individually according to their deeds."

### **Final Test When Satan Released at End of 1,000 Years**

**Rev. 20:7-10** "Now as soon as the thousand years have been ended, Satan will be let loose out of his prison, and he will go out to mislead those nations in the four quarters of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together for the war. The number of these is as the sand of the sea. And they advanced over the breadth of the earth and encircled the camp of the holy ones and the beloved city. But fire came down out of heaven and devoured them. And the Devil who was misleading them was hurled into the lake of fire and sulphur, where both the wild beast and the false prophet already were; and they will be tormented day and night for ever and ever."

### **Faithful Given Reward of Everlasting Life, but All Others Destroyed**

**Luke 20:35, 36** "But those who have been counted worthy of

gaining that system of things and the resurrection from the dead neither marry nor are given in marriage. In fact, neither can they die any more, for they are like the angels, and they are God's children by being children of the resurrection."

**Isa. 65:20, Le** "There shall no more come thence an infant of few days, nor an old man that shall not have the full length of his days; for as a lad shall not die a hundred years old; and as a sinner shall be accursed he who (dieth) at a hundred years old."

**Rev. 20:5, 14, 15** "(The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were ended.) And death and Hades were hurled into the lake of fire. This means the second death, the lake of fire. Furthermore, whoever was not found written in the book of life was hurled into the lake of fire."

**Rom. 6:23** "For the wages sin pays is death, but the gift God gives is everlasting life by Christ Jesus our Lord."

# Kingdom

## DEFINITION

The Kingdom of God is a Sovereign-empowered theocratic government under an administration of divinely appointed Kings. Jehovah himself is the great Everlasting King. (1 Tim. 1:17; Rev. 15:3; Jer. 10:10) He has taken into association as co-regent his Son Christ Jesus. God has purposed the Kingdom as the capital or ruling part of his universal organization. It is comprised of the King Christ Jesus and 144,000 associate kings taken from among men. It is entirely heavenly, having no earthly part. All becoming members must be resurrected and given spirit bodies. At times the term "kingdom" is applied to the one (in the Scriptures, Christ) who has the rank, quality, attributes and authority of a king. The term also is used to refer to the realm over which the Kingdom government exercises control. This Kingdom began operation in full power with the enthronement of Christ in the heavens, A.D. 1914.

## The Kingdom Is the Greatest Truth Taught in the Bible

Jesus opened his preaching campaign with the announcement of the Kingdom and spoke of the Kingdom over 110 times, in the four Gospels.

**Eph. 1:8-10** "He made known to us the sacred secret of his will. It is according to his good pleasure which he purposed in himself for an administration at the full limit of the appointed times, namely, to gather all things together again in the Christ, the things in the heavens and the things on the earth."

**Phil. 2:9-11** "For this very reason also God exalted him to a superior position and kindly gave him the name that is above every other name, so that in the name of Jesus every knee should bend of those in heaven and those on earth and those under the ground, and every tongue should openly confess that Jesus Christ is Lord to the glory of God the Father."

**1 Cor. 15:24, 25** "Next, the accomplished end, when he hands over the kingdom to his God and Father, when he has destroyed all government and all authority and power. For he must rule as king until God has put all enemies under his feet."

**Isa. 9:6, 7** "For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace. Of the increase of his government and of peace there shall be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to establish it, and to uphold it with justice and with righteousness from henceforth even for ever. The zeal of Jehovah of hosts will perform this."

**Heb. 12:25-28** "See that you do not implore him not to speak. For if they did not escape who implored him not to give divine warning upon earth, much more

shall we not if we turn away from him who speaks from the heavens. At that time his voice shook the earth, but now he has promised, saying: 'Yet once more I will set not only the earth but also the heaven in commotion.' Now the expression 'Yet once more' signifies the removal of the things being shaken as things that have been made, in order that the things not being shaken may remain. Wherefore, seeing that we are to receive a kingdom which cannot be shaken, let us continue to have undeserved kindness, through which we may acceptably render God sacred service with godly fear and awe."

**Rom. 8:19** "For the eager expectation of the creation is waiting for the revealing of the sons of God."

**Matt. 24:14** "And this good news of the kingdom will be preached in all the inhabited earth for the purpose of a witness to all the nations, and then the accomplished end will come."

**Matt. 6:10, 33** "Let your kingdom come. Let your will come to pass, as in heaven, also upon earth.' . . . Keep on, then, seeking first the kingdom and his righteousness, and all these other things will be added to you."

## Foretold, Foreordained Before Foundation of New World

**Gen. 3:15** "And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed: he shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel."

**Eph. 1:4** "Just as he chose us in union with him before the world's foundation, that we should be holy and without blemish before him in love."

**Luke 22:29** "And I make a covenant with you, just as my Father has made a covenant with me, for a kingdom."

**Rom. 9:23, 24** "In order that he might make known the riches of his glory upon vessels of mercy,



which he prepared beforehand for glory, namely, us, whom he called not only from among Jews, but also from among nations."

**Foundation of New World Laid at Christ's Death, Resurrection and Ascension**

**Rev. 13:8** "The Lamb who was slaughtered from the world's foundation."

**1 Cor. 3:11** "For no man can lay any other foundation than what is laid, which is Jesus Christ."

**Heb. 9:26** "Otherwise, he would have to suffer often from the world's foundation. But now he has manifested himself once for all time at the consummation of the systems of things to put sin away through the sacrifice of himself."

**Foreshadowed in David and His Son Solomon**

**2 Sam. 7:12-16** "I will set up thy seed after thee, that shall proceed out of thy bowels, and I will establish his kingdom. He shall build a house for my name, and I will establish the throne of his kingdom for ever...but my lovingkindness shall not depart from him, as I took it from Saul, whom I put away before thee. And thy house and thy kingdom shall be made sure for ever before thee: thy throne shall be established for ever."

**1 Chron. 17:11-14** "I will set up thy seed after thee, who shall be of thy sons; and I will establish his kingdom. He shall build me a house, and I will establish his throne for ever...but I will settle him in my house and in my kingdom for ever; and his throne shall be established for ever."

**1 Chron. 22:10** "He shall build a house for my name; and he shall be my son, and I will be his father; and I will establish the throne of his kingdom over Israel for ever."

**Jesus the Natural Heir (Through His Mother), and Legal Heir (Through His Foster Father)**

**Matt. 1:2-16** "Abraham...Judah...David...Jacob was the father of Joseph the husband of Mary, who was the mother of Jesus, who is called 'Christ.'"

**Luke 3:23-34** "Jesus himself, when he commenced his work, was about thirty years old, being the son, as the opinion was, of Joseph, the son of Heli,...the son of David,...the son of Judah,...the son of Abraham."

**Comprised of Christ and 144,000 Associate Kings in Heaven—the "Seed" Organization**

**Gen. 22:17, 18** "In blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heavens, and as the sand which is upon the seashore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies; and in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed."

**Gal. 3:29** "Moreover, if you belong to Christ, you are really Abraham's seed, heirs with reference to a promise."

**Rev. 14:1-3** "And I saw, and look! the Lamb standing upon the mount Zion, and with him a hundred and forty-four thousand having his name and the name of his Father written on their foreheads. And I heard a sound out of heaven... And they are singing as if a new song before the throne and before the four living creatures and the persons of advanced age; and no one was able to master that song but the hundred and forty-four thousand, who have been purchased from the earth."

**Rev. 7:4-9** "And I heard the number of those who were sealed, a hundred and forty-four thousand, sealed out of every tribe of the sons of Israel:... After these things I saw, and, look! a great crowd, which no man was able to number."

**Luke 12:32** "Have no fear, little flock, because your Father has approved of giving you the kingdom."

**Isa. 66:1** "Thus saith Jehovah, Heaven is my throne, and the earth is my footstool."

### **Those Associate Kings Are the Footstep Followers of Christ, Taken from Among Men**

**Rev. 5:9, 10** "And they sing a new song, saying: 'You are worthy to take the scroll and open its seals, because you were slaughtered and with your blood you bought persons for God out of every tribe and tongue and people and nation, and you made them to be a kingdom and priests to our God, and they will rule as kings over the earth.'"

**Rev. 14:4, 5** "These are the ones that did not defile themselves with women; in fact, they are virgins. These are the ones that keep following the Lamb no matter where he goes. These were purchased from among mankind as a firstfruits to God and to the Lamb, and no falsehood was found in their mouths; they are without blemish."

**1 Pet. 1:4** "To an incorruptible and undefiled and unfading inheritance. It is reserved in the heavens for you."

**1 Pet. 2:4, 5** "Coming to him as to a living stone, rejected, it is true, by men, but chosen, precious, with God, you yourselves also as living stones are being built up a spiritual house for the purpose of a holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices acceptable to God through Jesus Christ."

**Jas. 2:5** "Listen, my beloved brothers. God chose the ones who are poor respecting the world to be rich in faith and heirs of the kingdom which he promised to those who love him, did he not?"

**2 Tim. 2:12** "If we go on enduring, we shall also rule together as kings; if we deny, he also will deny us."

**Rev. 20:4, 6** "And I saw thrones, and there were those who sat down on them, and power of judging was given them. Yes, I saw the souls of those executed with the ax for the witness they bore to Jesus and for speaking about God, and those who had worshiped neither the wild beast nor its image and who had not received the mark upon their forehead and upon their hand. And they came to life and ruled as kings with the Christ for a thousand years. Happy and holy is anyone having part in the first resurrection; over these the second death has no authority, but they will...rule as kings with him for the thousand years."

### **Is a Theocratic Government**

**Isa. 33:22** "For Jehovah is our judge, Jehovah is our lawgiver, Jehovah is our king; he will save us."

**Dan. 2:44** "And in the days of those kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom which shall never be destroyed, nor shall the sovereignty thereof be left to another people; but it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand for ever."

### **Kingdom Is the Capital or Ruling Organization Over God's Entire Universe**

**Heb. 1:6** "But when he again brings his Firstborn into the inhabited earth, he says: 'And let all God's angels worship him.'"

**Heb. 12:22-24** "But you have approached a mount Zion and a city of the living God, heavenly Jerusalem, and myriads of angels, in general assembly, and the congregation of the firstborn who have been enrolled in the heavens, and God the Judge of all, and the spiritual lives of righteous ones who have been made perfect, and Jesus the mediator of a new covenant, and the blood of sprinkling which speaks in a better way than Abel's blood."

**Phil. 2:9, 10** "For this very reason also God exalted him to a superior position and kindly gave him the name that is above every other name, so that in the name of Jesus every knee should bend of those in heaven and those on earth and those under the ground."

**Eph. 1:19-23** "It is according to the operation of the mightiness of his strength, with which he has operated in the case of the Christ when he raised him up from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly places, far above every government and authority and power and lordship and every name named, not only in this system of things, but also in that to come. He also subjected all things under his feet, and made him head over all things to the congregation, which is his body, the fullness of him who fills up all things in all."

**Col. 2:10** "And so you are possessed of a fullness by means of him, who is the head of all government and authority."

**1 Cor. 6:2, 3** "Or do you not know that the holy ones will judge the world? And if the world is to be judged by you, are you unfit to try very trivial matters? Do you not know that we shall judge angels? Why, then, not things of this life?"

**1 Pet. 3:22** "He is at God's right hand, for he went his way to heaven, and angels and authorities and powers were made subject to him."

**Will Destroy Satan and His Organization, Delivering Righteous Mankind**

**Rev. 19:19-20:3, 11** "And I saw the wild beast and the kings of the earth and their armies gathered together to wage the war with the one seated on the horse and with his army. And the wild beast was caught, and along with it the false prophet that performed in front of it the signs with which he misled those who re-

ceived the mark of the wild beast and those who render worship to its image. While still alive, they both were hurled into the fiery lake that burns with sulphur. But the rest were killed off with the long sword of the one seated on the horse and which proceeded out of his mouth. And all the birds were filled from the fleshy parts of them. And I saw an angel coming down out of heaven with the key of the abyss and a great chain in his hand. And he seized the dragon, the original serpent, who is the Devil and Satan, and bound him for a thousand years. And he hurled him into the abyss and shut it and sealed it over him. . . . And I saw a great white throne and the one seated on it. From before him the earth and the heaven fled away, and no place was found for them."

**Will Vindicate and Eternally Establish Jehovah God's Universal Sovereign Supremacy**

**Phil. 2:10, 11** "So that in the name of Jesus every knee should bend of those in heaven and those on earth and those under the ground, and every tongue should openly confess that Jesus Christ is Lord to the glory of God the Father."

**1 Chron. 29:11** "Thine, O Jehovah, is the greatness, and the power, and the glory, and the victory, and the majesty: for all that is in the heavens and in the earth is thine; thine is the kingdom, O Jehovah, and thou art exalted as head above all."

**1 Cor. 15:24-28** "Next, the accomplished end, when he hands over the kingdom to his God and Father, when he has destroyed all government and all authority and power. For he must rule as king until God has put all enemies under his feet. As the last enemy, death is to be destroyed. For God 'subjected all things under his feet'. But when he says that 'all things have been subjected', it is evident that it is

with the exception of the one who subjected all things to him. But when all things will have been subjected to him, then the Son himself will also subject himself to the one who subjected all things to him, that God may be all things to everyone."

**Matt. 6:9, 10** "You must pray, then, this way: 'Our Father in the heavens, let your name be sanctified. Let your kingdom come. Let your will come to pass, as in heaven, also upon earth.'"

**Kingdom a Real Authority, Having a Territory and Subjects, Not Merely a Spiritual State of Morality, "in One's Heart"**

**Isa. 60:12** "For that nation and kingdom that will not serve thee shall perish; yea, those nations shall be utterly wasted."

**Ps. 72:8** "He shall have dominion also from sea to sea."

**Ps. 2:8, 9** "Ask of me, and I will give thee the nations for thine inheritance, and the uttermost parts of the earth for thy possession. Thou shalt break them with a rod of iron; thou shalt dash them in pieces like a potter's vessel."

**1 Cor. 15:50** "However, this I say, brothers, that flesh and blood cannot inherit God's kingdom, neither does corruption inherit incorruption."

**Matt. 21:43, 44** "This is why I say to you, The kingdom of God will be taken from you and be given to a nation producing its fruits. Also, the person falling upon this stone will be shattered. As for anyone upon whom it falls, it will pulverize him."

**Rev. 5:10** "And you made them to be a kingdom and priests to our God, and they will rule as kings over the earth."

**Faithful Men of Old and "Great Crowd" Will Be Earthly Subjects Under the Kingdom**

**Matt. 11:11** "Truly I say to you people, Among those born of women there has not been raised up a greater than John the Bap-

tist; but a person that is a lesser one in the kingdom of the heavens is greater than he is."

**Ps. 45:16** "Instead of thy fathers shall be thy children, whom thou shalt make princes in all the earth."

**Rev. 7:9, 10** "After these things I saw, and, look! a great crowd, which no man was able to number, out of all nations and tribes and peoples and tongues, standing before the throne and before the Lamb, dressed in white robes, and there were palm branches in their hands. And they keep on crying with a loud voice, saying: 'Salvation we owe to our God, who is seated on the throne, and to the Lamb.'"

**Realm of the Kingdom, with Its Blessings, Is What All Other Sheep Enter**

**John 10:16** "And I have other sheep, which are not of this fold; those also I must bring, and they will listen to my voice, and they will become one flock, one shepherd."

**Matt. 6:10** "Let your kingdom come. Let your will come to pass, as in heaven, also upon earth."

**Matt. 25:34** "Then the king will say to those on his right: 'Come, you who have my Father's blessing, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the world's foundation.'"

**Luke 23:42, 43** "And he went on to say: 'Jesus, remember me when you get into your kingdom.' And he said to him: 'Truly I tell you today, You will be with me in Paradise.'"

**1 Ki. 4:20, 21** "Judah and Israel were many as the sand which is by the sea in multitude, eating and drinking and making merry. And Solomon ruled over all the kingdoms from the River unto the land of the Philistines, and unto the border of Egypt: they brought tribute, and served Solomon all the days of his life."

**Isa. 11:6-9** "And the wolf shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the

kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them. And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox. And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the adder's den. They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of Jehovah, as the waters cover the sea."

**Isa. 35:1, 5, 6** "The wilderness and the dry land shall be glad; and the desert shall rejoice, and blossom as the rose. Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped. Then shall the lame man leap as a hart, and the tongue of the dumb shall sing; for in the wilderness shall waters break out, and streams in the desert."

**Isa. 65:17, 19-24** "For, behold, I create new heavens and a new earth; and the former things shall not be remembered, nor come into mind. And I will rejoice in Jerusalem, and joy in my people; and there shall be heard in her no more the voice of weeping and the voice of crying. There shall be no more thence an infant of days. . . . And they shall build houses, and inhabit them; and they shall plant vineyards, and eat the fruit of them. They shall not build, and another inhabit; they shall not plant, and another eat: for as the days of a tree shall be the days of my people, and my chosen shall long enjoy the work of their hands. They shall not labor in vain, nor bring forth for calamity; for they are the seed of the blessed of Jehovah, and their offspring with them. And it shall come to pass that, before they call, I will answer; and while they are yet speaking, I will hear."

**Ps. 115:16** "The heavens are the heavens of Jehovah; but the

earth hath he given to the children of men."

**Rev. 21:3, 4** "With that I heard a loud voice from the throne say: 'Look! the tent of God is with humankind, and he will reside with them, and they will be his peoples. And God himself will be with them. And he will wipe out every tear from their eyes, and death will be no more, neither will mourning nor outcry nor pain be any more. The former things have passed away.'"

**Luke 2:14** "Glory in the heights above to God, and upon earth peace among men of good-will."

**Will Administer Blessings of Life to All Obedient Mankind. Jesus and 144,000 as Priests Have "Gift of Life"**

**John 5:26** "For just as the Father has in himself the gift of life, so he has granted to the Son to have also in himself the gift of life."

**John 6:53** "Accordingly Jesus said to them: 'Most truly I say to you, Unless you eat the flesh of the Son of man and drink his blood, you have no life in you.'"

**Peaceful Rule of Kingdom, Uplifting Man to Perfection Lasts 1,000 Years**

**Rev. 20:2, 3, 6** "And he seized the dragon, the original serpent, who is the Devil and Satan, and bound him for a thousand years. And he hurled him into the abyss and shut it and sealed it over him, that he might not mislead the nations any more until the thousand years were ended. After these things he must be let loose for a little while. Happy and holy is anyone having part in the first resurrection; over these the second death has no authority, but they will be priests of God and of the Christ, and will rule as kings with him for the thousand years."

**1 Cor. 15:24-26** "Next, the accomplished end, when he hands over the kingdom to his God and Father when he has destroyed

all government and all authority and power. For he must rule as king until God has put all enemies under his feet. As the last enemy, death is to be destroyed."

**The Kingdom Is Not Static, but Brings Unheard-of Increases of Blessings to All Eternity**

**Isa. 9:7** "Of the increase of his government and of peace there shall be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to establish it, and to uphold it with justice and with righteousness from henceforth even for ever. The zeal of Jehovah of hosts will perform this."

**1 Cor. 2:9** "Eye has not seen and ear has not heard, neither have there been conceived in the heart of man the things which God has prepared for those who love him."

**1 Ki. 10:7** "Howbeit I believed not the words, until I came, and mine eyes had seen it; and, behold, the half was not told me; thy wisdom and prosperity exceed the fame which I heard."

**Ps. 145:16** "Thou openest thy hand, and satisfiest the desire of every living thing."

**Isa. 25:6** "And in this mountain will Jehovah of hosts make unto all peoples a feast of fat things, a feast of wines on the lees, of fat things full of marrow, of wines on the lees well refined."

**Prov. 29:2 (mar.)** "When the righteous are in authority, the people rejoice."

**Kingdom Preached as Present in the Person of Jesus Christ the King-designate While He Was on Earth**

**Matt. 3:1, 2** "In those days John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea, saying: 'Repent, for the kingdom of the heavens has drawn near.'"

**Matt. 4:17** "From that time on Jesus commenced preaching and saying: 'Repent, for the kingdom of the heavens has drawn near.'"

**Luke 17:21** "Look! the kingdom of God is in your midst."

**Matt. 10:7** "As you go, preach, saying, 'The kingdom of the heavens has drawn near.'"

**Luke 10:8-11** "Also, wherever you enter into a city and they receive you, eat the things set before you, and cure the sick ones in it, and go on telling them: 'The kingdom of God has come near to you. . . keep this in mind, that the kingdom of God has come near.'"

**Message of Kingdom as Present Not Preached from Jesus' Death Until A. D. 1914**

**Acts 3:19-21** "Repent, therefore, and turn around so as to get your sins blotted out, that seasons of refreshing may come from the person of Jehovah and that he may send forth the Christ appointed for you, Jesus, whom heaven, indeed, must contain within itself until the times of restoration of all things of which God spoke through the mouth of his holy prophets of old time."

**Rev. 12:10** "And I heard a loud voice in heaven say: 'Now have come to pass the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God and the authority of his Christ, because the accuser of our brothers has been hurled down, who accuses them day and night before our God!'"

**Matt. 24:3-14** "While he was sitting upon the mount of Olives, the disciples approached him privately, saying: 'Tell us, When will these things be, and what will be the sign of your presence and of the consummation of the system of things?' And in answer Jesus said to them: '... And this good news of the kingdom will be preached in all the inhabited earth for the purpose of a witness to all the nations, and then the accomplished end will come.'"

**Christ King of Christian Congregation Since First Presence**

**Acts 15:14-18** "Symeon has related thoroughly how God for

the first time turned his attention to the nations to take out of them a people for his name. And with this the words of the Prophets agree, just as it is written, 'After these things I shall return and rebuild the royal palace of David that has fallen down, and I shall rebuild its ruins and erect it again, in order that those who remain of the men may earnestly seek Jehovah, together with people of all the nations, people who are called by my name, says Jehovah, who is doing these things which he has known from of old.'"

**Col. 1:13** "He delivered us from the authority of the darkness and transplanted us into the kingdom of the Son of his love."

**1 Pet. 2:17** "Honor men of all kinds, have love for the whole association of brothers, be in fear of God, have honor for the king."

### **Kingdom in Sovereign Power Not Established at Pentecost A.D. 33**

**Acts 2:19, 20** "And I will produce wonders in heaven above and signs on earth below, blood and fire and smoke mist; the sun will be turned into darkness and the moon into blood before the great and illustrious day of Jehovah arrives."

**1 Cor. 4:8** "You men already have your fill, do you? You are rich already, are you? You have begun ruling as kings without us, have you? And I wish indeed that you had begun ruling as kings, that we also might rule with you as kings."

**2 Thess. 2:1-3** "However, brothers, respecting the presence of our Lord Jesus Christ and our being gathered together to him, we request of you not to be quickly shaken from your reason nor to be excited either through an inspired expression or through a verbal message or through a letter as though from us, to the effect that the day of Jehovah is

here. Let no one seduce you in any manner, because it will not come unless the falling away comes first and the man of lawlessness gets revealed, the son of destruction."

### **Christ Waited to Receive the Kingdom**

**Heb. 10:12, 13** "But this man offered one sacrifice for sins perpetually and sat down at the right hand of God, from then on awaiting until his enemies should be made a stool for his feet."

**Ps. 110:1** "Jehovah saith unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool."

**Luke 19:11, 12** "While they were listening to these things he spoke in addition an illustration, because he was near Jerusalem and they were imagining that the kingdom of God was going to display itself instantly. Therefore he said: 'A certain man of noble birth traveled to a distant land to secure kingly power for himself and to return.'"

### **Became King of World at Time of His Second Presence, A.D. 1914**

**2 Tim. 4:1** "I earnestly beg you before God and Christ Jesus, who is destined to judge the living and the dead, and by his manifestation and his kingdom."

**Rev. 11:15** "And the seventh angel blew his trumpet. And loud voices occurred in heaven saying: 'The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ, and he will rule as king for ever and ever.'"

**Rev. 12:5** "And she gave birth to a son, a male, who is destined to shepherd all the nations with an iron rod. And her child was caught away to God and to his throne."

**Dan. 2:44** "And in the days of those kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom which shall never be destroyed, nor shall the sovereignty thereof be left to another people; but it shall break

in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand for ever."

**Dan. 7:14** "And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all the peoples, nations, and languages should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed."

See "Return of Christ", "Sign of Last Days."

### **Now Established in Full Power, but Permits Enemies to Exist for a While During Day of Judgment of Nations**

**Ps. 110:2** "Jehovah will send forth the rod of thy strength out of Zion: rule thou in the midst of thine enemies."

**Rev. 12:10, 12** "And I heard a loud voice in heaven say: 'Now have come to pass the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God and the authority of his Christ, because the accuser of our brothers has been hurled down, who accuses them day and night before our God! On this account be glad, you heavens and you who reside in them! Woe for the earth and for the sea, because the Devil has come down to you, having great anger, knowing he has a short period of time.'"

### **The Good News Now to Be Preached Is That of Jehovah's Established Kingdom**

**Matt. 24:14** "And this good news of the kingdom will be preached in all the inhabited earth for the purpose of a witness to all the nations, and then the accomplished end will come."

**Rev. 14:6, 7** "I saw another angel flying in midheaven, and he had everlasting good news to declare as glad tidings to those who dwell on the earth, and to every nation and tribe and tongue and people, saying in a loud voice: 'Fear God and give him glory,

because the hour of the judgment by him has arrived.'"

### **Kingdom Soon to "Come" in Destructive Fury Against Satan's Organization at Armageddon**

**Matt. 6:10** "Let your kingdom come. Let your will come to pass, as in heaven, also upon earth."

**Dan. 2:34, 35** "Thou sawest till that a stone was cut out without hands, which smote the image upon its feet that were of iron and clay, and brake them in pieces. Then was the iron, the clay, the brass, the silver, and the gold, broken in pieces together, and became like the chaff of the summer threshing-floors; and the wind carried them away, so that no place was found for them: and the stone that smote the image became a great mountain, and filled the whole earth."

### **Battle of Armageddon to Be Fought over the Kingdom Issue**

**Rev. 16:14-16** "They are, in fact, expressions inspired by demons and perform signs, and they go forth to the kings of the entire inhabited earth, to gather them together to the war of the great day of God the Almighty. ... And they gathered them together to the place that is called in Hebrew Har-Magedon."

**Matt. 24:9** "Then people will deliver you up to tribulation and will kill you, and you will be hated by all the nations on account of my name."

**Ps. 83:17, 18** "Let them be put to shame and dismayed for ever; yea, let them be confounded and perish; that they may know that thou alone, whose name is Jehovah, art the Most High over all the earth."

### **All Selected for Kingdom Must Die in Order to Enter It**

**1 Cor. 15:36-38, 50-53** "You unreasonable person! What you sow is not made alive unless first it dies; and as for what you sow,



you sow, not the body that will develop, but a bare grain, it may be, of wheat or any one of the rest; but God gives it a body just as it has pleased him, and to each of the seeds its own body. However, this I say, brothers, that flesh and blood cannot inherit God's kingdom, neither does corruption inherit incorruption. Look! I tell you a sacred secret: We shall not all fall asleep in death, but we shall all be changed, in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, during the last trumpet. For the trumpet will sound, and the dead will be raised up incorruptible, and we shall be changed. For this which is corruptible must put on incorruption, and this which is mortal must put on immortality."

### Kingdom Heirs Enter into Joint Participation in Kingdom When Resurrected to Heaven

**1 Cor. 15:40-44, 48, 49** "And there are heavenly bodies, and earthly bodies; but the glory of the heavenly bodies is one kind, and that of the earthly bodies is a different kind. The glory of the sun is one kind, and the glory of the moon is another, and the glory of the stars is another; in fact, star differs from star in glory.... As the one made of dust is, so those made of dust are also; and as the heavenly one is, so those who are heavenly are also. And just as we have borne the image of the one made of dust, we shall bear also the image of the heavenly one."

**Rev. 20:6** "Happy and holy is anyone having part in the first resurrection; over these the second death has no authority, but they will be priests of God and of the Christ, and will rule as kings with him for the thousand years."

**Col. 1:5** "Because of the hope that is being reserved for you in the heavens. This hope you heard of before by the telling of the truth of that good news."

**Phil. 3:20** "As for us, our citizenship exists in the heavens, from which place also we are eagerly waiting for a savior, the Lord Jesus Christ."

### Integrity of Those Entering the Kingdom Must Be Tested to the Limit

**Rev. 2:10** "Prove yourself faithful even with the danger of death, and I will give you the crown of life."

**Matt. 24:13** "But he that has endured to the finish is the one that will be saved."

**2 Tim. 2:12** "If we go on enduring, we shall also rule together as kings; if we deny, he also will deny us."

### Christendom Is Not God's Kingdom Through Christ

**Jer. 25:29** "Lo, I begin to work evil at the city which is called by my name."

**Ps. 2:2-6** "The kings of the earth set themselves, and the rulers take counsel together, against Jehovah, and against his anointed, saying, Let us break their bonds asunder, and cast away their cords from us. He that sitteth in the heavens will laugh: the Lord will have them in derision. Then will he speak unto them in his wrath, and vex them in his sore displeasure: yet I have set my king upon my holy hill of Zion."

**Matt. 7:21-23** "Not everyone saying to me, 'Master, Master,' will enter into the kingdom of the heavens, but the one doing the will of my Father who is in the heavens will. Many will say to me in that day: 'Master, Master, did we not prophesy in your name, and expel demons in your name, and perform many powerful works in your name?' And yet then I will confess to them: I never knew you at all. Get away from me, you workers of lawlessness."

**Luke 6:46** "Why, then, do you call me 'Master! Master!' but do not do the things I say?"

**Luke 19:12-27** "Therefore he said: 'A certain man of noble birth traveled to a distant land to secure kingly power for himself and to return.... But his citizens hated him and sent out a body of ambassadors after him, to say: "We do not want this man to become king over us." Eventually when he arrived home after having secured the kingly power, he commanded to be called to him these slaves to whom he had given the silver money, in order to ascertain what they had gained by business activity. . . . "Moreover, these enemies of mine that did not want me to become king over them bring here and slaughter them before me."'"

### **Christ Has No Vicegerent on Earth, Nor Divinely Appointed Kings**

**John 18:36** "Jesus answered: 'My kingdom is no part of this world. If my kingdom were part of this world, my attendants would have fought that I should not be delivered up to the Jews. But, as it is, my kingdom is not from this source.'"

**1 Cor. 4:8** "You men already have your fill, do you? You are rich already, are you? You have begun ruling as kings without us, have you? And I wish indeed that you had begun ruling as kings, that we also might rule with you as kings."

**Ezek. 21:26, 27** "Thus saith the Lord Jehovah: Remove the mitre, and take off the crown; this shall be no more the same; exalt that which is low, and abase that which is high. I will overturn, overturn, overturn it: this also shall be no more, until he come whose right it is; and I will give it him."

**Ps. 2:2, 9** "The kings of the earth set themselves, and the rulers take counsel together, against Jehovah, and against his anointed. . . . Thou shalt break them with a rod of iron; thou shalt dash them in pieces like a potter's vessel."

**Ps. 110:5** "The Lord at thy right hand will strike through kings in the day of his wrath."

**Rev. 12:5** "And she gave birth to a son, a male, who is destined to shepherd all the nations with an iron rod. And her child was caught away to God and to his throne."

**Ps. 24:3, 4** "Who shall ascend into the hill of Jehovah? And who shall stand in his holy place? He that hath clean hands, and a pure heart; who hath not lifted up his soul unto falsehood, and hath not sworn deceitfully."

**Isa. 34:2** "For Jehovah hath indignation against all the nations, and wrath against all their host: he hath utterly destroyed them, he hath delivered them to the slaughter."

**See** "Return of Christ", "Jehovah's Witnesses," "Sign of Last Days," "Superior Authorities," "Life."

# **Law**

## **DEFINITION**

The Law as generally used in the Bible refers to the Law covenant given by Jehovah God to the nation of Israel at the hands of Moses as mediator. For this reason it is sometimes called the Mosaic Law, although no part of the law was made or given by Moses himself. False religion claims the law was divided into two parts: (1) God's

law, a moral law, written by Him, and (2) Moses' law, a ceremonial law, written by him. It is unscripturally claimed that the ceremonial law was abolished, but not the moral law contained in the Ten Commandments. According to the Scriptures, the entire Law covenant, namely, the Ten Commandments as well as all sacrificial and ceremonial features pertaining to the law, was fulfilled by Jesus Christ and abolished by being nailed to Christ's torture stake A.D. 33. Christians are therefore not under any part of the law, including the Ten Commandments.

### **Law Given Only to Nation of Israel, Thereby Separating Them**

**Ps. 147:19, 20** "He showeth his word unto Jacob, his statutes and his ordinances unto Israel. He hath not dealt so with any nation; and as for his ordinances, they have not known them."

**Deut. 4:8** "And what great nation is there, that hath statutes and ordinances so righteous as all this law, which I set before you this day?"

**Ex. 31:16, 17** "Wherefore the children of Israel shall keep the sabbath, to observe the sabbath throughout their generations, for a perpetual covenant. It is a sign between me and the children of Israel for ever."

### **Moses Served as Mediator**

**John 1:17** "Because the law was given through Moses, the undeserved kindness and the truth came to be through Jesus Christ."

### **Law to Serve Only Until Messiah Should Come**

**Gal. 3:19, 24** "Why, then, the Law? It was added to make transgressions manifest, until the seed should arrive to whom the promise had been made, and it was transmitted through angels by the hand of a mediator. Consequently, the Law has become our tutor leading to Christ, that we might be declared righteous due to faith."

### **Jehovah Nailed Law to Jesus' Torture Stake, Putting It Out of Way**

**Col. 2:13, 14** "God made you alive together with him. He kind-

ly forgave us all our trespasses and blotted out the handwritten document against us which consisted of decrees and which was in opposition to us, and He has taken it out of the way by nailing it to the torture stake."

### **Paul Showed Law Jehovah Abolished Was God's Law (Including "Sabbath Sign") Which Had Separated Jews from Gentiles**

**Eph. 2:11-16** "Therefore keep bearing in mind that formerly you were people of the nations as to flesh; 'uncircumcision' you were called by that which is called 'circumcision' made in the flesh with hands—that you were at that particular time without Christ, alienated from the state of Israel and strangers to the covenants of the promise, and you had no hope and were without God in the world. But now in union with Christ Jesus you who were once far off have come to be near by the blood of the Christ. For he is our peace, he who made the two parties one and destroyed the wall in between that fenced them off. By means of his flesh he abolished the hatred, the Law of commandments consisting in decrees, that he might create the two peoples in union with himself into one new man and make peace, and that he might fully reconcile both peoples in one body to God through the torture stake, because he had killed off the hatred by means of himself."

## **In His Sermon on the Mount Jesus Referred to Other Parts of Law as Well as Ten Commandments, Thus Showing All One Law**

### ***Gifts for altar***

Matt. 5:23, 24 "If, then, you are bringing your gift to the altar and you there remember that your brother has something against you, leave your gift there in front of the altar, and go away; first make your peace with your brother, and then, when you have come back, offer up your gift."

Compare Deut. 16:16, 17.

### ***Divorce***

Matt. 5:31 "Moreover it was said, 'Whoever divorces his wife, let him give her a certificate of divorce.'"

Compare Deut. 24:1.

### ***False swearing***

Matt. 5:33 "Again you heard that it was said to those of ancient times, 'You must not swear without performing, but you must pay your vows to Jehovah.'"

Compare Num. 30:2.

### ***Law of retaliation***

Matt. 5:38 "You heard that it was said, 'Eye for eye and tooth for tooth.'"

Compare Ex. 21:23-25.

### ***Love of neighbor***

Matt. 5:43 "You heard that it was said: 'You must love your neighbor and hate your enemy.'"

Compare Lev. 19:18.

## **Jesus Did Not Destroy the Law but Kept It Perfectly, as Example to the Jews**

Gal. 4:4 "But when the full limit of the time arrived, God sent forth his Son, who was produced out of a woman and who came to be under law."

Lev. 18:5 "Ye shall therefore keep my statutes, and mine ordinances; which if a man do, he shall live in them."

Matt. 5:17, 19, 20 "Do not think I came to destroy the Law or the Prophets. I came, not to destroy, but to fulfill. Whoever, therefore, breaks one of these least commandments and teaches mankind to that effect, he will be called 'least' in relation to the kingdom of the heavens. As for anyone who does them and teaches them, this one will be called 'great' in relation to the kingdom of the heavens. For I say to you that if your righteousness does not abound more than that of the scribes and Pharisees, you will by no means enter into the kingdom of the heavens."

## **Jesus Demonstrated Pharisees Were Lawbreakers Through Their Traditions, Hence Would Be Excluded from Kingdom**

Matt. 15:1-3, 6 "Then there came to Jesus from Jerusalem Pharisees and scribes, saying: 'Why is it your disciples overstep the tradition of the men of former times?'... In reply he said to them: 'Why is it you also overstep the commandment of God because of your tradition?... And so you have made the word of God invalid because of your tradition.'"

Matt. 21:43, 45 "This is why I say to you, The kingdom of God will be taken from you and be given to a nation producing its fruits.' Now when the chief priests and the Pharisees had heard his illustrations they took note that he was speaking about them."

## **Jesus Fulfilled Law by Bringing in the Realities, Those Things Pictured by the Law**

Matt. 5:17, 18 "Do not think I came to destroy the Law or the Prophets. I came, not to destroy, but to fulfill; for truly I say to you that sooner would heaven and earth pass away than for the smallest letter or one particle of a letter to pass away from

the Law by any means and not all things take place."

**Col. 2:16, 17** "Therefore let no man judge you in eating and drinking or in respect of a feast day or of an observance of the new moon or of a sabbath, for those things are a shadow of the things to come, but the reality belongs to the Christ."

**Heb. 10:1, 2** "For since the Law has a shadow of the good things to come, but not the very substance of the things, men can never with the same sacrifices from year to year which they offer continually make those who approach perfect. Otherwise, would the sacrifices not have stopped being offered?"

### **Jesus Came as Perfect Sacrifice for Removal of Sin**

**Heb. 10:8-10** "After first saying, 'You did not desire nor did you approve of sacrifices and offerings and whole burnt-offerings and sin offering'—sacrifices which are offered according to the Law—then he actually says, 'Look! I am come to do your will.' He does away with what is first that he may establish what is second. By the said 'will' we have been sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all time."

### **Scriptures Show Jesus Himself Was the Reality of the Passover Lamb**

**Ex. 12:5, 21** "Your lamb shall be without blemish, a male a year old: ye shall take it from the sheep, or from the goats. Then Moses called for all the elders of Israel, and said unto them, Draw out, and take you lambs according to your families, and kill the passover."

**1 Cor. 5:7** "For, indeed, Christ our passover has been sacrificed."

**1 Pet. 1:19** "But it was with precious blood, like that of an unblemished and spotless lamb, even Christ's."

**Rev. 5:12** "The Lamb that was slaughtered is worthy to receive the power and riches and wisdom and strength and honor and glory and blessing."

### **Other Features of Law Covenant Ended to Permit Realities to Begin**

**Heb. 9:1-3, 9, 10, 24** "For its part, then, the former covenant used to have ordinances of sacred service and its holy place upon this earth. For there was constructed a first tent compartment in which were the lampstand and also the table and the display of the loaves; and it is called 'the Holy Place'. But behind the second curtain was the tent compartment called 'the Most Holy'. This very tent is an illustration for the appointed time that is now here, and in keeping with it both gifts and sacrifices are offered. . . . They were legal requirements pertaining to the flesh and were imposed until the appointed time to set things straight. For Christ entered, not into a holy place made with hands which is a copy of the reality, but into heaven itself, now to appear before the person of God for us."

### **Command to Keep the Sabbath Forever Did Not Mean Ten Commandments Would Apply for All Time to Come**

**Ex. 31:16, 17** "Wherefore the children of Israel shall keep the sabbath, to observe the sabbath throughout their generations, for a perpetual ['*ô-lam*'] covenant. It is a sign between me and the children of Israel for ever ['*l'ô-lam*']."

### **Same Hebrew Expressions Used in Connection with Law on Sacrifices**

**Ex. 40:15** "Their anointing shall be to them for an everlasting ['*ô-lam*'] priesthood throughout their generations."

**Lev. 6:18, 22** "Every male among the children of Aaron shall eat of it, as his portion for ever [*'ô-lam'*] throughout your generations, from the offerings of Jehovah made by fire: . . . And the anointed priest that shall be in his stead from among his sons shall offer it: by a statute for ever [*'ô-lam'*] it shall be wholly burnt unto Jehovah."

### **Paul Shows Priesthood and Sacrifices Definitely Ended, Hence Ten Commandments Also**

**Heb. 7:11, 12, 18, 19** "If, then, perfection were really through the Levitical priesthood, (for with it as a feature the people were given the Law,) what further need would there be for another priest to arise . . . ? For since the priesthood is being changed, there comes to be of necessity a change also of the law. Certainly, then, there occurs a setting aside of the preceding commandment on account of its weakness and ineffectiveness. For the Law made nothing perfect, but the bringing in besides of a better hope did, through which we are drawing near to God."

### **Law Covenant Replaced by New Covenant Mediated by Christ Jesus Through His Sacrifice**

**2 Cor. 3:5, 6, 12-14** "Our being adequately qualified issues from God, who has indeed adequately qualified us to be ministers of a new covenant, not of a written code, but of spirit; for the written code condemns to death, but the spirit makes alive. Therefore, as we have such a hope, we are using great freeness of speech, and not doing as when Moses would put a veil upon his face, that the sons of Israel might not gaze intently at the end of that which was to be done away with. But their mental perceptions were dulled. For to this present day the same veil remains unlifted at the reading of the old covenant, because it is done away with by means of Christ."

**Heb. 8:6, 13** "But now Jesus has obtained a more excellent public service, so that he is also the mediator of a correspondingly better covenant, which has been legally established upon better promises. In his saying 'a new covenant' he has made the former one obsolete. Now that which is made obsolete and growing old is near to vanishing away."

### **Christians Still Live by Principles Embodied in Law**

**Matt. 5:21, 22** "You heard that it was said to those of ancient times, 'You must not murder.' . . . However, I say to you that everyone who continues angry with his brother will be accountable to the court of justice; but whoever addresses his brother with an unspeakable word of contempt will be accountable to the Supreme Court; whereas whoever says, 'You despicable fool!' will be liable to the fiery Gehenna."

**Matt. 5:27, 28** "You heard that it was said, 'You must not commit adultery.' But I say to you that everyone that keeps on looking at a woman so as to have a passion for her has already committed adultery with her in his heart."

**Matt. 5:43-47** "You heard that it was said: 'You must love your neighbor and hate your enemy.' However, I say to you: Continue to love your enemies and to pray for those persecuting you. . . . For if you love those loving you, what reward do you have? are not also the tax collectors doing the same thing? And if you greet your brothers only, what extraordinary thing are you doing? Are not also the people of the nations doing the same thing?"

### **Force That Moves to Obedience Is Righteous Active Force of God; More Powerful than Sanctions of the Law**

**2 Cor. 3:15-18** "In fact, down till today whenever Moses is read,

a veil lies upon their hearts. But when there is a turning to Jehovah, the veil is taken away. Now Jehovah is the spirit; and where the spirit of Jehovah is, there is freedom. And all of us, while we with unveiled faces reflect like mirrors the glory of Jehovah, are transformed into the same image from glory to glory, exactly as done by Jehovah the spirit."

**Gal. 5:18, 22** "Furthermore, if you are being led by spirit, you are not under law. . . the fruitage of the spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, kindness, goodness, faith, mildness, self-control. Against such things there is no law."

#### **Although Christians Not Under Ten Commandments, Proper to Quote Them as Supporting Proof**

**Eph. 6:1-3** "Children, be obedient to your parents in union with the Lord, for this is righteous: 'Honor your father and mother'; which is the first command with a promise: 'That it may go well with you and you may endure a long time on the earth.'"

**Compare Deut. 5:16.**

**Rom. 13:8-10** "Do not be owing anybody a single thing, except to love one another; for he that loves his fellow man has fulfilled the law. For the law code, 'You must not commit adultery, You must not murder, You must not

steal, You must not covet,' and whatever other commandment there is, is summed up in this word, namely, 'You must love your neighbor as yourself.' Love does not work evil to one's neighbor; therefore love is the law's fulfillment."

**Compare Ex. 20:13-15, 17; Lev. 19:18.**

#### **Laws Against Idolatry Restated to Christians as a Requirement for Them**

**1 Cor. 10:14** "Therefore, my beloved ones, flee from idolatry."

**Gal. 5:19, 20** "Now the works of the flesh are manifest, and they are fornication, . . . idolatry."

**Col. 3:5** "Deaden, therefore, your body members which are upon the earth as respects . . . covetousness, which is idolatry."

**1 John 5:21** "Little children, guard yourselves from idols."

#### **Christians Not Under Law of Moses but Are Saved by Faith Through God's Undeserved Kindness**

**Rom. 6:14** "For sin must not be master over you, seeing that you are not under law but under undeserved kindness."

**Eph. 2:8, 9** "By this undeserved kindness, indeed, you have been saved through faith; and this not owing to you, it is God's gift. No, it is not owing to works, in order that no man should have grounds for boasting."

**See also "Sabbath".**

## Life

### DEFINITION

The condition that distinguishes animals and plants from inorganic objects and dead organisms. The distinguishing manifestations of life are growth through metabolism, reproduction, and the power of adaptation to environment through changes originating internally.

In the fullest Scriptural sense, as applied to intelligent persons, life is existence with the right thereto. It may be in heaven or on earth. Life is brought about by the "life principle" or "life force"

(spirit) that originates with God, activating a physical or spiritual body.

**Divine:** Life of the highest order, like that of the Divine Being, Jehovah God himself. Reserved only for Christ Jesus and his 144,000 Kingdom ruling associates.—Acts 17:29; 1 John 3:1-3.

**Immortality:** Deathlessness, that is, the life principle of the person possessing it cannot be taken away. Not dependent on any created thing.

**Incorruptibility:** Referring to the organism that cannot deteriorate, or be hurt or injured.

**Incorruptibility and immortality** are inseparably linked with the Kingdom. No others besides the Kingdom members in heaven receive these qualities of life.

**Everlasting life:** Life in a perfect organism, fleshly for humans who gain life on earth, spiritual for faithful angels who continue to live in heaven. No other creature can justly take such gift away. God through his organization protects the life of such individual for all eternity. Such a person, by his very creation, is dependent upon food, subject to God's laws governing created things.

### **Jehovah Has Immortal Life, Incorruptibility; Therefore Life Has Always Existed**

**1 Tim. 1:17** "Now to the King of eternity, incorruptible, invisible, the only God, be honor and glory for ever and ever. Amen."

**Ps. 90:2** "Before the mountains were brought forth, or ever thou hadst formed the earth and the world, even from everlasting to everlasting, thou art God."

**Jer. 10:10** "But Jehovah is the true God; he is the living God, and an everlasting King: at his wrath the earth trembleth, and the nations are not able to abide his indignation."

### **Jehovah the Source and Giver of Life**

**Ps. 36:9** "For with thee is the fountain of life: in thy light shall we see light."

**Jas. 1:17** "Every good gift and every perfect present is from above, for it comes down from the Father of the celestial lights, and with him there is not a variation of the turning of the shadow."

**Acts 17:25, 26, 29** "Neither is he attended to by human hands as if he needed anything, because

he himself gives to all persons life and breath and all things. And he made out of one man every nation of men, to dwell upon the entire surface of the earth, and he decreed the appointed seasons and the set limits of the dwelling of men. Seeing, therefore, that we are the progeny of God, we ought not to imagine that the Divine Being is like gold or silver or stone, like something sculptured by the art and the contrivance of man."

**Ps. 104:29, 30** "Thou takest away their breath, they die, and return to their dust. Thou sendest forth thy spirit, they are created."

**Job 12:9, 10** "Who knoweth not ... that the hand of Jehovah ... in whose hand is the soul of every living thing, and the breath of all mankind?"

### **Life Comes to Obedient Mankind Through Christ Jesus**

**1 John 2:2** "And he is a propitiatory sacrifice for our sins, yet not for ours only but also for the whole world's."

**John 3:16** "For God loved the world so much that he gave his only-begotten Son, in order that everyone exercising faith in him



might not be destroyed but have everlasting life."

**John 5:26** "For just as the Father has in himself the gift of life, so he has granted to the Son to have also in himself the gift of life."

**John 6:51** "I am the living bread that came down from heaven; if anyone eats of this bread he will live forever; and, for a fact, the bread that I shall give is my flesh in behalf of the life of the world."

**Rom. 6:23** "For the wages sin pays is death, but the gift God gives is everlasting life by Christ Jesus our Lord."

**John 14:6** "Jesus said to him: 'I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me.'"

### **Adam and Eve Had Conditional Right by Virtue of Their Perfection**

**Gen. 1:27-31** "And God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them. And God blessed them: and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it; and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the birds of the heavens, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth.... And God saw everything that he had made, and, behold, it was very good."

**Deut. 32:4** "The Rock, his work is perfect; for all his ways are justice: a God of faithfulness and without iniquity, just and right is he."

**Gen. 2:9, 17** "And out of the ground made Jehovah God to grow every tree that is pleasant to the sight, and good for food; the tree of life also in the midst of the garden, and the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.... but of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die."

### **This Right Forfeited Forever by Adam and Eve**

**Gen. 3:17-19** "And unto Adam he said, Because thou hast hearkened unto the voice of thy wife, and hast eaten of the tree, of which I commanded thee, saying, Thou shalt not eat of it: cursed is the ground for thy sake; in toil shalt thou eat of it all the days of thy life; thorns also and thistles shall it bring forth to thee; and thou shalt eat the herb of the field; in the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread, till thou return unto the ground; for out of it wast thou taken: for dust thou art, and unto dust shalt thou return."

**1 Tim. 2:14** "Also Adam was not deceived, but the woman was thoroughly deceived and came to be in transgression."

**Heb. 6:4-6** "For it is impossible as regards those who have once for all been enlightened and who have tasted the heavenly free gift and who have become partakers of holy spirit and who have tasted the right word of God and powers of the coming system of things, but who have fallen away, to revive them again to repentance, because they impale the Son of God afresh for themselves and expose him to public shame."

**Heb. 10:26, 27** "For if we practice sin willfully after having received the accurate knowledge of the truth, there is no longer any sacrifice for sins left, but there is a certain fearful expectation of judgment and there is a fiery jealousy that is going to consume those in opposition."

### **All Men Born Without the Right to Life**

**Psa. 51:5** "Behold, I was brought forth in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me."

**Matt. 7:18** "A good tree cannot bear bad fruit, neither can a rotten tree produce fine fruit."

**Heb. 9:27** "And as it is reserved for men to die once for all time, but after this a judgment."

### **Mankind Considered Dead by God**

**Luke 9:60** "But he said to him: 'Let the dead bury their dead, but you go away and declare abroad the kingdom of God.'"

**Eph. 2:1** "Furthermore, it is you God made alive though you were dead in your trespasses and sins."

**1 Tim. 5:6** "But the one that goes in for sensual gratification is dead though she is living."

### **God Does Not Owe Anyone Life**

**Rom. 9:14-24** "What shall we say, then? Is there injustice with God? Never may that become so! For he says to Moses: 'I will have mercy upon whomever I do have mercy, and I will show compassion to whomever I do show compassion.' So, then, it depends, not upon the one wishing nor upon the one running, but upon God, who has mercy. For the Scripture says to Pharaoh: 'For this very purpose I have let you remain, that in connection with you I may demonstrate my power and that my name may be published throughout all the earth.' So, then, upon whom he wishes he has mercy, but whom he wishes he hardens. You will therefore say to me: 'Why does he yet find fault? For who has withstood his express will?' O man, who, then, really are you to be answering back to God? Shall the thing molded say to him that molded it, 'Why did you make me this way?' What? Does not the potter have authority over the clay to make from the same lump one vessel for an honorable use, another for a dishonorable use? If, now, God, although having the will to demonstrate his wrath and to make his power known, tolerated with much longsuffering vessels of wrath made fit for

destruction, in order that he might make known the riches of his glory upon vessels of mercy, which he prepared beforehand for glory, ... what of it?"

### **The Vast Majority of Men Now Will Not Get Everlasting Life**

**Matt. 7:13, 14** "Go in through the narrow gate; because broad and spacious is the road leading off into destruction, and many are the ones going in through it; whereas narrow is the gate and cramped the road leading off into life, and few are the ones finding it."

### **Christ's Ransom Sacrifice Provides Opportunity for Life**

**Matt. 20:28** "The Son of man came, not to be ministered to, but to minister and to give his soul a ransom in exchange for many."

**1 Tim. 2:5, 6** "For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, a man Christ Jesus, who gave himself a corresponding ransom for all—this is what is to be witnessed to at its own particular times."

**1 John 2:2** "And he is the propitiatory sacrifice for our sins, yet not for ours only but also for the whole world's."

**Heb. 9:26** "Otherwise, he would have to suffer often from the world's foundation. But now he has manifested himself once for all time at the consummation of the systems of things to put sin away through the sacrifice of himself."

### **Those Accepting Christ Considered as Living**

**John 5:24** "Most truly I say to you, He that hears my word and believes him that sent me has everlasting life, and he does not come into judgment but has passed over from death to life."

**Rom. 8:6** "For the minding of the flesh means death, but the minding of the spirit means life and peace."

**Luke 20:38** "He is a God, not of the dead, but of the living, for they are all living from his standpoint."

### **Future Life or Life Right in God's Sight More Important than Present Life and Its Benefits**

**Matt. 10:28, 39** "And do not become fearful of those who kill the body but can not kill the soul; but rather be in fear of him that can destroy both soul and body in Gehenna. He that finds his soul will lose it, and he that loses his soul for my sake will find it."

**Matt. 18:8** "If, then, your hand or your foot is making you stumble, cut it off and throw it away from you; it is finer for you to enter into life maimed or lame than to be thrown with two hands or two feet into the everlasting fire."

**Matt. 6:25** "On this account I say to you: Stop being anxious about your souls as to what you will eat or what you will drink, or about your bodies as to what you will wear. Does not the soul mean more than food and the body than clothing?"

**1 Pet. 1:24** "'All flesh' is as vegetation, . . . the vegetation becomes withered, and the flower falls off."

**Ps. 144:4** "Man is like to vanity: his days are as a shadow that passeth away."

**Jas. 4:14** "Whereas you do not know what your life will be tomorrow. For you are a mist appearing for a little while and then disappearing."

**Ps. 102:11** "My days are like a shadow that declineth; and I am withered like grass."

**Ecc. 8:13** "But it shall not be well with the wicked, neither shall he prolong his days, which are as a shadow; because he feareth not before God."

**Luke 14:26** "If anyone comes to me and does not hate his father and mother and wife and children and brothers and sisters,

yes, and even his own soul, he cannot be my disciple."

### **Christ Granted Immortal Life for His Faithful Course**

**1 Tim. 6:16** "The one alone having immortality, who dwells in unapproachable light, whom not one of men has seen or can see. To him be honor and might everlasting. Amen."

**Heb. 7:15, 16** "And it is still more abundantly clear that with a similarity to Melchizedek there arises another priest, who has become such, not according to the law of a commandment depending upon the flesh, but according to the power of an indestructible life."

**Eph. 1:19-21** "It is according to the operation of the mightiness of his strength, with which he has operated in the case of the Christ when he raised him up from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly places, far above every government and authority and power and lordship and every name named, not only in this system of things, but also in that to come."

**Rom. 6:9** "For we know that Christ, now that he has been raised up from the dead, dies no more; death is master over him no more."

### **Life and Incorruptibility Brought to Light by Christ**

**2 Tim. 1:10** "Our Savior, Christ Jesus, who has abolished death but has shed light upon life and incorruption through the good news."

**Rom. 7:18-25** "For I know that in me, that is, in my flesh, there resides nothing good; for ability to wish is present with me, but ability to work out what is right is not present. For the good that I wish I do not do, but the bad that I do not wish is what I practice. . . . I behold in my members another law warring against the law of my mind and leading me captive to sin's law that is

in my members. Miserable man that I am! Who will rescue me from the body undergoing this death? Thanks to God through Jesus Christ our Lord!"

**Eph. 2:12** "You were at that particular time without Christ, alienated from the state of Israel and strangers to the covenants of the promise, and you had no hope and were without God in the world."

### **Immortal Life Given to Christ's Body Members for Faithfulness Until Death**

**Rom. 2:7** "Everlasting life to those who are seeking glory and honor and incorruptibleness by endurance in work that is good."

**Jas. 1:12** "Happy is the man that keeps on enduring trial, because on becoming approved he will receive the crown of life, which Jehovah promised to those who continue loving him."

**1 John 2:25** "Furthermore, this is the promised thing which he himself promised us, the life everlasting."

**Rev. 2:7, 10** "To him that conquers I will grant to eat of the tree of life, which is in the paradise of God. . . . Prove yourself faithful even with the danger of death, and I will give you the crown of life."

**1 John 3:2** "We do know that whenever he is made manifest we shall be like him, because we shall see him just as he is."

### **Apart from God and Christ Immortal Life Limited to 144,000**

**Persons; Only for Heavenly, Divine Persons**

**Rev. 7:4-8** "And I heard the number of those who were sealed, a hundred and forty-four thousand, sealed out of every tribe of the sons of Israel."

**Rev. 14:1-3** "And I saw, and look! the Lamb standing upon the mount Zion, and with him a hundred and forty-four thousand having his name and the name of his Father written on their foreheads. And I heard a sound

out of heaven. . . . And they are singing as if a new song . . . and no one was able to master that song but the hundred and forty-four thousand."

### **Angels Do Not Have Immortality and Incorruptibility**

**2 Pet. 2:4** "God did not hold back from punishing the angels that sinned, but, by throwing them into Tartarus, delivered them to pits of dense darkness to be reserved for judgment."

**Jude 6** "And the angels that did not keep their original position but forsook their own proper dwelling-place he has reserved with eternal bonds under dense darkness for the judgment of the great day."

**Heb. 2:14** "Therefore, since the 'young children' are sharers of blood and flesh, he also similarly partook of the same things, that through his death he might destroy the one having the means to cause death, that is, the Devil."

**Isa. 14:12, 15** "How art thou fallen from heaven, O day-star, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, that didst lay low the nations! Yet thou shalt be brought down to Sheol, to the uttermost parts of the pit."

**Ezek. 28:17-19** "Thou hast corrupted thy wisdom by reason of thy brightness: . . . thou hast profaned thy sanctuaries; therefore have I brought forth a fire from the midst of thee; it hath devoured thee, and I have turned thee to ashes upon the earth in the sight of all them that behold thee. . . . thou shalt nevermore have any being."

**1 Pet. 3:19, 20** "He went his way and preached to the spirits in prison, which had once been disobedient."

### **"Divine Nature" for Christ and 144,000 in Heaven**

**2 Pet. 1:4** "Through these things he has freely given us the precious and very grand promises, that

through these you may become sharers in divine nature, escaping from the corruption that is in the world through lust."

**1 Cor. 15:40-50** "And there are heavenly bodies, and earthly bodies; but the glory of the heavenly bodies is one kind, and that of the earthly bodies is a different kind.... So also is the resurrection of the dead. It is sown in corruption, it is raised up in incorruption. It is sown in dishonor, it is raised up in glory. It is sown in weakness, it is raised up in power. It is sown a physical body, it is raised up a spiritual body.... we shall bear also the image of the heavenly one. However, this I say, brothers, that flesh and blood cannot inherit God's kingdom, neither does corruption inherit incorruption."

### **Life in Spirit Organism for Angels**

**Heb. 2:6, 14, 16** "'What is man so that you are mindful of him, or the son of man so that you look after him?' Therefore, since the 'young children' are sharers of blood and flesh, he also similarly partook of the same things.... For he is really not assisting angels at all, but he is assisting Abraham's seed."

**Heb. 1:4, 5** "He has become better than the angels to the extent that he has inherited a name more excellent than theirs. For example, to which one of the angels did he ever say: 'You are my Son; today I have become your Father?'"

### **"Human Nature" for Those Living on Earth**

**1 Cor. 15:45-49** "'The first man Adam became a living soul.'... the first is, not that which is spiritual, but that which is physical.... The first man is out of the earth and made of dust.... As the one made of dust is, so those made of dust are also;... we have borne the image of the one made of dust."

### **Resurrection Change to Immortal Life for 144,000**

**1 Cor. 15:51, 52** "Look! I tell you a sacred secret: We shall not all fall asleep in death, but we shall all be changed, in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, during the last trumpet. For the trumpet will sound, and the dead will be raised up incorruptible, and we shall be changed."

**1 Thess. 4:16** "Those who are dead in union with Christ will rise first."

### **Some Living May Never Die**

**John 11:26** "He that exercises faith in me, even though he dies, will come to life, and everyone that is living and exercises faith in me will never die at all."

### **Resurrection Provides Opportunity for Life for Others**

**John 5:28, 29** "The hour is coming in which all those in the memorial tombs will hear his voice and come out, those who did good things to a resurrection of life, those who practiced vile things to a resurrection of judgment."

**Acts 24:15** "There is going to be a resurrection of both the righteous and the unrighteous."

### **Everlasting Life Granted to Tested Persons on Earth After the End of Christ's 1,000-Year Reign**

**Rev. 20:5, 7-12** "(The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were ended.)... Now as soon as the thousand years have been ended, Satan will be let loose out of his prison, and he will go out to mislead those nations in the four quarters of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together for the war. The number of these is as the sand of the sea.... And I saw the dead, the great and the small, standing before the throne, and scrolls were opened. But another scroll was opened; it is the scroll of life. And the dead

were judged out of those things written in the scrolls according to their deeds."

**Luke 20:35, 36** "But those who have been counted worthy of gaining that system of things and the resurrection from the dead neither marry nor are given in marriage. In fact, neither can they die any more, for they are like the angels, and they are God's children by being children of the resurrection."

### **Life Not Possible by the Law, Nor Can It Be Legislated into People**

**2 Cor. 3:6** "Who has indeed adequately qualified us to be ministers of a new covenant, not of a written code, but of spirit; for the written code condemns to death, but the spirit makes alive."

**Gal. 3:21** "If a law had been given which was able to give life, righteousness would actually have been by means of law."

### **Life for All Persons Dependent on Jehovah Forever**

**John 17:3** "This means everlasting life, their taking in knowledge of you, the only true God, and of the one whom you sent forth, Jesus Christ."

**Psa. 27:4** "One thing have I asked of Jehovah, that will I seek after: that I may dwell in the house of Jehovah all the days of my life, to behold the beauty of Jehovah, and to inquire in his temple."

### **Dedication Essential to Start on Road to Life**

**Heb. 10:7** "Then I said, 'Look! I am come (in the roll of the book it is written about me) to do your will, O God.'"

**Mark 1:9-11** "In the course of those days Jesus came from Nazareth of Galilee and was baptized in the Jordan by John. And immediately on coming up out of the water he saw the heavens being parted, and, like a dove, the

spirit coming down upon him; and a voice came out of the heavens: 'You are my Son, the beloved; I have approved you.'"

**Matt. 28:19** "Go therefore and make disciples of people of all the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the holy spirit."

### **Progress to Maturity Must Be Made**

**Heb. 6:1-3** "For this reason, now that we have left the elementary doctrine about the Christ, let us press on to maturity, not laying a foundation again, namely, repentance from dead works, and faith toward God, the teaching on baptisms and the laying on of the hands, the resurrection of the dead and everlasting judgment. And this we will do, if God indeed permits."

**1 Cor. 14:20** "Brothers, do not become young children in powers of understanding, but be babes as to evil; yet become full-grown in powers of understanding."

**Heb. 5:12-14** "For, indeed, although you ought to be teachers in view of the time, you again need someone to teach you from the beginning the first principles of the sacred pronouncements of God, and you have become such as need milk, not solid food. For everyone that partakes of milk is unacquainted with the word of righteousness, for he is a babe. But solid food belongs to mature people, to those who through use have their perceptive powers trained to distinguish both right and wrong."

**Heb. 10:38, 39** "'But my righteous one will live by reason of faith,' and, 'if he shrinks back, my soul has no pleasure in him.' Now we are not the kind that shrink back to destruction, but the kind that have faith to the preserving alive of the soul."

See "Soul", "Ransom," "Death," "Kingdom."

# Love

## DEFINITION

The quality God has implanted in us which expresses itself (1) in our complete, unbreakable attachment to him and to his theocratic organization and (2) in our unselfish deeds to other creatures and our active concern for their eternal welfare. Love is a fruitage of God's spirit.

### Jehovah God the Personification and Source of Love

**1 John 4:8, 16, 19** "God is love. . . . God is love, and he that remains in love remains in union with God and God remains in union with him. As for us, we love because he first loved us."

**2 Tim. 1:7** "For God gave us not a spirit of cowardice, but that of power and of love and of soundness of mind."

**Eph. 2:4, 5** "But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love with which he loved us, made us alive together with the Christ."

See "Jehovah—Principal Attributes".

### Loving Obedience the Ruling Principle in God's Organization

**Matt. 9:13** "Go, then, and learn what this means, 'I want mercy, and not sacrifice.'"

**Hos. 6:6** "For I desire goodness, and not sacrifice; and the knowledge of God more than burnt-offerings."

**Heb. 1:9** "You loved righteousness and hated lawlessness. That is why God, your God, anointed you with the oil of great joy more so than your partners."

**1 Sam. 15:22** "Hath Jehovah as great delight in burnt-offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of Jehovah? Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken than the fat of rams."

**Song of Solomon 2:4** "His banner over me was love."

### Love Fulfills God's Perfect Kingly Law

**Matt. 22:36-40** "'Teacher, which is the greatest commandment in the Law?' He said to him: 'You must love Jehovah your God with your whole heart and with your whole soul and with your whole mind.' This is the greatest and first commandment. The second, like it, is this: 'You must love your neighbor as yourself.' On these two commandments the whole Law hangs, and the Prophets."

**Rom. 13:8-10** "Do not be owing anybody a single thing, except to love one another; for he that loves his fellow man has fulfilled the law. For the law code, 'You must not commit adultery, You must not murder, You must not steal, You must not covet,' and whatever other commandment there is, is summed up in this word, namely, 'You must love your neighbor as yourself.' Love does not work evil to one's neighbor; therefore love is the law's fulfillment."

**Jas. 2:8** "If, now, you practice carrying out the kingly law according to the Scriptures, 'You must love your neighbor as yourself,' you are doing quite well."

### Love Brings God's Protection and Blessing

**Ps. 145:20** "Jehovah preserveth all them that love him; but all the wicked will he destroy."

**Rom. 8:28** "Now we know that God makes all his works cooper-

ate together for the good of those who love God, those who are the ones called according to his purpose."

**1 Cor. 2:9** "But just as it is written: 'Eye has not seen and ear has not heard, neither have there been conceived in the heart of man the things which God has prepared for those who love him.'"

**Jas. 1:12** "Happy is the man that keeps on enduring trial, because on becoming approved he will receive the crown of life, which Jehovah promised to those who continue loving him."

**Jas. 2:5** "Listen, my beloved brothers. God chose the ones who are poor respecting the world to be rich in faith and heirs of the kingdom which he promised to those who love him, did he not?"

### **Implanted in the Original Human Pair**

**Gen. 1:26, 27** "And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: . . . And God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them."

### **Love Is a Fruitage of God's Spirit**

**Gal. 5:22, 23** "On the other hand, the fruitage of the spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, kindness, goodness, faith, mildness, self-control."

### **Love Has to Be Cultivated**

**2 Pet. 1:5-7** "Yes, for this very reason, by your contributing in response all painstaking effort, supply to your faith virtue, to your virtue knowledge, to your knowledge self-control, to your self-control endurance, to your endurance godly devotion, to your godly devotion brotherly affection, to your brotherly affection love."

**1 Tim. 6:11** "Pursue righteousness, godly devotion, faith, love, endurance, mildness of temper."

**1 Cor. 14:1** "Pursue love."

**Col. 3:14** "But, besides all these things, clothe yourselves with

love, for it is a perfect bond of union."

**2 Tim. 2:22** "So flee from the desires incidental to youth, but pursue righteousness, faith, love, peace, along with those who call upon the Lord out of a clean heart."

**1 Pet. 4:8** "Above all things, have intense love for one another, because love covers a multitude of sins."

### **Christ the Channel Through Which God's Love Is Expressed to Us**

**Rom. 8:38, 39** "For I am convinced that neither death nor life nor angels nor governments nor things here nor things to come nor powers nor height nor depth nor any other creation will be able to separate us from God's love that is in Christ Jesus our Lord."

**Eph. 2:7** "That in the coming systems of things there might be demonstrated the surpassing riches of his undeserved kindness in his graciousness toward us in union with Christ Jesus."

**John 14:21** "In turn, he that loves me will be loved by my Father, and I will love him and will plainly show myself to him."

### **Love Expresses Itself in Action**

**John 3:16** "For God loved the world so much that he gave his only-begotten Son, in order that everyone exercising faith in him might not be destroyed but have everlasting life."

**John 14:21** "He that has my commandments and observes them, that one is he who loves me."

**1 John 5:3** "For this is what the love of God means, that we observe his commandments; and yet his commandments are not burdensome."

**2 John 6** "And this is what love means, that we go on walking according to his commandments. This is the commandment, just as you people have heard



from the beginning, that you should go on walking in it."

### Description of Love; How It Acts

**1 Cor. 13:4-7** "Love is long-suffering and obliging. Love is not jealous, it does not brag, does not get puffed up, does not behave indecently, does not look for its own interests, does not become provoked. It does not keep account of the injury. It does not rejoice over unrighteousness, but rejoices with the truth. It bears all things, believes all things, hopes all things, endures all things."

**1 Cor. 8:1** "Knowledge puffs up, but love builds up."

### Love Is Not Sentimentality; Includes Discipline, Correction

**Matt. 10:37** "He that has greater affection for father or mother than for me is not worthy of me; and he that has greater affection for son or daughter than for me is not worthy of me."

**Prov. 3:12** "For whom Jehovah loveth he reproveth; even as a father the son in whom he delighteth."

**Prov. 13:24** "He that spareth his rod hateth his son; but he that loveth him chasteneth him betimes."

**Heb. 12:6** "For whom Jehovah loves he disciplines, in fact he scourges everyone whom he receives as a son."

**Ps. 141:5** "Let the righteous smite me, it shall be a kindness; and let him reprove me, it shall be as oil upon the head; let not my head refuse it."

### Love Seeks the Welfare of All Persons, Especially God's People

**Luke 6:27** "But I say to you who are listening, Continue to love your enemies, to do good to those hating you."

**John 21:15-17** "When, now, they had breakfasted, Jesus said to Simon Peter: 'Simon son of John, do you love me more than these?' He said to him: 'Yes, Mas-

ter, you know I have affection for you.' He said to him: 'Feed my young lambs.' Again he said to him, a second time: 'Simon son of John, do you love me?' He said to him: 'Yes, Master, you know I have affection for you.' He said to him: 'Shepherd my little sheep.' He said to him the third time: 'Simon son of John, do you have affection for me?' Peter became grieved that he said to him the third time: 'Do you have affection for me?' So he said to him: 'Master, you know all things; you are aware that I have affection for you.' Jesus said to him: 'Feed my little sheep.'"

### Those Having Love Hate Unrighteousness

**Ps. 97:10** "O ye that love Jehovah, hate evil."

**Ps. 119:163** "I hate and abhor falsehood; but thy law do I love."

### To Know God Is to Love, Imitate, Obey Him

**John 17:3** "This means everlasting life, their taking in knowledge of you, the only true God, and of the one whom you sent forth, Jesus Christ."

**1 John 4:7, 8, 16** "Beloved ones, let us continue loving one another, because love is from God, and everyone who loves has been born from God and gains the knowledge of God. He that does not love has not come to know God, because God is love. And we ourselves have come to know and have believed the love God has in our case. God is love, and he that remains in love remains in union with God and God remains in union with him."

### All-essential to Gaining Eternal Life

**1 Cor. 13:1-3** "If I speak in the tongues of men and of angels but do not have love, I have become a sounding piece of brass or a clashing cymbal. And if I have the gift of prophesying and understand all the sacred secrets and all knowledge, and if I have

all the faith so as to transplant mountains, but do not have love, I am nothing. And if I give all my belongings to feed others, and if I hand over my body, that I may boast, but do not have love, I am not profited at all."

### **Love Is the Way to Overcome Fear**

1 John 4:18 "There is no fear in love, but perfect love throws fear outside, because fear exercises a restraint. Indeed, he that is under fear has not been made perfect in love."

### **Love Is the "Surpassing Way" Far Greater than Miraculous Gifts**

1 Cor. 12:31 "But keep striving after the greater gifts. And yet I show you a surpassing way."

1 Cor. 13:8, 13 "Love never fails. But whether there are gifts of prophesying, they will be done away with; whether there are tongues, they will cease; whether there is knowledge, it will be done away with. Now, however, there remain faith, hope, love, these three, but the greatest of these is love."

### **Love Is an Identification Mark of the Christian Congregation**

John 13:35 "By this all will know that you are my disciples, if you have love among yourselves."

1 John 4:20 "If anyone makes the statement 'I love God' and yet

is hating his brother, he is a liar. For he who does not love his brother, whom he has seen, cannot be loving God, whom he has not seen."

Eph. 4:16 "From him all the body, by being harmoniously joined together and being made to cooperate through every joint which gives what is needed, according to the functioning of each respective member in due measure, makes for the growth of the body for the building up of itself in love."

### **Today, in Time of Maturity of Christian Congregation, Love Is the Foremost Quality**

1 Cor. 13:8-12 "Love never fails. But whether there are gifts of prophesying, they will be done away with; whether there are tongues, they will cease; whether there is knowledge, it will be done away with. For we have partial knowledge and we prophesy partially; but when that which is complete arrives, that which is partial will be done away with. When I was a babe I used to speak as a babe, to think as a babe, to reason as a babe; but now that I have become a man, I have done away with the traits of a babe. For at present we see in hazy outline by means of a metal mirror, but then it will be face to face. At present I know partially, but then I shall know accurately even as I am accurately known."

# **Marriage**

## **DEFINITION**

Marriage is a mutual agreement (contract) of a man and a woman to live together in the relation and under the duties of husband and wife, sharing each other's lot or portion for good or bad until parted by death. Marriage imposes on the husband the general legal duty of supporting his wife and children, maintaining a home, teaching and training his children and protecting his wife and family from injury or insult. The wife owes to the husband the duty of living

with him where he decides and seeking to promote his interests and happiness. She has the duty of performing domestic service in the home and caring for her children.

# **ORIGIN**

Instituted by Jehovah upon Adam and Eve in the garden of Eden.—Gen. 1:27, 28; 2:22-24.

## **Proper for Christians to Marry**

**1 Cor. 7:9, 28, 36** "If they do not have self-control, let them marry.... If you did marry, you would commit no sin.... let him do what he wants; he does not sin. Let them marry."

**Heb. 13:4** "Let marriage be honorable among all, and the marriage bed be without defilement."

**1 Cor. 9:5** "We have authority to lead about a sister as a wife, even as the rest of the apostles and the Lord's brothers and Cephas, do we not?"

**Matt. 8:14** "On coming into Peter's house Jesus saw his mother-in-law lying down and sick with fever."

**Acts 21:8, 9** "Philip the missionary... had four daughters, virgins, that prophesied."

**Lev. 21:10, 13** "He that is the high priest... shall take a wife in her virginity."

## **Polygamy Prohibited to Christians**

**1 Tim. 3:2-4, 12** "The overseer should therefore be irreprehensible, a husband of one wife,... a man presiding over his household in a right manner, having children in subjection.... Let ministerial servants be husbands of one wife, presiding in a right manner over children and their own households."

## **Christians Marry Only Christians**

**1 Cor. 7:39** "A wife... if her husband should fall asleep in death... is free to be married to whom she wants, only in the Lord."

**Deut. 7:3, 4** "Neither shalt thou make marriages with them [heathen in Canaan]; thy daughter thou shalt not give unto his son, nor his daughter shalt thou take unto thy son. For he will turn away thy son from following me, that they may serve other gods: so will the anger of Jehovah be kindled against you."

**Judg. 14:3** "His father and his mother said unto him, Is there never a woman among the daughters of thy brethren, or among all my people, that thou goest to take a wife of the uncircumcised Philistines?"

**Gen. 26:34, 35** "Esau... took to wife [heathen women]: and they were a grief of mind unto Isaac and to Rebekah."

**2 Cor. 6:14** "Do not become unevenly yoked with unbelievers. For what partnership do righteousness and lawlessness have?"

**Also: 1 Ki. 11:1-9.**

## **Unmarried Christians Less Distracted from Kingdom Interests**

**1 Cor. 7:32-34** "The single man is anxious for the things of the Lord, how he may gain the Lord's approval. But the married man is anxious for the things of the world, how he may gain the approval of his wife, and he is divided."

**Matt. 19:11, 12** "[Jesus] said to them: 'Not all men make room for the saying, but only those who have the gift.... there are eunuchs that have made themselves eunuchs because of the kingdom of the heavens. Let him that can make room for it make room for it.'"

### Married Christians Should Remain Married

**1 Cor. 7:10-16** "To the married people I give instructions, yet not I but the Lord, that a wife should not depart from her husband; but if she should actually depart, let her remain single or else make up again with her husband; and a husband should not leave his wife. . . . If any brother has an unbelieving wife, and yet she is agreeable to dwelling with him, let him not leave her; and a woman who has an unbelieving husband, and yet he is agreeable to dwelling with her, let her not leave her husband."

**Matt. 19:4-6** "Did you not read that he who created them at the beginning made them male and female and said: 'For this reason a man will leave his father and his mother and will stick to his wife, and the two will be one flesh'? So that they are no longer two, but one flesh. Therefore, what God has yoked together let no man put apart."

**1 Cor. 7:15** "But if the unbelieving one proceeds to depart, let him depart; a brother or a sister is not in servitude under such circumstances, but God has called you to peace."

### Death Severs Marriage Contract

**1 Cor. 7:39** "A wife is bound during all the time her husband is alive."

**Rom. 7:2, 3** "A married woman is bound by law to her husband while he is alive; but if her husband dies, she is discharged from the law of her husband. So, then, while her husband is living, she would be styled an adulteress if she became another man's. But if her husband dies, she is free from his law, so that she is not an adulteress if she becomes another man's."

### Christian Grounds for Divorce

**Matt. 5:31, 32** "I say to you that everyone divorcing his wife except on account of fornication

makes her a subject for adultery, seeing that whoever marries a divorced woman commits adultery."

**Matt. 19:8, 9** "Moses, out of regard for your hardheartedness, made the concession to you of divorcing your wives, but such has not been the case from the beginning. I say to you that whoever divorces his wife except on the grounds of fornication and marries another commits adultery."

**Mark 10:11, 12** "Whoever divorces his wife and marries another commits adultery against her, and if ever a woman, after divorcing her husband, marries another, she commits adultery."

**Also: Luke 16:18.**

### Wrong to Forbid Marriage

**1 Tim. 4:1-3** "In later periods of time some will fall away from the faith, paying attention to misleading inspired utterances and teachings of demons, . . . forbidding to marry."

### Christian Duties of the Husband

**1 Cor. 11:3** "I want you to know that the head of every man is the Christ; in turn, the head of a woman is the man; in turn, the head of Christ is God."

**Eph. 5:22-33** "Let wives be in subjection to their husbands as to the Lord, because a husband is head of his wife as the Christ also is head of the congregation, . . . so let wives also be to their husbands [subject] in everything. Husbands, continue loving your wives, just as the Christ also loved the congregation. . . . In this way husbands ought to be loving their wives as their own bodies. He who loves his wife loves himself, . . . let each one of you individually so love his wife as he does himself; on the other hand, the wife should have deep respect for her husband."

### Christian Duties of the Wife

**1 Pet. 3:1-7** "You wives, be in subjection to your own husbands,

in order that, if any are not obedient to the word, they may be won without a word through the conduct of their wives, because of having been eyewitnesses of your chaste conduct together with deep respect. . . . You husbands, continue dwelling in like manner with them according to knowledge, assigning them honor as to a weaker vessel, the feminine one, since you are also heirs with them of the undeserved favor of life, in order for your prayers not to be hindered."

**Col. 3:18, 19** "You wives, be in subjection to your husbands, as it is becoming in the Lord. You husbands, keep on loving your wives and do not be bitterly angry with them."

### **Children of Christians Highly Favored**

**1 Cor. 7:14** "The unbelieving husband is sanctified in relation to his wife, and the unbelieving wife is sanctified in relation to the brother; otherwise, your children would really be unclean, but now they are holy."

**Acts 2:39** "For the promise is to you and to your children and to all those afar off, just as many as Jehovah our God may call to him."

### **Children Obedient to Christian Parents**

**Eph. 6:1-4** "Children, be obedient to your parents in union with the Lord, for this is righteous: 'Honor your father and mother.' . . . And you, fathers, do not be irritating your children, but go on bringing them up in the discipline and authoritative advice of Jehovah."

**Titus 1:6** "If there is any man free from accusation, a husband of one wife, having believing children that were not under a charge of debauchery nor unruly."

**1 Tim. 3:4, 5, 12** "A man presiding over his own household in a right manner, having children

in subjection with all seriousness; (if indeed any man does not know how to preside over his own household, how will he take care of God's congregation?) Let ministerial servants be husbands of one wife, presiding in a right manner over children and their own households."

**Col. 3:20, 21** "You children, be obedient to your parents in everything, for this is well-pleasing in the Lord. You fathers, do not be exasperating your children, so that they do not become downhearted."

**Prov. 6:20-23** "My son, keep the commandment of thy father, and forsake not the law of thy mother."

Also: **Heb. 12:9-11.**

### **Parents' Duty to Train Children**

**Prov. 22:6** "Train up a child in the way he should go, and even when he is old he will not depart from it."

**Deut. 6:6, 7** "These words, which I command thee this day, shall be upon thy heart; and thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children, and shalt talk of them when thou sittest in thy house, and when thou walkest by the way, and when thou liest down, and when thou risest up."

**Prov. 23:13, 14** "Withhold not correction from the child; for if thou beat him with the rod, he will not die. Thou shalt beat him with the rod, and shalt deliver his soul from Sheol."

**2 Tim. 1:5** "I recollect the faith which is in you without any hypocrisy, and which dwelt first in your grandmother Lois and your mother Eunice, but which I am confident is also in you."

**Acts 16:1** "Timothy, the son of a believing Jewish woman but of a Greek father."

**Prov. 22:15** "Foolishness is bound up in the heart of a child; but the rod of correction shall drive it far from him."

**Luke 18:16** "Jesus called the infants to him, saying, 'Let the

young children come to me and do not try to stop them. For the kingdom of God belongs to such kind of persons.”

Also: Prov. 29:19, 21.

### Children to Attend Studies, Meetings

Matt. 14:21 [At one of Jesus' sermons] “Those eating comprised about five thousand men, besides women and young children.”

Deut. 31:12, 13 “Assemble the people, the men and the women and the little ones, . . . that they may hear, and that they may learn, and fear Jehovah your God, and observe to do all the words of this law; and that their children, who have not known, may hear, and learn to fear Jehovah your God.”

Neh. 8:2, 3, 7, 8 “Ezra the priest brought the law before the assembly, both men and women, and all that could hear with understanding, . . . And he read therein before the broad place that was before the water gate from early morning until mid-day, in the presence of the men and the women, and of those that could understand; and the ears of all the people were attentive

unto the book of the law. . . . Also . . . the Levites, caused the people to understand the law. . . . And they read in the book, in the law of God, distinctly; and they gave the sense, so that they understood the reading.”

### Child Delinquency, Last Days' Sign, Results in Death

2 Tim. 3:1-5 “Know this, that in the last days critical times hard to deal with will be here. For men will be lovers of themselves, lovers of money, self-assuming, haughty, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, without gratitude, with no loving-kindness, having no natural affection, . . . from these turn away.”

Ezek. 9:5, 6, 10 “He said . . . , Go ye through the city . . . and smite: let not your eye spare, neither have ye pity; slay utterly the old man, the young man and the virgin, and little children and women; but come not near any man upon whom is the mark.”

Rom. 1:28-32 “They did not approve of holding God in accurate knowledge, . . . disobedient to parents, without understanding, false to agreements, . . . merciless. . . . those practicing such things are deserving of death.”

# Mass

## DEFINITION

A doctrine of false religion. “The Mass is the unbloody renewal of the Sacrifice of Our Lord upon the Cross. In it the priest, as the representative of Christ, offers to God the bread and wine, which he changes into the Body and Blood of Our Lord [*transubstantiation*].” (*National Catholic Almanac* of 1948, p. 244) It is further claimed, “Our divine Saviour said the first Mass, at the Last Supper, the night before He died.”—*A Catechism of Christian Doctrine*, 1949 edition, Question 365.

The Scriptures clearly reveal that Jesus offered his own sacrifice once for all time and which never needs renewing. On the night of his death Jesus instituted a *symbolic* sacrificial meal whereby the “loaf” symbolized Jesus' own fleshly body, head and all, and the “cup” of wine symbolized Jesus' own blood given to make operative the new covenant and to be the basis for the forgiveness of sins for his congregation of 144,000.

## ORIGIN

The "unbloody sacrifice" had its origin in ancient Babylonish worship with evidences of its practice in Assyria, Cyprus and Phoenicia, and was adopted by apostate Christians during the fourth century. The thin round wafer of the "Mass" originated in Egypt as a symbol of the "sun" and "the Son". (Hislop's *The Two Babylons*) Although accepting money for masses began during the seventh or eighth century, it did not become universal until the twelfth century.

### Doctrine of the "Mass" Denies Jesus Who Bought Them with His Shed Blood

2 Pet. 2:1, **Dy** "But there were also false prophets among the people, even as there shall be among you lying teachers who shall bring in sects of perdition and deny the Lord who bought them: bringing upon themselves swift destruction."

1 Cor. 6:20, **Dy** "For you are bought with a great price. Glorify and bear God in your body."

### Impaling Christ Afresh Is Sinning Against Light

Heb. 6:4-6, **Dy** "For it is impossible for those who were once illuminated, have tasted also the heavenly gift and were made partakers of the Holy Ghost, have moreover tasted the good word of God and the powers of the world to come, and are fallen away: to be renewed again to penance, crucifying again to themselves the Son of God and making him a mockery."

### Jesus Made One Sacrifice, Which Never Needs a "Renewal"

Rom. 6:9, 10, **Dy** "Knowing that Christ, rising again from the dead, dieth now no more. Death shall no more have dominion over him. For in that he died to sin, he died once: but in that he liveth, he liveth unto God."

Heb. 7:24, 25, **Dy** "But this, for that he continueth for ever, hath an everlasting priesthood: whereby he is able also to save for ever them that come to God by him; always living to make intercession for us. Who needeth

not daily (as the other priests) to offer sacrifices, first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did once, in offering himself."

### Offered Often Makes Sacrifice No Better than Typical Sacrifices

Heb. 10:1-4, **Dy** "For the law, having a shadow of the good things to come, not the very image of the things, by the self-same sacrifices which they offer continually every year, can never make the comers thereunto perfect. For then they would have ceased to be offered: because the worshippers once cleansed should have no conscience of sin any longer. But in them there is made a commemoration of sins every year: for it is impossible that with the blood of oxen and goats sin should be taken away."

### Renewing Sacrifice Would Also Mean New Covenant Needed Renewing

Luke 22:20, **Dy** "In like manner, the chalice also, after he had supped, saying: This is the chalice, the new testament in my blood, which shall be shed for you."

Heb. 9:17-20, **Dy** "For a testament is of force after men are dead: otherwise it is as yet of no strength, whilst the testator liveth. Whereupon neither was the first indeed dedicated without blood. For when every commandment of the law had been read by Moses to all the people, he took the blood of calves and goats, with water and scarlet wool and hyssop: and, sprinkled both the book itself and all the people.

Saying: This is the blood of the testament which God hath enjoined unto you."

### **Prophecy Shows Christ in Heaven Until God's Due Time, Not Brought Down Daily in Sacrifice of Mass**

**Ps. 109:1-4, Dy [Ps. 110:1-4, AV]** "The Lord said to my Lord: Sit thou at my right hand: until I make thy enemies thy footstool. The Lord will send forth the sceptre of thy power out of Sion: rule thou in the midst of thy enemies. With thee is the principality in the day of thy strength, in the brightness of the saints: from the womb before the day star I begot thee. The Lord hath sworn, and he will not repent: Thou art a priest for ever according to the order of Melchisedech."

### **Christ Needs No Priestly Representative as Mediator**

**1 Tim. 2:5, 6, Dy** "For there is one God: and one mediator of God and men, the man Christ Jesus who gave himself a redemption for all, a testimony in due times."

**Heb. 7:17, 22-25, Dy** "For he testifieth: Thou art a priest for ever according to the order of Melchisedech. By so much is Jesus made a surety of a better testament. And the others indeed were made many priests, because by reason of death they were not suffered to continue: but this, for that he continueth for ever, hath an everlasting priesthood: whereby he is able also to save for ever them that come to God by him."

### **In Typical Nation Only High Priest Made Atonement in Most Holy**

**Heb. 9:3, 7, 9, 11, 12, Dy** "And after the second veil, the taber-

nacle which is called the Holy of Holies: but into the second, the high priest alone, once a year: not without blood, which he offereth for his own and the people's ignorance. Which is a parable of the time present: . . . But, Christ, being come an high priest of the good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hand, that is, not of this creation: neither by the blood of goats or of calves, but by his own blood, entered once into the Holies, having obtained eternal redemption."

### **Offering as an Unbloody Sacrifice Could Not Remit Sins**

**Heb. 9:22, Dy** "And almost all things, according to the law, are cleansed with blood: and without shedding of blood there is no remission."

### **The Lord's Supper**

Also known as The Lord's evening meal, The Memorial, or The Anniversary Supper

#### **1. Instituted by Jesus on pass-over night, Nisan 14, A.D. 33, just before his sacrificial death on the torture stake**

**Matt. 26:19, 20** "And the disciples did as Jesus ordered them, and they got things ready for the passover. When, now, it had become evening, he was reclining at the table with the twelve disciples."

**Luke 22:14-16** "At length when the hour came, he reclined at the table, and the apostles with him. And he said to them: 'I have greatly desired to eat this pass-over with you before I suffer; for I tell you, I will not eat it again until it becomes fulfilled in the kingdom of God.'"

#### **2. Commanded to be observed annually by Jesus' disciples as a**



*memorial just as the passover was commemorated only once each year*

Luke 22:19 "Keep doing this in remembrance of me."

### **3. A loaf or cake of unfermented bread used by Jesus**

Matt. 26:17 "On the first day of the unfermented cakes the disciples came up to Jesus, saying: 'Where do you want us to prepare for you to eat the passover?'"

### **4. Wine, the fermented product of the vine, was used by Jesus in the cup**

Matt. 26:29 "I will by no means drink henceforth any of this product of the vine until that day."

Luke 22:18 "From now on I will not drink again from the product of the vine until the kingdom of God arrives."

Also: Mark 14:25; John 2:9, 10, 13.

### **5. Purpose was to hold in "remembrance" Jesus' sacrifice and mediatorship**

1 Cor. 11:24, 25 "Keep doing this in remembrance of me. . . . Keep doing this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of me."

### **6. The bread loaf is symbolic of Jesus' own fleshly body, head and all, which Jehovah gave him to offer as a perfect sacrifice**

Matt. 26:26 "Take, eat. This means my body."

1 Cor. 11:24 "This means my body which is in your behalf."

Heb. 10:5 "Hence when he [Jesus] comes into the world he says: 'You did not desire sacrifice and offering, but you prepared a body for me.'"

Also: Ps. 39:6, LXX.

### **7. The cup of wine is symbolic of Jesus' own blood that coursed through his fleshly body**

Matt. 26:27, 28 "Also he took a cup and, having given thanks, he gave it to them, saying: 'Drink out of it, all of you; for this means my "blood".'"

Mark 14:23, 24 "And taking a cup, he offered thanks and gave it to them, and they all drank out of it. And he said to them: 'This means my "blood".'"

### **8. Jesus was human, "blood and flesh," like his disciples, to enable him to be a sacrifice on God's altar**

Heb. 2:14 "Therefore, since the 'young children' [Jesus' disciples] are sharers of blood and flesh, he [Christ Jesus] also similarly partook of the same things, that through his death [sacrifice] he might destroy the one having the means to cause death, that is, the Devil."

John 1:14 "So the Word [Jesus Christ] became flesh and resided among us."

Lev. 17:11, NW "The soul of the flesh is in the blood, and I myself have put it upon the altar for you to make atonement for your souls, because it is the blood that makes atonement by the soul in it."

### **9. God's "altar" same as "table of Jehovah"**

Mal. 1:7 "Ye offer polluted bread upon mine altar. And ye say, Wherein have we polluted thee? In that ye say, The table of Jehovah is contemptible."

Also: Vs. 12.

**10. Those partaking of the Memorial supper share in a sacrificial communion meal partaking of the bread and wine symbolic of Jesus' sacrificed body and blood**

**1 Cor. 10:16** "The cup of blessing which we bless, is it not a sharing in the blood of the Christ? The loaf which we break, is it not a sharing in the [fleshly] body of the Christ?"

**John 6:53-56** "Accordingly Jesus said to them: 'Most truly I say to you, Unless you eat the flesh of the Son of man and drink his blood, you have no life in you. He that feeds on my flesh and drinks my blood has everlasting life, and I shall resurrect him at the last day; for my flesh is true food, and my blood is true drink. He that feeds on my flesh and drinks my blood remains in union with me, and I in union with him.'"

**11. Likened to the communion sacrifices of Israel, where the worshiper ate part of the sacrifice, thus having communion with Jehovah's table, the altar on which it was sacrificed**

**1 Cor. 10:18** "Look at that which is Israel in a fleshly way: Are not those who eat the sacrifices sharers with the altar?"

**Lev. 7:11, 15, NW** "Now this is the law of the communion sacrifice that anyone will present to Jehovah: And the flesh of the thanksgiving sacrifice of his communion offerings is to be eaten on the day of his offering. He must not save up any of it until morning."

**12. Communion with Jehovah at the Lord's evening meal forbids**

**idolatry, and sacrifices on altars to demons, and drinking to demons, which amounts to a communion with the demons**

**1 Cor. 10:20, 21** "I say that the things which the nations sacrifice they sacrifice to demons, and not to God, and I do not want you to become sharers with the demons. You cannot be drinking the cup of Jehovah and the cup of demons; you cannot be partaking of 'the table of Jehovah' and the table of demons."

**Lev. 17:7, NW** "So they should no longer sacrifice their sacrifices to the goat-shaped demons with which they are having unfaithful intercourse."

**Ps. 96:5, LXX** "All the gods of the nations are demons."

**13. When partaking of the loaf the anointed, spirit-begotten Christian remembers that he benefits from the body of flesh in which Jesus bore his sins away as the ransom**

**1 Pet. 2:24** "He himself by imputation bore our sins in his own body upon the stake, in order that we might be done with sins and live to righteousness. And 'by his stripes you were healed'."

**Matt. 20:28** "Just as the Son of man came, not to be ministered to, but to minister and to give his soul a ransom in exchange for many."

**14. He also remembers that Jesus did not take his fleshly body to heaven, but gave up his fleshly existence to open the way for his 144,000 fellow anointed ones to go to heaven**

**1 Pet. 3:18** "Why, even Christ died once for all time concerning

sins, a righteous person for unrighteous ones, that he might lead you to God, he being put to death in the flesh, but being made alive in the spirit."

**Heb. 10:19, 20** "Therefore, brothers, since we have boldness for the way of entry into the holy place [heaven] by the blood of Jesus, which he inaugurated for us as a new and living way through the curtain, that is, his flesh."

**2 Cor. 5:1** "For we know that if our earthly house [body of flesh], this tent, should be dissolved, we are to have a building from God, a house not made with hands, everlasting in the heavens [a spirit body]."

**15. When partaking of the wine the anointed Christian remembers that he benefits from Jesus' blood, which was poured out by him for the forgiveness of sins**

**Matt. 26:28** "Which is to be poured out in behalf of many for forgiveness of sins."

**1 Pet. 1:18, 19** "For you know that it was not with corruptible things, with silver or gold, as a ransom that you were released from your fruitless form of conduct received by tradition from your forefathers. But it was with precious blood, like that of an unblemished and spotless lamb, even Christ's."

**Heb. 9:22** "Unless blood is poured out no forgiveness takes place."

**16. He also remembers that Jesus' blood put in force a new covenant between Jehovah and the 144,000 of spiritual Israel**

**Matt. 26:28** "For this means my 'blood of the covenant'."

**1 Cor. 11:25** "This cup means the *new covenant* by virtue of my blood."

**Heb. 9:15** "So that is why he is a mediator of a *new covenant*, in order that, because a death has occurred for their release by ransom from the transgressions under the former covenant, the ones who have been called might receive the promise of the everlasting inheritance."

**17. The "blood of the covenant" that put in force the old 'law covenant' was that of "bulls and goats" of communion sacrifices at Mount Sinai and not of a 'passover lamb'**

**Ex. 24:5, 8, NW** "They offered up burnt offerings and sacrificed bulls as sacrifices, as *communion* offerings to Jehovah. So Moses took the blood and sprinkled it upon the people and said: 'Here is the *blood of the covenant* that Jehovah has concluded with you as respects all these words.'"

**Also: Heb. 9:18-20.**

**18. Participants in the new covenant as one composite body have partnership with one another and with Jehovah and Christ Jesus**

**1 John 1:3** "That which we have seen and heard we are reporting also to you, that you, too, may be having partnership with us. Furthermore, this partnership of ours is with the Father and with his Son Jesus Christ."

**1 Cor. 10:17** "Because there is one loaf [symbolizing Jesus' body of flesh], we, although many, are one body [a community of anointed ones], for we are all partaking [eating] of that one loaf [body of Jesus]."

1 Cor. 12:12 "For just as the body is one thing but has many members, and all the members of that body, although being many, are one body, so also is the Christ."

**19. Communion supper participation limited to those of the "little flock" called to share in the covenant for the kingdom of heaven**

Luke 22:28, 29 "However, you are the ones that have stuck with me in my trials; and I make a covenant with you, just as my Father has made a covenant with me, for a kingdom."

Luke 12:32 "Have no fear, little flock, because your Father has approved of giving you the kingdom."

**20. "Great Crowd" of "other sheep" should come up to the ex-**

**alted "mountain of Jehovah" and attend the emblematic presence of the "table of Jehovah," but not partake of the supper that is limited to the new covenant's spiritual Israelites**

Rev. 7:9 "After these things I saw, and, look! a great crowd, which no man was able to number, out of all nations and tribes and peoples and tongues, standing before the throne and before the Lamb, dressed in white robes, and there were palm branches in their hands."

Isa. 2:3 "And many peoples shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of Jehovah, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of Jehovah from Jerusalem."

## Minister of God

### DEFINITION

Literally, a servant (Gr., *diákonos*, "through the dust"). A public servant of Jehovah, the Almighty God, and ordained by him; one who follows the footsteps of Jesus Christ and preaches the good news of Jehovah's established kingdom by Christ; one who carries out divine commands and commissions originating with the Sovereign God-Ruler of the universe.

**Ordination:** Appointment to service.

#### Jesus Christ God's Chief Minister

Rom. 15:8 "I say that Christ actually became a minister of those who are circumcised in behalf of God's truthfulness."

Heb. 8:2 "A public servant of the holy place and of the true

tent, which Jehovah set up, and not man."

Rom. 13:4 "It is God's minister to you for your good."

**Other Servants of God, Beginning with Abel, Were Ministers**

Heb. 11:4, 32 "By faith Abel offered God a sacrifice of greater

worth than Cain, through which faith he had witness borne to him that he was righteous, God bearing witness respecting his gifts, ... the time will fail me if I go on to relate about Gideon, Barak, Samson, Jephthah, David as well as Samuel and the other prophets."

**2 Pet. 2:5** "Noah, a preacher of righteousness."

**1 Pet. 1:12** "It was revealed to them [the prophets] that, not to themselves, but to you, they were ministering."

### Every Christian Must Be a Minister

**Rom. 10:10-15** "For with the heart one exercises faith for righteousness, but with the mouth one makes public declaration for salvation. ... For 'anyone that calls upon the name of Jehovah will be saved'. However, how will they call upon him in whom they have not put faith? How, in turn, will they put faith in him of whom they have not heard? How, in turn, will they hear without someone to preach? How, in turn, will they preach unless they have been sent forth? Just as it is written: 'How beautiful are the feet of those who declare good news of good things!'"

**John 21:15-17** "When, now, they had breakfasted, Jesus said to Simon Peter: 'Simon son of John, do you love me more than these?' He said to him: 'Yes, Master, you know I have affection for you.' He said to him: 'Feed my young lambs.' Again he said to him, a second time: 'Simon son of John, do you love me?' He said to him: 'Yes, Master, you know I have affection for you.' He said to him: 'Shepherd

my little sheep.' He said to him the third time: 'Simon son of John, do you have affection for me?' Peter became grieved that he said to him the third time: 'Do you have affection for me?' So he said to him: 'Master, you know all things; you are aware that I have affection for you.' Jesus said to him: 'Feed my little sheep.'"

### Ordination Comes from God Through Christ

**Isa. 61:1-3** "The spirit of the Lord Jehovah is upon me; because Jehovah hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the broken-hearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound; to proclaim the year of Jehovah's favor, and the day of vengeance of our God; to comfort all that mourn; to appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them a garland for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness; that they may be called trees of righteousness, the planting of Jehovah, that he may be glorified."

**1 Cor. 12:18** "But now God has set the members in the body, each one of them, just as he pleased."

**John 15:16** "You did not choose me, but I chose you, and I appointed you to go on and keep bearing fruit and that your fruit should remain, in order that no matter what you ask the Father in my name he might give it to you."

### No Man or Organization Can Ordain God's Ministers

**Gal. 1:1, 12** "Paul, an apostle, neither from men nor through a

man, but through Jesus Christ and God the Father, . . . for neither did I accept it from man, nor was I taught it, except through revelation by Jesus Christ."

### No Certificate of Ordination Necessary

**2 Cor. 3:1-3** "Do we, perhaps, like some men, need letters of recommendation to you or from you? You yourselves are our letter, inscribed on our hearts and known and being read by all mankind. For you are shown to be a letter of Christ written by us as ministers, inscribed not with ink but with spirit of the living God, not on stone tablets, but on fleshly tablets, on hearts."

### Theological Seminary Training Not Necessary

**John 7:15** "Therefore the Jews fell to wondering, saying: 'How does this man have a knowledge of letters, when he has not studied at the schools?'"

**Acts 4:13** "Now when they beheld the outspokenness of Peter and John, and perceived that they were men unlettered and ordinary, they got to wondering. And they began to recognize about them that they used to be with Jesus."

### Dedication Must Precede Ordination

**Matt. 16:24** "Then Jesus said to his disciples: 'If anyone wants to come after me, let him disown himself and pick up his torture stake and follow me continually.'"

**Heb. 10:7** "Then I said, 'Look! I am come (in the roll of the book it is written about me) to do your will, O God.'"

### Baptism a Symbol of Such Dedication to Be God's Minister

**Matt. 28:19** "Go therefore and make disciples of people of all

the nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the holy spirit."

**Matt. 3:13-17** "Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan to John in order to be baptized by him. But the latter tried to prevent him, saying: 'I am the one needing to be baptized by you, and are you coming to me?' In reply Jesus said to him: 'Let it be, this time, for in that way it is suitable for us to carry out all that is righteous.' Then he quit preventing him. After being baptized Jesus immediately came up from the water; and, look! the heavens were opened up, and he saw descending like a dove God's spirit coming upon him. Look! also, there was a voice from the heavens that said: 'This is my Son, the beloved, whom I have approved.'"

### Women May Be Ministers

**Acts 2:17, 18** "'And in the last days,' God says, 'I shall pour some of my spirit out upon every kind of flesh, and your sons and your daughters will prophesy and your young men will see visions and your old men will dream dreams; and even upon my men slaves and upon my women slaves I will pour out some of my spirit in those days, and they will prophesy.'"

**Acts 21:9** "This man had four daughters, virgins, that prophesied."

**Rom. 16:1** "I recommend to you Phoebe our sister, who is a minister of the congregation which is in Cenchreae."

**Titus 2:3** "Likewise let the aged women be reverent in behavior, not slanderous, neither enslaved to a lot of wine, teachers of what is good."

**Gal. 3:28** "There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave

nor freeman, there is neither male nor female; for you are all one in union with Christ Jesus."

**John 4:28-30, 39-42** "The woman, therefore, left her water-jar and went off into the city and told the men: 'Come here, see a man that told me all the things I did. This is not perhaps the Christ, is it?' They went out of the city and began coming to him. Now many of the Samaritans out of that city put faith in him on account of the word of the woman who said in witness: 'He told me all the things I did.' Therefore when the Samaritans came to him, they began asking him to stay with them: and he stayed there two days. Consequently many more believed on account of what he said, and they began to say to the woman: 'We do not believe any longer on account of your talk; for we have heard for ourselves and we know that this man is for a certainty the savior of the world.'"

### Child Ministers

**Luke 2:42, 46, 47, 49** "And when he became twelve years old, they went up according to the custom of the feast. Well, after three days they found him in the temple sitting in the midst of the teachers and listening to them and questioning them. But all those listening to him were in constant amazement at his understanding and his answers. But he said to them: 'Why did you have to go looking for me? Did you not know that I must be in the house of my Father?'"

**2 Tim. 3:15** "And that from infancy you have known the holy writings which are able to make you wise for salvation through the faith in connection with Christ Jesus."

**1 Tim. 4:12** "Let no man ever look down on your youth."

**Jer. 1:6, 7** "Then said I, Ah, Lord Jehovah! behold, I know not how to speak; for I am a

child. But Jehovah said unto me, Say not, I am a child; for to whomsoever I shall send thee thou shalt go, and whatsoever I shall command thee thou shalt speak."

**1 Sam. 2:18** "But Samuel ministered before Jehovah, being a child, girded with a linen ephod."

**Ps. 148:12, 13** "Both young men and virgins; old men and children: let them praise the name of Jehovah."

**Ecc. 12:1** "Remember also thy Creator in the days of thy youth, before the evil days come, and the years draw nigh, when thou shalt say, I have no pleasure in them."

**Ps. 8:2** "Out of the mouth of babes and sucklings hast thou established strength."

**Acts 2:17** "I shall pour some of my spirit out upon every kind of flesh, and your sons and your daughters will prophesy and your young men will see visions."

**Matt. 21:16** "Jesus said to them: 'Yes. Did you never read this: "Out of the mouth of babes and sucklings you have furnished praise?"'"

**Luke 10:21** "I publicly praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because you have carefully hidden these things from wise and intellectual ones, and have revealed them to babes."

**Matt. 19:14** "Jesus, however, said: 'Let the young children alone, and stop hindering them from coming to me, for the kingdom of the heavens belongs to such kind of persons.'"

**Job 32:4-9** "Now Elihu had waited to speak unto Job, because they were elder than he. And when Elihu saw that there was no answer in the mouth of these three men, his wrath was kindled. And Elihu the son of Barachel the Buzite answered and said, I am young, and ye are very old; wherefore I held back,

and durst not show you mine opinion. I said, Days should speak, and multitude of years should teach wisdom. But there is a spirit in man, and the breath of the Almighty giveth them understanding. It is not the great that are wise, nor the aged that understand justice."

### **Ordination Must Be Followed by Works of Preaching**

**1 Pet. 2:21** "In fact, to this course you were called, because even Christ suffered for you, leaving you a model for you to follow his steps closely."

**2 Tim. 4:2, 5** "Preach the word, be at it urgently in favorable season, in troublesome season, reprove, reprimand, exhort, with all longsuffering and art of teaching. You, though, keep your balance in all things, suffer evil, do missionary work, thoroughly accomplish your ministry."

**1 Cor. 9:16** "If, now, I am declaring the good news, it is no reason for me to boast, for necessity is laid upon me. Really, woe is me if I did not declare the good news!"

**Heb. 13:15** "Through him let us always offer to God a sacrifice of praise, that is, the fruit of lips which make public declaration to his name."

### **No Retirement for God's Ministers**

**2 Tim. 2:3, 4** "As a right kind of soldier of Christ Jesus take your part in suffering evil. No man serving as a soldier involves himself in the commercial businesses of life, in order that he may meet the approval of the one who enrolled him as a soldier."

**Matt. 24:13** "But he that has endured to the finish is the one that will be saved."

**Eccl. 8:8** "There is no discharge in war."

**Rev. 2:10** "Do not be afraid of the things you are destined to suffer. Look! the Devil will keep

on throwing some of you into prison that you may be fully put to the test, and that you may have tribulation ten days. Prove yourself faithful even with the danger of death, and I will give you the crown of life."

**Philem. 9** "I am exhorting you rather on the basis of love, seeing that I am such as I am, Paul an aged man, yes, now also a prisoner for the sake of Christ Jesus."

**2 Tim. 4:7** "I have fought the right fight, I have run the course to the finish, I have observed the faith."

**Rev. 1:9** "I John, your brother and a sharer with you in the tribulation and kingdom and endurance in company with Jesus, came to be in the isle which is called Patmos for speaking about God and bearing witness to Jesus."

**Luke 9:62** "Jesus said to him: 'No man that has put his hand to a plow and looks at the things behind is well fitted for the kingdom of God.'"

**1 Sam. 7:15** "And Samuel judged Israel all the days of his life."

### **The Flock Is God's, Not the Minister's**

**John 21:15-17** "When, now, they had breakfasted, Jesus said to Simon Peter: 'Simon son of John, do you love me more than these?' He said to him: 'Yes, Master, you know I have affection for you.' He said to him: 'Feed my young lambs.' Again he said to him, a second time: 'Simon son of John, do you love me?' He said to him: 'Yes, Master, you know I have affection for you.' He said to him: 'Shepherd my little sheep.' He said to him the third time: 'Simon son of John, do you have affection for me?' Peter became grieved that he said to him the third time: 'Do you have affection for me?' So he said to him: 'Master, you know all things; you are aware that I have affection



for you.' Jesus said to him: 'Feed my little sheep.'"

**1 Pet. 5:2, 3** "Shepherd the flock of God in your care, not under compulsion, but willingly, neither for love of dishonest gain, but eagerly, neither as lording it over those who are God's inheritance, but becoming examples to the flock."

**Acts 20:28** "Pay attention to yourselves and to all the flock, among which the holy spirit has appointed you overseers, to shepherd the congregation of God, which he purchased with the blood of his own [Son]."

**John 10:16** "And I have other sheep, which are not of this fold; those also I must bring, and they will listen to my voice, and they will become one flock, one shepherd."

#### **Further Appointment to Special Service Duties Made Through Christian Organization**

**Acts 6:2, 3** "So the twelve called the multitude of the disciples to them and said: 'It is not pleasing for us to abandon the word of God to distribute food to tables. So, brothers, search out for yourselves seven certified men from among you, full of spirit and wisdom, that we may appoint them over this necessary business.'"

**Acts 14:23** "Moreover, they appointed older men to office for them in the congregation and, offering prayer with fastings, they committed them to Jehovah in whom they had become believers."

**Titus 1:5** "For this reason I left you in Crete, that you might correct the things that were defective and might make appointments of older men in city after city, as I gave you orders."

#### **"Laying On of Hands" Designates Appointment, Either by Personal Word or Contact, by Letter, or Through Representatives**

**1 Tim. 5:22** "Never lay your hands hastily upon any man;

neither be a sharer in the sins of others; preserve yourself pure."

**Acts 6:3, 6** "So, brothers, search out for yourselves seven certified men from among you, full of spirit and wisdom, that we may appoint them over this necessary business; and they placed them before the apostles, and after having prayed these laid their hands upon them."

**Acts 13:2, 3** "As they were publicly ministering to Jehovah and fasting, the holy spirit said: 'Of all persons set Barnabas and Saul apart for me for the work to which I have called them.' Then they fasted and prayed and laid their hands upon them and let them go."

**2 Tim. 4:11** "Luke alone is with me. Take Mark and bring him with you, for he is useful to me for ministering." [By letter]

**Acts 1:26** "So they cast lots over them, and the lot fell upon Matthias, and he was reckoned along with the eleven apostles."

**Matt. 3:17** "Look! also, there was a voice from the heavens that said: 'This is my Son, the beloved, whom I have approved.'"

**John 15:16** "You did not choose me, but I chose you, and I appointed you to go on and keep bearing fruit and that your fruit should remain, in order that no matter what you ask the Father in my name he might give it to you."

**Acts 22:10** "At that I said: 'What shall I do, Lord?' The Lord said to me: 'Rise, go your way into Damascus, and there you will be told about everything it is appointed for you to do.'"

#### **Method of Preaching**

##### **House-to-house preaching**

**Acts 20:20** "I did not hold back from telling you any of the things that were profitable nor from teaching you publicly and from house to house."

**Acts 5:42** "Every day in the temple and from house to house they continued without letup

teaching and declaring the good news about the Christ, Jesus."

### ***Return visits and home Bible studies***

**Acts 15:36** "Now after some days Paul said to Barnabas: 'Above all things, let us return and visit the brothers in every one of the cities in which we published the word of Jehovah to see how they are.'"

**1 Cor. 3:6** "I planted, Apollos watered, but God kept making it grow."

**Gal. 6:6** "Let anyone who is being orally taught the word share in all good things with the one who gives such oral teaching."

**Acts 17:11, 12** "Now the latter were more noble-minded than those in Thessalonica, for they received the word with the greatest readiness of mind, carefully examining the Scriptures daily as to whether these things were so. Therefore many of them became believers."

**Matt. 18:20** "Where there are two or three met together in my name, there I am in their midst."

**Isa. 28:24-26** "Doth he that ploweth to sow plow continually? doth he continually open and harrow his ground? When he hath levelled the face thereof, doth he not cast abroad the fitches, and scatter the cummin, and put in the wheat in rows, and the barley in the appointed place, and the spelt in the border thereof? For his God doth instruct him aright, and doth teach him."

### ***Preaching in streets and public places***

**Acts 17:17** "Consequently he began to reason in the synagogue with the Jews and the other people who worshiped God and every day in the market-place with those who happened to be on hand."

**Jer. 19:2** "Go forth unto the valley of the son of Hinnom,

which is by the entry of the gate Harsith, and proclaim there the words that I shall tell thee."

**Ezek. 4:3, 4** "This shall be a sign to the house of Israel. Moreover lie thou upon thy left side, and lay the iniquity of the house of Israel upon it; according to the number of the days that thou shalt lie upon it, thou shalt bear their iniquity."

### ***Delivering public sermons***

**Matt. 5:1, 2** "When he saw the crowds he went up into the mountain; and after he sat down his disciples came to him; and he opened his mouth and began teaching them."

**Matt. 13:1-3** "On that day Jesus, having left the house, was sitting by the sea; and great crowds gathered to him, so that he went aboard a boat and sat down, and all the crowd was standing on the beach. Then he told them many things by illustrations."

**Mark 6:34, 44** "On getting out, he saw a great crowd, . . . And he started to teach them many things. . . . Those who ate of the loaves were five thousand men."

**Mark 8:9** "Yet there were about four thousand men. Finally he sent them away."

**Acts 17:22** "Paul now stood in the midst of the Areopagus and said: 'Men of Athens, I behold that in all things you seem to be more given to the fear of the deities than others are.'"

**Acts 20:7** "Paul began discoursing to them, . . . and he prolonged his speech until midnight."

### ***Missionary work***

**2 Tim. 4:5** "You, though, keep your balance in all things, suffer evil, do missionary work, thoroughly accomplish your ministry."

**Acts 21:8** "We entered into the house of Philip the missionary."

**Eph. 4:11** "He gave some as apostles, some as prophets, some as missionaries, some as shepherds and teachers."

### The Minister's Congregation

2 Cor. 5:18, 19 "God, who reconciled us to himself through Christ and gave us the ministry of the reconciliation, namely, that God was by means of Christ reconciling a world to himself."

Matt. 13:38 "The field is the world."

### *His assigned territory*

2 Cor. 10:13-16 "For our part, we will boast, not outside our assigned boundaries, but according to the boundary of the territory which God apportioned to us by measure, making it reach even as far as you. . . . No, we are not boasting outside our assigned boundaries in the labors of someone else, but we entertain hope that, as your faith is being increased, we may be made great among you with reference to our territory. Then we will abound still more, to declare the good news to the countries beyond you, so as not to boast in someone else's territory where things are already prepared."

Matt. 15:24 "[Jesus] said: 'I was not sent forth to any but to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.'"

Matt. 10:5, 6 "These twelve Jesus sent forth, giving them these orders: 'Do not go off into the road of the nations, and do not enter into a Samaritan city; but, instead, go continually to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.'"

### *His Bible studies and good-will persons*

2 Cor. 3:1-3 "You yourselves are our letter, inscribed on our hearts and known and being read by all mankind. For you are shown to be a letter of Christ written by us as ministers."

### *The local congregation, in which he may be a specially appointed servant*

Rom. 12:8 "He that presides, let him do it in real earnest."

1 Tim. 5:17 "Let the older men who preside in a right way be reckoned worthy of double honor, especially those who work hard in speaking and teaching."

1 Pet. 5:1-3 "To the older men among you I give this exhortation, . . . Shepherd the flock of God in your care, not . . . as lording it over those who are God's inheritance, but becoming examples to the flock."

Acts 20:28 "Pay attention to yourselves and to all the flock, among which the holy spirit has appointed you overseers, to shepherd the congregation of God, which he purchased with the blood of his own [Son]."

### Publishing Can Include Use of Literature

2 Tim. 4:13 "When you come, bring the cloak I left at Troas with Carpus, and the scrolls, especially the parchments."

Isa. 52:7 "How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace, that bringeth good tidings of good, that publisheth salvation, that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth!"

Ps. 68:11 "The Lord giveth the word: the women that publish the tidings are a great host."

Acts 17:11 "They received the word with the greatest readiness of mind, carefully examining the Scriptures daily as to whether these things were so."

### Scope of Ministerial Field and Shortness of Time Make Modern Methods Essential

Matt. 24:14 "And this good news of the kingdom will be preached in all the inhabited earth for the purpose of a witness to all the nations, and then the accomplished end will come."

Matt. 28:19, 20 "Go therefore and make disciples of people of all the nations, . . . teaching them to observe all the things I have commanded you."

**Dan. 11:33** "And they that are wise among the people shall instruct many."

**Isa. 60:22** "The little one shall become a thousand, and the small one a strong nation: I, Jehovah, will hasten it in its time."

**Jer. 51:6** "Flee out of the midst of Babylon, and save every man his life; be not cut off in her iniquity: for it is the time of Jehovah's vengeance; he will render unto her a recompense."

**Matt. 24:15-20, 34** "When you catch sight of the disgusting thing that causes desolation,... begin fleeing to the mountains. Let the man on the housetop not come down to take the goods out of his house; and let the man in the field not return to the house to pick up his outer garment.... Keep praying that your flight may not occur in winter-time nor on the sabbath day. Truly I say to you that this generation will by no means pass away until all these things occur."

**Eph. 5:16** "Buying out the opportune time for yourselves, because the days are wicked."

**Zeph. 2:2, 3** "Before the decree bring forth, before the day pass as the chaff, before the fierce anger of Jehovah come upon you, ... Seek ye Jehovah, all ye meek of the earth, ... it may be ye will be hid in the day of Jehovah's anger."

#### **Receipt of Contributions Proper**

**1 Cor. 9:7-14** "Who is it that ever serves as a soldier at his own expense? Who plants a vineyard and does not eat of its fruit? Or who shepherds a flock and does not eat some of the milk of the flock?... 'You must not muzzle an ox when it is treading out the grain.'... If we have sown spiritual things to you, is it something great if we shall reap things for the flesh from you?... Do you not know that the men performing sacred duties eat the things of the temple, and those constantly attending at the altar have a portion for them-

selves with the altar? In this way, too, the Lord ordained for those proclaiming the good news to live by means of the good news."

**Rom. 15:27** "If the nations have shared in their spiritual things, they also owe it to minister publicly to these with things for the physical body."

**Phil. 4:16, 17** "Even in Thessalonica, you sent something to me both once and a second time for my need. Not that I am earnestly seeking the gift, but that I am earnestly seeking the fruitage that brings more credit to your account."

**Luke 10:6, 7** "If a friend of peace is there,... stay in that house, eating and drinking the things they provide, for the worker is worthy of his wages. Do not be transferring from house to house."

**Matt. 19:29** "Everyone that has left houses or brothers or sisters or father or mother or children or lands for the sake of my name will receive many times more and will inherit everlasting life."

#### **The Minister Is Not Commercial, nor a Peddler**

**2 Cor. 2:17** "We are not peddlers of the word of God as many men are, but as out of sincerity, yes, as sent from God, under God's view, in company with Christ, we are speaking."

#### **Some Ministers Have Secondary Occupations to Provide Needs**

**Acts 18:2-4** "He found a certain Jew named Aquila,... and Priscilla his wife,... and on account of being of the same trade he stayed at their home, and they worked, for they were tentmakers by trade. However, he would give a talk in the synagogue every sabbath and would win over Jews and Greeks."

**Col. 4:14** "Luke the beloved physician sends you his greetings."

See "Jehovah's Witnesses", "Baptism."

# New-World Living

## DEFINITION

The Scripturally outlined course of conduct for true Christians especially in the time of the end. Not an effort at "character development", it requires accurate knowledge of God's basic principles and righteous requirements for those of his new world with an honest desire and earnest effort to live by them, coupled with a sincere love of God and neighbor. It recognizes the need for the operation of God's active force in one's life, since many righteous qualities are themselves actually fruits of the spirit. It means a completely changed thinking process from that of the former course in Satan's system of things, a development of a new life pattern by daily strengthening of proper habits, leanings and mental attitude.

### God Foretold a New World Fashioned According to His Righteous Principles

Isa. 65:17 "For, behold, I create new heavens and a new earth; and the former things shall not be remembered, nor come into mind."

2 Pet. 3:13 "But there are new heavens and a new earth that we are awaiting according to his promise, and in these righteousness is to dwell."

Isa. 11:5 "And righteousness shall be the girdle of his waist, and faithfulness the girdle of his loins."

### Those of New World Society Are Taught According to His Revealed Will

Isa. 54:13 "And all thy children shall be taught of Jehovah; and great shall be the peace of thy children."

Isa. 55:8, 9 "For my thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways my ways, saith Jehovah. For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts."

### Members of That Society Are Certain to Be Established

Isa. 66:1, 22 "Thus saith Jehovah, Heaven is my throne, and

the earth is my footstool: . . . For as the new heavens and the new earth, which I will make, shall remain before me, saith Jehovah, so shall your seed and your name remain."

### Eve's Mind Corrupted and Bent Away from True Religion

2 Cor. 11:3, 14 "But I am afraid that somehow, as the serpent seduced Eve by its craftiness, your minds might be corrupted away from the sincerity and the chastity that are due the Christ. And no wonder, for Satan himself keeps transforming himself into an angel of light."

### Continued Evil Bent of Thinking Brought Flood

Gen. 6:5, 13 "And Jehovah saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every imagination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually. And God said unto Noah, The end of all flesh is come before me; for the earth is filled with violence through them; and, behold, I will destroy them with the earth."

### Fallen Man's Mind Bent Toward Evil from Youth

Gen. 8:21 "And Jehovah smelled the sweet savor; and Jehovah said in his heart, I will not again

curse the ground any more for man's sake, for that the imagination of man's heart is evil from his youth; neither will I again smite any more everything living, as I have done."

### **Continued Wrong Thinking Foreseen**

**Deut. 31:21** "And it shall come to pass, when many evils and troubles are come upon them, that this song shall testify before them as a witness; for it shall not be forgotten out of the mouths of their seed: for I know their imagination which they frame this day, before I have brought them into the land which I swear."

### **Further Evil Bent of Man's Mind in Last Days Foretold**

**Matt. 24:37** "For just as the days of Noah were, so the presence of the Son of man will be."

**2 Tim. 3:1, 8** "But know this, that in the last days critical times hard to deal with will be here. Now in the way that Jannes and Jambres resisted Moses, so these also go on resisting the truth, men completely corrupted in mind, disapproved as regards the faith."

**Rom. 1:22, 28, 29** "Although asserting they were wise, they became foolish. And just as they did not approve of holding God in accurate knowledge, God gave them up to a disapproved mental state, to do the things not fitting, filled as they were with all unrighteousness."

### **Satan, God of This World, Is Responsible for Wrong Thinking**

**Rev. 12:9** "So down the great dragon was hurled, the original serpent, the one called Devil and Satan, who is misleading the entire inhabited earth; he was hurled down to the earth, and his angels were hurled down with him."

**2 Cor. 4:4** "Among whom the god of this system of things has blinded the minds of the un-

believers, that the illumination of the glorious good news about the Christ, who is the image of God, might not shine through."

### **Satan Feeds Man's Mind on Wrong Things According to His System of Things**

**Col. 1:21** "Indeed, you who were once alienated and enemies because your minds were on the works that were wicked, he now has again reconciled."

**Eph. 2:2, 3** "You at one time walked according to the system of things of this world, according to the ruler of the authority of the air, the spirit that now operates in the sons of disobedience. Yes, among them we all at one time conducted ourselves in harmony with the desires of our flesh, doing the things the flesh and the thoughts willed."

### **Harmony with God's New World Arrangement Requires Completely Changed Course of Thinking**

**2 Cor. 3:16-18** "But when there is a turning to Jehovah, the veil is taken away. Now Jehovah is the spirit; and where the spirit of Jehovah is, there is freedom. And all of us, while we with unveiled faces reflect like mirrors the glory of Jehovah, are transformed into the same image from glory to glory, exactly as done by Jehovah the spirit."

**Rom. 12:2** "And quit being fashioned after this system of things, but be transformed by making your mind over, that you may prove to yourselves the good and acceptable and complete will of God."

### **Active Force of God Needed to Effect a Change in Thinking and Conduct**

**Titus 3:3-6** "For even we were once senseless, disobedient, being misled, being slaves to various desires and pleasures, carrying on in maliciousness and envy, hateful, hating one another. However, when the kindness and the love for man on the part of our

Savior, God, was manifested, owing to no activities in righteousness that we had performed, but according to his mercy he saved us through the bath that brought us to life and through the making of us new by holy spirit. This spirit he poured out richly upon us through Jesus Christ our Savior."

**1 Cor. 2:10, 12** "For it is to us God has revealed them through his spirit, for the spirit searches into all things, even the deep things of God. Now we received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is from God, that we might know the things that have been kindly given us by God."

### Must Be in Sincerity of Heart

**Ps. 51:10, 11** "Create in me a clean heart, O God; and renew a right spirit within me. Cast me not away from thy presence; and take not thy holy spirit from me."

### God's Written Word Able to Search Out Man's Inmost Thoughts and Direct His Course

**Ps. 119:9** "Wherewith shall a young man cleanse his way? By taking heed thereto according to thy word."

**Heb. 4:12, 13** "For the word of God is alive and exerts power and is sharper than any two-edged sword and pierces even to the dividing of the soul and spirit, and of the joints and their marrow, and is able to discern the thoughts and intentions of the heart. And there is not a creation that is not manifest to his sight, but all things are naked and openly exposed to the eyes of him with whom we have an accounting."

### New World Living Means Becoming a New Personality

**Eph. 4:22-24** "That you should put away the old personality which conforms to your former

course of conduct and which is being corrupted according to his deceptive desires; but that you should be made new in the force actuating your mind, and should put on the new personality which was created according to God's will in true righteousness and loving-kindness."

### Law of Sin Through Adam Wars Against Law of This New Mind

**Gal. 5:16, 17** "But I say, Keep walking by spirit and you will carry out no fleshly desire at all. For the flesh is against the spirit in its desire, and the spirit against the flesh, for these are opposed to each other, so that the very things that you would like to do you do not do."

**Rom. 7:21-25** "I find, then, this law in my case: that when I wish to do what is right, what is bad is present with me. I really delight in the law of God according to the man I am within, but I behold in my members another law warring against the law of my mind and leading me captive to sin's law that is in my members.... So, then, with my mind I myself am a slave to God's law, but with my flesh to sin's law."

### Failure to Renew Mind Leads into Corrupted Mental State

**1 Tim. 6:3-5** "If any man teaches other doctrine and does not assent to healthful words, those of our Lord Jesus Christ, nor to the teaching that accords with godly devotion, he is puffed up with pride, not understanding anything, but being mentally diseased over questionings and debates about words. From these things spring envy, strife, abusive speeches, wicked suspicions, violent disputes about trifles on the part of men corrupted in mind and despoiled of the truth, thinking that godly devotion is a means of gain."

## The End of Wrong Thinking Is Death

**Phil. 3:18, 19** "For there are many, I used to mention them often but now I mention them also with weeping, who are walking as the enemies of the torture stake of the Christ, and their finish is destruction, and their god is their belly, and their glory consists in their shame, and they have their minds upon things on the earth."

## Mind Must Be Trained in Right Processes of Thinking

**Prov. 23:26** "My son, give me thy heart; and let thine eyes delight in [or, "observe," *footnote*] my ways."

**Rom. 8:5-8** "For those who are in accord with the flesh set their minds on the things of the flesh, but those in accord with the spirit on the things of the spirit. For the minding of the flesh means death, but the minding of the spirit means life and peace; because the minding of the flesh means enmity with God, for it is not under subjection to the law of God, nor, in fact, can it be. So those who are in harmony with the flesh cannot please God."

## Love of God Essential

**Matt. 22:37** "He said to him: 'You must love Jehovah your God with your whole heart and with your whole soul and with your whole mind.'"

## Being of a Double Mind Is Fatal

**Ps. 119:113** "I hate them that are of a double mind; but thy law do I love."

**Rev. 3:16** "So, because you are lukewarm and neither hot nor cold, I am going to vomit you out of my mouth."

## Positive Thinking Required, Considering Forward-looking Plans

**Phil. 3:13-16** "Forgetting the things behind and stretching

forward to the things ahead, I am pursuing down toward the goal for the prize of the calling above and which God extends in Christ Jesus. Let us, then, as many of us as are mature, be of this mental attitude; and if you are mentally inclined otherwise in any respect, God will reveal the above attitude to you. At any rate, to what extent we have made progress, let us go on walking orderly in this same routine."

**Phil. 2:5** "Keep this mental attitude in you which was also in Christ Jesus."

## Must Get Truth into Mind and Heart, Making It One's Motivating Force, Not Being Overburdened with Cares of This World

**Luke 8:5-8, 11, 13-15** "A sower went out to sow his seed. Well, as he was sowing, some of it . . . landed upon the rock-mass, and, after sprouting, it dried up because of not having moisture. Some other fell among the thorns, and the thorns that grew up with it choked it off. Some other fell upon the good soil, and, after sprouting, it produced fruit a hundredfold. . . . Now the illustration means this: The seed is the word of God. Those upon the rock-mass are the ones who, when they hear it, receive the word with joy, but these have no root; they believe for a season, but in a season of testing they fall away. As for that which fell among the thorns, these are the ones that have heard, but, by being carried away by anxieties and wealth and pleasures of this life, they are completely choked and bring nothing to perfection. As for that on the right soil, these are the ones that, after hearing the word with a right and good heart, retain it and bear fruit with endurance."

## Accurate Knowledge of God's Requirements Necessary

**Col. 3:2, 9, 10** "Keep your minds fixed on the things above,



not on the things upon the earth. . . . Strip off the old personality with its practices, and clothe yourselves with the new personality which through accurate knowledge is being renewed according to the image of the one who created it."

### **Requirements of God Extend into Daily Living**

**1 Tim. 6:13, 14** "In the sight of God who preserves all things alive and of Christ Jesus, who as a witness made the right public declaration in the audience of Pontius Pilate, I give you orders that you observe the commandment in a spotless and irreprehensible way until the manifestation of our Lord Jesus Christ."

**Jas. 1:27** "The form of worship that is clean and undefiled from the standpoint of our God and Father is this: to care for orphans and widows in their tribulation, and to keep oneself without spot from the world."

### **Everyday Affairs of Life Should Be Governed by Mental Attitude Toward Christ**

**1 Pet. 1:13-16** "Hence brace up your minds for activity, keep completely balanced and set your hope upon the undeserved kindness that is to be brought to you at the revelation of Jesus Christ. As obedient children, quit being fashioned according to the desires you formerly had in your ignorance, but, in accord with the holy one who called you, do you also become holy yourselves in all your conduct, because it is written: 'You must be holy, because I am holy.'"

### **Gossip and Backbiting, Thoughtless, Tactless and Unkind Remarks Avoided**

**Jas. 1:26** "If any man seems to himself to be a formal worshiper and yet does not bridle his tongue, but goes on deceiving his own heart, this man's form of worship is futile."

**Jas. 3:6, 8-10** "The tongue is a fire. The tongue is constituted a world of unrighteousness among our members, for it spots up all the body and sets the wheel of natural life aflame and it is set aflame by Gehenna. . . . An unruly injurious thing, it is full of death-dealing poison. With it we bless Jehovah, even the Father, and yet with it we curse men who have come into existence 'in the likeness of God' . . . . It is not proper, my brothers, for these things to go on occurring this way."

**Prov. 16:28** "A whisperer separateth chief friends."

### **Uninvited Meddling in Others' Personal Affairs Condemned**

**1 Tim. 5:13** "At the same time they also learn to be unoccupied, gadding about to the houses, yes, not only unoccupied, but also gossipers and meddlers in other people's affairs, talking of things they ought not."

**1 Pet. 4:15** "However, let none of you suffer as a murderer or a thief or an evildoer or as a busybody in other people's matters."

### **Disagreements and Strife Forgotten**

**1 Cor. 3:3** "For you are yet fleshly. For whereas there are jealousy and strife among you, are you not fleshly and are you not walking as men do?"

### **Maliciously Criticizing Others' Shortcomings Improper**

**Gal. 6:1** "Brothers, even though a man takes some false step before he is aware of it, you who have spiritual qualifications try to restore such a man in a spirit of mildness, as you each keep an eye on yourself, for fear you also may be tempted."

### **Closeness of Family Relationship in Congregation Requires Continued United Effort Abounding in Love**

**Col. 3:12-14** "Accordingly, as God's chosen ones, holy and loved,

clothe yourselves with the tender affections of compassion, kindness, lowliness of mind, mildness and longsuffering. Continue putting up with one another and forgiving one another freely if anyone has a cause for complaint against another. Even as Jehovah freely forgave you, so do you also. But, besides all these things, clothe yourselves with love, for it is a perfect bond of union."

**Phil. 1:27, 28** "Only behave in a manner worthy of the good news about the Christ, . . . standing firm in one spirit, with one soul fighting side by side for the faith of the good news, and in no respect being frightened by your opponents. This very thing is a proof of destruction for them, but of salvation for you; and this indication is from God."

**Gal. 6:2** "Go on carrying the burdens of one another, and thus fulfill the law of the Christ."

#### **Personal Family Dissensions, Contentiousness Should Be Overcome**

**Col. 3:18-21** "You wives, be in subjection to your husbands, as it is becoming in the Lord. You husbands, keep on loving your wives and do not be bitterly angry with them. You children, be obedient to your parents in everything, for this is well-pleasing in the Lord. You fathers, do not be exasperating your children, so that they do not become downhearted."

#### **Balanced Viewpoint Maintained Through Proper Moderation in Eating, Drinking**

**Phil. 4:5, 6** "Let your reasonableness become known to all men. . . . Do not be anxious over anything, but in everything by prayer and supplication along with thanksgiving let your petitions be made known to God."

**Prov. 23:20, 21** "Be not among winebibbers, among gluttonous

eaters of flesh: for the drunkard and the glutton shall come to poverty; and drowsiness will clothe a man with rags."

**1 Tim. 5:23** "Do not drink water any longer, but use a little wine for the sake of your stomach and your frequent cases of sickness."

**1 Tim. 3:8** "Ministerial servants should likewise be serious, not double-tongued, not giving themselves to a lot of wine."

**Rom. 14:21** "It is well not to eat flesh or to drink wine or do anything over which your brother stumbles."

#### **Individual Decision Necessary as to Choice of Entertainment, Re- membering Christ Is Model**

**Col. 3:17** "And whatever it is that you do in word or in work, do everything in the name of the Lord Jesus, thanking God the Father through him."

**1 Cor. 10:31** "Therefore, whether you are eating or drinking or doing anything else, do all things for God's glory."

**1 Pet. 2:21** "In fact, to this course you were called, because even Christ suffered for you, leaving you a model for you to follow his steps closely."

#### **One's Own Conscience, Trained in God's Word, to Determine Choice as to Work and Other Such Activities**

**Acts 24:16** "In this respect, indeed, I am exercising myself continually to have a consciousness of committing no offense against God and men."

**Rom. 14:4** "Who are you to judge the house servant of another? To his own master he stands or falls. Indeed, he will be made to stand, for Jehovah can make him stand."

**1 Cor. 10:29, 30** "Why should it be that my freedom is judged by another person's conscience? If I am partaking with thanks, why am I to be spoken of abusively over that for which I give thanks?"

**1 Tim. 3:9** "Holding the sacred secret of the faith with a clean conscience."

### **Not to Cheat Employer but Give Full Day's Work**

**Col. 3:22-25** "You slaves, be obedient in everything to those who are your masters in a fleshly sense, not with acts of eyeservice, as men-pleasers, but with sincerity of heart, with fear of Jehovah. Whatever you are doing, work at it whole-souled as to Jehovah, and not to men, for you know that it is from Jehovah you will receive the due reward of the inheritance. You are slaves to the Master Christ. Certainly the man that is doing unrighteousness will receive back what he unrighteously did, and there is no partiality."

### **Godly Conduct Outside the Organization Imperative**

**1 Tim. 6:1** "Let as many as are slaves under a yoke keep on considering their owners worthy of full honor, that the name of God and the teaching may never be spoken of injuriously."

**1 Tim. 3:7** "Moreover, he should also have a favorable testimony from people on the outside, in order that he might not fall into reproach and a snare of the Devil."

### **Must Be Example of New-World Living, Not Compromising with Uncleaness Just to Appear "Good Fellow"**

**Eph. 5:1, 3, 4** "Therefore, become imitators of God, as beloved children. Let fornication and uncleanness of every kind or greediness not even be mentioned among you, just as it befits holy people, neither shameful conduct nor foolish talking nor obscene jesting, things which are not becoming, but rather the giving of thanks."

**1 Pet. 4:3-5** "For the time that has passed by is sufficient for you to have worked out the will of

the nations when you proceeded in deeds of loose conduct, lusts, excesses with wine, revelries, drinking matches, and idolatries that are without legal restraint. Because you do not continue running with them in this course to the same low sink of debauchery, they are puzzled and go on speaking abusively of you. But these people will render an account to the one ready to judge those living and those dead."

**1 Pet. 3:16, 17** "Hold a good conscience, so that in the particular in which you are spoken against they may get ashamed who are speaking slightly of your good conduct in connection with Christ. For it is better to suffer because you are doing good, if the will of God wishes it, than because you are doing evil."

### **Compromising Righteous Principles Is Beginning of Apostasy**

**Col. 1:23** "Continue in the faith, established on the foundation and steadfast and not being shifted away from the hope of that good news which you heard, and which was preached in all creation that is under heaven."

**1 Tim. 1:18-20** "Go on waging the right warfare, holding faith and a good conscience, which some have thrust aside and have experienced shipwreck concerning their faith. Hymenaeus and Alexander belong to these, and I have handed them over to Satan that they may be taught by discipline not to blaspheme."

**2 Tim. 2:18, 19** "These very men have deviated from the truth, saying that the resurrection has already occurred, and they are subverting the faith of some. For all that, the solid foundation of God stays standing, having this seal, 'Jehovah knows those who belong to him,' and, 'Let everyone mentioning the name of Jehovah renounce unrighteousness.'"

## Mind Must Be Continually Filled with Right Matters

**Phil. 4:8** "Finally, brothers, whatever things are true, whatever things are of serious concern, whatever things are righteous, whatever things are chaste, whatever things are lovable, whatever things are well spoken of, whatever virtue there is and whatever praiseworthy thing there is, continue considering these things."

## Requires Constant Self-Discipline in Even the Smallest Matters of Daily Living, as Children Receive Correction from a Father

**Heb. 12:5, 6, 11-17** "My son, do not belittle the discipline from Jehovah, neither give out when you are corrected by him; for whom Jehovah loves he disciplines, in fact he scourges everyone whom he receives as a son." True, no discipline seems for the present to be joyous, but grievous; yet afterward to those who have been trained by it it yields peaceable fruit, namely, righteousness. Hence lift up the hands that hang down and strengthen the enfeebled knees, and keep making straight paths for your feet, that what is lame may not be put out of joint, but rather that it may be healed. Pursue peace with all people, and the sanctification without which no man will see the Lord, carefully watching that no one may be deprived of the undeserved kindness of God; that no poisonous root may spring up and cause trouble and many be defiled by it; that there may be no fornicator nor anyone not appreciating sacred things, like Esau, who in exchange for one meal gave away his rights as firstborn. For you know that afterward also when he wanted to inherit the blessing he was rejected, for, although he earnestly sought a change of mind with tears, he found no place for it."

## Continued Personal Study Necessary

**1 Tim. 4:6** "By giving these advices to the brothers you will be a right kind of minister of Christ Jesus, one nourished with the words of the faith and of the right teaching which you have followed closely."

**2 Tim. 2:15** "Do your utmost to present yourself approved to God, a workman with nothing to be ashamed of, handling the word of the truth aright."

## Regular Attendance at Congregational Meetings Essential to Receive Full Direction of Holy Spirit

**2 Pet. 1:20, 21** "No prophecy of Scripture springs from any private release [or, "comes out of private disclosure," *footnote*]. For prophecy was at no time brought by man's will, but men spoke from God as they were borne along by holy spirit."

**Acts 2:46, 47** "And day after day they were in constant attendance at the temple with one accord, and they took their meals in private homes and partook of nourishment with great rejoicing and sincerity of heart, praising God and finding acceptance with all the people. At the same time Jehovah continued to join to them daily those being saved."

**Heb. 10:25** "Not forsaking the gathering of ourselves together, as some have the custom, but encouraging one another, and all the more so as you behold the day drawing near."

## Association in a Social Way with Those Outside the Truth Is Dangerous

**1 Cor. 15:33** "Do not be misled. Bad associations spoil useful habits."

**2 Cor. 6:14, 15** "Do not become unevenly yoked with unbelievers. For what partnership do righteousness and lawlessness have? Or what fellowship does light have with darkness? Further,

what harmony is there between Christ and Belial? Or what portion does a faithful person have with an unbeliever?"

### **Associate with Christian Brothers; Help, Edify One Another**

**Acts 2:42** "And they continued devoting themselves to the teaching of the apostles and to association together, to taking of meals and to prayers."

**1 Thess. 5:11** "Therefore keep comforting one another and building one another up, just as you are in fact doing."

**Luke 24:32** "And they said to each other: 'Were not our hearts burning as he was speaking to us on the road, as he was fully opening up the Scriptures to us?'"

**Heb. 2:17** "Consequently he was obliged to become like his 'brothers' in all respects, that he might become a merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to God, in order to offer propitiatory sacrifice for the sins of the people."

**Heb. 3:13** "Keep on exhorting one another each day, as long as it may be called 'Today.'"

### **Modern Assembly of New World Society of Far Greater Significance and Awe-inspiring Splendor than Assembly of Israel at Mt. Sinai**

**Ps. 68:8** "The earth trembled, the heavens also dropped rain at the presence of God: yon Sinai trembled at the presence of God, the God of Israel."

**Ex. 19:18, 19** "And mount Sinai, the whole of it, smoked, be-

cause Jehovah descended upon it in fire; and the smoke thereof ascended as the smoke of a furnace, and the whole mount quaked greatly. And when the voice of the trumpet waxed louder and louder, Moses spake, and God answered him by a voice."

**Heb. 12:18, 19, 22-24** "For you have not approached that which can be felt and which has been set aflame with fire, and a dark cloud and thick darkness and a tempest, and the blare of a trumpet and the voice of words, on hearing which voice the people implored that no word should be added to them. But you have approached a mount Zion and a city of the living God, heavenly Jerusalem, and myriads of angels, in general assembly, and the congregation of the firstborn who have been enrolled in the heavens, and God the Judge of all, and the spiritual lives of righteous ones who have been made perfect, and Jesus the mediator of a new covenant, and the blood of sprinkling which speaks in a better way than Abel's blood."

### **Full and Complete Giving of Self Certain to Bring God's Reward**

**Mal. 3:10** "Bring ye the whole tithe into the store-house, that there may be food in my house, and prove me now herewith, saith Jehovah of hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing, that there shall not be room enough to receive it."

# Prayer

## DEFINITION

True prayer is an earnest petition, offered to the right one, in the right manner, and on right matters. Prayers of the Christian are offered only to Jehovah God as the Right One, the Supreme One of the universe. Prayer is therefore offered reverently, with proper

recognition of the supremacy of the one being addressed and the inferiority of the one praying. The right manner of approach is only through and in the name of Jesus Christ. Prayers are recognized only in request for those things that are right matters as authorized by Jehovah himself. Failure in any one of the three essentials will render the prayer unacceptable. Only prayers of the righteous are answered.

### **Prayer Properly Directed Only to Jehovah God**

**Ps. 5:1, 2** "Give ear to my words, O Jehovah, consider my meditation. Harken unto the voice of my cry, my King, and my God; for unto thee do I pray."

**Ps. 65:1, 2** "Praise waiteth for thee, O God, in Zion; and unto thee shall the vow be performed. O thou that hearest prayer, unto thee shall all flesh come."

**Ps. 143:1** "Hear my prayer, O Jehovah; give ear to my supplications: in thy faithfulness answer me, and in thy righteousness."

**Matt. 6:9** "You must pray, then, this way: 'Our Father in the heavens.'"

**Phil. 4:6** "Do not be anxious over anything, but in everything by prayer and supplication along with thanksgiving let your petitions be made known to God."

### **Not to Idols, "Saints" or Creatures**

**Ps. 115:4-6** "Their idols are silver and gold, the work of men's hands.... They have ears, but they hear not."

**1 Cor. 8:4-6** "Now concerning ... foods offered to idols, we know that an idol is nothing in the world and that there is no God but one. For even though there are those who are called 'gods', whether in heaven or on earth, just as there are many 'gods' and many 'lords', there is actually to us one God the Father."

**Isa. 45:20** "They have no knowledge that carry the wood of their graven image, and pray unto a god that cannot save."

**1 Tim. 2:5** "For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, a man Christ Jesus."

### **Prayer to God Directed Only Through and in Name of Jesus Christ**

**John 14:6, 14** "Jesus said to him: 'I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me. If you ask anything in my name, I will do it.'"

**John 16:23-27** "In that day you will ask in my name, and I do not say to you that I shall make request of the Father concerning you. For the Father himself has affection for you, because you have had affection for me and have believed that I came out as the Father's representative."

**Rom. 16:27** "To God wise alone be the glory through Jesus Christ forever. Amen."

### **Properly Closed with "Amen"**

**1 Cor. 14:16** "Otherwise, if you offer praise with a gift of the spirit, how will the man occupying the seat of the ordinary person say Amen to your giving of thanks?"

**Rev. 5:14** "And the four living creatures went to saying, 'Amen!' and the persons of advanced age fell down and worshiped."

**1 Chron. 16:36** "Blessed be Jehovah, the God of Israel, from everlasting even to everlasting. And all the people said, Amen, and praised Jehovah."

**Ps. 72:19, 20** "And blessed be his glorious name for ever; and let the whole earth be filled with his glory. Amen, and Amen. The

prayers of David the son of Jesse are ended."

Also: Deut. 27:14-26; Ps. 41:13; 89:52; Gal. 6:18; Jude 25.

### Jehovah's Power to Hear and Answer Prayer Unlimited

Isa. 65:24 "And it shall come to pass that, before they call, I will answer; and while they are yet speaking, I will hear."

Eph. 3:20, 21 "Now to the one who can, according to his power which is operating in us, do more than superabundantly beyond all the things we ask or conceive, to him be the glory."

### Great Prayer Test Shows Jehovah's Superiority in Hearing and Answering Prayer

1 Ki. 18:20-40 "And they took the bullock which was given them, and they dressed it, and called on the name of Baal from morning even until noon, saying, O Baal, hear us. But there was no voice, nor any that answered. And they leaped about the altar which was made. . . . And they cried aloud, and cut themselves after their manner with knives and lances, till the blood gushed out upon them. . . . but there was neither voice, nor any to answer, nor any that regarded. . . . And it came to pass at the time of the offering of the evening oblation, that Elijah the prophet came near, and said, . . . Hear me, O Jehovah, hear me, that this people may know that thou, Jehovah, art God, and that thou hast turned their heart back again. Then the fire of Jehovah fell, and consumed the burnt-offering, and the wood, and the stones, and the dust, and licked up the water that was in the trench. And when all the people saw it, they fell on their faces: and they said, Jehovah, he is God."

### Prayer Should Be Reverent, in Spirit and Truth

John 4:23 "On the contrary, the hour is coming, and it is now, when the genuine wor-

shippers will worship the Father with spirit and truth."

Ps. 145:18 "Jehovah is nigh unto all them that call upon him, to all that call upon him in truth."

### Practice of Using Rosaries and Similar "Aids" in Repetition Forbidden

Matt. 6:7, 8 "But when praying, do not say the same things over and over again, just as the people of the nations do, for they imagine they will get a hearing for their use of many words. So, do not make yourselves like them, for God your Father knows what things you are needing before ever you ask him."

Acts 19:34 "When they recognized that he was a Jew, one cry arose from them all as they shouted for about two hours: 'Great is Artemis of the Ephesians!'"

### Manner of Posture in Prayer Not Prescribed or Limited

2 Chron. 6:12, 14 "And he [Solomon] stood before the altar of Jehovah in the presence of all the assembly of Israel, and spread forth his hands and he said, O Jehovah, the God of Israel, there is no God like thee, in heaven, or on earth."

1 Sam. 1:12, 13 "And it came to pass, as she continued praying before Jehovah, that Eli marked her mouth. Now Hannah, she spake in her heart; only her lips moved, but her voice was not heard."

Neh. 8:6 "And Ezra blessed Jehovah, the great God; and all the people answered, Amen, Amen, with the lifting up of their hands: and they bowed their heads, and worshipped Jehovah with their faces to the ground."

Dan. 6:10 "Daniel . . . kneeled upon his knees three times a day, and prayed, and gave thanks before his God."

Matt. 26:39 "And going a little way forward, he fell upon his face, praying."

**Mark 11:25** "When you stand praying, forgive."

**Luke 22:41** "And he himself drew away from them about a stone's throw, and bent his knees and began to pray."

**John 11:41** "Now Jesus raised his eyes heavenward and said: 'Father, I thank you that you have heard me.'"

**Eph. 6:18** "While with every form of prayer and supplication you carry on prayer on every occasion in spirit."

**1 Tim. 2:8** "Therefore I desire that in every place the men carry on prayer, lifting up hands of loving-kindness."

**When Leading in Prayer Women Should Have Head Covered; Men, Head Uncovered**

**1 Cor. 11:4, 5, 7, 10, 16** "Every man that prays or prophesies having something on his head shames the one who is his head; but every woman that prays or prophesies with her head unveiled shames the one who is her head, for it is one and the same as if she were a woman with a shaved head. For a man ought not to have his head veiled, as he is God's image and glory; but the woman is man's glory. That is why the woman ought to have a sign of authority upon her head because of the angels. However, if any man seems to dispute for some other custom, we have no other, neither do the congregations of God."

**Perseverance in Prayer Encouraged**

**Col. 4:2** "Be persevering in prayer, remaining awake in it with thanksgiving."

**Luke 18:1-8** "Then he went on to tell them an illustration with regard to the need for them always to pray and not to give up, . . . 'Certainly, then, shall not God cause justice to be done to his chosen ones who cry aloud to him day and night, even though he is longsuffering toward them?'"

**Rom. 12:12** "Rejoice in the hope ahead. Endure under tribulation. Persevere in prayer."

**Hypocritical Public Prayers Condemned**

**Matt. 6:5, 6** "Also when you pray, you must not be as the hypocrites; because they like to pray standing in the synagogues and on the corners of the broad ways to be visible to men. Truly I say to you, They are having their reward in full. You, however, when you pray, go into your private room and, after shutting your door, pray to your Father who is in secret; then your Father who looks on in secret will repay you."

**Luke 18:9-14** "Two men went up into the temple to pray, the one a Pharisee and the other a tax collector. The Pharisee stood and began to pray these things to himself: 'O God, I thank you I am not as the rest of men, extortioners, unrighteous, adulterers, or even as this tax collector. I fast twice a week, I give the tenth of all things I acquire.'"

**Mark 12:40** "They are the ones devouring the houses of the widows and for a pretext making long prayers; these will receive a heavier judgment."

**Congregational Prayers Acceptable**

**Acts 1:14** "With one accord all these were persisting in prayer, together with some women and Mary the mother of Jesus and with his brothers."

**Acts 4:23-31** "Upon hearing this they with one accord raised their voices to God and said: 'Sovereign Lord, you are the One who made the heaven and the earth and the sea and all the things in them,' . . . And when they had made supplication, the place in which they were assembled was shaken, and they were one and all filled with the holy spirit and were speaking the word of God with boldness."



**Acts 20:36** "And when he had said these things, he kneeled down with all of them and prayed."

**1 Ki. 8:22, 23** "And Solomon stood before the altar of Jehovah in the presence of all the assembly of Israel, and spread forth his hands toward heaven; and he said, O Jehovah, the God of Israel, there is no God like thee, in heaven above, or on earth beneath."

### **Jesus Showed Order of Importance of Right Matters**

**Matt. 6:9-13** "Our Father in the heavens, let your name be sanctified. Let your kingdom come. Let your will come to pass, as in heaven, also upon earth. Give us today our bread for this day; and forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors. And do not bring us into temptation, but deliver us from the wicked one."

### **Other Right Matters and Occasions for Prayer**

#### ***For food***

**Prov. 30:7-9** "Two things have I asked of thee; . . . give me neither poverty nor riches; feed me with the food that is needful for me: lest I be full, and deny thee, and say, Who is Jehovah? or lest I be poor, and steal."

#### ***For forgiveness***

**Mark 11:25** "And when you stand praying, forgive whatever you have against anyone, in order that your Father who is in the heavens may also forgive you your trespasses."

#### ***Against temptation***

**Matt. 26:41** "Keep on the watch and praying, that you may not enter into temptation."

#### ***To know God's will***

**Ps. 25:4, 5** "Show me thy ways, O Jehovah; teach me thy paths. Guide me in thy truth, and teach me."

### ***For knowledge***

**Ps. 119:66** "Teach me good judgment and knowledge; for I have believed in thy commandments."

### ***For understanding***

**1 Ki. 3:7, 9** "O Jehovah my God, . . . Give thy servant therefore an understanding heart to judge thy people, that I may discern between good and evil."

### ***In praise***

**Dan. 2:23** "I thank thee, and praise thee, O thou God of my fathers, who hast given me wisdom and might."

### ***In thanksgiving***

**1 Thess. 5:17, 18** "Pray incessantly. In connection with everything give thanks."

### ***At meals***

**Luke 24:30** "As he was reclining with them at the meal he took the loaf, blessed it, broke it and began to hand it to them."

### ***At Memorial***

**1 Cor. 11:23, 24** "The Lord Jesus in the night in which he was going to be handed over took a loaf and, after giving thanks, he broke it and said: 'This means my body.'"

### ***For congregation***

**Num. 21:7** "And the people came to Moses, and said, We have sinned, because we have spoken against Jehovah, and against thee; pray unto Jehovah, that he take away the serpents from us. And Moses prayed for the people."

### ***For family***

**Job 1:5** "Job . . . rose up early in the morning, and offered burnt-offerings according to the number of them all: for Job said, It may be that my sons have sinned, and renounced God in their hearts."

**For friends**

**Job 42:10** "And Jehovah turned the captivity of Job, when he prayed for his friends."

**For theocratic ministers**

**Rom. 15:30-32** "Now I exhort you, brothers, through our Lord Jesus Christ and through the love of the spirit, that you exert yourselves with me in prayers to God for me, that I may be delivered from the unbelievers in Judea and that my ministry which is for Jerusalem may prove to be acceptable to the holy ones."

**For persecuted**

**Acts 12:5** "Consequently Peter was being kept in the prison; but prayer to God for him was being carried on intensely by the congregation."

**For peace of organization**

**Ps. 122:6** "Pray for the peace of Jerusalem: they shall prosper that love thee."

**For spiritually sick**

**Jas. 5:13-15** "Is there anyone suffering evil among you? Let him carry on prayer.... Is there anyone sick among you? Let him call the older men of the congregation to him, and let them pray over him."

**For persecutors**

**Matt. 5:44** "However, I say to you: Continue to love your enemies and to pray for those persecuting you."

**For deliverance**

**Ps. 143:9** "Deliver me, O Jehovah, from mine enemies: I flee unto thee to hide me."

**For destruction of wicked**

**Ps. 59:5, 13** "O Jehovah God of hosts, the God of Israel, arise to visit all the nations: be not merciful to any wicked transgressors. Consume them in wrath, consume them, so that they shall be no more."

**Prayers for World Affairs Unanswered Since Asked Amiss**

**John 17:9** "I make request concerning them; I make request, not concerning the world, but concerning those you have given me."

**Jas. 4:3, 4** "You do ask, and yet you do not receive, because you are asking for a wrong purpose, that you may expend it upon your cravings for sensual pleasure. Adulteresses, do you not know that the friendship with the world is enmity with God?"

**Isa. 1:15** "And when ye spread forth your hands, I will hide mine eyes from you; yea, when ye make many prayers, I will not hear: your hands are full of blood."

**Prayers for Rulers' Favorable Action Toward Ministry Authorized**

**1 Tim. 2:1-4** "I therefore exhort first of all that supplications, prayers, intercessions, offerings of thanks, be made concerning all kinds of men, concerning kings and all those who are in high station, in order that we may go on leading a calm and quiet life with full godly devotion and seriousness. This is right and acceptable in the sight of our Savior."

**Jer. 29:7** "And seek the peace of the city whither I have caused you to be carried away captive, and pray unto Jehovah for it; for in the peace thereof shall ye have peace."

**Ezra 6:1-10** "That they may offer sacrifices of sweet savor unto the God of heaven, and pray for the life of the king, and of his sons."

**Neh. 1:11-2:8** "O Lord, I beseech thee, let now thine ear be attentive to the prayer of thy servant... and prosper, I pray thee, thy servant this day, and grant him mercy in the sight of this man." "Now I was cupbearer to the king. . . . Then the king said unto me, For what dost thou

make request? So I prayed to the God of heaven. And I said unto the king, . . . And the king granted me, according to the good hand of my God upon me."

**Acts 26:28-32** "At this Paul said [to King Agrippa]: 'I could wish to God that whether in a short time or in a long time not only you but also all those who hear me today would become men such as I also am, with the exception of these bonds.' And the king rose . . . saying: 'This man practices nothing deserving death or bonds.'"

**Col. 4:3** "At the same time praying also for us, that God may open a door of utterance to us, to speak the sacred secret about the Christ."

**Also: Esther 4:16; 5:2.**

### **Prayers of Wicked Unanswered**

**Prov. 15:29** "Jehovah is far from the wicked; but he heareth the prayer of the righteous."

**Prov. 28:9** "He that turneth away his ear from hearing the law, even his prayer is an abomination."

**Mic. 3:4** "Then shall they cry unto Jehovah, but he will not answer them; yea, he will hide his face from them at that time, according as they have wrought evil in their doings."

**Zech. 7:12, 13** "Yea, they made their hearts as an adamant stone, lest they should hear the law, and the words which Jehovah of hosts had sent by his spirit by the former prophets: therefore there came great wrath from Jehovah of hosts. And it is come to pass that, as he cried, and they would not hear, so they shall cry,

and I will not hear, said Jehovah of hosts."

### **Only Righteous Ones Among "Strangers" or "Dedicated" Ones Are Heard in Prayer**

**Prov. 15:8** "The sacrifice of the wicked is an abomination to Jehovah; but the prayer of the upright is his delight."

**1 Pet. 3:12** "For Jehovah's eyes are upon the righteous and his ears are toward their supplication, but Jehovah's face is against those doing injurious things."

**Ps. 34:15, 17** "The eyes of Jehovah are toward the righteous, and his ears are open unto their cry. The righteous cried, and Jehovah heard, and delivered them out of all their troubles."

**Isa. 56:6, 7** "Also the foreigners that join themselves to Jehovah, to minister unto him, and to love the name of Jehovah, to be his servants, . . . even them will I bring to my holy mountain, and make them joyful in my house of prayer."

**Acts 10:30, 31** "Accordingly Cornelius said: 'Four days ago counting from this hour I was praying in my house at the ninth hour, when, look! a man in bright raiment stood before me and said: "Cornelius, your prayer has been favorably heard."'"

**1 John 3:22** "Whatever we ask we receive from him, because we are observing his commandments and are doing the things that are pleasing in his eyes."

**Matt. 7:8** "For everyone asking receives, and everyone seeking finds, and to everyone knocking it will be opened."

**Also: Jer. 29:12, 13.**

# **Purgatory**

## **DEFINITION**

"Purgatory (Lat., *purgāre*, to make clean, to purify) in accordance with Catholic teaching is a place or condition of temporal punishment for those who, departing this life in God's grace, are not en-

tirely free from venial faults, or have not fully paid the satisfaction due to their transgressions.... The souls therein detained are helped by the suffrages of the faithful, but principally by the acceptable sacrifice of the altar." (*The Catholic Encyclopedia*, Volume XII) *A false doctrine.*

## ORIGIN

"Whatever the views of some Church fathers on the subject, as a doctrine [purgatory] was unknown in the Christian Church for the first 600 years, and it does not appear to have been made an article of faith until the 10th century. ... 'Purgatory as a burning-away of sins,' said Doellinger at the Bonn Conference of Old Catholics in 1875, 'was an idea unknown in the East as well as the West till Gregory the Great [pope 595-604] introduced it.... Gregory the Great added the idea of a tormenting fire.'" (McClintock and Strong's *Cyclopædia*, Volume VIII, 1879 edition) Nowhere in any Catholic Bible translation is "purgatory" named. No Scripture text makes mention of a soul in "purgatory".

### Traditions of Men No Authority as to Truthfulness of a Doctrine; God's Word the Bible Is the True Guide

**Matt. 15:1-9, Dy** "Then came to him from Jerusalem scribes and Pharisees, saying: Why do thy disciples transgress the tradition of the ancients? For they wash not their hands when they eat bread. But he answering, said to them: Why do you also transgress the commandment of God for your tradition? ... Hypocrites, well hath Isaias prophesied of you, saying: This people honour-eth me with their lips: but their heart is far from me. And in vain do they worship me, teaching doctrines and commandments of men."

**Gal. 1:10-16, Dy** "I give you to understand, brethren, that the gospel which was preached by me is not according to man. For neither did I receive it of man, nor did I learn it but by the revelation of Jesus Christ. For you have heard of my conversation in time past in the Jews' religion: how that, beyond measure, I persecuted the church of God and wasted it. And I made progress in the Jews' religion above many of my equals in my own nation,

being more abundantly zealous for the traditions of my fathers."

**Col. 2:8, Dy** "Beware lest any man cheat you by philosophy and vain deceit; according to the tradition of men, according to the elements of the world and not according to Christ."

**John 8:31, 32, Dy** "Then Jesus said to those Jews who believed him: If you continue in my word, you shall be my disciples indeed. And you shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free."

**Isa. 8:20, Dy** "To the law rather, and to the testimony. And if they speak not according to this word, they shall not have the morning light."

### No Soul Is Conscious After Death to Be Tormented in "Purgatory". Hence Prayers for the Dead Accom- plish Nothing

**Ezek. 18:4, Dy** "Behold all souls are mine: as the soul of the father, so also the soul of the son is mine: the soul that sinneth, the same shall die."

**Eccl. 9:10, Dy** "Whatsoever thy hand is able to do, do it earnestly: for neither work, nor reason,

nor wisdom, nor knowledge, shall be in hell, whither thou art hastening."

**Isa. 38:18, Dy** "For hell shall not confess to thee, neither shall death praise thee: nor shall they that go down into the pit look for thy truth."

Also see "Soul".

**If Souls Were Already Alive and Cleansed by "Purgatory", Resurrection (or Raising Up Again to Life) Would Not Be Necessary**

**John 5:28, 29, Dy** "Wonder not at this: for the hour cometh, wherein all that are in the graves shall hear the voice of the Son of God. And they that have done good things shall come forth unto the resurrection of life: but they that have done evil, unto the resurrection of judgment."

**Matt. 22:31, 32, Dy** "And concerning the resurrection of the dead, have you not read that which was spoken by God, saying to you: I am the God of Abraham and the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob? He is not the God of the dead but of the living."

**John 11:25, 26, Dy** "Jesus said to her: I am the resurrection and the life: he that believeth in me, although he be dead, shall live: and every one that liveth and believeth in me shall not die for ever."

**Man's Sins Must Be Forgiven When Alive, Because Whether Dead in Christ or Asleep in Death, Sin Is Accounted Inactive**

**Rom. 6:6, 7, Dy** "Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin may be destroyed, to the end that we may serve sin no longer. For he that is dead is justified from sin." [NW: "Because we know that our old personality was impaled with him, that our sinful body

might be made inactive, that we should no longer go on being slaves to sin. For he who has died has been acquitted from his sin."]

**Acts 13:38, 39, Dy** "Through [Jesus] forgiveness of sins is preached to you: and from all the things from which you could not be justified by the law of Moses. In him every one that believeth is justified." [NW: "Through this One a forgiveness of sins is being published to you; and that from all the things from which you could not be declared guiltless by means of the law of Moses, everyone who believes is declared guiltless by means of this One."]

**Sins of Mankind Cleansed Completely Only by the Blood of Jesus**

**Isa. 1:18, Dy** "And then come and accuse me, saith the Lord. If your sins be as scarlet, they shall be made as white as snow: and if they be red as crimson, they shall be white as wool."

**Apoc. 7:9, 14, Dy** "After this, I saw a great multitude, . . . standing before the throne and in sight of the Lamb, clothed with white robes, . . . These are they who . . . have washed their robes, and have made them white in the blood of the Lamb."

**Heb. 9:22, Dy** "And almost all things, according to the law, are cleansed with blood: and without shedding of blood there is no remission."

**1 John 1:7, 9, Dy** "But if we walk in the light, as he also is in the light, we have fellowship one with another: and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin. If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just, to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all iniquity."

**"Cleansing Fire" Used Symbolically to Show Testing of Faith and Integrity in Perfecting God's Servants for Service, Not Just for the Sake of Their Own Forgiveness**

**Isa. 6:5-9, Dy** "And I said: Woe is me, because I have held my peace; because I am a man of unclean lips, and I dwell in the midst of a people that hath unclean lips, and I have seen with my eyes the King the Lord of hosts. And one of the seraphims flew to me: and in his hand was a live coal, which he had taken with the tongs off the altar. And he touched my mouth, and said: Behold this hath touched thy lips, and thy iniquities shall be taken away, and thy sin shall be cleansed. And I heard the voice of the Lord, saying: Whom shall I send, and who shall go for us? And I said: Lo, here am I. Send me. And he said: Go."

**Mal. 3:1-3, Dy** "The Lord whom you seek, and the angel of the testament whom you desire shall come to his temple. Behold he cometh, saith the Lord of hosts. And who shall be able to think of the day of his coming? and who shall stand to see him? for he is like a refining fire and like the fuller's herb. And he shall sit refining and cleansing the silver, and he shall purify the sons of Levi and shall refine them as gold and as silver: and they shall offer sacrifices to the Lord in justice."

**Heb. 9:14, Dy** "How much more shall the blood of Christ, who by the Holy Ghost offered himself unspotted unto God, cleanse our conscience from dead works, to serve the living God?"

**"Cleansing Fire" Is Shown to Test Man's Works and Faith and Purify Him When Living, Not After Death. Some Scarcely Saved from "Fire of Destruction"**

**1 Cor. 3:11-15, Dy** "For other foundation no man can lay, but

that which is laid: which is Christ Jesus. Now, if any man build upon this foundation, gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble: every man's work shall be manifest. For the day of the Lord shall declare it, because it shall be revealed in fire. And the fire shall try every man's work, of what sort it is. If any man's work abide, which he hath built thereupon, he shall receive a reward. If any man's work burn, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved, yet so as by fire."

**1 Pet. 1:7, Dy** "That the trial of your faith (much more precious than gold which is tried by the fire) may be found unto praise and glory and honour at the appearing of Jesus Christ." [NW: "In order that the tested quality of your faith, of much greater value than gold that perishes despite its being proved by fire, may be found a cause for praise and glory and honor at the revelation of Jesus Christ."]

**Jude 22, 23, Dy** "And some indeed reprove, being judged: but others save, putting them out of the fire." [NW: "Also continue showing mercy to some that have doubts; save them by snatching them out of the fire."]

**Amos 4:11, Dy** "I destroyed some of you, as God destroyed Sodom and Gomorrha, and you were as a firebrand plucked out of the burning: yet you returned not to me, saith the Lord."

**"Fire of Persecution" Means Sharing with Christ in His Suffering**

**1 Pet. 4:12, 13, Dy** "Dearly beloved, think not strange the burning heat which is to try you: as if some new thing happened to you. But if you partake of the sufferings of Christ, rejoice that, when his glory shall be revealed, you may also be glad with exceeding joy." [NW: "Beloved ones, do not be puzzled at the burning among you which is happening to

you for a trial, as though a strange thing were befalling you. On the contrary, go on rejoicing forasmuch as you are sharers in

the sufferings of the Christ, that you may rejoice and be overjoyed also during the revelation of his glory.”]

# Races of Mankind

## DEFINITION

All humankind, creatures of Jehovah God, with their distinctive variations of skin color, shape of head, size of skeleton, facial features, etc., but all of one created family “kind”, generated from the one father, Adam, who was originally created by God. All may freely and without difficulty intermarry and reproduce, thus proving they are of one “kind”, from one father.

### Created by Jehovah God

Gen. 1:26, 28 “God said, Let us make man [Heb., *adam*] in our image, after our likeness: ... and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it; and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the birds of the heavens, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth.”

Gen. 2:7, 21, 22 “And Jehovah God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul. And Jehovah God caused a deep sleep to fall upon the man, and he slept; and he took one of his ribs, and closed up the flesh instead thereof: and the rib which Jehovah God had taken from the man made he a woman, and brought her unto the man.”

Acts 17:29 “We are the progeny of God.”

Gen. 5:1, 2 “God created man, in the likeness of God made he him; male and female created he them, and blessed them, and called their name Adam, in the day when they were created.”

Genesis, Chapters 1, 2, Are Records of One Creation, Not Separate Creations

Matt. 19:4, 5 “Did you not read that he who created them at the

beginning made them male and female [Gen. 1:27] and said: ‘For this reason a man will leave his father and his mother and will stick to his wife, and the two will be one flesh?’” [Gen. 2:24]

Gen. 2:2-4 “And on the seventh day God finished his work which he had made; and he rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had made.”

Heb. 4:3, 4 “His works were finished from the foundation of the world. For in one place he has said of the seventh day as follows: ‘And God rested on the seventh day from all his works.’”

1 Cor. 15:45-49 “It is even so written: ‘The first man Adam became a living soul.’ The last Adam became a life-giving spirit. Nevertheless, the first is, not that which is spiritual, but that which is physical, ... The first man is out of the earth and made of dust; ... As the one made of dust is, so those made of dust are also; ... And just as we have borne the image of the one made of dust, we shall bear also the image of the heavenly one.”

All Mankind Sprang from Adam and Eve

Gen. 3:20 “And the man called his wife’s name Eve; because she was the mother of all living.”

Acts 17:26 “And he made out of one man every nation of men

to dwell upon the entire surface of the earth."

### **Cain Married One of His Sisters**

Gen. 5:4 "And the days of Adam after he begat Seth were eight hundred years; and he begat sons and daughters."

Gen. 4:16, 17 "And Cain went out from the presence of Jehovah, and dwelt in the land of Nod, on the east of Eden. And Cain knew his wife; and she conceived, and bare Enoch."

### **All Present Mankind Descended from Noah's Three Sons and Their Wives**

Gen. 9:18, 19 "And the sons of Noah, that went forth from the ark, were Shem, and Ham, and Japheth: and Ham is the father of Canaan. These three were the sons of Noah: and of these was the whole earth overspread."

1 Pet. 3:20 "The ark . . . in which a few people, that is, eight souls, were carried safely through the water."

### **All Came from 70 Original Families or Patriarchal Societies Spread Abroad After the Deluge**

Genesis, chapter 10, names 70 family or tribal heads from Noah's three sons (Nimrod, who was childless, not counted).

Gen. 10:32 "These are the families of the sons of Noah, after their generations, in their nations: and of these were the nations divided in the earth after the flood."

Gen. 10:25 "And unto Eber were born two sons: the name of the one was Peleg; for in his days was the earth divided."

Gen. 11:8 "So Jehovah scattered them abroad from thence upon the face of all the earth: and they left off building the city."

### **All "Races" Due to Hereditary Factors in Original Pair**

"Man, with a set of twenty-four chromosomes, has perhaps 100,000 genes, each one able to af-

fect in some way the size of the human body, the shape of the skull, the texture of skin, slant of eye, color of hair and so on. The genes were placed in the species [kinds] by the Creator at creation, together with a definite mechanism or orderly process by which they could at different times reveal their effects . . . If there are, as is practically certain, multiple factors for color of skin in man, and if Adam and Eve were mulattos—a shade a mixture of black, white, red, and yellow—it is easy for geneticists to see how their color genes could become grouped and selected by climatic influences so as to form the various colors of the races."—*After Its Kind*, by Byron C. Nelson (1931).

"In the human species [kind] there are variations in the skin, hair and eye colors, in the shape and distribution of hair, in the form of the head, nose and lips, in stature, in body proportions, in the chemical composition of the blood, in psychological traits, and so on. Each of these traits is influenced by several or by many genes. To be conservative, let us assume that the human species [kind] has only 1,000 genes and that each gene has only two variants. Even on this conservative basis, Mendelian segregation and recombination would be capable of producing  $2^{1000}$  different gene combinations in human beings.

"The number  $2^{1000}$  is easy to write but is utterly beyond comprehension."—Theodosius Dobzhansky, professor of zoology, Columbia University, in *Scientific American*, January, 1950.

### **Black "Race" Not from Curse on Canaan, Whose Descendants Were White. Black "Race" from Cush, Canaan's Brother**

Acts 17:26 "And he made out of one man every nation of men, to dwell upon the entire surface of the earth."



**Gen. 10:6** "And the sons of Ham: Cush, and Mizraim, and Put, and Canaan."

**Gen. 9:25** "And he [Noah] said, Cursed be Canaan."

**Gen. 10:7** "And the sons of Cush: Seba [Egypt and Ethiopia], and Havilah, and Sabtah, and Raamah, and Sabteca."

**Gen. 10:15-19** "And Canaan begat Sidon his first-born, and Heth, and the Jebusite, and the Amorite, and the Girgashite, and the Hivite, and the Arkite, and the Sinite, and the Arvadite and the Zemarite, and the Hamathite: . . . And the border of the Canaanite was from Sidon, as thou goest toward Gerar, unto Gaza; as thou goest toward Sodom and Gomorrah and Admah and Zeboiim, unto Lasha."

**Fact that All Are Sinners and Can Be Ransomed by One Man Proves All Descended from One Man, Through Whom Sin Came**

**Rom. 5:12, 14, 17-19** "That is why, just as through one man sin entered into the world and death through sin, and thus death spread to all men because they had all sinned—. Nevertheless, death ruled as king from Adam down to Moses, even over those who had not sinned after the likeness of the transgression by Adam, . . . For if by the trespass of the one man death ruled as king through that one, . . . So, then, as through one trespass the result to men of all kinds was condemnation, . . . For just as through the disobedience of the one man many were constituted sinners, likewise also through the obedience of the one person many will be constituted righteous."

**Ps. 51:5** "Behold, I was brought forth in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me."

**No Nation Is a "Super Race" or Superior Before God**

**Rom. 10:12** "For there is no distinction between Jew and Greek, for there is the same Lord

over all, who is rich to all those calling upon him."

**Rom. 15:10-12** (also Ps. 117:1) "Be glad, you nations, with his people." And again: 'Praise Jehovah, all you nations, and let all the peoples praise him.' . . . 'there will be one arising to rule nations; on him nations will rest their hope.'"

**Luke 3:8** "Do not start saying within yourselves, 'As a father we have Abraham.' For I say to you that God has power to raise up children to Abraham from these stones."

**Rom. 3:9-12** "Are we in a better position? Not at all! For above we have made the charge that Jews as well as Greeks are all under sin; just as it is written: 'There is not a righteous man, not even one; there is not a one that understands, there is not a one that seeks for God. All men have deflected, all of them together have become worthless; there is not a one that does good, there is not so much as one.'"

**Rom. 11:20, 21, 23** "All right! For their lack of faith they were broken off, but you are standing by faith. Quit having lofty ideas, but be in fear. For if God did not spare the natural branches, neither will he spare you. They also, if they do not remain in their lack of faith, will be grafted in; for God is able to graft them in again."

**Gen. 6:4, 13** "The Nephilim were in the earth in those days, and also after that, when the sons of God came in unto the daughters of men, and they bare children to them: the same were the mighty men that were of old, the men of renown. And God said unto Noah, The end of all flesh is come before me; for the earth is filled with violence through them; and, behold, I will destroy them with the earth."

### Nations Practicing Genocide Condemned

**Ex. 1:8-10, 16, 22** "Now there arose a new king over Egypt, who knew not Joseph. And he said unto his people, Behold, the people of the children of Israel are more and mightier than we: come, let us deal wisely with them, lest they multiply, and it come to pass, that, when there falleth out any war, they also join themselves unto our enemies, and fight against us, and get them up out of the land. And he said, When ye do the office of a midwife to the Hebrew women, and see them upon the birthstool; if it be a son, then ye shall kill him; but if it be a daughter, then she shall live. And Pharaoh charged all his people, saying, Every son that is born ye shall cast into the river, and every daughter ye shall save alive."

**Ps. 83:4, 6-8, 17** "They have said, Come, and let us cut them off from being a nation; that the name of Israel may be no more in remembrance. The tents of Edom and the Ishmaelites; Moab, and the Hagarenes; Gebal, and Ammon, and Amalek; Philistia with the inhabitants of Tyre: Assyria also is joined with them; they have helped the children of Lot. Let them be put to shame and dismayed for ever; yea, let them be confounded and perish."

### Jehovah's Nation and Those Blessed with It Are Composed of Men of All Kinds and of Peoples of All Nations

**Ps. 33:12** "Blessed is the nation whose God is Jehovah."

**Gal. 3:28** "There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor freeman, there is neither male nor female; for you are all one in union with Christ Jesus."

**Gen. 12:3** "I will bless them that bless thee, and him that curseth thee will I curse: and in thee shall all the families of the earth be blessed."

**Gen. 22:18** "In thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed."

**Ps. 117:1** "Oh praise Jehovah, all ye nations; laud him, all ye peoples."

**1 Tim. 2:3, 4** "God, whose will is that all kinds of men should be saved and come to an accurate knowledge of truth."

**Rev. 7:9** "After these things I saw, and, look! a great crowd, which no man was able to number, out of all nations and tribes and peoples and tongues, standing before the throne and before the Lamb."

**Rev. 21:3** "Look! the tent of God is with humankind, and he will reside with them and they will be his peoples."

**John 4:21, 23** "The hour is coming when neither in this mountain nor in Jerusalem will you people worship the Father. On the contrary, the hour is coming, and it is now, when the genuine worshipers will worship the Father with spirit and truth."

## Ransom

### DEFINITION

Ransom as an act means "to redeem from captivity, slavery, punishment, or the like, by paying a price; to buy out of bondage; to deliver, as from sin, its penalty, or the like; to be the redeemer of". (*Webster's New International Dictionary*) In the Bible a ransom means that

which buys back, loosens or releases, providing deliverance from trouble, distress and calamity, or, more especially, releasing from inherited sin and from prospects of eternal death as a result of sin. *A true Bible doctrine.*

### **Ransom Releases from Trouble and Distress**

**Ex. 6:6** "Say unto the children of Israel, I am Jehovah, and I will bring you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians, and I will rid you out of their bondage, and I will redeem you with an outstretched arm, and with great judgments."

**Ps. 107:2, 3** "Let the redeemed of Jehovah say so, whom he hath redeemed from the hand of the adversary, and gathered out of the lands, from the east and from the west, from the north and from the south."

**Jer. 31:10-12** "He that scattered Israel will gather him, and keep him, as a shepherd doth his flock. For Jehovah hath ransomed Jacob, and redeemed him from the hand of him that was stronger than he."

### **Man Needs a Ransom from Inherited Sin and Death**

**Ps. 51:5** "Behold, I was brought forth in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me."

**Rom. 5:12** "That is why, just as through one man sin entered into the world and death through sin, and thus death spread to all men because they had all sinned."

**Ps. 49:6, 7** "They that trust in their wealth, and boast themselves in the multitude of their riches; none of them can by any means redeem his brother, nor give to God a ransom for him."

### **God Makes Provision According to His Expressed Purpose**

**John 3:16, 17** "God . . . gave his only-begotten Son, in order that everyone exercising faith in him might not be destroyed but have everlasting life. For God sent forth his Son into the world."

**1 John 4:9, 14** "By this the love of God was made manifest in our case, because God sent forth his only-begotten Son into the world that we might gain life through him. In addition, we ourselves have beheld and are bearing witness that the Father has sent forth his Son as Savior of the world."

**John 17:3** "This means everlasting life, their taking in knowledge of you, the only true God, and of the one whom you sent forth, Jesus Christ."

### **Exact Price Needed for Human Life Rights Lost**

**Ex. 21:23, 24** "Then thou shalt give life for life, eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot."

**Ezek. 34:16** "I will seek that which was lost and will bring that which was driven away."

**Luke 19:10** "For the Son of man came to seek and to save what was lost."

**Rom. 5:19** "For just as through the disobedience of the one man many were constituted sinners, likewise also through the obedience of the one person many will be constituted righteous."

**1 Tim. 2:5, 6** "For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, a man Christ Jesus, who gave himself a corresponding ransom for all."

### **Perfect Human Life of Jesus Christ Meets All Requirements**

**Matt. 1:20, 21** "Mary . . . will give birth to a son, and you must call his name 'Jesus', for he will save his people from their sins."

**Acts 4:12** "Furthermore, there is no salvation in anyone else, for there is not another name under heaven that has been given among men by which we must get saved."

**Phil. 2:7, 8** "No, but he emptied himself and took a slave's form and came to be in the likeness of men. More than that, when he found himself in fashion as a man, he humbled himself and became obedient as far as death, yes, death on a torture stake."

**1 Pet. 1:18, 19** "For you know that it was not with corruptible things, with silver or gold, as a ransom that you were released from your fruitless form of conduct received by tradition from your forefathers. But it was with precious blood, like that of an unblemished and spotless lamb, even Christ's."

**Isa. 53:12** "Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he poured out his soul unto death, and was numbered with the transgressors: yet he bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors."

**Rev. 5:9** "You were slaughtered and with your blood you bought persons for God out of every tribe and tongue and people and nation."

**Heb. 9:22, 24-26** "Yes, nearly all things are cleansed with blood according to the Law, and unless blood is poured out no forgiveness takes place. For Christ entered, not into a holy place made with hands which is a copy of the reality, but into heaven itself, now to appear before the person of God for us. Neither is it in order that he should offer himself often, as indeed the high priest enters into the holy place from year to year with blood not his own. Otherwise, he would have to suffer often from the world's foundation. But now he has manifested himself once for all time at the consummation of the systems of things to put sin away through the sacrifice of himself."

**Eph. 1:7** "By means of him we have the release by ransom through the blood of that one, yes, the forgiveness of our tres-

passes, according to the riches of his undeserved kindness."

### Available to All Kinds of Men of Faith

**Rom. 5:18** "So, then, as through one trespass the result to men of all kinds was condemnation, likewise also through one act of justification the result to men of all kinds is a declaring of them righteous for life."

**John 3:36** "He that exercises faith in the Son has everlasting life; he that disobeys the Son will not see life, but the wrath of God remains upon him."

### Restores Man to God's Favor and Brings Life Everlasting

**Rom. 3:23-25** "For all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, and it is as a free gift that they are being declared righteous by his undeserved kindness through the release by the ransom paid by Christ Jesus. God set him forth as an offering for propitiation through faith in his blood. This was in order to exhibit his own righteousness because he was forgiving the sins that occurred in the past while God was exercising forbearance."

**Rom. 5:8, 10** "But God recommends his own love to us in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us. For if, when we were enemies, we became reconciled to God through the death of his Son, much more, now that we have become reconciled, we shall be saved by his life."

**Rom. 6:23** "For the wages sin pays is death, but the gift God gives is everlasting life by Christ Jesus our Lord."

**Col. 1:19, 20** "God saw good for all fullness to dwell in him and through him to reconcile again to himself all other things by making peace through the blood he shed on the torture stake."

**Heb. 10:19-22** "Therefore, brothers, since we have boldness for the way of entry into the

holy place by the blood of Jesus, which he inaugurated for us as a new and living way through the curtain, that is, his flesh, . . . let us approach with sincere hearts in the full assurance of faith, having had our hearts sprinkled from a wicked conscience and our bodies washed with clean water."

### **Those Not Ransomed Dead Eternally, Annihilated**

**Matt. 25:45, 46** "Truly I say to you, to the extent that you did

not do it to one of these least ones, you did not do it to me.' And these will depart into everlasting cutting-off, but the righteous ones into everlasting life."

**Prov. 10:7** "The memory of the righteous is blessed; but the name of the wicked shall rot."

**Jer. 51:57** "They shall sleep a perpetual sleep, and not wake, saith the King, whose name is Jehovah of hosts."

# Religion

## DEFINITION

A system of worship, a form of worship. It may be true or false worship. Religion may be either (1) natural religion or (2) revealed religion.

### **There Was Once Only One, the True Religion, c.4025 B. C.**

**Gen. 1:27-31** "And God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them. And God blessed them: and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it; and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the birds of the heavens, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth. . . . And God saw everything that he had made, and, behold, it was very good."

**Job 38:4, 7** "Where wast thou when I laid the foundations of the earth? . . . When the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy?"

### **Adam Worshiped Without Formalism, with Simple Obedience of a Son Doing a Father's Will, in Spirit and in Truth**

**Luke 3:38** "Adam, the son of God."

**Gen. 2:15, 19, 20** "And Jehovah took the man, and put him into the garden of Eden to dress

it and to keep it. And out of the ground Jehovah God formed every beast of the field, and every bird of the heavens; and brought them unto the man to see what he would call them: and whatsoever the man called every living creature, that was the name thereof. And the man gave names to all cattle, and to the birds of the heavens, and to every beast of the field."

### **False Religion Originated, Introduced by Traitorous Angel**

**2 Cor. 11:3** "The serpent seduced Eve."

**Rev. 12:9** "The original serpent, the one called Devil and Satan, who is misleading the entire inhabited earth."

**John 8:44** "You are from your father the Devil and you wish to do the desires of your father. That one was a manslayer when he began and he did not stand fast in the truth, because truth is not in him. When he speaks the lie, he speaks according to his own disposition, because he is a liar and the father of the lie."

**Ezek. 28:14, 15** "Thou wast the anointed cherub that covereth;

and I set thee, so that thou wast upon the holy mountain of God; thou hast walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire. Thou wast perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created, till unrighteousness was found in thee."

**False Religion Entered a Sinless Universe by 'Covering Cherub' Entertaining Idea of Wrong Course, Becoming Covetous**

**Ezek. 28:16-18** "By the abundance of thy traffic they filled the midst of thee with violence, and thou hast sinned.... Thy heart was lifted up because of thy beauty; thou hast corrupted thy wisdom by reason of thy brightness.... By the multitude of thine iniquities, in the unrighteousness of thy traffic, thou hast profaned thy sanctuaries."

**Jas. 1:14, 15** "But each one is tried by being drawn out and enticed by his own desire. Then the desire, when it has become fertile, gives birth to sin; in turn, sin, when it has been accomplished, brings forth death."

**Threefold Lying Claim Induced First Woman to Practice False Religion**

**Gen. 3:4-6** "And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die: for God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil. And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was to be desired to make one wise, she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat; and she gave also unto her husband with her, and he did eat."

**1 John 2:16** "Because everything in the world—the desire of the flesh and the desire of the eyes and the showy display of one's means of life—does not originate with the Father, but originates with the world."

**False Religion Brought Death to All Humankind**

**Rom. 5:12-14** "Through one man sin entered into the world and death through sin, and thus death spread to all men because they had all sinned.... death ruled as king from Adam down to Moses, even over those who had not sinned after the likeness of the transgression by Adam."

**Deut. 32:5** "They have dealt corruptly with him, they are not his children, it is their blemish; they are a perverse and crooked generation."

**Ps. 51:5** "Behold, I was brought forth in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me."

**Abel Recommended True Religion in the Earth**

**Heb. 11:4** "By faith Abel offered God a sacrifice of greater worth than Cain, through which faith he had witness borne to him that he was righteous, God bearing witness respecting his gifts, and through it he, although he died, yet speaks."

**False Religion Reached a Peak Just Prior to Flood**

**Gen. 4:26** "And to Seth, to him also there was born a son; and he called his name Enosh. Then began men to call upon the name of Jehovah." (Hypocritically)

**Gen. 6:12, 13** "And God saw the earth, and, behold, it was corrupt; for all flesh had corrupted their way upon the earth. And God said unto Noah, The end of all flesh is come before me; for the earth is filled with violence through them; and, behold, I will destroy them with the earth."

**False Religion Caused Destruction of Preflood World**

**2 Pet. 2:5** "He did not hold back from punishing an ancient world, but kept Noah, a preacher of righteousness, safe with seven others when he brought a deluge upon a world of ungodly people."

**2 Pet. 3:6** "The world of that time suffered destruction when it was deluged with water."

**Noah Instituted True Religion in Flood-cleansed Earth, 2369 B. C.**

**Gen. 8:20** "And Noah builded an altar unto Jehovah, and took of every clean beast, and of every clean bird, and offered burnt-offerings on the altar."

**Heb. 11:7** "By faith Noah, after being given divine warning of things not yet beheld, showed godly fear and constructed an ark for the saving of his household, and through this faith he condemned the world, and he became an heir of the righteousness which is according to faith."

**Nimrod Started False Religious System After Flood**

**Gen. 10:8-12** "Cush begat Nimrod: he began to be a mighty one in the earth. He was a mighty hunter before Jehovah. . . . And the beginning of his kingdom was Babel."

**Gen. 11:4, 9** "And they said, Come, let us build us a city, and a tower, whose top may reach unto heaven, and let us make us a name; lest we be scattered abroad upon the face of the whole earth. Therefore was the name of it called Babel; because Jehovah did there confound the language of all the earth: and from thence did Jehovah scatter them abroad upon the face of all the earth."

**Jewish Nation Had National Worship Under Theocracy; Provided Prophetic Patterns of Christianity, 1513-607 B. C.**

**Ex. 19:5, 6** "If ye will obey my voice indeed, and keep my covenant, then ye shall be mine own possession from among all peoples: for all the earth is mine: and ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."

**Isa. 33:22** "For Jehovah is our judge, Jehovah is our lawgiver, Jehovah is our king; he will save us."

**Heb. 8:5** "Sacred service in a typical representation and a shadow of the heavenly things; just as Moses, when about to make the complete tent, was given the divine command: For says he, 'See that you make all things according to the pattern that was shown you in the mountain.'"

**Heb. 10:1** "The law has a shadow of the good things to come."

**Jesus Christ Came in the Flesh to Reveal the True Religion, A. D. 29-33**

**John 1:14-18** "So the Word became flesh and resided among us, and we had a view of his glory, a glory such as belongs to an only-begotten son from a father, and he was full of undeserved kindness and truth. . . . Because the law was given through Moses, the undeserved kindness and the truth came to be through Jesus Christ. No man has seen God at any time; the only-begotten god who is in the bosom position with the Father is the one that has explained him."

**Heb. 1:1, 2** "God, who long ago spoke on many occasions and in many ways to our forefathers by means of the prophets, has at the end of these days spoken to us by means of a Son, whom he appointed heir of all things, and through whom he made the systems of things."

**Isa. 42:6** "I, Jehovah, have called thee in righteousness, and will hold thy hand, and will keep thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, for a light of the Gentiles."

**Christendom Began with Great Falling Away from True Religion**

**2 Thess. 2:6, 7** "And so now you know the thing that acts as a restraint with a view to his being revealed in his own due time."

True, the mystery of this lawlessness is already at work; but only till he who is right now acting as a restraint gets to be out of the way."

**Acts 20:29, 30** "I know that after my going away oppressive wolves will enter in among you and will not treat the flock with tenderness, and from among you yourselves men will rise and speak twisted things to draw away the disciples after themselves."

**2 Pet. 2:1** "However, there also came to be false prophets among the people, as there will also be false teachers among you. These very ones will quietly bring in destructive sects and will disown even the owner that bought them, bringing speedy destruction upon themselves."

### **Christendom Practices False Religion**

**Jer. 5:30, 31** "A wonderful and horrible thing is come to pass in the land: the prophets prophesy falsely, and the priests bear rule by their means; and my people love to have it so: and what will ye do in the end thereof?"

**Jer. 25:29** "Lo, I begin to work evil at the city which is called by my name."

### **False Religion Reaches Height of Corruption in Last Days**

**2 Tim. 3:1-5** "But know this, that in the last days critical times hard to deal with will be here. For men will be lovers of themselves, lovers of money, self-assuming, haughty, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, without gratitude, with no loving-kindness, having no natural affection, not open to any agreement, slanderers, without self-control, fierce, without love of goodness, betrayers, headstrong, puffed up with self-esteem, lovers of pleasures rather than lovers of God, having a form of godly devotion but proving false to its power."

**Rev. 18:2** "She has fallen! Babylon the great has fallen, and

she has become a dwelling-place of demons and a lurking-place of every unclean exhalation and a lurking-place of every unclean and hated bird!"

### **Followers of False Religion in Great Danger Today**

**Rev. 18:4** "And I heard another voice out of heaven say: 'Get out of her, my people, if you do not want to share with her in her sins, and if you do not want to receive part of her plagues.'"

**Jer. 51:6** "Flee out of the midst of Babylon, and save every man his life; be not cut off in her iniquity: for it is the time of Jehovah's vengeance; he will render unto her a recompense."

**1 Pet. 4:17, 18** "For it is the appointed time for the judgment to start with the house of God. Now if it starts first with us, what will the complete end be of those who are not obedient to the good news of God? And if the righteous man is being saved with difficulty, where will the ungodly man and the sinner make a showing?"

### **Only Safe Course Is to Forsake False Religion, Learn, Practice True Religion**

**Zeph. 2:3** "Seek ye Jehovah, all ye meek of the earth, that have kept his ordinances; seek righteousness, seek meekness: it may be ye will be hid in the day of Jehovah's anger."

**Prov. 18:10** "The name of Jehovah is a strong tower; the righteous runneth into it, and is safe."

**Matt. 24:15-21** "Therefore, when you catch sight of the disgusting thing that causes desolation, as spoken of through Daniel the prophet, standing in a holy place, (let the reader use discernment,) then let those in Judea begin fleeing to the mountains. Let the man on the housetop not come down to take the goods out of his house; and let the man in the field not return



to the house to pick up his outer garment. Woe to the pregnant women and those suckling a baby in those days! Keep praying that your flight may not occur in wintertime nor on the sabbath day; for then there will be great tribulation such as has not occurred since the world's beginning until now, no, nor will occur again."

**1 Pet. 4:19** "So, then, also let those who are suffering in harmony with the will of God keep on commending their souls to a faithful Creator while they are doing good."

### **False Religion, "Babylon," Tries to Control World, Destroy True Religion**

**Rev. 17:3-6, 12-14** "And I caught sight of a woman sitting upon a scarlet-colored wild beast that was full of blasphemous names and that had seven heads and ten horns. And the woman was arrayed in purple and scarlet, and was adorned with gold and precious stone and pearls and had in her hand a golden cup that was full of disgusting things and the unclean things of her fornication. And upon her forehead was written a name, a mystery, 'Babylon the Great, the mother of the harlots and of the disgusting things of the earth.' And I saw that the woman was drunk with the blood of the holy ones and with the blood of the witnesses of Jesus. 'And the ten horns that you saw mean ten kings, who have not yet received a kingdom, but they do receive authority as kings one hour with the wild beast. . . . These will battle with the Lamb, but, because he is Lord of lords and King of kings, the Lamb will conquer them.'"

### **False Religion's Multitudinous Sects a Divided House**

**1 Cor. 1:12, 13** "Each one of you says: 'I belong to Paul,' 'But I to Apollos,' 'But I to Cephas,'

'But I to Christ.' Does the Christ exist divided? Paul was not impaled for you, was he? Or were you baptized in the name of Paul?"

**1 Cor. 3:3** "You are yet fleshly. For whereas there are jealousy and strife among you, are you not fleshly and are you not walking as men do?"

### **False Religion to Be Destroyed; True Religion Will Survive**

**Luke 11:17** "Every kingdom divided against itself comes to desolation, and a house divided against itself falls."

**Rev. 17:1, 16** "Come, I will show you the judgment upon the great harlot that sits on many waters, . . . the ten horns that you saw, and the wild beast, these will hate the harlot and will make her devastated and naked, and will eat up her fleshy parts and will completely burn her with fire."

**Jer. 25:34, 35** "Wail, ye shepherds, and cry; and wallow in ashes, ye principal of the flock; for the days of your slaughter and of your dispersions are fully come, and ye shall fall like a goodly vessel. And the shepherds shall have no way to flee, nor the principal of the flock to escape."

### **All Earth Will Again Have the One True Religion; Will Continue Throughout Eternity**

**John 4:23, 24** "The hour is coming, and it is now, when the genuine worshipers will worship the Father with spirit and truth, for, indeed, the Father is looking for such kind to worship him. God is a Spirit, and those worshiping him must worship with spirit and truth."

**Rev. 21:3, 4** "I heard a loud voice from the throne say: 'Look! the tent of God is with human-kind, and he will reside with them, and they will be his peoples. And God himself will be with them. And he will wipe out

every tear from their eyes, and death will be no more, neither will mourning nor outcry nor pain be any more. The former things have passed away.'"

**Dan. 2:44, 35** "In the days of those kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom which shall never be destroyed, nor shall the sovereignty thereof be left to another people; but it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand for ever.... And the stone that smote the image became a great mountain, and filled the whole earth."

### **True Revealed Religion Brings Mankind Back to Glorious Status of Free Sons of God**

**Rom. 8:21** "The creation itself also will be set free from enslavement to corruption and have the glorious freedom of the children of God."

**Gal. 5:1** "For such freedom Christ set us free. Therefore stand fast, and do not let yourselves be confined again in a yoke of slavery."

**2 Cor. 3:17** "Now Jehovah is the spirit; and where the spirit of Jehovah is, there is freedom."

### **True Religion Is Revealed Religion from God Through His Son; Natural Religion, a Study of Nature, Is Not Sufficient**

**1 Cor. 2:9, 10** "Just as it is written: 'Eye has not seen and ear has not heard, neither have there been conceived in the heart of man the things which God has prepared for those who love him.' For it is to us God has revealed them through his spirit, for the spirit searches into all things, even the deep things of God."

**Rom. 16:25, 26** "The preaching of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of the sacred secret which has been concealed for long-lasting times but has now been made manifest and has been made known through the pro-

phetic scriptures among all the nations."

**Dan. 2:22** "He revealeth the deep and secret things; he knoweth what is in the darkness, and the light dwelleth with him."

**Amos 3:7** "Surely the Lord Jehovah will do nothing, except he reveal his secret unto his servants the prophets."

**Eph. 3:4, 5** "You, when you read this, can realize the comprehension I have in the sacred secret of the Christ. In other generations this secret was not made known to the sons of men as it has now been revealed to his holy apostles and prophets by spirit."

**Rom. 1:17** "God's righteousness is being revealed by reason of faith and toward faith."

### **True Religion Honors God and Christ**

**1 Pet. 2:17** "Be in fear of God, have honor for the king."

**Rev. 5:12, 13** "The Lamb that was slaughtered is worthy to receive the power and riches and wisdom and strength and honor and glory and blessing."

**Rev. 7:12** "Amen! The blessing and the glory and the wisdom and the thanksgiving and the honor and the power and the strength be to our God for ever and ever. Amen."

**Rev. 19:1, 6** "'Praise Jah, you people! The salvation and the glory and the power belong to our God.' 'Praise Jah, you people, because Jehovah our God, the Almighty, has begun to rule as king.'"

**Ps. 150:6** "Let everything that hath breath praise Jehovah."

### **True Religion Recognizes God's Word as Supreme Authority**

**John 17:17** "Sanctify them by means of the truth; your word is truth."

**Isa. 8:20** "To the law and to the testimony! if they speak not according to this word, surely there is no morning for them."

**Rom. 3:4** "Let God be found true, though every man be found a liar."

### **True Religion Produces Fruits of the Spirit, Deepens Love**

**Col. 1:5, 6, 9, 10** "This hope you heard of before by the telling of the truth of that good news which has presented itself to you, even as it is bearing fruit and increasing in all the world just as it is doing also among you, from the day you heard and learned to know the undeserved kindness of God in truth. That is also why we, from the day we heard of it, have not ceased praying for you and asking that you may be filled with the accurate knowledge of his will in all wisdom and spiritual discernment, in order to walk worthily of Jehovah to the end of fully pleasing him as you go on bearing fruit in every good work and increasing in the accurate knowledge of God."

**Gal. 5:22, 23** "The fruitage of the spirit is love, joy, peace, long-suffering, kindness, goodness, faith, mildness, self-control."

**2 Pet. 1:8** "If these things exist in you and overflow, they will prevent you from being either inactive or unfruitful regarding the accurate knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ."

### **True Religion Transforms Mind to God's Way**

**Rom. 12:2** "Quit being fashioned after this system of things, but be transformed by making your mind over, that you may prove to yourselves the good and acceptable and complete will of God."

**Eph. 4:23, 24** "You should be made new in the force actuating your mind, and should put on the new personality which was created according to God's will in true righteousness and loving-kindness."

### **True Religion Frees, Liberates**

**John 8:32** "The truth will set you free."

**Isa. 61:1** "The spirit of the Lord Jehovah is upon me; because Jehovah hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the broken-hearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound."

**Jas. 1:25** "He who peers into the perfect law that belongs to freedom and who persists in it, this man, because he has become, not a forgetful hearer, but a doer of the work, will be happy in his doing it."

### **True Religion Has No Part with This World**

**John 15:19** "If you were part of the world, the world would be fond of what is its own. Now because you are no part of the world, but I have chosen you out of the world, on this account the world hates you."

### **No Compromise of True Religion with False Possible**

**2 Cor. 6:14-17** "Do not become unevenly yoked with unbelievers. For what partnership do righteousness and lawlessness have? Or what fellowship does light have with darkness? Further, what harmony is there between Christ and Belial? Or what portion does a faithful person have with an unbeliever? And what agreement does God's temple have with idols? For we are the temple of the living God; just as God said: 'I shall reside among them and walk among them, and I shall be their God, and they will be my people.' 'Therefore get out from among them, and separate yourselves,' says Jehovah, 'and quit touching the unclean thing.'"

**1 Cor. 10:21** "You cannot be drinking the cup of Jehovah and the cup of demons; you cannot

be partaking of 'the table of Jehovah' and the table of demons."

**Luke 16:26** "A great chasm has been fixed between us and you people, so that those wanting to go over from here to you people cannot, neither may people cross over from there to us."

**Mark 2:21, 22** "Nobody sews a patch of unshrunk cloth upon an old garment; if he does, its full strength pulls from it, the new from the old, and the tear becomes worse. Also nobody puts new wine into old wineskins; if he does, the wine bursts the skins, and the wine is lost as well as the skins."

### **Christ the Perfect Exemplar of True Religious Worship**

**1 Pet. 2:21** "In fact, to this course you were called, because even Christ suffered for you, leaving you a model for you to follow his steps closely."

**Heb. 7:26** "For such a high priest as this was suitable for us, one of loving-kindness, guileless, undefiled, separated from the sinners, and become higher than the heavens."

**Phil. 2:5** "Keep this mental attitude in you which was also in Christ Jesus."

### **Description of True Christian Religion; It Means Action**

**Jas. 1:22, 26, 27** "Become doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving yourselves with false reasoning. If any man seems to himself to be a formal worshiper and yet does not bridle his tongue, but goes on deceiving his own heart, this man's form of worship is futile. The form of worship that is clean and undefiled from the standpoint of our God and Father is this: to care for orphans and widows in their tribulation, and to keep oneself without spot from the world."

### **True Religion the Only Bond of Unity**

**Eph. 4:3, 4, 13** "Earnestly endeavoring to observe the oneness

of the spirit in the uniting bond of peace. One body there is, and one spirit, . . . until we all attain to the oneness in the faith and in the accurate knowledge of the Son of God."

**Phil. 1:27** "You are standing firm in one spirit, with one soul fighting side by side for the faith of the good news."

**Col. 2:19** "Holding fast to the head, to the one from whom all the body, being supplied and harmoniously joined together by means of its joints and ligaments, goes on growing with the growth which God gives."

### **False Religion Honors Men, Things**

**John 5:43** "I have come in the name of my Father, but you do not receive me; if someone else arrived in his own name, you would receive that one."

**2 Cor. 11:4, 19, 20** "For, as it is, if someone comes and preaches a Jesus other than the one we preached, or you receive a spirit other than what you received, or good news other than what you accepted, you easily put up with him. For you gladly put up with the unreasonable persons, seeing you are reasonable. In fact, you put up with whoever enslaves you, whoever devours what you have, whoever grabs what you have, whoever exalts himself over you, whoever strikes you in the face."

### **Worship Paid by False Religious Devotees Really Paid to Demons**

**1 Cor. 10:20** "The things which the nations sacrifice they sacrifice to demons, and not to God."

**Deut. 32:17** "They sacrificed unto demons, which were no God."

**Ps. 96:5** "All the gods of the peoples are idols."

### **False Religion Puts Traditions of Men First**

**Matt. 15:3, 6-9** "He said to them: 'Why is it you also overstep the commandment of God because of your tradition? . . . you

have made the word of God invalid because of your tradition. You hypocrites, Isaiah aptly prophesied about you, when he said: "This people honors me with their lips, yet their hearts are far removed from me. It is in vain that they keep paying respect to me, because they teach commands of men as doctrines." " "

### **False Religion Produces Fruits of the Flesh, Deepens Selfishness**

**Gal. 5:19, 20** "Now the works of the flesh are manifest, and they are fornication, uncleanness, loose conduct, idolatry, practice of spiritism, hatreds, strife, jealousy, fits of anger, contentions, divisions, sects."

**Gal. 6:8** "He who is sowing with a view to his flesh will reap corruption from his flesh, but he who is sowing with a view to the spirit will reap everlasting life from the spirit."

### **False Religion Degrades, Debases**

**Rom. 1:21-32** "They did not glorify him as God nor did they thank him, but they became empty-headed in their reasonings and their unintelligent heart became darkened. Although asserting they were wise, they became foolish and turned the glory of the incorruptible God into something like the image of corruptible man and of birds and four-footed creatures and creeping things. Therefore God in keeping with the desires of their hearts gave them up to uncleanness, that their bodies might be dishonored among them, even those who exchanged the truth of God for the lie and venerated and rendered sacred service to the creation rather than the One who created, who is blessed forever. Amen. That is why God gave them up to disgraceful sexual appetites, . . . And just as they did not approve of holding God in accurate knowledge, God gave

them up to a disapproved mental state, to do the things not fitting, filled as they were with all unrighteousness."

**Prov. 14:34** "Righteousness exalteth a nation; but sin is a reproach to any people."

### **False Religion Enslaves**

**Matt. 6:24** "No one can be a slave to two masters; for either he will hate the one and love the other, or he will stick to the one and despise the other. You cannot be slaves to God and to Riches."

**Rom. 6:16** "Do you not know that if you keep presenting yourselves to anyone as slaves to obey him, you are slaves of him because you obey him, either of sin with death in view or of obedience with righteousness in view?"

**2 Pet. 2:19** "While they are promising them freedom, they themselves are existing as slaves of corruption. For whoever is overcome by another is enslaved by this one."

**Deut. 7:16** "Neither shalt thou serve their gods; for that will be a snare unto thee."

**Gal. 2:4** "But because of the false brothers brought in quietly, who sneaked in to spy upon our freedom which we have in union with Christ Jesus, that they might completely enslave us."

### **Stubbornness, Disobedience to God Is False Religion**

**1 Sam. 15:22, 23** "Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken than the fat of rams. For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as idolatry and teraphim."

**Matt. 9:13** "Go, then, and learn what this means, 'I want mercy, and not sacrifice.'"

### **Adoration of Men, Animals, Knowledge, Things, Is False Religion**

**Job 32:21, 22** "Let me not, I pray you, respect any man's person; neither will I give flattering

titles unto any man. For I know not to give flattering titles; else would my Maker soon take me away."

**Prov. 29:25** "The fear of man bringeth a snare."

**Matt. 10:37** "He that has greater affection for father or mother than for me is not worthy of me; and he that has greater affection for son or daughter than for me is not worthy of me."

**1 Tim. 6:10** "The love of money is a root of all sorts of injurious things, and by reaching out for this love some have been led astray from the faith and have stabbed themselves all over with many pains."

**1 Tim. 6:20, 21** "O Timothy, guard what is laid up in trust with you, turning away from the empty speeches that violate what is holy and from the contradictions of the falsely called 'knowledge'. For making a show of such knowledge some have deviated from the faith."

**Col. 2:20-23** "Why do you... further subject yourselves to the decrees, 'Do not handle, nor taste, nor touch,' respecting things that are all destined to destruction by being used up, in accordance with the commands and teachings of men? Those very things are, indeed, possessed of an appearance of wisdom in a self-imposed form of worship and mock humility, a severe treatment of the body, but they are of no value in combating the satisfying of the flesh."

See also: Acts 17:29; 1 John 5:21; Ex. 20:3-5.

### **False Religion Loves This World and Is Part of It**

**Matt. 6:1, 2, 5, 16, 19** "Take good care not to practice your righteousness in front of men in order to be observed by them; otherwise you will have no reward with your Father who is in the heavens. Hence when you start making gifts of mercy, do not blow a trumpet ahead of you, just as the hypocrites do in the

synagogues and in the streets, that they may be glorified by men. Truly I say to you, They are having their reward in full. Also when you pray, you must not be as the hypocrites; because they like to pray standing in the synagogues and on the corners of the broad ways to be visible to men.... When you are fasting, stop becoming sad-faced like the hypocrites, for they disfigure their faces that they may appear to men to be fasting.... Stop storing up for yourselves treasures upon the earth, where moth and rust consume, and where thieves break in and steal."

**Jas. 4:4** "Adulteresses, do you not know that the friendship with the world is enmity with God? Whoever, therefore, wants to be a friend of the world is constituting himself an enemy of God."

**1 John 2:15** "Do not be loving either the world or the things in the world. If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in him."

### **False Religion Always Persecutes the True**

**Gen. 3:15** "I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed: he shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel."

**1 John 3:12** "Cain, who originated with the wicked one and slaughtered his brother. And for the sake of what did he slaughter him? Because his own works were wicked, but those of his brother were righteous."

**John 15:18, 20** "If the world hates you, you know that it has hated me before it hated you.... A slave is not greater than his master. If they have persecuted me, they will persecute you also."

**Gal. 4:29** "Just as then the one born in the manner of flesh began persecuting the one born in the manner of spirit, so also now."

**Gal. 1:13** "You, of course, heard about my conduct formerly in Judaism, that to the point of excess I kept on persecuting the congregation of God and devastating it."

**False Religion's Collective Clergy and Supporters Are "Seed of the Serpent"**

**Matt. 23:29, 33** "Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! ... Serpents, offspring of vipers, how are you to flee from the judgment of Gehenna?"

**John 8:44** "You are from your father the Devil and you wish to do the desires of your father."

**1 John 3:10** "The children of God and the children of the Devil are evident by this fact: Everyone who does not practice righteousness does not originate with God, neither does he who does not love his brother."

**Matt. 13:38, 39** "The field is the world; as for the right kind of seed, these are the sons of the kingdom; but the weeds are the sons of the wicked one, and the enemy that sowed them is the Devil."

**All Non-Christian Religions Are False**

**Acts 3:23** "Indeed, any soul that does not listen to that Prophet will be completely destroyed from among the people."

**1 John 4:3** "Every inspired expression that does not confess Jesus does not originate with God."

**John 3:36** "He that exercises faith in the Son has everlasting life; he that disobeys the Son will not see life, but the wrath of God remains upon him."

**Phil. 2:10, 11** "In the name of Jesus every knee should bend of those in heaven and those on earth and those under the ground, and every tongue should openly confess that Jesus Christ is Lord to the glory of God the Father."

**Acts 4:12** "There is no salvation in anyone else, for there is not

another name under heaven that has been given among men by which we must get saved."

**So-called "Godless" Communist Red Religion, Worshiping the State as God, Is False**

**Ps. 14:1** "The fool hath said in his heart, There is no God. They are corrupt, they have done abominable works; there is none that doeth good."

**Dan. 6:7-24** "Whosoever shall ask a petition of any god or man for thirty days, save of thee, O king, he shall be cast into the den of lions. ... And when Daniel knew that the writing was signed, he went into his house (now his windows were open in his chamber toward Jerusalem); and he kneeled upon his knees three times a day, and prayed, and gave thanks before his God, as he did aforetime. ... And the king commanded, and they brought those men that had accused Daniel, and they cast them into the den of lions, them, their children, and their wives; and the lions had the mastery of them, and brake all their bones in pieces."

**Jer. 17:5** "Thus saith Jehovah: Cursed is the man that trusteth in man, and maketh flesh his arm."

**Acts 12:21-23** "On a set day Herod ... began giving them a public address. In turn, the assembled people began shouting: 'A god's voice, and not a man's!' Instantly the angel of Jehovah struck him, because he did not give the glory to God; and he became eaten up with worms and expired."

**Great Temples of Religion of No Value in God's Sight**

**Acts 7:48, 49** "The Most High does not dwell in houses made with hands; just as the prophet says: 'The heaven is my throne, and the earth is my footstool.

What kind of house will you build for me? Jehovah says. Or what is the place for my resting?"

**Jer. 7:4** "Trust ye not in lying words, saying, The temple of Je-

hovah, the temple of Jehovah, the temple of Jehovah, are these."

See "Jehovah's Witnesses," "Devil and Demons," "Idolatry," "Spiritism."

# Repentance

## DEFINITION

Recognition and admission of a wrong condition or course of action, and a sincere sorrow with determination, motivated by a whole-hearted desire to conform to right principles, to turn forever from such wrong course and take a course in harmony with God's will. Repentance that brings a right standing with God necessitates an accurate knowledge of God's provisions and requirements and conforming oneself thereto by definite works of faith in harmony therewith. Sometimes repentance is used to mean a change from a favorable to an unfavorable action toward another.

### An Elementary Christian Teaching

**Heb. 6:1** "Now that we have left the elementary doctrine about the Christ, let us press on to maturity, not laying a foundation again, namely, repentance from dead works, and faith toward God."

### All Must Recognize Their Inherited Sinful State and Need of a Redeemer

**Rom. 5:12** "Through one man sin entered into the world and death through sin, and thus death spread to all men because they had all sinned."

**Ps. 51:5** "Behold, I was brought forth in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me."

**Rom. 11:32** "God has shut them all up together because of disobedience, that he might show all of them mercy."

### Repentance of Real Merit Requires Instruction; Leads to Knowledge, Service of God, Freedom

**2 Tim. 2:25, 26** "Instructing with mildness those not favorably disposed, as perhaps God may give them repentance lead-

ing to an accurate knowledge of truth, and they may come back to their proper senses out from the snare of the Devil, seeing that they have been caught alive by him for the will of that one."

### Required of All Persons Who Will Be Saved

**Ps. 34:18** "Jehovah is nigh unto them that are of a broken heart, and saveth such as are of a contrite spirit."

**Isa. 57:15** "For thus saith the high and lofty one that inhabiteth eternity, whose name is Holy: I dwell in the high and holy place, with him also that is of a contrite and humble spirit, to revive the spirit of the humble, and to revive the heart of the contrite."

**Isa. 66:2** "To this man will I look, even to him that is poor and of a contrite spirit, and that trembleth at my word."

### A Prerequisite to Dedication, Baptism, and Service of God

**Acts 2:38** "Peter said to them: Repent, and let each one of you be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ for forgiveness of your sins, and you will receive the free gift of the holy spirit."



**Acts 3:19** "Repent, therefore, and turn around so as to get your sins blotted out, that seasons of refreshing may come from the person of Jehovah and that he may send forth the Christ appointed for you, Jesus."

**God Blots Out, Forgets Sins of Repentant Ones Who Accept Christ**

**Isa. 1:18** "Come now, and let us reason together, saith Jehovah: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool."

**Heb. 8:12** "I shall be merciful to their unrighteous deeds and I will by no means call their sins to mind any more."

**Rev. 7:14** "These are the ones that come out of the great tribulation, and they have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb."

**True Repentance Brings God's Favor**

**2 Cor. 7:10** "For sadness in a godly way makes for repentance to salvation which is not to be regretted."

**Luke 15:7** "I tell you that thus there will be more joy in heaven over one sinner that repents than over ninety-nine righteous ones who have no need of repentance."

**Replaces Sorrow, Mourning, Distress with Joy and Happiness**

**Matt. 5:3** "Happy are those who are conscious of their spiritual need, since the kingdom of the heavens belongs to them."

**Isa. 61:1-3** "The spirit of the Lord Jehovah is upon me; because Jehovah hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek;...to appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them a garland for ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness."

**True Repentance Manifests Itself by Good Fruits; Deathbed Repentance Unable to Do This**

**Luke 3:8** "Produce fruits that befit repentance."

**2 Cor. 7:11** "For, look! this very thing, your being saddened in a godly way, what a great earnestness it produced in you, yes, clearing of yourselves, yes, indignation, yes, fear, yes, longing, yes, zeal, yes, righting of the wrong!"

**Ezek. 33:14, 15** "When I say unto the wicked, Thou shalt surely die; if he turn from his sin, and do that which is lawful and right; if the wicked restore the pledge, give again that which he had taken by robbery, walk in the statutes of life, committing no iniquity; he shall surely live, he shall not die."

**Matt. 21:28-31** "'A man had two children. Going up to the first he said: 'Child, go work today in the vineyard.' In answer this one said: 'I will, sir,' but did not go out. Approaching the second, he said the same. In reply this one said: 'I will not.' Afterwards he felt regret and went out. Which of the two did the will of his father?' They said: 'The latter.'"

**Selfish Regret Is Not True Repentance, Brings No Favor from God**

**2 Cor. 7:10** "The sadness of the world produces death."

**Matt. 27:3-5** "Then Judas, who betrayed him, seeing he had been condemned, felt remorse and turned the thirty silver pieces back to the chief priests and older men of influence, saying: 'I sinned when I betrayed righteous blood.'...So he...went off and hanged himself."

**Heb. 12:17** "You know that afterward also when he [Esau] wanted to inherit the blessing he was rejected, for, although he earnestly sought a change of mind with tears, he found no place for it."

### **Persons Trying to Gain Life by Fulfilling the Ten Commandments Overlook the Need of Repentance**

**Rom. 3:23** "All have sinned and fall short of the glory of God."

**Matt. 19:17, 20, 21** "He said to him: ... 'If, though, you want to enter into life, observe the commandments continually.' The young man said to him: 'I have kept all these; what yet am I lacking?' Jesus said to him: 'If you want to be complete, go sell your belongings and give to the poor and you will have treasure in heaven, and come be my follower.'"

### **Without Repentance One Cannot Appreciate Need of Christ's Ransom Sacrifice**

**Rom. 10:3** "Because of not knowing the righteousness of God but seeking to establish their own, they [the Jews] did not subject themselves to the righteousness of God."

**John 9:41** "Jesus said to them: 'If you were blind, you would have no sin. But now you say, "We see." Your sin remains.'"

**Isa. 64:6** "All our righteousnesses are as a polluted garment."

### **Jews Needed Repentance from Not Only Inherited Sins, but Also Sins Against the Law Covenant**

**Matt. 3:1, 2, 11** "In those days John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea, saying: 'Repent, for the kingdom of the heavens has drawn near.' 'I, on the one hand, baptize you with water because of your repentance.'"

**Luke 3:3** "He came into all the country around the Jordan, preaching baptism of those repenting for forgiveness of sins."

**Gal. 3:13** "Christ by purchase released us from the curse of the Law by becoming a curse instead of us."

### **Having Repented, One Must Not Look Back on Former Life**

**Luke 9:62** "Jesus said to him: 'No man that has put his hand to a plow and looks at the things behind is well fitted for the kingdom of God.'"

**Luke 17:32** "Remember the wife of Lot."

**Heb. 10:39** "Now we are not the kind that shrink back to destruction."

**Eph. 4:22** "You should put away the old personality which conforms to your former course of conduct."

### **Having Repented, One Must Not Brood over Former Sins**

**Phil. 3:13, 14** "Forgetting the things behind and stretching forward to the things ahead, I am pursuing down toward the goal for the prize of the calling above."

**Zech. 7:1-10** "They ... sent ... men, ... saying, Should I weep in the fifth month, separating myself, as I have done these so many years? ... Thus hath Jehovah of hosts spoken, saying, Execute true judgment, and show kindness and compassion every man to his brother."

**Neh. 8:9-12** "This day is holy unto Jehovah your God; mourn not, nor weep. For all the people wept when they heard the words of the law, ... neither be ye grieved; for the joy of Jehovah is your strength.... And all the people went their way to eat, and to drink, and to send portions, and to make great mirth, because they had understood the words that were declared unto them."

### **No Repentance from "Sin Against the Holy Spirit" Possible**

**Mark 3:28, 29** "All things will be forgiven the sons of men, no matter what sins and blasphemies they blasphemously commit. However, whoever blasphemes against the holy spirit has no forgiveness forever, but is guilty of everlasting sin."

**Heb. 6:4-6** "For it is impossible as regards those who have once for all been enlightened and who have tasted the heavenly free gift and who have become partakers of holy spirit and who have tasted the right word of God and powers of the coming system of things, but who have fallen away, to revive them again to repentance, because they impale the Son of God afresh for themselves and expose him to public shame."

### Willfully Wicked Are Too Hardened to Repent

**1 Tim. 4:1, 2** "In later periods of time some will fall away from the faith, paying attention to misleading inspired utterances and teachings of demons, by the hypocrisy of men who speak lies, marked in their conscience as with a branding iron."

**Heb. 10:29** "Of how much more severe a punishment, do you think, will the man be counted worthy who has trampled upon the Son of God and who has esteemed as of ordinary value the blood of the covenant by which he was sanctified, and who has outraged the spirit of undeserved kindness with contempt?"

**Ex. 7:3, 14; 10:1** "I will harden Pharaoh's heart, and multiply my signs and my wonders in the land of Egypt. And Jehovah said unto Moses, Pharaoh's heart is stubborn, he refuseth to let the people go." "Go in unto Pharaoh: for I have hardened his heart, and the heart of his servants, that I may show these my signs in the midst of them."

### We Must Forgive Our Brothers Who Express Repentance for Offenses

**Matt. 6:12-15** "'Forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors.'... For if you forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you; whereas if you do not for-

give men their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses."

**Luke 17:3, 4** "If your brother commits a sin give him a reproof, and if he repents forgive him. Even if he sins seven times a day against you and he comes back to you seven times, saying, 'I repent,' you must forgive him."

**Matt. 18:21, 22** "Then Peter came up and said to him: 'Master, how many times is my brother to sin against me and am I to forgive him? Up to seven times?' Jesus said to him: 'I say to you, not, Up to seven times, but, Up to seventy-seven times.'"

See also: **Matt. 18:23-35; Luke 6:37.**

### God Does Not Repent of Any of His Stated Purposes, or Turn from His Righteous Principles

**Mal. 3:6** "I, Jehovah, change not."

**1 Sam. 15:29** "The Strength of Israel will not lie nor repent; for he is not a man, that he should repent."

**Isa. 46:11** "I have spoken, I will also bring it to pass; I have purposed, I will also do it."

**Heb. 6:17, 18** "God, when he purposed to demonstrate more abundantly to the heirs of the promise the unchangeableness of his counsel, stepped in with an oath, in order that, through two unchangeable things in which it is impossible for God to lie, we who have fled to the refuge may have strong encouragement to lay hold on the hope set before us."

### If One Turns Against God, God Will "Repent", Turn Against Him

**1 Sam. 15:10, 11, 26** "Then came the word of Jehovah unto Samuel, saying, It repenteth me that I have set up Saul to be king; for he is turned back from following me, and hath not performed my commandments. . . .

thou hast rejected the word of Jehovah, and Jehovah hath rejected thee from being king."

**God Changed Course from Being Man's Creator and Benefactor to Being His Destroyer at the Flood**

**Gen. 6:5-7** "And Jehovah saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every imagination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually. And it repented Jehovah that he had made man on the earth, and it grieved him at his heart. And Jehovah said, I will destroy man whom I have created from the face of the ground."

**God May in Mercy Turn from Bringing Just Punishment if a Person Changes from a Wicked Course**

**Jonah 3:10** "And God saw their works, that they turned from their evil way; and God repented of the evil which he said he would do unto them; and he did it not."

**Jer. 18:8** "If that nation, concerning which I have spoken, turn from their evil, I will repent of the evil that I thought to do unto them."

**Ex. 32:14** "And Jehovah repented of the evil which he said he would do unto his people."

See "Confession", "Baptism."

## Resurrection

### DEFINITION

Resurrection is a restoration to life of the nonexistent dead. The Greek word, *anástasis*, means "a raising up". It is an act of God dependent entirely upon God's marvelous power through Christ and upon His memory of the dead. It is the reactivating of the life pattern of the creature, a transcription of which is on record with God, and is referred to as being in His memory. Resurrection does not involve the restoring of the original identical body of the creature. The life pattern is the personal life-long record of the creature built up by his thoughts and by the experiences in the life he has lived resulting from certain habits, leanings, mental abilities, memories and history. It is also a register of the individual's intellectual growth and his characteristics, all of which make up one's personality. Hence, according to God's will for the creature, in a resurrection one is restored or re-created in either a human or a spirit body and yet retains his personal identity by the setting in motion again of the distinctive life pattern of that individual.

### Hope of Resurrection Clearly Taught in Scriptures

**Isa. 25:8** "He hath swallowed up death for ever; and the Lord Jehovah will wipe away tears from off all faces; and the reproach of his people will he take away from off all the earth: for Jehovah hath spoken it."

**Heb. 6:1, 2** "We have left the elementary doctrine...not laying

a foundation again, namely,... the resurrection of the dead."

**Heb. 11:17-19** "By faith Abraham, when he was tested, as good as offered up Isaac, and the man that had gladly received the promises attempted to offer up his only-begotten son, although it had been said to him: 'What will be called "your seed" will be through Isaac.' But he reckoned that God was able to raise

him up even from the dead; and from there he did receive him also in an illustrative way."

**Acts 24:14, 15** "In this manner I am rendering sacred service to the God of my forefathers, as I believe all the things set forth in the Law and written in the Prophets and I have hope toward God, which hope these men themselves also entertain, that there is going to be a resurrection of both the righteous and the unrighteous."

**Also:** Matt. 28:5-9, 16; Luke 20:37, 38; Acts 13:29-37.

### **False Doctrine of Human Immortality Denies Resurrection, so Pagans Opposed Resurrection**

**Deut. 31:16** "And Jehovah said unto Moses, Behold, thou shalt sleep with thy fathers."

**2 Sam. 7:12** "When thy days are fulfilled, and thou shalt sleep with thy fathers, I will set up thy seed after thee, that shall proceed out of thy bowels, and I will establish his kingdom."

**Acts 2:14, 29, 34** "But Peter stood up with the eleven and raised his voice and made this utterance to them: 'Men of Judea and all you inhabitants of Jerusalem, let this be known to you and give ear to my sayings. Brothers, it is allowable to speak with freeness of speech to you concerning the family head David, that he both deceased and was buried and his tomb is among us to this day. Actually David did not ascend to the heavens, but he himself says, "Jehovah said to my Lord, 'Sit at my right hand.''"

**Acts 17:18-34** "But certain ones of both the Epicurean and the Stoic philosophers took to conversing with him controversially, and some would say: 'What is it this chatterer would like to tell?' Others: 'He seems to be a publisher of foreign deities.' This was because he was declaring the good news of Jesus and the resurrection. So they laid hold of

him and led him to the Areopagus, saying: 'Can we get to know what this new teaching is which is spoken by you? For you are introducing some things that are strange to our ears.' Paul . . . said: '...Because he has set a day in which he purposes to judge the inhabited earth in righteousness by a man whom he has appointed, and he has furnished a guarantee to all men in that he has resurrected him from the dead.' Well, when they heard of a resurrection of the dead, some began to mock, while others said: 'We will hear you about this even another time.'"

### **God's Power of Resurrection Manifested in Resurrection Through Christ**

**Rom. 1:4** "But who with power was declared God's Son according to the spirit of holiness by means of resurrection from the dead—yes, Jesus Christ our Lord."

**1 Thess. 1:9, 10** "You turned to God . . . to wait for his Son from the heavens, whom he raised up from the dead, namely, Jesus who delivers us from the wrath which is coming."

**John 11:25, 26** "Jesus said to her: 'I am the resurrection and the life. He that exercises faith in me, even though he dies, will come to life, and everyone that is living and exercises faith in me will never die at all.'"

**John 5:26** "For just as the Father has in himself the gift of life, so he has granted to the Son to have also in himself the gift of life."

### **Christ the First to Be Raised, Therefore Opened Way for Others**

**1 Pet. 3:21** "That which corresponds to this is also now saving you, namely, baptism . . . through the resurrection of Jesus Christ."

**Col. 1:18** "And he is the head of the body, the congregation.

He is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead, that he might become the one who is first in all things."

**1 Cor. 15:20-22** "However, now Christ has been raised up from the dead, the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep in death. For since death is through a man, resurrection of the dead is also through a man. For just as in Adam all are dying, so also in the Christ all will be made alive."

**Rev. 1:17, 18** "I am the First and the Last, and the living one; and I became dead, but, look! I am living for ever and ever, and I have the keys of death and of Hades."

### **More than 500 Witnesses of the Resurrected Jesus Christ**

**1 Cor. 15:6, 7** "After that he appeared to upward of five hundred brothers at one time, the most of whom remain to the present, but some have fallen asleep in death. After that he appeared to James, then to all the apostles."

**Acts 2:31, 32** "He saw beforehand and spoke concerning the resurrection of the Christ, that neither was he forsaken in Hades nor did his flesh see corruption. This Jesus God resurrected, of which fact we are all witnesses."

### **Life Pattern Is Identity of Creature That God Holds in Memory**

**Job 14:13-15 (mar.)** "Oh that thou wouldest hide me in Sheol, that thou wouldest keep me secret, until thy wrath be past, that thou wouldest appoint me a set time, and remember me! If a man die, shall he live again? All the days of my warfare will I wait, till my release should come. Thou shalt call, and I will answer thee. Thou wouldest have a desire to the work of thy hands."

**Prov. 23:7** "For as he thinketh within himself, so is he."

**Mal. 3:16** "Then they that feared Jehovah spake one with another; and Jehovah hearkened, and heard, and a book of remembrance was written before him, for them that feared Jehovah, and that thought upon his name."

### **Jesus' Life Pattern (Memory, Mental Abilities, Learning and Habits) Restored in Resurrection; Recognized by His Personality, Not by His Various Materialized Bodies**

**Luke 24:13-35** "Now as they were conversing and discussing Jesus himself approached and began traveling with them; but their eyes were kept from recognizing him. . . . And commencing at Moses and all the Prophets he interpreted to them things pertaining to himself in all the Scriptures. . . . And as he was reclining with them at the meal he took the loaf, blessed it, broke it and began to hand it to them. At that their eyes were fully opened and they recognized him; and he disappeared from them. And they said to each other: 'Were not our hearts burning as he was speaking to us on the road, as he was fully opening up the Scriptures to us?' . . . Now they themselves described the events on the road and how he became known to them by the breaking of the loaf."

**John 21:4-7** "However, just as it was getting to be day, Jesus stood on the beach, but the disciples did not, of course, discern it was Jesus. . . . He said to them: 'Cast the net on the right side of the boat and you will find something.' Then they cast it, but they were no longer able to draw it in because of the multitude of the fishes. Therefore that disciple whom Jesus used to love said to Peter: 'It is the Master!'"

**John 20:14, 16** "After saying these things, she turned back and viewed Jesus standing, but she did not discern it was Jesus. Jesus said to her: 'Mary!' Upon

turning around, she said to him, in Hebrew: '*Rabboni*!' (which means 'Teacher!')."

**Jesus' Resurrection Not of Same Body; He Merely Materialized Flesh and Blood to Be Seen and Believed**

**1 Cor. 15:35-42, 45, 50** "Nevertheless, someone will say: 'How are the dead to be raised up? Yes, with what kind of body are they coming?' You unreasonable person! What you sow is not made alive unless first it dies; and as for what you sow, you sow, not the body that will develop, but a bare grain, it may be, of wheat or any one of the rest; but God gives it a body just as it has pleased him, and to each of the seeds its own body. Not all flesh is the same flesh, but there is one of mankind, and there is another flesh of cattle, and another flesh of birds, and another of fish. And there are heavenly bodies, and earthly bodies; but the glory of the heavenly bodies is one kind, and that of the earthly bodies is a different kind.... So also is the resurrection of the dead.... It is even so written: 'The first man Adam became a living soul.' The last Adam became a life-giving spirit. However, this I say, brothers, that flesh and blood cannot inherit God's kingdom, neither does corruption inherit incorruption."

**1 Pet. 3:18** "Why, even Christ died once for all time concerning sins, a righteous person for unrighteous ones, that he might lead you to God, he being put to death in the flesh, but being made alive in the spirit."

**Acts 10:40, 41** "God raised this One up on the third day and granted him to become visible, not to all the people, but to witnesses appointed beforehand by God, to us, who ate and drank with him after his rising from the dead."

**Luke 24:37-40** "But they were terrified, and because they be-

came frightened they were imagining they beheld a spirit. So he said to them: 'Why are you troubled, and why is it doubts come up in your hearts? See my hands and my feet, that it is I myself; feel me and see, because a spirit does not have flesh and bones just as you behold that I have.' And as he said this he showed them his hands and his feet."

[Compare this appearance to the experience of the disciples while Jesus was still alive in flesh (Matt. 14:26, 27).]

**Only Those in God's Memory Have Hope**

**John 5:28, 29** "Do not marvel at this, because the hour is coming in which all those in the memorial tombs will hear his voice and come out."

**Acts 2:27-32** "David... saw beforehand and spoke concerning the resurrection of the Christ, that neither was he forsaken in Hades nor did his flesh see corruption. This Jesus God resurrected, of which fact we are all witnesses."

**Rev. 20:13** "And the sea gave up those dead in it, and death and Hades gave up those dead in them, and they were judged individually according to their deeds."

**Wicked Will Never Be Remembered for Resurrection**

**Prov. 21:16** "The man that wandereth out of the way of understanding shall rest in the assembly of the dead."

**Prov. 10:7** "The memory of the righteous is blessed; but the name of the wicked shall rot."

**Obad. 16** "For as ye have drunk upon my holy mountain, so shall all the nations drink continually; yea, they shall drink, and swallow down, and shall be as though they had not been."

**Jer. 51:57** "And they shall sleep a perpetual sleep, and not wake."

**Isa. 26:14** "They are dead, they shall not live; they are deceased, they shall not rise: therefore hast thou visited and destroyed them, and made all remembrance of them to perish."

**Ps. 109:15, 16** "Let them be before Jehovah continually, that he may cut off the memory of them from the earth."

**Matt. 25:41, 46** "Then he will say, in turn, to those on his left: 'Be on your way from me, you who have been cursed, into the everlasting fire prepared for the Devil and his angels.' And these will depart into everlasting cutting-off, but the righteous ones into everlasting life."

### **Resurrection Not a Transmigration of Human Soul into Newly Born Child**

**John 3:4** "How can a man be born when he is old? He cannot enter into the womb of his mother a second time and be born, can he?"

**Matt. 17:10-13** "However, the disciples put the question to him: 'Why, then, do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?' In reply he [Jesus] said: 'Elijah, indeed, is coming and will restore all things. However, I say to you that Elijah has already come and they did not recognize him but did with him the things they wanted. In this way also the Son of man is destined to suffer at their hands.' Then the disciples perceived that he spoke of them about John the Baptist."

**Luke 1:13, 15, 17** "You are to call his name John...; for he will be great before Jehovah.... Also he will go before him with Elijah's spirit and power."

### **144,000 Sharing in Christ's Death Raised to Heaven to Share in First Resurrection**

**1 Pet. 1:3, 4** "God...gave us a new birth to a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, to an incorruptible and undefiled and un-

fading inheritance. It is reserved in the heavens for you."

**2 Cor. 4:14** "Knowing that he who raised Jesus up will raise us up also together with Jesus and will present us together with you."

**Rom. 6:5** "For if we have become united with him in the likeness of his death, we shall certainly also be united with him in the likeness of his resurrection."

**Phil. 3:10, 11** "So as to know him and the power of his resurrection and a sharing in his sufferings, submitting myself to his kind of death, to see if I may by any means attain to the earlier resurrection from the dead."

**1 Cor. 15:42, 44, 45, 53** "So also is the resurrection of the dead. It is sown in corruption, it is raised up in incorruption. It is sown a physical body, it is raised up a spiritual body.... It is even so written: 'The first man Adam became a living soul.' The last Adam became a life-giving spirit. For this which is corruptible must put on incorruption, and this which is mortal must put on immortality."

**Luke 12:32** "Have no fear, little flock, because your Father has approved of giving you the kingdom."

**Rev. 20:4-6** "And I saw thrones, and there were those who sat down on them, and power of judging was given them. Yes, I saw the souls of those executed with the ax for the witness they bore to Jesus.... And they came to life and ruled as kings with the Christ for a thousand years.... This is the first resurrection. Happy and holy is anyone having part in the first resurrection; over these the second death has no authority, but they will be priests of God and of the Christ, and will rule as kings with him for the thousand years."

**Rev. 14:1** "And I saw, and look! the Lamb standing upon the mount Zion, and with him a hundred and forty-four thousand



having his name and the name of his Father written on their foreheads."

**Earlier Ones of 144,000 Sleep in Death Until Day of Christ's Manifestation A. D. 1918**

**1 Cor. 15:22-24, 52** "In the Christ all will be made alive. But each one in his own rank: Christ the firstfruits, afterward those who belong to the Christ during his presence. Next, the accomplished end, . . . For the trumpet will sound, and the dead will be raised up incorruptible, and we shall be changed."

**1 Thess. 4:14, 16** "For if our faith is that Jesus died and rose again, so, too, those who have fallen asleep in death through Jesus God will bring with him. Because the Lord himself will descend from heaven with a commanding call, with an archangel's voice and with God's trumpet, and those who are dead in union with Christ will rise first."

**John 11:23, 24** "Jesus said to her: 'Your brother will rise.' Martha said to him: 'I know he will rise in the resurrection on the last day.'"

**2 Tim. 4:7, 8** "I have fought the right fight, I have run the course to the finish, I have observed the faith. From this time on there is reserved for me the crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, will give me as a reward in that day, yet not only to me, but also to all those who have loved his manifestation."

**Also: John 6:33, 38-40, 53-58.**

**Those of This Class Dying Since 1918 Changed Immediately at Their Death**

**1 Cor. 15:51, 52** "Look! I tell you a sacred secret: We shall not all fall asleep in death, but we shall all be changed, in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, during the last trumpet. For the trumpet will sound, and the dead

will be raised up incorruptible, and we shall be changed."

**1 Thess. 4:15-17** "For this is what we tell you by Jehovah's word, that we the living who survive to the presence of the Lord shall in no way precede those who have fallen asleep in death, . . . and those who are dead in union with Christ will rise first. Afterward we the living who are surviving will together with them be caught away in clouds to meet the Lord in the air; and thus we shall always be with the Lord."

**144,000 Also Described as Having a Spiritual Awakening**

**Col. 2:12** "For you were buried with him in his baptism, and by relationship with him you were also raised up together through your faith in the operation of God, who raised him up from the dead."

**Col. 3:1** "If, however, you were raised up with Christ, go on seeking the things above, where the Christ is seated at the right hand of God."

**Rom. 6:11-13** "Likewise also you: reckon yourselves to be dead indeed with reference to sin but living with reference to God by Christ Jesus. Therefore do not let sin continue to rule as king in your mortal bodies that you should obey their desires. Neither go on presenting your members to sin as weapons of unrighteousness, but present yourselves to God as those alive from the dead."

**Eph. 2:3-6** "Yes, among them we all at one time conducted ourselves in harmony with the desires of our flesh, doing the things the flesh and the thoughts willed, and we were naturally children of wrath even as the rest. But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love with which he loved us, made us alive together with the Christ, even when we were dead in trespasses—by undeserved kindness you

have been saved—and he raised us up together and seated us together in the heavenly places in union with Christ Jesus.”

### **Those Faithful Men of Old Who Proved Integrity Before Jesus Will Be Raised to Life on Earth**

**Heb. 11:30-35** “Rahab... Gideon, Barak, Samson, Jephthah, David as well as Samuel and the other prophets, . . . stopped the mouths of lions, stayed the force of fire, escaped the edge of the sword, . . . Women received their dead by resurrection; but other men were tortured because they would not accept release by some ransom, in order that they might attain a better resurrection.”

**Isa. 26:19** “Thy dead shall live; my dead bodies shall arise. Awake and sing, ye that dwell in the dust; for thy dew is as the dew of herbs, and the earth shall cast forth the dead.”

**Hos. 13:14** “I will ransom them from the power of Sheol; I will redeem them from death: O death, where are thy plagues? O Sheol, where is thy destruction?”

**Acts 17:31** “Because he has set a day in which he purposes to judge the inhabited earth in righteousness by a man whom he has appointed, and he has furnished a guarantee to all men in that he has resurrected him from the dead.”

### **Faithful Other Sheep Dying Now Have Hope of Resurrection on Earth**

**John 10:16** “And I have other sheep, which are not of this fold; those also I must bring, . . . and they will become one flock, one shepherd.”

**Matt. 25:33, 34** “And he will put the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on his left. Then the king will say to those on his

right: ‘Come, you who have my Father’s blessing, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the world’s foundation.’”

**Ps. 37:9-11** “For evil-doers shall be cut off; but those that wait for Jehovah, they shall inherit the land. For yet a little while, and the wicked shall not be: yea, thou shalt diligently consider his place, and he shall not be. But the meek shall inherit the land, and shall delight themselves in the abundance of peace.”

### **These Two Classes Likely to Be Raised Early After Armageddon**

**Job 14:13** “That thou wouldest keep me secret, until thy wrath be past, that thou wouldest appoint me a set time, and remember me!”

**Dan. 12:13** “For thou shalt rest, and shalt stand in thy lot, at the end of the days.”

**Rev. 20:11, 12** “And I saw a great white throne and the one seated on it. From before him the earth and the heaven fled away, and no place was found for them. And I saw the dead, the great and the small, standing before the throne.”

### **All Three Groups, Accounted Righteous, Have Resurrection of Life**

**John 5:25-29** “Most truly I say to you, the hour is coming, and it is now, when the dead will hear the voice of the Son of God and those who have given heed will live. . . . and come out, those who did good things to a resurrection of life.”

### **All Others in God’s Memory, Reckoned Unrighteous, Raised for Judgment on Earth**

**Luke 23:40, 41, 43** “In reply the other rebuked him and said: ‘Do

you not fear God at all, now that you are in the same judgment? And we, indeed, justly so, for we are receiving in full what we deserve for things we did; but this man did nothing out of the way.' And he [Jesus] said to him: 'Truly I tell you today, You will be with me in Paradise.' "

**John 5:25-30** "For just as the Father has in himself the gift of life, so he has granted to the Son to have also in himself the gift of life. And he has given him authority to do judging, because Son of man he is....those in the memorial tombs will hear his voice and come out,...those who practiced vile things to a resurrection of judgment....just as I hear, I judge, and the judgment that I render is righteous."

**See "Judgment Days".**

**Awakening Must Wait Until  
Paradise Earth Established  
After Armageddon**

**Luke 23:42, 43** "And he went on to say: 'Jesus, remember me when you get into your kingdom.' And he said to him: 'Truly I tell you today, You will be with me in Paradise.' "

**Rev. 20:11-13** "And I saw a great white throne and the one seated on it. From before him the earth and the heaven fled away, and no place was found for them. And I saw the dead, the great and the small, standing before the throne, and scrolls were opened. But another scroll was opened; it is the scroll of life. And the dead were judged out of those things written in the scrolls according to their deeds. And the sea gave up those dead in it, and death and Hades gave up those dead in them, and they

were judged individually according to their deeds."

**All on Earth, Though Awakened  
Earlier, Do Not Have Guarantee  
of Life Until End of 1,000-Year  
Reign**

**Rev. 20:5, 7, 8, 10, 14, 15** "The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were ended....Now as soon as the thousand years have been ended, Satan will be let loose out of his prison, and he will go out to mislead those nations in the four quarters of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together for the war. The number of these is as the sand of the sea. And the Devil who was misleading them was hurled into the lake of fire and sulphur,... And death and Hades were hurled into the lake of fire. This means the second death, the lake of fire. Furthermore, whoever was not found written in the book of life was hurled into the lake of fire."

**Luke 20:35, 36** "But those who have been counted worthy of gaining that system of things and the resurrection from the dead neither marry nor are given in marriage. In fact, neither can they die any more, for they are like the angels, and they are God's children by being children of the resurrection."

**1 Cor. 15:57** "But thanks to God, for he gives us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ!"

**Rev. 21:1-4** "And I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the former heaven and the former earth had passed away,...And he will wipe out every tear from their eyes, and death will be no more, neither will mourning nor outcry nor pain be any more. The former things have passed away."

# Return of Christ

## DEFINITION

Jesus of Nazareth became the Christ of God, the Messiah, the Seed of God's "woman" (organization), upon his baptism in the Jordan river A.D. 29 and thus his first official presence upon this earth as Jehovah's faithful witness continued for three and one half years. Before leaving the earth Christ promised to return again according to God's purpose to establish his kingdom, to rule amidst his enemies, to judge the nations and to bring salvation and deliverance to faithful mankind. This second presence (*par-ou-si'a*) of Christ the Messiah was to be invisible and the unmistakable sign he gave shows conclusively that this return of Christ began in the year 1914. Since that time Christ has turned his attention toward earth's affairs and is dividing the peoples and educating the true Christians in preparation for their survival during the great storm of Armageddon, when all unfaithful mankind will be destroyed from the face of the earth.

### **Sign of Christ's First Presence; Pictured by Jonah's Preaching, His Being Swallowed Up 3 Days, and Restoration**

**Luke 11:29, 30** "This generation is a wicked generation; it looks for a sign. But no sign will be given it except the sign of Jonah. For just as Jonah became a sign to the Ninevites, in the same way will the Son of man be also to this generation."

**Jonah 3:2; 1:17; 2:10** "Arise, go unto Nineveh, that great city, and preach unto it the preaching that I bid thee." "And Jehovah prepared a great fish to swallow up Jonah; and Jonah was in the belly of the fish three days and three nights." "And Jehovah spake unto the fish, and it vomited out Jonah upon the dry land."

### **Fulfilled in Jesus' Preaching, His Being 3 Days in the Grave, and His Resurrection**

**Matt. 12:40** "For just as Jonah was in the belly of the huge fish three days and three nights, so the Son of man will be in the heart of the earth three days and three nights."

**Acts 10:38-41** "Jesus who was from Nazareth, how God anointed him with holy spirit and power, and he went through the land doing good and healing all those oppressed by the Devil, because God was with him. And we are witnesses of all the things he did both in the country of the Jews and in Jerusalem; but they also did away with him by hanging him on a stake. God raised this One up on the third day and granted him to become visible, not to all the people, but to witnesses appointed beforehand by God, to us, who ate and drank with him after his rising from the dead."

### **Sign of Christ's Second Presence the Coming in Clouds When Given Kingdom Rule**

**Dan. 7:13, 14** "I saw in the night-visions, and, behold, there came with the clouds of heaven one like unto a son of man, and he came even to the ancient of days, and they brought him near before him. And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all the peoples, nations, and languages should

serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed."

**At Jesus' Trial, A. D. 33, High Priest Asks for This Sign of Christ, but Jesus Testifies It Will Come in the Future**

**Matt. 26:63, 64** "So the high priest said to him: 'By the living God I put you under oath to tell us whether you are the Christ the Son of God!' Jesus said to him: 'That was for you to say. Yet I say to you men, From henceforth you will see the Son of man sitting at the right hand of power and coming on the clouds of heaven.'"

**Appearances of Jesus After His Resurrection Made in Different Materialized Bodies**

**John 20:14-16** "After saying these things, she turned back and viewed Jesus standing, but she did not discern it was Jesus. Jesus said to her: 'Woman, why are you weeping? Whom are you looking for?' She, imagining it was the gardener, said to him: 'Sir, if you have carried him off, tell me where you have laid him, and I will take him away.' Jesus said to her: 'Mary!' Upon turning around, she said to him, in Hebrew: '*Rabboni!*' (which means 'Teacher!')."

**Luke 24:15, 16, 30, 31** "Now as they were conversing and discussing Jesus himself approached and began traveling with them; but their eyes were kept from recognizing him. And as he was reclining with them at the meal he took the loaf, blessed it, broke it and began to hand it to them. At that their eyes were fully opened and they recognized him; and he disappeared from them."

See: Mark 16:12.

**All His Appearances After His Resurrection Seen Only by His Disciples, Not by the Public**

**1 Cor. 15:4-8** "And that he was buried, yes, that he has been raised up the third day according to the Scriptures, and that he appeared to Cephas, then to the twelve. After that he appeared to upward of five hundred brothers at one time, the most of whom remain to the present, but some have fallen asleep in death. After that he appeared to James, then to all the apostles; but last of all he appeared also to me as if to one born prematurely."

**Angels Testified at Jesus' Ascension as a Spirit that Christ Would Return in Like Manner, Quiet, Unobserved by the Public**

**Acts 1:9, 11** "And after he had said these things, while they [only the disciples] were looking on, he was lifted up and a cloud caught him up from their vision. ... 'Men of Galilee, why do you stand looking into the sky? This Jesus who was received up from you into heaven will come thus in the same manner as you have beheld him going into heaven.'"

**Disciples Asked for Evidence of Christ's Second Presence**

**Matt. 24:3** "While he was sitting upon the mount of Olives, the disciples approached him privately, saying: 'Tell us, When will these things be, and what will be the sign of your presence and of the consummation of the system of things?'"

Also: Mark 13:4; Luke 21:7.

See "Sign of Last Days".

**Composite Sign Proves Fulfillment of Second Presence in 1914**

**Matt. 24:7, 8, 30** "For nation will rise against nation and kingdom against kingdom, and there will be food shortages and earthquakes in one place after another. All these things are a beginning

of pangs of distress. And then the sign of the Son of man will appear in heaven, and then all the tribes of the earth will go to wailing and they will see the Son of man coming on the clouds of heaven with power and great glory."

### **Christ's Return Invisible, as He Testified that Man Would Not See Him Again in Human Form**

**John 14:19** "A little longer and the world will behold me no more."

**Matt. 23:39** "For I say to you, You will by no means see me from henceforth until you say, 'Blessed is he that comes in Jehovah's name!'"

### **Second Presence of Christ Proved Invisible by His "Sheep" Not Being Able to See Him with Their Natural Eyes**

**Matt. 25:37-40** "Then the righteous ones will answer him with the words: 'Lord, when did we see you hungry and feed you, or thirsty, and give you something to drink? When did we see you a stranger and receive you hospitably, or naked, and clothe you? When did we see you sick or in prison and go to you?' And in reply the king will say to them: 'Truly I say to you, To the extent that you did it to one of the least of these my brothers you did it to me.'"

### **Christ Also Invisible to His Enemies, the "Goats"**

**Matt. 25:44, 45** "Then they [the goats] also will answer with the words: 'Lord, when did we see you hungry or thirsty or a stranger or naked or sick or in prison and did not minister to you?' Then he will answer them with the words: 'Truly I say to you, To the extent that you did not do it to one of these least ones, you did not do it to me.'"

### **No Private Appearances of Christ to Occur, as Claimed by Some False Preachers**

**Matt. 24:23-26** "Then if anyone says to you, 'Look! here is the Christ,' or, 'There!' do not believe it. For false Christs and false prophets will arise and will give great signs and wonders so as to mislead, if possible, even the chosen ones. Look! I have forewarned you. Therefore, if people say to you, 'Look! he is in the wilderness,' do not go out; 'Look! he is in the inner chambers,' do not believe it."

### **Evidence of Invisible Second Presence to Be Publicly Discernible in Every Part of the Earth by All Nationalities**

**Matt. 24:27** "For just as the lightning comes out of eastern parts and shines over to western parts, so the presence of the Son of man will be."

**Matt. 24:31** "And he will send forth his angels with a great trumpet-sound and they will gather his chosen ones together from the four winds, from one extremity of the heavens to their other extremity."

### **Early Christians Expected Christ's Return to Be Invisible. Paul Argued There Was Insufficient Evidence in Their Day**

**2 Thess. 2:1-3** "However, brothers, respecting the presence of our Lord Jesus Christ and our being gathered together to him, we request of you not to be quickly shaken from your reason nor to be excited either through an inspired expression or through a verbal message or through a letter as though from us, to the effect that the day of Jehovah is here. Let no one seduce you in any manner, because it will not come unless the falling away comes first and the man of lawlessness gets revealed, the son of destruction."

**Second Presence Purpose of Effecting Salvation Contrasted to First Presence Purpose to Supply the Ransom Price**

Heb. 9:27, 28 "And as it is reserved for men to die once for all time, but after this a judgment, so also the Christ was offered once for all time to bear the sins of many, and the second time that he appears it will be apart from sin and to those earnestly looking for him for their salvation."

**At Christ's Second Presence His Kingdom Rule Begins**

Rev. 11:15 "And loud voices occurred in heaven saying: 'The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ, and he will rule as king for ever and ever.'"

Rev. 12:1, 2, 5, 10 "And a great sign was seen in heaven, a woman arrayed with the sun, and the moon was beneath her feet, and on her head was a crown of twelve stars, and she was pregnant. And she cries out in her pains and in her agony to give birth. And she gave birth to a son, a male, who is destined to shepherd all the nations with an iron rod. And her child was caught away to God and to his throne. And I heard a loud voice in heaven say: 'Now have come to pass the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God and the authority of his Christ.'"

Also: Dan. 2:44; Ps. 145:13.

**He Comes Again to Receive His Fellow Kingdom Heirs into Heaven**

John 14:2-4 "In the house of my Father there are many abodes. Otherwise, I would have told you, because I am going my way to prepare a place for you. Also, if I go my way and prepare a place for you, I am coming again and will receive you home to myself, that where I am you

also may be. And where I am going you know the way."

**At Christ's Second Presence Resurrection of the 144,000 Begins**

2 Tim. 4:7, 8 "I have fought the right fight, I have run the course to the finish, I have observed the faith. From this time on there is reserved for me the crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, will give me as a reward in that day, yet not only to me, but also to all those who have loved his manifestation."

1 Thess. 4:15-17 "For this is what we tell you by Jehovah's word, that we the living who survive to the presence of the Lord shall in no way precede those who have fallen asleep in death, because the Lord himself will descend from heaven with a commanding call, with an archangel's voice and with God's trumpet, and those who are dead in union with Christ will rise first. Afterward we the living who are surviving will together with them be caught away in clouds to meet the Lord in the air; and thus we shall always be with the Lord."

**At Christ's Second Presence He Will Rule Nations as with a Rod of Iron, to Their Grief**

Rev. 1:7 "Look! he is coming with the clouds, and every eye will see him, and those who pierced him; and all the tribes of the earth will beat themselves in grief because of him. Yes, Amen."

Ps. 2:8, 9 "Ask of me, and I will give thee [Christ Jesus] the nations for thine inheritance, and the uttermost parts of the earth for thy possession. Thou shalt break them with a rod of iron; thou shalt dash them in pieces like a potter's vessel."

**Time of Fear and Day of Fearful Sightings, but the Righteous to Be Delivered**

Luke 21:25-28 "Also there will be signs in sun and moon and

stars, and on the earth anguish of nations, not knowing the way out because of the roaring of the sea and its agitation, while men become faint out of fear and expectation of the things coming upon the inhabited earth; for the powers of the heavens will be shaken. And then they will see the Son of man coming in a cloud with power and great glory. But as these things start to occur, raise yourselves erect and lift your heads up, because your deliverance is getting near."

### **Christ's Second Presence Begins Transition Period of Warning Notice to the People**

**Matt. 24:14** "And this good news of the kingdom will be preached in all the inhabited earth for the purpose of a witness to all the nations, and then the accomplished end will come."

### **Likened to Noah's Day Before the Deluge**

**Matt. 24:37-39** "For just as the days of Noah were, so the presence of the Son of man will be. For as people were in those days before the flood, eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, until the day that Noah entered into the ark; and they took no note until the flood came and swept them all away, so the presence of the Son of man will be."

### **At Christ's Second Presence He Separates Good and Bad People as Sheep and Goats, as Time of Judgment Sets In**

**Matt. 25:31-33** "When the Son of man arrives in his glory and all the angels with him, then he will sit down on his glorious throne. And all the nations will be gathered before him, and he will separate people one from another, just as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats. And he will put the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on his left."

### **Righteous Flee to God's Moun- tainlike Organization**

**Matt. 24:16** "Then let those in Judea begin fleeing to the mountains."

### **Angels Assist in This Sifting Work**

**Matt. 13:49** "That is how it will be in the consummation of the system of things: the angels will go out and separate the wicked from among the righteous."

Also: **Matt. 24:31; 25:31.**

### **Righteous Ones Taken Along to Safety at Christ's Second Presence**

**Matt. 24:40-42** "Then two men will be in the field: one will be taken along and the other be abandoned; two women will be grinding at the hand-mill: one will be taken along and the other be abandoned. Keep on the watch, therefore, because you do not know on what day your Master is coming."

Also: **Luke 17:32-36.**

### **Destiny-fixing Time for Salvation**

**Matt. 24:11-13** "And many false prophets will arise and mislead many; and because of the increasing of lawlessness the love of the greater number will cool off. But he that has endured to the finish is the one that will be saved."

### **Christ's Second Presence Is a Time to Keep Awake**

**Luke 21:34-36** "But pay attention to yourselves that your hearts never become weighted down with overeating and heavy drinking and anxieties of life, and suddenly that day be instantly upon you as a snare. For it will come in upon all those dwelling upon the face of all the earth. Keep awake, then, all the time



making supplication that you may succeed in escaping all these things that are destined to occur,

and to hold your position before the Son of man."  
See "Resurrection".

# Sabbath

## DEFINITION

Literally: "Sabbath," from *Sha-bath'*, "to rest; desist." "Sabbath day," therefore, means "rest day" or a day of desisting from certain works. A sabbath day is always sanctified, brings blessings to the righteous.

Day: A definite period of time (not necessarily 24 hours).

### The Different Sabbaths

1. God's 7,000-year rest day of creative week.

2. The weekly sabbath (God's law to the Israelites).

3. Other sabbath days of God's law to the Israelites.

4. Sabbath years (seventh and fiftieth) of God's law to the Israelites.

5. The 1,000-year "Kingdom Sabbath" under Christ as King.

### 1. Jehovah's 7,000-Year Sabbath

Gen. 2:2, 3 "On the seventh day God finished his work which he had made; and he rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had made. And God blessed the seventh day, and hallowed it; because that in it he rested from all his work which God had created and made."

Ex. 31:17 "In six days Jehovah made heaven and earth, and on the seventh day he rested, and was refreshed."

### God desisted only toward earthly creative works

John 5:17 "But he answered them: 'My Father has kept working until now, and I keep working.'"

2 Cor. 5:17 "Consequently, if anyone is in union with Christ, he is a new creation; the old things passed away, look! new things have come into existence."

Gal. 6:15 "For neither is circumcision anything nor is uncir-

cumcision, but a new creation is something."

Eph. 1:19, 20 "It is according to the operation of the mightiness of his strength, with which he has operated in the case of the Christ when he raised him up from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly places."

### Length of God's six creative days and the rest day not 24 hours each, but many years

Gen. 2:4 "These are the generations of the heavens and of the earth when they were created, in the day [Heb., *yôm*] that Jehovah God made earth and heaven."

### God's creative rest day 7,000 years long

God rested shortly after creating Adam and Eve and giving them his law and the procreation mandate.

Gen. 2:7, 16, 17, 22; 1:28-31 "And Jehovah God formed man ... and man became a living soul. ... of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: ... and the rib ... made he a woman, and brought her unto the man." "And God said unto them, Be fruitful and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it; and have dominion over the fish ... birds ... and over every living thing ... I have given you every herb ... and ... fruit ... for food: ... And there was eve-

ning and there was morning, the sixth day."

Seventh day not shown as ending back there, as are the other six.—See Genesis 2:1-4.

God's rest day still continues:

**Heb. 3:9-4:11** "So I swore in my wrath: 'They [Israelites in the wilderness] shall not enter into my rest.'" "He again marks off a certain day by saying after so long a time in David's psalm 'Today';... So there remains a sabbath resting for the people of God."

**Also: Isa. 28:12.**

(1) Man's existence covers nearly 6,000 years (4025 B.C. to over 1,950 years A.D.) as shown by Bible chronology.—Luke 3:23-38.

(2) Armageddon and change in system of things near—in this generation—as shown by physical facts in fulfillment of Matthew, chapter 24, and other prophecies.

**Matt. 24:34** "Truly I say to you that this generation will by no means pass away until all these things occur."

(3) 1,000-year rule of Christ immediately follows Armageddon.

**Rev. 20:1-6** "An angel... seized the dragon, the original serpent, who is the Devil and Satan, and bound him for a thousand years. ... that he might not mislead the nations any more until the thousand years were ended."

(4) God's rest day ends at the end of the 1,000-year rule of Christ as King, making the great Rest Day 7,000 years.

**1 Cor. 15:24, 28** "Next, the accomplished end, when he hands over the kingdom to his God and Father,... But when all things will have been subjected to him, then the Son himself will also subject himself to the one who subjected all things to him, that God may be all things to every one."

**Sabbath set aside for vindication of Jehovah as Creator, Purposer, Maintainer, of what is good**

**Gen. 2:3** "And God blessed the seventh day, and hallowed it."

**Isa. 46:10** "Declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times things that are not yet done; saying, My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure."

**Isa. 48:3** "I have declared the former things from of old; yea, they went forth out of my mouth, and I showed them: suddenly I did them, and they came to pass."

**Isa. 55:11** "So shall my word be that goeth forth out of my mouth: it shall not return unto me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please, and it shall prosper in the thing whereto I sent it."

**Acts 15:17, 18** "Jehovah, who is doing these things which he has known from of old."

**Works of self-interest to be avoided during God's rest day**

**Heb. 4:10** "For the man that has entered into God's rest has also himself rested from his own works just as God did from his own."

**Rom. 9:31, 32** "But Israel, although pursuing a law of righteousness, did not attain to the law. For what reason? Because he pursued it, not by faith, but as by works."

**Rom. 10:3** "For, because of not knowing the righteousness of God but seeking to establish their own, they did not subject themselves to the righteousness of God."

**Job 32:2** "Then was kindled the wrath of Elihu... against Job was his wrath kindled, because he justified himself rather than God."

**Jer. 10:23** "O Jehovah, I know that the way of man is not in himself; it is not in man that walketh to direct his steps."

**Col. 1:21** "Indeed, you who were once alienated and enemies

because your minds were on the works that were wicked, he now has again reconciled."

**1 Cor. 5:8** "Consequently, let us keep the feast, not with old yeast, neither with yeast of injuriousness and wickedness, but with unfermented cakes of purity and truth."

**Matt. 7:22, 23** "Many will say to me in that day: 'Master, Master, did we not prophesy in your name, and expel demons in your name, and perform many powerful works in your name?' And yet then I will confess to them: I never knew you at all."

**Isa. 58:13** "If thou turn away thy foot from the sabbath, from doing thy pleasure on my holy day."

**Ecc. 4:4, 6** "Then I saw all labor and every skilful work, that for this a man is envied of his neighbor. This also is vanity and a striving after wind. Better is a handful, with quietness, than two handfuls with labor and striving after wind."

**1 Tim. 6:9** "However, those who are determined to be rich fall into temptation and a snare and many senseless and hurtful desires which plunge men into destruction and ruin."

***Christian's unselfish work, to be done during God's rest day; faith and obedience***

**John 6:29** "In answer Jesus said to them: 'This is the work of God, that you exercise faith in him whom that One sent forth.'"

**Rom. 11:6** "Now if it is by undeserved kindness it is no longer due to works; otherwise, the undeserved kindness no longer proves to be undeserved kindness."

**Heb. 4:3, 6, 11** "For we who have exercised faith do enter into the rest, . . . those to whom the good news was first declared did not enter in because of disobedience. Let us therefore do our utmost to enter into that rest, for fear anyone should fall in

the same example of disobedience."

**Isa. 56:2** "Blessed is the man that doeth this, and the son of man that holdeth it fast; that keepeth the sabbath from profaning it, and keepeth his hand from doing any evil."

***Satan, Adam and Eve violated God's rest by disobedience, by trying to become judges, superior authorities, trying to build world of their own making***

**Gen. 2:17; 3:4-6, 22** "Of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it."

"The serpent said, . . . Ye shall not surely die: for God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil. And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was to be desired to make one wise, she took of the fruit. . . . And Jehovah God said, Behold, the man is become as one of us, to know good and evil."

**Rom. 13:1** "Let every soul be in subjection to the superior authorities."

**Rom. 5:12, 19** "Through one man sin entered into the world and death through sin, . . . through the disobedience of the one man many were constituted sinners."

**2 Cor. 11:14** "Satan himself keeps transforming himself into an angel of light."

***The nations have violated God's rest day by their own worthless works***

**Matt. 6:31, 32** "So never be anxious and say: 'What are we to eat?' or, 'What are we to drink?' or, 'What are we to put on?' For all these are the things the nations are eagerly pursuing."

**Isa. 24:5, 6** "The earth also is polluted under the inhabitants thereof; because they have trans-

gressed the laws, violated the statutes, broken the everlasting covenant. Therefore hath the curse devoured the earth, and they that dwell therein are found guilty."

**Isa. 30:1, 2** "Woe to the rebellious children, saith Jehovah, that take counsel, but not of me; and that make a league, but not of my spirit, that they may add sin to sin; that set out to go down into Egypt, and have not asked at my mouth; to strengthen themselves in the strength of Pharaoh, and to take refuge in the shadow of Egypt!"

**Isa. 8:9-13** "O ye peoples, ... gird yourselves, and be broken in pieces. Take counsel together, and it shall be brought to nought; ... Say ye not, A conspiracy, ... neither fear ye their fear, ... Jehovah of hosts, him shall ye sanctify."

**Jer. 51:58** "The peoples shall labor for vanity, and the nations for the fire; and they shall be weary."

**Ps. 127:1** "Except Jehovah build the house, they labor in vain that build it: except Jehovah keep the city, the watchman waketh but in vain."

**Dan. 4:30** "The king spake and said, Is not this great Babylon, which I have built for the royal dwelling-place, by the might of my power and for the glory of my majesty?"

**Gen. 11:4** "And they said, Come, let us build us a city, and a tower, whose top may reach unto heaven, and let us make us a name."

***Earthly resurrection not a violation of rest day. Life pattern re-produced; no new humans created***

**John 5:28, 29** "The hour is coming in which all those in the memorial tombs will hear his voice and come out."

**Job 14:13-15** "Oh that thou wouldest hide me in Sheol, ... that thou wouldest appoint me a

set time, and remember me! If a man die, shall he live again? ... Thou wouldest call, and I would answer thee: thou wouldest have a desire to the work of thy hands."

**Ps. 119:73; 139:13, 15, 16** "Thy hands have made me and fashioned me." "For thou didst form my inward parts: ... My frame was not hidden from thee, ... and in thy book they were all written."

**Matt. 12:11** "Who will be the man among you that has one sheep and, if this falls into a pit on the sabbath, will not get hold of it and lift it out?"

## 2. Weekly Sabbath

**Genesis, chapters 1, 2, 8, 9**, although mentioning seven-day divisions, do not command or indicate these to end with a sabbath day.

### *First instituted with Israelites*

**Ex. 16:23, 26-30** "Jehovah hath spoken, Tomorrow is a solemn rest, a holy sabbath unto Jehovah: ... Six days ye shall gather it [manna]; but on the seventh day is the sabbath, in it there shall be none. And it came to pass on the seventh day, that there went out some of the people to gather, and they found none. And Jehovah said unto Moses, How long refuse ye to keep my commandments and my laws? See, for that Jehovah hath given you the sabbath, therefore he giveth you on the sixth day the bread of two days; abide ye every man in his place, let no man go out of his place on the seventh day. So the people rested on the seventh day."

**Ex. 20:8-11** "Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy."

**Deut. 5:2, 3, 12, 15** "Jehovah our God made a covenant with us in Horeb. Jehovah made not this covenant with our fathers, but with us, even us, who are all of us here alive this day. ... Thou wast a servant in the land of Egypt, and Jehovah thy God

brought thee out thence by a mighty hand and by an outstretched arm: therefore Jehovah thy God commanded thee to keep the sabbath day."

***As a sign given only to the Jews***

**Amos 3:1, 2** "O children of Israel, . . . You only have I known of all the families of the earth."

**Ex. 31:16, 17** "Wherefore the children of Israel shall keep the sabbath, to observe the sabbath throughout their generations, for a perpetual covenant. It is a sign between me and the children of Israel for ever."

**Neh. 9:13, 14** "Thou camest down also upon mount Sinai, and spakest with them from heaven, and gavest them right ordinances and true laws, good statutes . . . and commandest them commandments, and statutes, and a law, by Moses thy servant."

**Ps. 147:19, 20** "He showeth his word unto Jacob, his statutes and his ordinances unto Israel. He hath not dealt so with any nation; and as for his ordinances, they have not known them."

***Good works of preaching and helping others could be done on Jewish sabbath***

**Luke 14:3, 4** "So in response Jesus spoke to those versed in the Law and to the Pharisees, saying: 'Is it lawful on the sabbath to cure or not?' But they kept silent. With that he took hold of the man, healed him and sent him away."

**Mark 1:21** "No sooner was it the sabbath than he entered into the synagogue and began to teach."

**Mark 3:4** "Next he said to them: 'Is it lawful on the sabbath to do a good deed or to do an injury, to save or to kill a soul?'"

**Acts 13:42, 44** "Now when they were going out, the people began entreating for these matters to be spoken to them on the following sabbath. The next sabbath nearly all the city gathered to-

gether to hear the word of Jehovah."

**Acts 16:13** "And on the sabbath day we went forth outside the gate beside a river where we were thinking there was a place of prayer, and we sat down and began speaking to the women that had assembled."

**Acts 17:2** "So according to Paul's custom he went inside to them and for three sabbaths he reasoned with them from the Scriptures."

**Acts 18:4** "However, he would give a talk in the synagogue every sabbath and would win over Jews and Greeks."

***Weekly Sabbath Not Enjoined upon Christians***

**Acts 15:28, 29** "For the holy spirit and we ourselves have favored adding no further burden to you, except these necessary things, to keep yourselves free from things sacrificed to idols and from blood and from things killed without draining their blood and from fornication. If you carefully keep yourselves from these things, you will prosper."

**Gal. 4:9-11** "How is it that you are turning back again to the weak and inadequate elementary things and want to be slaves to them over again? You are scrupulously observing days and months and seasons and years."

**Col. 2:16** "Therefore let no man judge you in eating and drinking or in respect of a feast day or of an observance of the new moon or of a sabbath."

**Rom. 14:5, 10** "One man judges one day as above another; another man judges one day as all others; let each man be fully convinced in his own mind . . . why do you judge your brother?"

***3, 4. Other Sabbath Days and Years All Equally Binding upon the Israelites***

**Lev. 16:29, 31** "In the seventh month, on the tenth day of the

month, . . . It is a sabbath of solemn rest unto you, . . . it is a statute for ever."

**Lev. 23:2, 3, 6-8, 15, 21, 24, 39** "The set feasts of Jehovah, . . . on the seventh day is a sabbath . . . on the fifteenth day of the [first] month is the feast of unleavened bread . . . ye shall do no servile work. . . . in the seventh day . . . ye shall do no servile work. And ye shall count unto you from the morrow after the sabbath, . . . seven sabbaths . . . on the selfsame day; . . . ye shall do no servile work: . . . In the seventh month, on the first day of the month, shall be a solemn rest unto you, . . . on the fifteenth day of the seventh month, . . . ye shall keep the feast of Jehovah seven days: on the first day shall be a solemn rest, and on the eighth day shall be a solemn rest."

**Lev. 25:1-13** "When ye come into the land which I give you, . . . in the seventh year shall be a sabbath of solemn rest for the land, . . . And ye shall hallow the fiftieth year."

**Jesus Did Not Destroy Law by Breaking It, but Fulfilled and Completed It, for Moving It Out of the Way**

**Gal. 4:4, 5** "God sent forth his Son, who was produced out of a woman and who came to be under law, that he might release by purchase those under law."

**Matt. 5:17** "Do not think I came to destroy the Law or the Prophets. I came, not to destroy, but to fulfill."

**Eph. 2:15** "By means of his flesh he abolished the hatred, the Law of commandments consisting in decrees."

**Christ Considered the Entire Law One, Not Divided into "Moral" and "Ceremonial" Parts**

**Matt. 5:21, 23, 27, 31, 33, 38, 43** "'You must not murder.' [Ex. 20:13] . . . If, then, you are bringing your gift to the altar [Deut.

16:16, 17] . . . 'You must not commit adultery.' [Ex. 20:14] . . . 'Whoever divorces his wife, let him give her a certificate of divorce.' [Deut. 24:1] . . . 'You must not swear without performing.' [Num. 30:2] . . . 'Eye for eye and tooth for tooth.' [Ex. 21:24] . . . 'You must love your neighbor and hate your enemy.'" [Ex. 23:4]

**Matt. 5:18, 19** "Whoever, therefore, breaks one of these least commandments and teaches mankind to that effect, he will be called 'least' in relation to the kingdom of the heavens."

**Jas. 2:10** "For whoever observes all the Law but makes a false step in one point, he has become an offender against them all."

**5. Seventh-Day Sabbath a Shadow of 1,000-Year Rule of Christ as Glorious King to Benefit of Mankind**

**Mark 2:27, 28** "So he went on to say to them: 'The sabbath came into existence for the sake of man, and not man for the sake of the sabbath; hence the Son of man is Lord even of the sabbath.'"

**Luke 13:16** "Was it not due, then, for this woman who is a daughter of Abraham, and whom Satan held bound, look! eighteen years, to be loosed from this bond on the sabbath day?"

**Matt. 12:11, 12** "Who will be the man among you that has one sheep and, if this falls into a pit on the sabbath, will not get hold of it and lift it out? All considered, of how much more worth is a man than a sheep!"

**As Greater Noah (Meaning "Rest") His Kingdom Sabbath Will Bring Rest and Peace to the Earth**

**Gen. 5:28, 29** "And Lamech lived a hundred eighty and two years, and begat a son: and he called his name Noah, saying, This same shall comfort us in our work and in the toil of our hands, which cometh because of

the ground which Jehovah hath cursed."

**Zech. 9:10** "And I will cut off the chariot from Ephraim, and the horse from Jerusalem; and the battle bow shall be cut off; and he shall speak peace unto the nations: and his dominion shall be from sea to sea, and from the River to the ends of the earth."

**Gatherings on First Day of the Week Not an Observance of a Sabbath Day (Resurrection of Christ Did Not Change the Sabbath to First of Week)**

**Acts 20:7** "On the first day of the week, when we were gathered together to have a meal, Paul began discoursing to them."

**Compare: Acts 2:46** "And day after day they were in constant attendance at the temple with one accord, and they took their meals in private homes."

**1 Cor. 16:2** "Every first day of the week let each of you at his own house set something aside in store as he may be prospering, so that when I arrive collections will not take place then."

Christ would not add to or change the Law:

**Matt. 15:3** "In reply he said to them: 'Why is it you also over-

step the commandment of God because of your tradition?'"

**Matt. 9:16, 17** "Nobody sews a patch of unshrunk cloth upon an old garment; for its full strength would pull from the garment and the tear would become worse. Neither do people put new wine into old wineskins; but if they do, then the wineskins burst and the wine spills out and the wineskins are ruined. But people put new wine into new wineskins, and both things are preserved."

**Compare: Heb. 8:13** "In his saying 'a new covenant' he has made the former one obsolete. Now that which is made obsolete and growing old is near to vanishing away."

**Deut. 4:2** "Ye shall not add unto the word which I command you, neither shall ye diminish from it."

**No Sabbath Law Today Because None Have Power to Enforce Death Penalty for Sabbath Violations. Such Sanction Inseparable from Mosaic Law**

**Num. 15:32, 35** "They found a man gathering sticks upon the sabbath day. And Jehovah said unto Moses, The man shall surely be put to death."

# Salvation

## DEFINITION

Salvation is the deliverance from the destructive power of sin, a redemption from the ultimate end of sin which is everlasting death, annihilation. It means a restoration to divine favor and perfection after having sinned or missed God's mark of perfection set for faithful mankind. Salvation as referred to in the Bible may either be (1) the preserving of one alive from trouble or an impending immediate disaster or (2) the opportunity to receive everlasting life in a state of peace, happiness and prosperity. Salvation is not an act of divine justice but rather an act of divine mercy. It is a justification or a being declared righteous granted by God the Superior to a handicapped inferior. As an act of mercy it is the withholding (1) of the consequences of disaster or (2) of the punishment of everlasting death

(annihilation) when either is justly due for failure to keep the divine law. Salvation that counts is not a self-salvation, a salvation by works, a salvation by law or a universal salvation, as these are all unclean religious fallacies.

### **Jehovah God a Savior from Disaster and Trouble**

**Ex. 15:2** "Jehovah is my strength and song, and he is become my salvation: this is my God, and I will praise him."

**2 Sam. 22:3** "God, my rock, in him will I take refuge; my shield, and the horn of my salvation, my high tower, and my refuge; my saviour, thou savest me from violence."

### **Jehovah God a Savior to Everlasting Life**

**1 Tim. 4:8, 10** "But godly devotion is beneficial for all things, as it holds promise of the life now and that which is to come. For to this end we are working hard and exerting ourselves, because we have rested our hope on a living God, who is a Savior of all kinds of men, especially of faithful ones."

**Also: Jude 25.**

### **A Merciful God, Jehovah Alone Justifies, Declares Righteous to Salvation**

**Deut. 4:31** "For Jehovah thy God is a merciful God."

**Rom. 8:33** "God is the One who declares them righteous."

**1 Pet. 1:3, 5** "Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, for according to his great mercy he gave us a new birth to a living hope...who are being safeguarded by God's power through faith for a salvation ready to be revealed in the last period of time."

### **God Provides the Chief Agent of Life, the Savior Jesus Christ**

**Acts 5:30, 31** "The God of our forefathers raised up Jesus, whom your hands had killed, hanging him upon a stake. God exalted this one as Chief Agent and Savior to his right hand, to give re-

pentance to Israel and forgiveness of sins."

**Luke 1:68, 69** "Blessed be Jehovah the God of Israel, because he has turned his attention and performed deliverance toward his people. And he has raised up a mighty savior for us in the house of David his servant."

**See also: Luke 2:11; Eph. 5:23; 2 Tim. 1:10; 2 Pet. 1:11; Heb. 2:10.**

### **Jesus Christ Becomes the Savior of the New World of Righteousness**

**John 4:42** "We do not believe any longer on account of your talk; for we have heard for ourselves and we know that this man is for a certainty the savior of the world."

**1 John 4:14** "We ourselves have beheld and are bearing witness that the Father has sent forth his Son as Savior of the world."

### **All Salvation Depends upon Jesus Christ**

**Acts 4:10, 12** "That in the name of Jesus Christ...there is no salvation in anyone else, for there is not another name under heaven that has been given among men by which we must get saved."

### **God's "Means of Saving", the Ransom Sacrifice of the Man Jesus, Must Be Accepted**

**Luke 2:27-30** "And as the parents brought the young child Jesus...he [Simeon] himself received it into his arms and blessed God and said: 'Now, Sovereign Lord, you are letting your slave go free in peace according to your declaration; because my eyes have seen your means of saving.'"

**Luke 3:6** "All humanity will see the saving means of God."



**Acts 28:28** "Therefore let it be known to you that this the means by which God saves has been sent out to the nations; they will certainly listen to it."

**Mark 10:45** "For even the Son of man came, not to be ministered to, but to minister and to give his soul a ransom in exchange for many."

### **Salvation a Goal to Be Attained —Not 'Once Saved Always Saved'**

**Phil. 3:12-14** "Not that I have already received it or am already made perfect, but I am pursuing to see if I may also lay hold on that for which I have also been laid hold on by Christ Jesus. Brothers, I do not yet consider myself as having laid hold on it; but there is one thing about it: Forgetting the things behind and stretching forward to the things ahead, I am pursuing down toward the goal for the prize of the calling above and which God extends in Christ Jesus."

### **If 'Once Saved Always Saved', Why Did God Reject Israel Whom He Saved from Egypt?**

**Jude 5** "I desire to remind you, despite your knowing all things once for all time, that Jehovah, although he saved a people out of the land of Egypt, afterwards destroyed those not showing faith."

**Heb. 3:17** "Moreover, with whom did God become disgusted for forty years? Was it not with those who sinned, whose carcasses fell in the wilderness?"

### **Salvation to Life Involves Time and Is Not Completed When One Becomes a Christian**

**1 Cor. 1:18** "For the speech about the torture stake is foolishness to those who are perishing, but to us who are being saved it is God's power."

**2 Tim. 4:7, 8** "I have fought the right fight, I have run the

course to the finish, I have observed the faith. From this time on there is reserved for me the crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, will give me as a reward in that day, yet not only to me, but also to all those who have loved his manifestation."

### **Follow in the "Way of Salvation"**

**Acts 16:17** "These men are slaves of the Most High God, who are publishing to you the way of salvation."

### **Full faith in Jesus as Ransomer necessary**

**1 Pet. 1:8, 9** "Though you never saw him, you love him [Christ Jesus]. Though you are not looking upon him at present, yet you exercise faith in him and are greatly rejoicing with an unspeakable and glorified joy, as you receive the accomplished end of your faith, the salvation of your souls."

### **Growth to salvation necessary**

**1 Pet. 2:2** "And, as newborn infants, form a longing for the unadulterated milk belonging to the word, that through it you may grow to salvation."

### **Soundness of mind and godly devotion necessary**

**Titus 2:11-14** "For the undeserved kindness of God which brings salvation to all kinds of men has been manifested, instructing us to repudiate ungodliness and worldly desires and to live with soundness of mind and righteousness and godly devotion amid this present system of things, while we wait for the happy hope and glorious manifestation of the great God and of our Savior Christ Jesus, who gave himself for us that by a ransom he might release us from every kind of lawlessness."

### **Endure tribulation**

**2 Cor. 1:6** "Whether we are in tribulation, it is for your comfort and salvation."

***Embrace the good news as power for salvation***

**Rom. 1:16** "For I am not ashamed of the good news; it is, in fact, God's power for salvation to everyone having faith, to the Jew first as well as to the Greek."

***Share in making a public declaration of the good news***

**Rom. 10:10** "For with the heart one exercises faith for righteousness, but with the mouth one makes public declaration for salvation."

***Pray for salvation***

**Phil. 1:19** "For I know this will result in my salvation through your supplication."

**Rom. 10:1** "Brothers, the goodwill of my heart and my supplication to God for them are, indeed, for their salvation."

***Obedience to Christ necessary***

**Heb. 5:9** "He became responsible for everlasting salvation to all those obeying him."

***Repentance necessary for mistakes made***

**2 Cor. 7:9, 10** "Now I rejoice, not because you were just saddened, but because you were saddened into repenting, for you were saddened in a godly way, that you might suffer no damage in anything due to us. For sadness in a godly way makes for repentance to salvation which is not to be regretted."

***Keep Awake as Salvation Nears***

**Rom. 13:11** "Do this, too, because you know the season, that it is already the hour for you to awake from sleep, for now our salvation is nearer than at the time when we became believers."

***Keep Shielding the Mind with Hope of Salvation***

**1 Thess. 5:8** "But as for us who belong to the day, let us keep our senses and have on the breastplate of faith and love and

as a helmet the hope of salvation."

**Eph. 6:17** "Also accept the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the spirit, that is, God's word."

***Work Out Salvation with Fear and Trembling***

**Phil. 2:12** "My beloved ones, . . . now much more readily during my absence, keep working out your own salvation with fear and trembling."

***Study of Scriptures Necessary for Salvation***

**2 Tim. 3:15** "From infancy you have known the holy writings which are able to make you wise for salvation through the faith in connection with Christ Jesus."

***Self-Salvation or Self-Righteousness Impossible, a Fallacy***

**Rom. 3:10** "There is not a righteous man, not even one."

**Luke 16:15** [Jesus speaking to the Pharisees] "He said to them: 'You are those who declare yourselves righteous before men, but God knows your hearts; because what is lofty among men is a disgusting thing in God's sight.'"

***God Reproves Job for Self-Righteousness***

**Job 32:1; 40:6, 8** "So these three men ceased to answer Job, because he was righteous in his own eyes." "Then Jehovah answered Job out of the whirlwind, and said, . . . Wilt thou condemn me, that thou mayest be justified?"

***Salvation or Righteousness by Works of Character Development Impossible. This Is Hypocrisy***

**Matt. 23:27, 28** "Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! because you resemble white-washed graves, which outwardly indeed appear beautiful but inside are full of dead men's bones and of every kind of uncleanness. In that way you also, outwardly indeed, appear righteous to men,

but inside you are full of hypocrisy and lawlessness."

**Salvation or Being Declared Righteous by the Law of Moses Impossible**

**Rom. 3:19, 20** "Now we know that all the things the Law says it addresses to those under the Law, so that every mouth may be stopped and all the world may become liable to God for punishment. Therefore by works of law no flesh will be declared righteous before him, for by law is the accurate knowledge of sin."

**Universal Salvation Unscriptural, a Fallacy**

**No salvation for the wicked**

**Ps. 119:155** "Salvation is far from the wicked; for they seek not thy statutes."

**Oblivion for the wicked**

**Prov. 10:7** "The memory of the righteous is blessed; but the name of the wicked shall rot."

**Prov. 21:16** "The man that wandereth out of the way of understanding shall rest in the assembly of the dead."

**Salvation's being a matter of mercy, God extends it only to those he desires**

**Ex. 33:17, 19** "And Jehovah said unto Moses, . . . I will make all my goodness pass before thee, and will proclaim the name of Jehovah before thee; and I will be gracious to whom I will be gracious, and will show mercy on whom I will show mercy."

**Jesus' ransom only for the "many", not for everyone who has lived**

**Matt. 20:28** "Just as the Son of man came, not to be ministered to, but to minister and to give his soul a ransom in exchange for many."

**Only those exercising faith in Jesus will be saved**

**John 3:16** "For God loved the world so much that he gave his

only-begotten Son, in order that everyone exercising faith in him might not be destroyed but have everlasting life."

**The nonbelievers, the "goats", destined for everlasting death, annihilation**

**Matt. 25:45, 46** "Then he [Christ Jesus] will answer them [the goats] with the words: 'Truly I say to you, To the extent that you did not do it to one of these least ones, you did not do it to me.' And these will depart into everlasting cutting-off, but the righteous ones into everlasting life."

**Chasm of unalterable judgment separates the righteous from the irreformable wicked**

**Luke 16:26, 31** "And besides all these things, a great chasm has been fixed between us and you people, so that those wanting to go over from here to you people cannot, neither may people cross over from there to us. . . . If they do not listen to Moses and the Prophets, neither will they be persuaded if someone rises from the dead."

**Salvation for "men of all kinds", not every last one who has lived**

**Rom. 5:15, 18** "But it is not with the gift as it was with the trespass. For if by one man's trespass many died, the undeserved kindness of God and his free gift with the undeserved kindness by the one man Jesus Christ abounded much more to many. So, then, as through one trespass the result to men of all kinds was condemnation, likewise also through one act of justification the result to men of all kinds is a declaring of them righteous for life."

**False teaching of universal salvation voids doctrine of Christ's ransom**

**Heb. 10:29** "Of how much more severe a punishment, do you think, will the man be counted

worthy who has trampled upon the Son of God and who has esteemed as of ordinary value the blood of the covenant by which he was sanctified, and who has outraged the spirit of undeserved kindness with contempt?"

***Makes void the purpose of preaching the good news***

**Rom. 10:13-15** "For 'anyone that calls upon the name of Jehovah will be saved'. However, how will they call upon him in whom they have not put faith? How, in turn, will they put faith in him of whom they have not heard? How, in turn, will they hear without someone to preach? How, in turn, will they preach unless they have been sent forth?"

***Makes void God's appointment of preachers, ministers***

**1 Cor. 9:16** "Really, woe is me if I did not declare the good news!"

**Ezek. 3:18, 19** "When I say unto the wicked, Thou shalt surely die; and thou givest him not warning, nor speakest to warn the wicked from his wicked way, to save his life; the same wicked man shall die in his iniquity; but his blood will I require at thy hand. Yet if thou warn the wicked, and he turn not from his wickedness, nor from his wicked way, he shall die in his iniquity; but thou hast delivered thy soul."

***Makes void the need to walk circumspectly in the way of salvation***

**1 Cor. 9:26, 27** "Therefore, the way I am running is not uncertainly; the way I am directing my blows is so as not to be striking the air; but I browbeat my body and lead it as a slave, that, after I have preached to others, I myself should not become disapproved somehow."

***No universal salvation, because God's power to be displayed in destruction of the wicked***

**Rom. 9:17, 22-24** "For the Scripture says to Pharaoh: 'For this very purpose I have let you remain, that in connection with you I may demonstrate my power and that my name may be published throughout all the earth.' If, now, God, although having the will to demonstrate his wrath and to make his power known, tolerated with much longsuffering vessels of wrath made fit for destruction, in order that he might make known the riches of his glory upon vessels of mercy, which he prepared beforehand for glory... what of it?"

***No universal salvation, because Sodom and Gomorrah eternally destroyed***

**Jude 7** "So, too, Sodom and Gomorrah and the cities about them, after they in the same manner as the foregoing ones had committed fornication excessively and gone out after flesh for unnatural use, are placed before us as a warning example by undergoing the judicial punishment of everlasting fire."

See also: 2 Pet. 2:6.

***No universal salvation, because unrighteous doomed to be cut off in death***

**2 Pet. 2:9** "Jehovah knows how to deliver people of godly devotion out of trial, but to reserve unrighteous people for the day of judgment to be cut off."

***No universal salvation, because wicked angels are doomed to destruction***

**Jude 6** "And the angels that did not keep their original position but forsook their own proper dwelling-place he has reserved with eternal bonds under dense darkness for the judgment of the great day."

See also: 2 Pet. 2:4.

***No universal salvation, because Satan himself is to be destroyed***

Heb. 2:14 "Therefore, since the 'young children' are sharers of blood and flesh, he also similarly partook of the same things, that through his death he might destroy the one having the means to cause death, that is, the Devil."

See also: Ezek. 28:14-19.

***Salvation is contrasted with destruction, thus demonstrating universal salvation not true***

Phil. 1:28 "And in no respect being frightened by your opponents. This very thing is a proof of destruction for them, but of salvation for you; and this indication is from God."

***God selects those who receive salvation. Others have no hope of life***

2 Thess. 2:13 "We are obligated to thank God always for you, brothers loved by Jehovah, because God selected you from the beginning for salvation by sanctifying you with spirit and by your faith in the truth."

1 Thess. 4:13 "That you may not sorrow just as the rest also do who have no hope."

***Paul Refers to a Salvation from a Sea Disaster***

Acts 27:34, 44 "'Therefore I encourage you to take some food, for this is in the interest of your salvation; for not a hair of the head of one of you will perish.' . . . And thus it came about that all were brought safely to land."

***Prepare Now for Salvation from the Greatest Impending Disaster of Armageddon***

Zeph. 2:2, 3 "Before the decree bring forth, before the day pass as the chaff, before the fierce anger of Jehovah come upon you, before the day of Jehovah's anger

come upon you. Seek ye Jehovah, all ye meek of the earth, that have kept his ordinances; seek righteousness, seek meekness: it may be ye will be hid in the day of Jehovah's anger."

Matt. 24:8, 13 "All these things are a beginning of pangs of distress. But he that has endured to the finish is the one that will be saved."

***Salvation from Armageddon Disaster Based on a Baptism into Christ Jesus, the Greater Noah—Good Conscience Necessary***

1 Pet. 3:20, 21 "Which had once been disobedient when the patience of God was waiting in Noah's days, while the ark was being constructed, in which a few people, that is, eight souls, were carried safely through the water. That which corresponds to this is also now saving you, namely, baptism, (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the request made to God for a good conscience,) through the resurrection of Jesus Christ."

***To Jehovah the Savior-God Belongs All Credit for Salvation from Disaster and Salvation to Life***

1 Tim. 1:1 "Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus under command of God our Savior and of Christ Jesus, our hope."

Rev. 7:10 "And they keep on crying with a loud voice, saying: 'Salvation we owe to our God, who is seated on the throne, and to the Lamb.'"

Rev. 12:10 "Now have come to pass the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God and the authority of his Christ."

Rev. 19:1 "Praise Jah, you people! The salvation and the glory and the power belong to our God."

# Sign of Last Days

## DEFINITION

The "last days" are the last days of Satan's rule over the earth and mankind. The sign is composed of happenings foretold as visible evidence that the consummation of Satan's system of things has begun, that the uninterruptedness of Satan's rule of earth has ended. It is visible evidence that Christ Jesus has been enthroned in heaven as King and that he has begun the destruction of Satan's rule by ousting Satan and his demons from heaven and that he has turned his invisible presence toward the earth to gather out all persons of good will toward God. It constitutes evidence that the transition period between the rule of Satan and that of Christ has begun, and it precedes the complete destruction of Satan and his entire organization visible and invisible in the accomplished end at Armageddon. Occurrence of one or even several happenings together is not sufficient to constitute evidence; all must occur concurrently upon one generation in the foretold series or sequences to make up the one composite sign. At least 39 happenings comprise the sign.

### Visible Sign of Last Days and Jesus' Invisible Presence Foretold as Warning to Those of Faith

**Matt. 24:3, 4** "While he was sitting upon the mount of Olives, the disciples approached him privately, saying: 'Tell us, when will these things be, and what will be the sign of your presence and of the consummation of the system of things?' And in answer Jesus said to them: 'Look out that nobody misleads you.'"

**1 Thess. 5:4, 5** "But you, brothers, you are not in darkness, so that that day should overtake you as it would thieves, for you are all sons of light and sons of day. We belong neither to night nor to darkness."

**Also: Mark 13:3, 4, 5; Luke 21:7, 8.**

### 1. Many False Christian Religions

**Matt. 24:5, 11** "For many will come on the basis of my name, saying: 'I am the Christ,' and will mislead many. And many false prophets will arise and mislead many."

**Also: Mark 13:6; Luke 21:8.**

### 2. World Wars

**Matt. 24:6, 7** "You are going to hear of wars and reports of wars; see that you are not terrified. For these things must take place, but the accomplished end is not yet. For nation will rise against nation and kingdom against kingdom."

**Rev. 6:4, 8** "And another came forth, a fiery-colored horse, and to the one seated upon it there was granted to take peace away from the earth so that they should slaughter one another, and a great sword was given him.... And authority was given... to kill with a long sword."

**Also: Dan. 11:40; Mark 13:7, 8; Luke 21:9, 10.**

### 3. Widespread Famines

**Matt. 24:7** "And there will be food shortages."

**Rev. 6:5, 6, 8** "And I saw, and, look! a black horse, and the one seated upon it had a pair of scales in his hand. And I heard a voice as if in the midst of the four living creatures say: 'A quart of wheat for a day's wage, and three quarts of barley for a day's wage; and do not harm the olive

oil and the wine.'... And authority was given... to kill with... food shortage."

**Also:** Mark 13:8; Luke 21:11.

#### **4. Unusual Number of Earthquakes**

**Matt. 24:7, 8** "And there will be ... earthquakes in one place after another. All these things are a beginning of pangs of distress."

**Also:** Mark 13:8; Luke 21:11.

#### **5. Persecution of Christians**

**Luke 21:12-15** "But before all of these things people will lay their hands upon you and persecute you, delivering you up to the synagogues and prisons, you being haled before kings and governors for the sake of my name. It will turn out to you for the purpose of a witness. Therefore settle it in your hearts not to rehearse beforehand how to make your defense, for I will give you forceful speech and wisdom which all your opposers together will not be able to resist or dispute."

**Rev. 2:10** "Do not be afraid of the things you are destined to suffer. Look! the Devil will keep on throwing some of you into prison that you may be fully put to the test, and that you may have tribulation ten days. Prove yourself faithful even with the danger of death, and I will give you the crown of life."

**Also:** Matt. 24:9; Mark 13:9, 11.

#### **6. Christians Betrayed by Relatives and Friends**

**Matt. 24:10** "Then, also, many will be stumbled and will betray one another and will hate one another."

**Luke 21:16** "Moreover, you will be delivered up even by parents and brothers and relatives and friends, and they will put some of you to death."

**Also:** Matt. 10:35, 36; Mark 13:12.

#### **7. Christians Hated World-wide over Kingdom Issue and for Upholding Christ's Exalted Office**

**Matt. 24:9** "You will be hated by all the nations on account of my name."

**Luke 21:17-19** "And you will be objects of hatred by all persons because of my name. And yet not a hair of your heads will by any means perish. By endurance on your part you will acquire your souls."

**Also:** Mark 13:13.

#### **8. Organized Opposition to Kingdom Work by World Leaders**

**Rev. 13:5-7** "And a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies was given it, and authority to act forty-two months was given it. And it opened its mouth in blasphemies against God, to blaspheme his name and his residence, even those residing in heaven. And there was granted it to wage war with the holy ones and conquer them."

**Also:** Dan. 11:45.

#### **9. Increased Lawlessness**

**Matt. 24:12** "And because of the increasing of lawlessness."

**Also:** 2 Tim. 3:2.

#### **10. Many Forsaking Christianity**

**Matt. 24:12, 13** "The love of the greater number will cool off. But he that has endured to the finish is the one that will be saved."

#### **11. World-wide Preaching of the Established Kingdom as Good News**

**Matt. 24:14** "And this good news of the kingdom will be preached in all the inhabited earth for the purpose of a witness to all the nations, and then the accomplished end will come."

**Also:** Mark 13:10.

#### **12. Formation of the League of Nations and the United Nations to Stand in Place of Established Kingdom of God**

**Matt. 24:15, 16** "Therefore, when you catch sight of the dis-

gusting thing that causes desolation, as spoken of through Daniel the prophet, standing in a holy place, (let the reader use discernment,) then let those in Judea begin fleeing to the mountains."

**Dan. 11:31** "And forces shall stand on his part, and they shall profane the sanctuary, even the fortress, and shall take away the continual burnt-offering, and they shall set up the abomination that maketh desolate."

**League of Nations began 1920, went into inactivity 1939; revived as United Nations 1945**

**Isa. 8:9** "Make an uproar, O ye peoples, and be broken in pieces; and give ear, all ye of far countries: gird yourselves, and be broken in pieces; gird yourselves, and be broken in pieces."

**Rev. 17:8** "The wild beast that you saw was, but is not, and yet is destined to ascend out of the abyss, and it is to go off into destruction. And when they see how the wild beast was, but is not, and yet will be present, those who dwell on the earth will wonder admiringly, but their names have not been written upon the scroll of life from the world's foundation."

**Constitutes an 8th world power**

**Rev. 17:3** "And he carried me away under the spirit's power into a wilderness. And I caught sight of a woman sitting upon a scarlet-colored wild beast that was full of blasphemous names and that had seven heads and ten horns."

**Rev. 17:9-11** "Here is where the intelligence that has wisdom comes in: The seven heads mean seven mountains, where the woman sits on top. And there are seven kings: five have fallen, one is, the other has not yet arrived, but when he does arrive he must remain a short while. And the wild beast that was but is not, it is also itself an eighth king, but owes its existence to the

seven, and it goes off into destruction."

**Anglo-American empire as 7th world power gives 8th power life**

**Rev. 13:1, 11, 12, 15** "And I saw a wild beast ascending out of the sea, with ten horns and seven heads, and upon its horns ten diadems, but upon its heads blasphemous names. And I saw another wild beast ascending out of the earth, and it had two horns like a lamb, but it began speaking as a dragon. And it exercises all the authority of the first wild beast in its sight. And it makes the earth and those who dwell in it worship the first wild beast, whose death-stroke got healed. And there was granted it to give breath to the image of the wild beast, so that the image of the wild beast should both speak and cause to be killed all those who would not in any way worship the image of the wild beast."

**13. Earth-wide Tribulation on Satan's Organization**

**Matt. 24:21, 22** "For then there will be great tribulation such as has not occurred since the world's beginning until now, no, nor will occur again. In fact, unless those days were cut short, no flesh would be saved; but on account of the chosen ones those days will be cut short."

**Dan. 12:1** "And at that time shall Michael stand up, the great prince who standeth for the children of thy people; and there shall be a time of trouble, such as never was since there was a nation even to that same time: and at that time thy people shall be delivered, every one that shall be found written in the book."

Also: **Mark 13:19, 20.**

See "World Distress".

**14. Lying Signs and Great Wonders Performed in God's Name**

**Matt. 24:23-26** "Then if anyone says to you, 'Look! here is the Christ,' or, 'There!' do not believe



it. For false Christs and false prophets will arise and will give great signs and wonders so as to mislead, if possible, even the chosen ones. Look! I have forewarned you. Therefore, if people say to you, 'Look! he is in the wilderness,' do not go out; 'Look! he is in the inner chambers,' do not believe it."

Also: Mark 13:22, 23; Luke 17:22, 23.

### 15. Presence of Christ and Impending Doom of Satan Discernible Universally

Matt. 24:27, 28 "For just as the lightning comes out of eastern parts and shines over to western parts, so the presence of the Son of man will be. Wherever the carcass is, there the eagles will flock together."

Also: Luke 17:24.

### 16. Satan, as Sun, and Spirit Forces Cannot Enlighten Human Rulers to Meet Crisis

Matt. 24:29 "Immediately after the tribulation of those days the sun will be darkened, and the moon will not give its light, and the stars will fall from heaven, and the powers of the heavens will be shaken."

2 Cor. 11:14 "And no wonder, for Satan himself keeps transforming himself into an angel of light."

### 17. All Tribes of Wicked Mankind Wail and Are in Grief

Matt. 24:30 "And then the sign of the Son of man will appear in heaven, and then all the tribes of the earth will go to wailing."

Rev. 1:7 "Look! he is coming with the clouds, and every eye will see him, and those who pierced him; and all the tribes of the earth will beat themselves in grief because of him."

Also: Rev. 12:12.

### 18. Antitypical "Ark," Christian System of Things, Is Place of Safety

Matt. 24:37, 38 "For just as the days of Noah were, so the pres-

ence of the Son of man will be. For as people were in those days before the flood, eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, until the day that Noah entered into the ark."

1 Pet. 3:20, 21 "When the patience of God was waiting in Noah's days, while the ark was being constructed, in which a few people, that is, eight souls, were carried safely through the water. That which corresponds to this is also now saving you."

### 19. Nations Confused and Perplexed as to Course

Luke 21:25 "And on the earth anguish of nations, not knowing the way out because of the roaring of the sea and its agitation."

### 20. Men Becoming Faint Out of World-wide Fear

Luke 21:26 "While men become faint out of fear and expectation of the things coming upon the inhabited earth; for the powers of the heavens will be shaken."

### 21. Restoration of True Worshipers

Matt. 24:31 "And he will send forth his angels with a great trumpet-sound and they will gather his chosen ones together from the four winds, from one extremity of the heavens to their other extremity."

Also: Mark 13:27.

### 22. Rapid Culmination of All Events on the One Evil Generation

Matt. 24:32-34 "Now learn from the fig tree as an illustration this point: Just as soon as its young branch grows tender and it puts forth leaves, you know that summer is near. Likewise also you, when you see all these things, know that he is near at the doors. Truly I say to you that this generation will by no

means pass away until all these things occur."

Also: Mark 13:28-30; Luke 21:29-32.

### **23. People Overly Concerned with Everyday Affairs of Life**

Matt. 24:37-39 "For just as the days of Noah were, so the presence of the Son of man will be. For as people were in those days before the flood, eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, until the day that Noah entered into the ark; and they took no note until the flood came and swept them all away, so the presence of the Son of man will be."

Also: Luke 17:26; 21:34.

### **24. God's Choosing of Christians Not Dependent on Family or Friendship Ties**

Matt. 24:40, 41 "Then two men will be in the field: one will be taken along and the other be abandoned; two women will be grinding at the hand-mill: one will be taken along and the other be abandoned."

Also: Luke 17:34, 35; 1 Thess. 4:17.

### **25. Indifferent, Sleepy Condition of World but Wakeful, Studious Attitude of Christians**

Matt. 24:42-44 "Keep on the watch, therefore, because you do not know on what day your Master is coming. But know one thing, that if the householder had known in what watch the thief was coming, he would have kept awake and not allowed his house to be broken into. On this account you, too, prove yourselves ready, because at an hour that you do not think to be it, the Son of man is coming."

1 Thess. 5:2, 6 "For you yourselves know quite well that Jehovah's day is coming exactly as a thief in the night. So, then, let us not sleep on as the rest do, but let us stay awake and keep our senses."

Also: Mark 13:32-37; Luke 21:34, 35.

### **26. One Organization Selected by God as His Faithful Representative**

Matt. 24:45-47 "Who really is the faithful and discreet slave whom his master appointed over his domestics to give them their food at the proper time? Happy is that slave if his master on arriving finds him doing so. Truly I say to you, He will appoint him over all his belongings."

Also: Matt. 25:6-10, 19-23.

### **27. Unfaithful Ones Exposed, Separated and Punished as a Class**

Matt. 24:48-51 "But if that evil slave should say in his heart, 'My master is delaying,' and should start to beat his fellow slaves and should eat and drink with the confirmed drunkards, the master of that slave will come on a day that he does not expect and in an hour that he does not know, and will punish him with the greatest severity and will assign him his part with the hypocrites. There is where his weeping and the gnashing of his teeth will be."

Also: Matt. 25:11-13, 24-30; Luke 12:45-48.

### **28. Separating the People of the Nations into "Sheep" and "Goats"**

Matt. 25:31-46 "When the Son of man arrives in his glory and all the angels with him, then he will sit down on his glorious throne. And all the nations will be gathered before him, and he will separate people one from another, just as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats. And he will put the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on his left. Then the king will say to those on his right: 'Come, you who have my Father's blessing, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the world's foundation.'... Then he will say, in

turn, to those on his left: 'Be on your way from me, you who have been cursed, into the everlasting fire prepared for the Devil and his angels.' And these will depart into everlasting cutting-off, but the righteous ones into everlasting life."

Also: Ezek. 9:1-4.

## 29. World-wide Expansion of Clean Worship

Rev. 7:9-17 "After these things I saw, and, look! a great crowd, which no man was able to number, out of all nations and tribes and peoples and tongues, standing before the throne and before the Lamb, dressed in white robes, and there were palm branches in their hands. And they keep on crying with a loud voice, saying: 'Salvation we owe to our God, who is seated on the throne, and to the Lamb.'"

Isa. 54:2, 3 "Enlarge the place of thy tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of thy habitations; spare not: lengthen thy cords, and strengthen thy stakes. For thou shalt spread abroad on the right hand and on the left; and thy seed shall possess the nations, and make the desolate cities to be inhabited."

Isa. 60:22 "The little one shall become a thousand, and the small one a strong nation: I, Jehovah, will hasten it in its time."

Zech. 2:4; 8:20-23 "Jerusalem shall be inhabited as villages without walls, by reason of the multitude of men and cattle therein." "It shall yet come to pass, that there shall come peoples, and the inhabitants of many cities. . . . Yea, many peoples and strong nations shall come to seek Jehovah of hosts in Jerusalem, and to entreat the favor of Jehovah. Thus saith Jehovah of hosts: in those days it shall come to pass, that ten men shall take hold, out of all the languages of the nations, they shall take hold of the skirt of him that is a Jew,

saying, We will go with you, for we have heard that God is with you."

## 30. Sore Pestilences and Diseases

Luke 21:11 "And in one place after another pestilences."

Rev. 6:8 "And I saw, and, look! a pale horse, and the one seated upon it had the name Death. And Hades was closely following him. And authority was given . . . to kill . . . with deadly plague."

## 31. Moral Degeneracy in Public and Private Life

2 Tim. 3:1-4 "But know this, that in the last days critical times hard to deal with will be here. For men will be lovers of themselves, lovers of money, self-assuming, haughty, blasphemers, . . . not open to any agreement, slanderers, without self-control, fierce, without love of goodness, betrayers, headstrong, puffed up with self-esteem."

## 32. Widespread Juvenile Delinquency

2 Tim. 3:2, 3 "For men will be . . . disobedient to parents, without gratitude, with no loving-kindness, having no natural affection."

Also: Rom. 1:30, 31.

## 33. Instability and Insecurity World-wide Despite Claims of Leaders

Jer. 6:14 "They have healed also the hurt of my people slightly, saying, Peace, peace; when there is no peace."

Ezek. 13:10, 11 "Because, even because they have seduced my people, saying, Peace; and there is no peace; and when one buildeth up a wall, behold, they daub it with untempered mortar; say unto them that daub it with untempered mortar, that it shall fall: there shall be an overflowing shower; and ye, O great hailstones, shall fall; and a stormy wind shall rend it."

### 34. Men Seek Relief in Makeshift Organizations, Clubs, Institutions

**Rev. 6:15-17** "And the kings of the earth and the top-ranking ones and the military commanders and the rich and the strong ones and every slave and free person hid themselves in the dens and in the rock-masses of the mountains. And they keep saying to the mountains and to the rock-masses: 'Fall over us and hide us from the face of the one seated on the throne and from the wrath of the Lamb, because the great day of their wrath has come, and who is able to stand?'"

### 35. Organized Clergy of Christendom and Evil Slave Manifested in Open Disobedience

**2 Thess. 2:3, 4** "Let no one seduce you in any manner, because it will not come unless the falling away comes first and the man of lawlessness gets revealed, the son of destruction. He is set in opposition and lifts himself up over everyone who is called 'god' or an object of reverence, so that he sits down in the temple of The God, publicly showing himself to be a god."

**2 Tim. 3:1, 2, 4, 5** "But know this, that in the last days critical times hard to deal with will be here. For men will be...lovers of pleasures rather than lovers of God, having a form of godly devotion but proving false to its power; and from these turn away."

### 36. Improper Restrictions Placed on Marriage and Eating of Food

**1 Tim. 4:1-3** "In later periods of time some will fall away from the faith, paying attention to misleading inspired utterances and teachings of demons, by the hypocrisy of men who speak lies, ... forbidding to marry, commanding to abstain from foods which God created to be partaken of with thanksgiving by those who have faith and accurately know the truth."

### 37. Work of Jehovah's Witnesses Stopped in 1918

**Rev. 11:3, 7** "'And I will cause my two witnesses to prophesy a thousand two hundred and sixty days dressed in sackcloth.' And when they have finished their witnessing, the wild beast that ascends out of the abyss will make war with them and conquer them and kill them."

#### *Public reproach during inactivity*

**Rev. 11:8-10** "And their corpses will be on the broad way of the great city which is in a spiritual sense called Sodom and Egypt, where their Lord was also impaled. And some persons of the peoples and tribes and tongues and nations will look at their corpses for three and a half days, and they do not let their corpses be laid in a tomb. And those dwelling on the earth rejoice over them and enjoy themselves, and they will send gifts to one another, because these two prophets tormented those dwelling on the earth."

#### *Witness work revived 1919 as enemy confused*

**Rev. 11:11, 12** "And after the three and a half days spirit of life from God entered into them, and they stood upon their feet, and great fear fell upon those beholding them. And they heard a loud voice out of heaven say to them: 'Come on up here.' And they went up into heaven in the cloud, and their enemies beheld them."

### 38. Many Will Ridicule Sign Though Evidence Conclusive

**2 Pet. 3:3, 4** "For you know this first, that in the last days there will come ridiculers with their ridicule, proceeding according to their own desires and saying: 'Where is this promised presence of his? Why, from the day our forefathers fell asleep in death, all things are continuing exactly as from creation's beginning.'"

### 39. World Powers Say "Peace and Safety" as Final Event

1 Thess. 5:3 "Whenever it is that they are saying 'Peace and

security!' then sudden destruction is to be instantly upon them just as the pang of distress upon a pregnant woman, and they will by no means escape."

## Sin

### DEFINITION

Jehovah God sets his own high standard of righteousness, the glory of God, as a mark of perfection that all his creatures are expected and required to maintain. Missing or failing to meet this mark is called sin. "For all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God." (Rom. 3:23) So the Scriptures further say of sin, "Everyone who practices sin is also practicing lawlessness, and so sin is lawlessness." "All unrighteousness is sin; and yet there is a sin that does not incur death." (1 John 3:4; 5:17) Hence there are two kinds of sins, Scripturally speaking: 1. Inherited, which "does not incur death", i.e., from which there is hope of being released; 2. Willful, which brings a sentence of everlasting destruction. The Greek word for sin originally meant to miss, as to miss one's road, and later came to mean to fail of doing, as to miss one's point, to go wrong. The Hebrew word for sin also originally meant to miss, hence to fail; for example, Judges 20:16; Proverbs 8:36; 19:2, *footnote*.

### Adam Met Standard of Perfection When Created

Gen. 1:27, 31 "And God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them. And God saw everything that he had made, and, behold, it was very good. And there was evening and there was morning, the sixth day."

Deut. 32:4 "The Rock, his work is perfect; for all his ways are justice."

1 Cor. 11:7 "For a man... is God's image and glory; but the woman is man's glory."

### God Set Mark of Perfection in Eden, 4025 B. C.

Gen. 2:8, 16, 17 "And Jehovah God planted a garden eastward in Eden; and there he put the man whom he had formed. And Jehovah God commanded the man, saying, Of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat:

but of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die."

### Adam and Eve's Sin a Literal Eating of Tree and Not an Act of Illicit Intercourse

Gen. 1:28 "And God blessed them: and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it; and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the birds of the heavens, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth."

Gen. 3:6 "And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was to be desired to make one wise, she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat; and she gave also unto her husband with her, and he did eat."

## Disobedience Meant Refusing to Hold to God's High Standard of Glory

**Deut. 32:5 (footnote)** "They have corrupted themselves, they are not his children, it is their blemish; they are a perverse and crooked generation."

**1 John 3:8** "He who practices sin originates with the Devil, because the Devil has been sinning from when he began."

**Rom. 1:18-23** "For God's wrath is being revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men who are suppressing the truth in an unrighteous way, because what may be known about God is manifest among them, for God made it manifest to them. For his invisible qualities are clearly seen from the world's creation onward, because they are understood by the things made, even his eternal power and Godship, so that they are inexcusable; because, although they knew God, they did not glorify him as God nor did they thank him, but they became empty-headed in their reasonings and their unintelligent heart became darkened."

## Missing Mark Brought Death upon All Mankind

**Rom. 5:12** "That is why, just as through one man sin entered into the world and death through sin, and thus death spread to all men because they had all sinned."

**Rom. 6:23** "For the wages sin pays is death, but the gift God gives is everlasting life by Christ Jesus our Lord."

**Psa. 51:5** "Behold, I was brought forth in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me."

**Rom. 7:15, 17, 18, 21-23; 8:2** "For what I am working out I do not know. For what I wish, this I do not practice; but what I hate is what I do. But now the one working it out is no longer I, but sin that resides in me. For I know that in me, that is,

in my flesh, there resides nothing good; for ability to wish is present with me, but ability to work out what is right is not present. I find, then, this law in my case: that when I wish to do what is right, what is bad is present with me. I really delight in the law of God according to the man I am within, but I behold in my members another law warring against the law of my mind and leading me captive to sin's law that is in my members." "The law of sin and of death."

## Death Held Sway from Adam to Moses Without Accurate Knowledge of Sin

**Gen. 4:5-7** "But unto Cain and to his offering he had not respect. And Cain was very wroth, and his countenance fell. And Jehovah said unto Cain, Why art thou wroth? and why is thy countenance fallen? If thou doest well, shall it not be lifted up? and if thou doest not well, sin croucheth at the door; and unto thee shall be its desire; but do thou rule over it."

**Rom. 5:13, 14** "For until the Law sin was in the world, but sin is not charged against anyone when there is no law. Nevertheless, death ruled as king from Adam."

**Rom. 2:12-15; 3:9-12** "For instance, all those who sinned without law will also perish without law; but all those who sinned under law will be judged by law. For the hearers of law are not the ones righteous before God, but the doers of law will be declared righteous." "For above we have made the charge that Jews as well as Greeks are all under sin; just as it is written: 'There is not a righteous man, not even one; there is not a one that understands, there is not a one that seeks for God. All men have deflected, all of them together have become worthless; there is not a one that

does good, there is not so much as one.'"

### **Law of Moses (1513 B. C.) Again Set Mark, Revealed God's Standard of Perfect Obedience**

**1 Tim. 1:8-10** "Now we know that the Law is right provided one handles it lawfully in the knowledge of this fact, that law is promulgated, not for a righteous man, but for persons lawless and unruly, ungodly and sinners, lacking loving-kindness, and profane, murderers of fathers and murderers of mothers, manslayers, fornicators, men who lie with males, kidnapers of men, liars, false swearers, and whatever other thing is in opposition to the healthful teaching."

**Rom. 3:19, 20** "Now we know that all the things the Law says it addresses to those under the law, so that every mouth may be stopped and all the world may become liable to God for punishment. Therefore by works of law no flesh will be declared righteous before him, for by law is the accurate knowledge of sin."

**2 Cor. 3:7** "The code which administers death and which was engraved in letters in stones came about in a glory, so that the sons of Israel could not gaze intently at the face of Moses because of the glory of his face."

### **Law of Moses Demonstrated Fleshly Jews (and so All Men) Were Missing Mark**

**Gal. 3:19** "Why, then, the law? It was added to make transgressions manifest, until the seed should arrive to whom the promise had been made."

**Rom. 7:7-13** "What, then, shall we say? Is the Law sin? Never may that become so! Really I would not have come to know sin if it had not been for the Law, and, for example, I would not have known covetousness if the Law had not said, 'You must not covet.' But sin, receiving an inducement through

the commandment, worked out in me covetousness of every kind, for apart from law sin was dead. In fact, I was once alive apart from law; but when the commandment arrived, sin came to life again, but I died. And the commandment which was to life, this I found to be to death. For sin, receiving an inducement through the commandment, seduced me and killed me through it. Wherefore, on its part, the law is holy, and the commandment is holy and righteous and good. Did, then, what is good become death to me? Never may that happen! But sin did, that it might be shown as sin working out death for me through that which is good; that sin might become far more sinful through the commandment."

### **Only Jesus as a Perfect Man Could Meet God's High Standard**

**Lev. 18:5** "Ye shall therefore keep my statutes, and mine ordinances; which if a man do, he shall live in them: I am Jehovah."

**Gal. 4:4, 5** "But when the full limit of the time arrived, God sent forth his Son, who was produced out of a woman and who came to be under law, that he might release by purchase those under law, that we in turn might receive the adoption as sons."

**1 Pet. 1:18, 19; 2:22-24** "For you know . . . it was with precious blood, like that of an unblemished and spotless lamb, even Christ's." "He committed no sin, nor was deceit found in his mouth. When he was being reviled, he did not go to reviling in return. When he was suffering, he did not go to threatening, but kept on committing himself to the one who judges righteously. He himself by imputation bore our sins in his own body upon the stake, in order that we might be done with sins and live to righteousness. And 'by his stripes you were healed.'"

**Heb. 7:26, 27** "For such a high priest as this was suitable for us, one of loving-kindness, guileless, undefiled, separated from the sinners, . . . He does not need daily, as those high priests do, to offer up sacrifices, first for his own sins."

**John 8:46** "Who of you convicts me of sin?"

### **Christ Jesus' Sacrifice of Perfect Human Life Frees Mankind of Law of Sin and Death**

**Heb. 9:24-26** "For Christ entered . . . into heaven itself, now to appear before the person of God for us. . . . But now he has manifested himself once for all time at the consummation of the systems of things to put sin away through the sacrifice of himself."

**Rom. 8:1, 2** "Therefore those in union with Christ Jesus have no condemnation. For the law of that spirit which gives life in union with Christ Jesus has set you free from the law of sin and of death."

**Rom. 5:18, 19** "So, then, as through one trespass the result to men of all kinds was condemnation, likewise also through one act of justification the result to men of all kinds is a declaring of them righteous for life. For just as through the disobedience of the one man many were constituted sinners, likewise also through the obedience of the one person many will be constituted righteous."

**John 1:29** "The next day he [John the Baptist] beheld Jesus coming toward him, and he said: 'See, the Lamb of God that takes away the sin of the world!'"

**2 Cor. 5:21** "The one who did not know sin he made to be sin ["a sin offering," *footnote*] for us, that we might become God's righteousness by means of him."

See "Ransom".

### **Jesus' Forgiveness of Sins Accompanied Healing; Modern Impostors Cannot Duplicate**

**Mark 2:3-12** "And when Jesus saw their faith he said to the paralytic: 'Child, your sins are forgiven.' Now there were some of the scribes there, sitting and reasoning in their hearts: 'What is it this man is saying in this manner? He is blaspheming. Who can forgive sins except one, God?' But Jesus, having discerned immediately by his spirit that they were reasoning that way in themselves, said to them: 'Why are you reasoning these things in your hearts? Which is easier, to say to the paralytic, "Your sins are forgiven," or to say, "Get up and pick up your cot and walk"? But in order for you men to know that the Son of man has authority to forgive sins upon the earth,'—he said to the paralytic: 'I say to you, Get up, pick up your cot, and go to your home.' At that he did get up and immediately picked up his cot and walked out in front of them all, so that they were all simply carried away and they glorified God, saying: 'We never saw the like of it.'"

**Acts 4:12** "Furthermore, there is no salvation in anyone else, for there is not another name under heaven that has been given among men by which we must get saved."

### **Only Inherited Sins Excused by Jesus' Sacrifice**

**1 John 2:1, 2** "My little children, I am writing you these things that you may not commit a sin. And yet, if anyone does commit a sin, we have a helper with the Father, Jesus Christ, a righteous one. And he is a propitiatory sacrifice for our sins, yet not for ours only but also for the whole world's."

**1 John 5:16-19** "If anyone catches sight of his brother sinning a sin that does not incur death, he will ask, and he will



give life to him, yes, to those not sinning so as to incur death. There is a sin that does incur death. It is concerning that sin that I do not tell him to make request. All unrighteousness is sin; and yet there is a sin that does not incur death. We know that every person that has been born from God does not practice sin, but the One born from God watches him, and the wicked one does not fasten his hold on him. We know we originate with God, but the whole world is lying in the power of the wicked one."

### **Willful Sins Bring Penalty of Everlasting Destruction**

**Jas. 1:13-15** "When under trial, let no one say: 'I am being tried by God.' No; for with evil things God cannot be tried nor does he himself try anyone. But each one is tried by being drawn out and enticed by his own desire. Then the desire, when it has become fertile, gives birth to sin; in turn, sin, when it has been accomplished, brings forth death."

**Ezek. 18:4, 20** "Behold, all souls are mine; as the soul of the father, so also the soul of the son is mine: the soul that sinneth, it shall die... the son shall not bear the iniquity of the father, ... the righteousness of the righteous shall be upon him, and the wickedness of the wicked shall be upon him."

**Jude 8, 11-13** "In like manner, notwithstanding, these men, too, indulging in dreams, are defiling the flesh and disregarding lordship and speaking abusively of glorious ones. Too bad for them, because they have gone in the path of Cain, and have rushed into the erroneous course of Balaam for reward, and have perished in the rebellious talk of Korah! These are... stars with no set course, for which the blackness of darkness stands reserved forever."

**Heb. 10:26, 27** "For if we practice sin willfully after having

received the accurate knowledge of the truth, there is no longer any sacrifice for sins left, but there is a certain fearful expectation of judgment and there is a fiery jealousy that is going to consume those in opposition."

**Mark 3:29** "However, whoever blasphemes against the holy spirit has no forgiveness forever, but is guilty of everlasting sin."

**Also: Matt. 12:32; John 8:23, 24; 2 Pet. 2:9, 10.**

### **No Collective Forgiveness Possible for Satan's Wicked World —Only for Individuals**

**Gal. 1:3, 4** "He gave himself for our sins that he might take us out for himself from the present wicked system of things according to the will of our God and Father."

**John 15:19** "If you were part of the world, the world would be fond of what is its own. Now because you are no part of the world, but I have chosen you out of the world, on this account the world hates you."

**Rev. 18:3-8** "For because of the passion-arousing wine of her fornication all the nations have fallen victim, and the kings of the earth committed fornication with her, and the merchants of the earth became rich due to the power of her shameless luxury. ... 'Get out of her, my people, if you do not want to share with her in her sins, and if you do not want to receive part of her plagues. For her sins have massed together clear up to heaven, and God has called her acts of injustice to mind.' ... That is why in one day her plagues will come, death and mourning and famine, and she will be completely burned with fire, because Jehovah God who judged her is strong."

### **Sinless Mankind Will Meet Mark of Perfection at End of 1,000-Year Reign**

**Rev. 20:5** "(The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were ended.)"

**Luke 20:35, 36** "But those who have been counted worthy of gaining that system of things and the resurrection from the dead neither marry nor are given in marriage. In fact, neither can they die any more, for they are like the angels, and they are God's children by being children of the resurrection."

**Rev. 21:1-5** "With that I heard

a loud voice from the throne say: 'Look! the tent of God is with humankind, and he will reside with them, and they will be his peoples. And God himself will be with them. And he will wipe out every tear from their eyes, and death will be no more, neither will mourning nor outcry nor pain be any more. The former things have passed away.'"

## Soul

### DEFINITION

A soul, heavenly or earthly, is a living, sentient (or sense-possessing, conscious, intelligent) creature or person. A soul, heavenly or earthly, consists of a body together with the life principle or life force actuating it. An earthly soul is a living, breathing, sentient creature, animal or human. Earthly souls, human and animal, have an organism of flesh kept living by means of blood circulating in their system. (Heb., *neph'esh*; Gr., *psy-chē*)

### Jehovah Is the Greatest Soul, a Heavenly Soul

**Matt. 12:18** "Look! my servant whom I chose, my beloved, whom my soul approved!"

**Heb. 10:38** "'But my righteous one will live by reason of faith,' and, 'if he shrinks back, my soul has no pleasure in him.'"

**Lev. 26:11** "And I will set my tabernacle among you: and my soul shall not abhor you."

**Isa. 1:14** "Your new moons and your appointed feasts my soul hateth."

See also: **Judg. 10:16**; **Isa. 42:1**.

### Earthly, Lower-Animal Souls

**Gen. 1:30** (*mar.*) "To every beast of the earth, and to every bird of the heavens, and to everything that creepeth upon the earth, wherein there is life (or, a living soul), I have given every green herb for food."

**Num. 31:28** "Levy a tribute unto Jehovah of the men of war that went out to battle: one soul of five hundred, both of the per-

sons, and of the oxen, and of the asses, and of the flocks."

**Rev. 8:9** "And a third of the creatures that are in the sea which have souls [*mar.*, "lives"] died."

**Rev. 16:3** "And the second one poured out his bowl into the sea. And it became blood as of a dead man, and every living soul died, yes, the things in the sea."

### A Human Is a Soul. He Does Not Possess a Soul Separate and Distinct from the Body

**Gen. 2:7** "And Jehovah God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul."

**1 Cor. 15:45** "It is even so written: 'The first man Adam became a living soul.' The last Adam became a life-giving spirit."

### Immortality, Incorruptibility Belong Primarily and Originally to Jehovah

**1 Tim. 1:17** "Now to the King of eternity, incorruptible, invisi-

ble, the only God, be honor and glory for ever and ever. Amen."

**Ps. 90:2** "Even from everlasting to everlasting, thou art God."

**Jer. 10:10** "But Jehovah is the true God; he is the living God, and an everlasting King."

### **Immortality, Incorruptibility Given as a Reward for Faithfulness to Christ**

**Rom. 6:9** "For we know that Christ, now that he has been raised up from the dead, dies no more."

**1 Tim. 6:14-16** "Our Lord Jesus Christ... he the King of those who rule as kings and Lord of those who rule as lords, the one alone having immortality, who dwells in unapproachable light."

### **Only 144,000 Others, Body Members of Christ, Get Immortality, Incorruptibility**

**1 Cor. 9:25** "Now they, of course, do it that they may get a corruptible crown, but we an incorruptible one."

**1 Cor. 15:42, 52-54** "So also is the resurrection of the dead. It is sown in corruption, it is raised up in incorruption. . . . For the trumpet will sound, and the dead will be raised up incorruptible, and we shall be changed. For this which is corruptible must put on incorruption, and this which is mortal must put on immortality. But when this which is corruptible puts on incorruption and this which is mortal puts on immortality, then the saying will take place that is written: 'Death is swallowed up forever.'"

**2 Pet. 1:4** "Through these things he has freely given us the precious and very grand promises, that through these you may become sharers in divine nature, escaping from the corruption that is in the world through lust."

**1 Pet. 1:3, 4, 23** "Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, for according to his great mercy he gave us a new

birth to a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, to an incorruptible and undefiled and unfading inheritance. It is reserved in the heavens for you. For you have been given a new birth, not by corruptible, but by incorruptible reproductive seed, through the word of the living and enduring God."

**Rom. 2:7** "Everlasting life to those who are seeking glory and honor and incorruptibleness by endurance in work that is good."

**2 Tim. 1:10** "But now it has been made clearly evident through the manifestation of our Savior, Christ Jesus, who has abolished death but has shed light upon life and incorruption through the good news."

**Rev. 14:3, 4; 5:9, 10** "And they are singing as if a new song before the throne and before the four living creatures and the persons of advanced age; and no one was able to master that song but the hundred and forty-four thousand, who have been purchased from the earth. . . . These were purchased from among mankind as a firstfruits to God and to the Lamb." "And they sing a new song, saying: 'You are worthy to take the scroll and open its seals, because you were slaughtered and with your blood you bought persons for God out of every tribe and tongue and people and nation, and you made them to be a kingdom and priests to our God and they will rule as kings over the earth.'"

**1 John 3:2** "Beloved ones, now we are children of God, but as yet it has not been made manifest what we shall be. We do know that whenever he is made manifest we shall be like him, because we shall see him just as he is."

**Rev. 20:4, 6** "And I saw thrones, and there were those who sat down on them, and power of judging was given them. Yes, I saw the souls of those

executed with the ax for the witness they bore to Jesus and for speaking about God, and those who had worshiped neither the wild beast nor its image and who had not received the mark upon their forehead and upon their hand. And they came to life and ruled as kings with the Christ for a thousand years. Happy and holy is anyone having part in the first resurrection; over these the second death has no authority, but they will be priests of God and of the Christ, and will rule as kings with him for the thousand years."

**Immortality Inseparably Linked with the Kingdom of Heaven; Flesh-and-Blood Creatures Cannot Enter It nor Get**

**Matt. 11:11** "Truly I say to you people, Among those born of women there has not been raised up a greater than John the Baptist; but a person that is a lesser one in the kingdom of the heavens is greater than he is."

**John 3:3-5** "Jesus said to him: 'Most truly I say to you, Unless anyone is born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.'... 'Most truly I say to you, Unless anyone is born from water and spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.'"

**1 Cor. 15:44, 50** "It is sown a physical body, it is raised up a spiritual body. If there is a physical body, there is also a spiritual one. However, this I say, brothers, that flesh and blood cannot inherit God's kingdom, neither does corruption inherit incorruption."

**Angels Are Mortal, Corruptible, Destructible**

**Ezek. 28:16-19** "By the abundance of thy traffic they filled the midst of thee with violence, and thou hast sinned: therefore have I cast thee as profane out of the mountain of God; and I have destroyed thee, O covering cherub, from the midst of the stones of fire. . . . thou hast corrupted

thy wisdom by reason of thy brightness: I have cast thee to the ground; I have laid thee before kings, that they may behold thee. . . . thou hast profaned thy sanctuaries; . . . thou art become a terror, and thou shalt nevermore have any being."

**Isa. 14:9, 15, 19, 20** "Sheol from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming; . . . Yet thou shalt be brought down to Sheol, to the uttermost parts of the pit. But thou art cast forth away from thy sepulchre like an abominable branch, clothed with the slain, that are thrust through with the sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a dead body trodden under foot. Thou shalt not be joined with them in burial, because thou hast destroyed thy land, thou hast slain thy people; the seed of evil-doers shall not be named for ever."

**Heb. 2:14** "Therefore since the 'young children' are sharers of blood and flesh, he also similarly partook of the same things, that through his death he might destroy the one having the means to cause death, that is, the Devil."

**Rev. 20:2, 3, 10, 14** "And he seized the dragon, the original serpent, who is the Devil and Satan, and bound him for a thousand years. And he hurled him into the abyss and shut it and sealed it over him, . . . until the thousand years were ended. . . . And [at the end of the thousand years] the Devil who was misleading them was hurled into the lake of fire and sulphur, where both the wild beast and the false prophet already were; and they will be tormented day and night for ever and ever. . . . This means the second death, the lake of fire."

**Luke 4:33, 34** "Now in the synagogue there was a man with a spirit, an unclean demon, and he shouted with a loud voice: 'Ah! what have we to do with

you, Jesus you Nazarene? Did you come to destroy us?"

**Luke 8:30, 31** "Jesus asked him: 'What is your name?' He said: 'Legion,' because many demons had entered into him. And they kept entreating him not to order them to go away into the abyss."

### **The Creature Soul (Including Human Soul) Is Mortal, Destructible, Corruptible**

**Matt. 10:28** "Do not become fearful of those who kill the body but can not kill the soul; but rather be in fear of him that can destroy both soul and body in Gehenna."

**Luke 6:9** "Is it lawful on the sabbath to do good or to do injury, to save or to destroy a soul?"

**Isa. 53:12** "He poured out his soul unto death."

**Ezek. 18:4, 20** "Behold, all souls are mine; as the soul of the father, so also the soul of the son is mine: the soul that sinneth, it shall die."

**Rom. 1:23** "And turned the glory of the incorruptible God into something like the image of corruptible man and of birds and four-footed creatures and creeping things."

**See also:** Matt. 2:20; 26:38; Mark 14:34; Luke 17:33; Jas. 5:20; Rev. 8:9; 12:11 and NW Appendix under Matthew 2:20.

### **Lower-Animal Souls Not Created to Live Forever**

**2 Pet. 2:12** "But these men, like unreasoning animals born naturally to be caught and destroyed."

### **Attributes, Qualities of a Human Soul**

#### **Breathes**

**Josh. 11:11** "They smote all the souls that were therein with the edge of the sword, ... there was none left that breathed."

### **Can be bought**

**Lev. 22:11** "If a priest buy any soul, ... he shall eat of it."

### **Can be bound with a bond**

**Num. 30:2** "When a man ... sweareth an oath to bind his soul with a bond."

### **Can be cut off from his people**

**Num. 9:13** "The man that ... forbearth to keep the passover, that soul shall be cut off from his people."

### **Can be destroyed**

**Lev. 23:30** "That soul will I destroy from among his people."

### **Can be dried away**

**Num. 11:6** "Now our soul is dried away; there is nothing at all save this manna to look upon."

### **Can be endangered by the sword**

**Ps. 22:20** "Deliver my soul from the sword."

### **Can be exposed to danger of death from sickness**

**Phil. 2:27, 30** "He fell sick nearly to the point of death; ... exposing his soul to danger."

### **Can go to the pit**

**Job 33:22** "Yea, his soul draweth near unto the pit, and his life to the destroyers."

### **Can go to hell, sheol, the grave**

**Ps. 16:10** "Thou wilt not leave my soul to Sheol."

### **Can have earthly things laid up for its enjoyment**

**Luke 12:19** "I will say to my soul: 'Soul, you have many good things laid up for many years; take your ease, eat, drink, enjoy yourself.'"

### **Can be in prison**

**Ps. 142:7** "Bring my soul out of prison."

### **Can be lost or killed in the sea**

**Acts 27:10** "Men, I perceive that navigation is going to be

with damage and great loss not only of the cargo and the boat but also of our souls."

***Can be smitten by the sword and destroyed by it***

**Josh. 10:28-39; 11:11** "Joshua . . . utterly destroyed them and all the souls that were therein; . . . he smote it with the edge of the sword, and all the souls that were therein; . . . he utterly destroyed it, and all the souls that were therein." "They smote all the souls that were therein with the edge of the sword, utterly destroying them."

***Can be torn***

**Ps. 7:2** "Lest they tear my soul like a lion, rending it in pieces, while there is none to deliver."

***Can be unclean***

**Num. 19:22** "The soul that toucheth it shall be unclean until even."

***Can weary of life***

**Job 10:1** "My soul is weary of my life."

***Dies***

**Ezek. 18:4, 20** "The soul that sinneth, it shall die."

***Eats***

**Lev. 7:18** "Any of the flesh of the sacrifice . . . the soul that eateth of it shall bear his iniquity."

**Lev. 17:12** "No soul of you shall eat blood."

***Grieves***

**1 Sam. 30:6** "The soul of all the people was grieved."

***Is vexed***

**Judg. 16:16** "His soul was vexed unto death."

***Loathes***

**Num. 21:5** "Our soul loatheth this light bread."

***Longs to eat***

**Deut. 12:20** "When . . . thou shalt say, I will eat flesh, be-

cause thy soul desireth to eat flesh; thou mayest eat flesh."

***Sins***

**Num. 15:28** "The priest shall make atonement for the soul that erreth, when he sinneth unwittingly."

***Strangles***

**Job 7:15** "My soul chooseth strangling, and death."

***Swears***

**Lev. 5:4** "If any one [Heb., *neph'esh*, "soul"] swear rashly."

***Touches things***

**Num. 19:22** "The soul that toucheth it shall be unclean until even."

***Human Souls Were Created to Live Forever if Obedient***

**Gen. 2:9, 16, 17; 3:17-19** "And out of the ground made Jehovah God to grow every tree . . . good for food; the tree of life also in the midst of the garden, and the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. And Jehovah God commanded the man, saying, Of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat: but of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die." "Unto Adam he said, Because thou hast . . . eaten of the tree, of which I commanded thee, saying, Thou shalt not eat of it: . . . in the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread, till thou return unto the ground; for out of it wast thou taken: for dust thou art, and unto dust shalt thou return."

**Rom. 5:12-19** "Through one man sin entered into the world and death through sin, . . . by one man's trespass many died, . . . the judgment resulted in condemnation from one trespass, . . . by the trespass of the one man death ruled as king through that one, . . . through one trespass the result to men of all kinds was con-

demnation, . . . through the disobedience of the one man many were constituted sinners."

### Earth the Proper and Only Dwelling Place for Human Souls

Isa. 45:12, 18 "I have made the earth, and created man upon it: I, even my hands, have stretched out the heavens; and all their host have I commanded. For thus saith Jehovah that created the heavens, the God that formed the earth and made it, that established it and created it not a waste, that formed it to be inhabited."

Ps. 115:16 "The heavens are the heavens of Jehovah; but the earth hath he given to the children of men."

Ps. 37:29 "The righteous shall inherit the land, and dwell therein for ever."

Prov. 2:21, 22 "For the upright shall dwell in the land, and the perfect shall remain in it. But the wicked shall be cut off from the land, and the treacherous shall be rooted out of it."

Prov. 10:30 "The righteous shall never be removed; but the wicked shall not dwell in the land."

### Human Souls Were Not Created in Heaven and Brought Down into Bodies on Earth

(Gen. 2:5, AV, misapplied, which reads: "And every plant of the field before it was in the earth, and every herb of the field before it grew: for the Lord God had not caused it to rain upon the earth, and there was not a man to till the ground.")

Gen. 2:5-7 "And no plant of the field was yet in the earth, and no herb of the field had yet sprung up; for Jehovah God had not caused it to rain upon the earth: and there was not a man to till the ground. . . . And Jehovah God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath [Heb., *n'sha-mah'*, "a puff, wind"] of

life; and man became a living soul [Heb., *neph'esh*, "soul"]."

Eccl. 4:3 "Yea, better than them both did I esteem him that hath not yet been, who hath not seen the evil work that is done under the sun."

Eccl. 6:3-5 "If a [man's] . . . soul be not filled with good, . . . an untimely birth is better than he: for it cometh in vanity, and departeth in darkness, and the name thereof is covered with darkness; moreover it hath not seen the sun nor known it ["neither had any knowledge," *mar.*]; this hath rest rather than the other ["it is better with this than with the other," *mar.*]."

### God Does Not "Put a Soul" into Each Baby at Birth; He Is Not Responsible for Birth of Great Mass of Mankind

Gen. 6:5-7 "And Jehovah saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every imagination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually. And it repented Jehovah that he had made man on the earth, and it grieved him at his heart. And Jehovah said, I will destroy man whom I have created from the face of the ground; . . . for it repenteth me that I have made them."

Deut. 32:4, 5 (*mar.*) "The Rock, his work is perfect; . . . a God of faithfulness and without iniquity, just and right is he. They have corrupted themselves, they are not his children, it is their blemish; they are a perverse and crooked generation."

Ps. 51:5 "Behold, I was brought forth in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me."

Eph. 2:1 "It is you God made alive though you were dead in your trespasses and sins."

Luke 20:38 "He is a God, not of the dead, but of the living."

Matt. 23:33 "Serpents, offspring of vipers, how are you to flee from the judgment of Gehenna?"

**John 8:44** "You are from your father the Devil."

**1 Cor. 7:14** "The unbelieving husband is sanctified in relation to his wife, and the unbelieving wife is sanctified in relation to the brother; otherwise, your children would really be unclean, but now they are holy."

**Ezek. 9:6** "Slay utterly the old man, the young man and the virgin, and little children and women; but come not near any man upon whom is the mark."

(Also the examples of Dathan and Abiram, the Flood, Sodom and Gomorrah, where children were slain with their parents who brought them forth.)

### **Power of Human Souls to Reproduce Other Human Souls in Their Own Likeness Put There at Creation; God Not Involved at Each Birth**

**Gen. 5:3** "Adam lived a hundred and thirty years, and begat a son in his own likeness, after his image."

**Ex. 1:5** "All the souls that came out of the loins of Jacob were seventy souls."

**Gen. 12:5** "Abram took Sarai his wife, and Lot his brother's son, ... and the souls [servants] that they had gotten in Haran."

### **Expression "Dead Soul" Used to Describe That Which Was Once a Living Soul, or That Which Remains of a Soul**

**Num. 6:6** "He shall not come near to a dead body [Heb., *neph'esh*, "soul"]."

**Num. 9:6, 7, 10** "There were certain men, who were unclean by reason of the dead body of a man."

**Num. 19:13** "Whosoever toucheth a dead person [also vss. 11, 16], the body of a man that hath died."

### **Soul Cannot Take Anything with It at Death**

**Eccl. 5:15, 16** "As he came forth from his mother's womb, naked shall he go again as he

came, and shall take nothing for his labor, which he may carry away in his hand. ... in all points as he came, so shall he go."

**1 Tim. 6:7** "We have brought nothing into the world, and neither can we carry anything out."

### **Spirit Is the Life Principle or Life Force That Actuates the Soul; Applies to Man and Beast**

**Ps. 31:5** "Into thy hand I commend my spirit [Heb., *ru'ahh*]."

**Luke 23:46** "And Jesus called with a loud voice and said: 'Father, into your hands I entrust my spirit [Gr., *pneu'ma*].'"

**Eccl. 3:19-21** "That which befalleth the sons of men befalleth beasts; even one thing befalleth them: as the one dieth, so dieth the other; yea, they have all one breath [*mar.*, "spirit"]; and man hath no pre-eminence above the beasts: for all is vanity. All go unto one place; all are of the dust, and all turn to dust again. Who knoweth the spirit of man, whether it goeth upward, and the spirit of the beast, whether it goeth downward to the earth?"

**Eccl. 8:8** "There is no man that hath power over the spirit [*mar.*, "wind"] to retain the spirit [*mar.*, "wind"]."

**Eccl. 12:7** "The dust returneth to the earth as it was, and the spirit [Heb., *ru'ahh*] returneth unto God who gave it."

**Gen. 6:17; 7:15** "I do bring the flood of waters upon the earth, to destroy all flesh, wherein is the breath [Heb., *ru'ahh*, "spirit"] of life, from under heaven; everything that is in the earth shall die." "And they went in unto Noah [cattle, birds, etc., and humans] into the ark, two and two of all flesh wherein is the breath [Heb., *ru'ahh*, "spirit"] of life."

**Ps. 104:29** "Thou hidest thy face, they are troubled; thou takest away their breath [Heb., *ru'ahh*, "spirit"], they die, and return to their dust."



## Soul Distinguished from Spirit

**1 Thess. 5:23** "With soundness in every part may the spirit and soul and body of you brothers be preserved."

**Heb. 4:12** "The word of God is alive and exerts power and is sharper than any two-edged sword and pierces even to the dividing of the soul and spirit, and of the joints and their marrow."

**Phil. 1:27** "You are standing firm in one spirit, with one soul fighting side by side."

### Principle of Life; Circulating Blood Is the Food or Life Stream for the Body

**Lev. 17:11, 14** "The life [*mar.*, "soul"] of the flesh is in the blood; and I have given it to you upon the altar to make atonement for your souls: for it is the blood that maketh atonement by reason of the life [*mar.*, "soul"]. For as to the life of all flesh, the blood thereof is all one with the life thereof: . . . the life of all flesh is the blood thereof: whosoever eateth it shall be cut off."

**Jer. 2:34** "In thy skirts is found the blood of the souls of the innocent poor."

### Soul Sometimes Used with Reference to Life as an Intelligent Person, Whether Present or Future

**Gen. 35:18** "It came to pass, as her soul was departing (for she died), that she called his name Ben-oni."

**1 Ki. 17:21** "He stretched himself upon the child three times, and cried unto Jehovah, and said, O Jehovah my God, I pray thee, let this child's soul come into him again."

**Matt. 6:25** "Stop being anxious about your souls . . . Does not the soul mean more than food?"

**Mark 8:36** "Really, of what benefit is it for a man to gain the whole world and to forfeit his soul?"

**John 10:15** "I surrender my soul in behalf of the sheep."

**Heb. 6:19** "This hope we have as an anchor for the soul."

**1 John 3:16** "That one surrendered his soul for us."

(See *New World Translation of the Christian Greek Scriptures*, Appendix under Matthew 2:20.)

### Soul Sometimes Used to Denote Every Fiber of One's Existence

**Deut. 4:29** "Ye shall seek Jehovah thy God, . . . with all thy heart and with all thy soul."

**1 Sam. 1:15** "I poured out my soul before Jehovah."

**Ps. 84:2** "My soul longeth, yea, even fainteth for the courts of Jehovah."

### Soul, Life Pattern or Personality, Not Same Body, Resurrected

**Acts 2:27** "You will not forsake my soul in Hades, neither will you grant your man of loving-kindness to see corruption."

**Luke 21:19** "By endurance on your part you will acquire your souls."

**1 Pet. 4:19** "Let those who are suffering in harmony with the will of God keep on commending their souls to a faithful Creator while they are doing good."

**Rev. 20:4** "I saw the souls of those executed . . . And they came to life and ruled as kings with the Christ for a thousand years."

**1 Cor. 15:35-38** "Someone will say: 'How are the dead to be raised up? Yes, with what kind of body are they coming?' You unreasonable person! What you sow is not made alive unless first it dies; and as for what you sow, you sow, not the body that will develop, but a bare grain, it may be, of wheat or any one of the rest; but God gives it a body just as it has pleased him, and to each of the seeds its own body."

## Preaching of Jehovah's Established Kingdom Now the Only Soul-saving Work

**Prov. 14:25** "A true witness delivereth souls."

**Matt. 24:14** "This good news of the kingdom will be preached in all the inhabited earth for the purpose of a witness to all the nations, and then the accomplished end will come."

**Matt. 6:33** "Keep on, then, seeking first the kingdom and his righteousness, and all these other things will be added to you."

**John 17:3** "This means everlasting life, their taking in knowledge of you, the only true

God, and of the one whom you sent forth, Jesus Christ."

**Heb. 11:7** "Noah . . . showed godly fear and constructed an ark for the saving of his household."

**1 Tim. 4:16** "Pay constant attention to yourself and to your teaching. Stay by these things, for by doing this you will save both yourself and those who listen to you."

**Matt. 7:21** "Not everyone saying to me, 'Master, Master,' will enter into the kingdom of the heavens, but the one doing the will of my Father who is in the heavens will."

See "Transmigration".

# Spirit

## DEFINITION

Spirit, as translated from *ru'ahh* in the Hebrew and *pneuma* in the Greek: The simplest or elementary meanings of both original words are to describe something windlike, that is, something that is not visible but which nevertheless produces visible or perceptible results. Both are drawn from root verbs meaning "to breathe" or "to blow". "Spirit" as used in the Bible has at least seven different senses or applications of meaning to describe something windlike, viz., as applying to (1) Jehovah God, (2) Christ Jesus, (3) angels, (4) life force, (5) mental disposition, (6) inspired expression and (7) active force of God. This variety of applications is possible in that all are windlike, all are invisible to the human eye and yet all produce effects that are visible, as the elementary meaning of the original words indicates.

### 1. Jehovah God, the Unseen, Invisible Spirit, Source of Visible Created Things

**John 4:24** "God is a Spirit, and those worshiping him must worship with spirit and truth."

**2 Cor. 3:17, 18** "Now Jehovah is the spirit; and where the spirit of Jehovah is, there is freedom. And all of us, while we with unveiled faces reflect like mirrors the glory of Jehovah, are transformed into the same image from glory to glory, exactly as done by Jehovah the spirit."

### 2. Christ Jesus as Spirit, the Express Image of God, Divine, Immortal, Unseen

**1 Cor. 15:45** "It is even so written: 'The first man Adam became a living soul.' The last Adam became a life-giving spirit."

**1 Tim. 3:16** "Indeed, the sacred secret of this godly devotion is admittedly great: 'He was made manifest in flesh, was declared righteous in spirit, appeared to angels, was preached about among nations, was be-

lieved upon in the world, was received up in glory.'"

**1 Pet. 3:18** "Christ died once for all time concerning sins, a righteous person for unrighteous ones, that he might lead you to God, he being put to death in the flesh, but being made alive in the spirit."

### 3. Angels, Celestial Creatures, Higher and Mightier than Men

**1 Ki. 22:21, 22** "And there came forth a spirit, and stood before Jehovah, and said, I will entice him. And Jehovah said unto him, Wherewith? And he said, I will go forth, and will be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets. And he said, Thou shalt entice him, and shalt prevail also: go forth, and do so."

**Isa. 31:3** "Now the Egyptians are men, and not God; and their horses flesh, and not spirit: and when Jehovah shall stretch out his hand, both he that helpeth shall stumble, and he that is helped shall fall, and they all shall be consumed together."

**Heb. 1:7, 14** "Also with reference to the angels he says: 'And he makes his angels spirits, and his public servants a flame of fire.' Are they not all spirits for public service, sent forth to minister for those who are going to inherit salvation?"

See: Ps. 104:4.

### *Though invisible, able to produce visible results*

**Job 4:15** "Then a spirit passed before my face; the hair of my flesh stood up."

**Zech. 6:5** "And the angel answered and said unto me, These are the four winds ["spirits," footnote; also AV] of heaven, which go forth from standing before the Lord of all the earth."

**Luke 24:37-39** "But they were terrified, and because they became frightened they were imagining they beheld a spirit. So he said to them: 'Why are you

troubled . . . ? See my hands and my feet, that it is I myself; feel me and see, because a spirit does not have flesh and bones just as you behold that I have.'"

See also: Gen. 18:1-8; 19:1-3.

### *Refers also to wicked, rebellious angels*

**1 Sam. 28:7, 8** "Then said Saul unto his servants, Seek me a woman that hath a familiar spirit, that I may go to her, and inquire of her. And his servants said to him, Behold, there is a woman that hath a familiar spirit at En-dor. And Saul . . . came to the woman by night: and he said, Divine unto me, I pray thee, by the familiar spirit, and bring me up whomsoever I shall name unto thee."

**Matt. 8:16** "But after it became evening, people brought him many demon-possessed persons; and he expelled the spirits with a word, and he cured all who were ailing."

**Eph. 6:12** "We have a fight, not against blood and flesh, but against the governments, against the authorities, against the world-rulers of this darkness, against the wicked spirit forces in the heavenly places."

**1 Pet. 3:19, 20** "In this state also he went his way and preached to the spirits in prison, which had once been disobedient when the patience of God was waiting in Noah's days."

### 4. Life Force, in Earthly Creatures, the "Principle of Life" Sustained by Breathing

**Job 27:3, 4** "(For my life is yet whole in me, and the spirit [*ru'ahh*, Heb.] of God is in my nostrils); surely my lips shall not speak unrighteousness, neither shall my tongue utter deceit."

**Gen. 7:22** "All in whose nostrils was the breath of the spirit of life, of all that was on the dry land, died."

**Zech. 12:1** "Thus saith Jehovah, who stretcheth forth the heavens, and layeth the foundation of the earth, and formeth the spirit of man within him."

**Num. 16:22** "And they fell upon their faces, and said, O God, the God of the spirits of all flesh, shall one man sin, and wilt thou be wroth with all the congregation?"

**Num. 27:16** "Let Jehovah, the God of the spirits of all flesh, appoint a man over the congregation."

**Jas. 2:26** "As the body without breath [*footnote*, "spirit"] is dead, so also faith without works is dead."

*Life energy vital to a living soul; life force invisible but animation visible, produces intelligence*

**Ps. 31:5** "Into thy hand I commend my spirit: thou hast redeemed me, O Jehovah, thou God of truth."

**Ps. 76:12** "He will cut off the spirit of princes: he is terrible to the kings of the earth."

**Ps. 146:4** "His breath [*ru'ahh*, Heb.] goeth forth, he returneth to his earth; in that very day his thoughts perish."

**Eccl. 3:19-21** "For that which befalleth the sons of men befalleth beasts; even one thing befalleth them: as the one dieth, so dieth the other; yea, they have all one breath [*"spirit," footnote*]; and man hath no pre-eminence above the beasts: for all is vanity. All go unto one place; all are of the dust, and all turn to dust again. Who knoweth the spirit of man whether it goeth upward, and the spirit of the beast, whether it goeth downward to the earth?"

**Eccl. 12:7** "And the dust returneth to the earth as it was, and the spirit returneth unto God who gave it."

**Luke 23:46** "And Jesus called with a loud voice and said: 'Father, into your hands I entrust my spirit.'"

See also: **Matt. 27:50**; **Jas. 2:26**; **Rev. 11:11**.

**5. Mental Disposition, the Attitude of One's Mind, Frame of Mind, Temper; Source Hidden but Impelling Visible Effects**

**Ps. 34:18** "Jehovah is nigh unto them that are of a broken heart, and saveth such as are of a contrite spirit."

**Eccl. 7:8, 9** "Better is the end of a thing than the beginning thereof; and the patient in spirit is better than the proud in spirit. Be not hasty in thy spirit to be angry; for anger resteth in the bosom of fools."

**Ex. 6:9** "And Moses spake so unto the children of Israel: but they hearkened not unto Moses for anguish of spirit, and for cruel bondage."

**Judg. 9:23** "And God sent an evil spirit between Abimelech and the men of Shechem; and the men of Shechem dealt treacherously with Abimelech."

**Eccl. 10:4** "If the spirit of the ruler rise up against thee, leave not thy place; for gentleness alayeth great offences."

**Prov. 14:29** "He that is slow to anger is of great understanding; but he that is hasty of spirit exalteth folly."

**Prov. 17:27, 28** "He that spar-eth his words hath knowledge; and he that is of a cool spirit is a man of understanding. Even a fool, when he holdeth his peace, is counted wise."

**Prov. 25:28** "He whose spirit is without restraint is like a city that is broken down and without walls."

**Prov. 29:11** "A fool uttereth all his anger [*"spirit," footnote*]; but a wise man keepeth it back and stilleth it."

**Gen. 41:8** "And it came to pass in the morning that his spirit was troubled; . . . and Pharaoh told them his dream; but there was none that could interpret them unto Pharaoh."

**Matt. 26:41** "Keep on the watch and praying, that you may not enter into temptation. The spirit, of course, is willing, but the flesh is weak."

**1 Cor. 2:11** "For who among men knows the things of a man except the spirit of man that is in him? So, too, no one has come to know the things of God, except the spirit of God."

See also: **1 Sam. 16:14-16, 23; Ps. 51:17; Isa. 57:15; 66:2; Mal. 2:15; Rom. 12:11.**

## 6. Inspired Expression, a Perceptible Message or an Utterance Originating with God or with Satan, Invisible Sources

**1 Tim. 4:1** "However, the inspired utterance ["spirit," *footnote*] says definitely that in later periods of time some will fall away from the faith, paying attention to misleading inspired utterances ["misleading spirits," *footnote*] and teachings of demons."

**2 Thess. 2:1, 2** "We request of you not to be quickly shaken from your reason nor to be excited either through an inspired expression ["through a spirit," *footnote*] or through a verbal message or through a letter as though from us, to the effect that the day of Jehovah is here."

**1 John 4:1-3** "Beloved ones, do not believe every inspired expression ["every spirit," *footnote*], but test the inspired expressions ["test the spirits," *footnote*] to see whether they originate with God, because many false prophets have gone forth into the world. You gain the knowledge of the inspired expression ["the spirit," *footnote*] from God by this: Every inspired expression ["every spirit," *footnote*] that confesses Jesus Christ as having

come in the flesh originates with God, but every inspired expression ["every spirit," *footnote*] that does not confess Jesus does not originate with God."

**Rev. 16:14** "They are, in fact, expressions inspired by ["in fact, spirits of," *footnote*] demons and perform signs, and they go forth to the kings of the entire inhabited earth, to gather them together to the war of the great day of God the Almighty."

**Rev. 22:6, 17** "And he said to me: 'These words are trustworthy and true; yes, Jehovah the God of the inspired expressions ["of the spirits," *footnote*] of the prophets sent his angel forth to show his slaves the things that must shortly take place. And the spirit ["the inspired utterance," *footnote*] and the bride keep on saying, 'Come!' And let anyone hearing say, 'Come!' And let anyone thirsting come; let anyone that wishes take life's water free."

**1 Cor. 12:8-10** "For example, to one there is given through the spirit speech of wisdom, . . . to another discernment of inspired utterances ["of spirits," *footnote*]."

## 7. Active Force

Jehovah's invisible energizing force (greater than atomic energy) that produces visible results in many manifestations experienced by men.

### *Creation. Visible manifestation of God's handiwork through invisible active force in their formation*

**Gen. 1:2** "And the earth was waste and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep: and the spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters."

**Job 33:4** "The spirit of God hath made me, and the breath of the Almighty giveth me life."

**Ps. 104:30** "Thou sendest forth thy spirit, they are created; and thou renewest the face of the ground."

**Isa. 40:12, 13** "Who hath measured the waters in the hollow of his hand, and meted out heaven with the span, and comprehended the dust of the earth in a measure, and weighed the mountains in scales, and the hills in a balance? Who hath directed the spirit of Jehovah, or being his counsellor hath taught him?"

**Miracles. Supernatural feats or mighty deeds visibly manifested but performed or brought about by invisible active force**

**Matt. 1:18, 20** "Now Jesus Christ was born this way. During the time his mother Mary was promised in marriage to Joseph, she was found to be pregnant by holy spirit before they were united. But after he [Joseph] had thought these things over, look! Jehovah's angel appeared to him in a dream, saying: 'Joseph, son of David, do not be afraid to take Mary your wife home, for that which has been begotten in her is by holy spirit.'"

**Matt. 12:28** "But if it is by means of God's spirit that I expel the demons, the kingdom of God has really overtaken you."

**Rom. 8:11** "If, now, the spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwells in you, he that raised up Christ Jesus from the dead will also make your mortal bodies alive through his spirit that resides in you."

**Rom. 15:18, 19** "For I will not venture to tell one thing if it is not of those things which Christ worked through me for the nations to be obedient, by my word and deed, with the power of signs and wonders, with the power of holy spirit."

**1 Cor. 12:7-10** "But the manifestation of the spirit is given to each one for a beneficial purpose. For example, to one there is given through the spirit speech of wisdom, . . . to yet another operations of powerful works ["of miracles," *footnote*]."

**Gal. 3:5** "He, therefore, who supplies you the spirit and performs powerful works ["performs miracles," *footnote*] among you, does he do it owing to works of law or owing to obedient hearing by faith?"

**Gal. 4:29** "But just as then the one born in the manner of flesh began persecuting the one born in the manner of the spirit, so also now."

**Demonstrations of God's power. Manifestations of visible feats of superiority in overcoming enemies and exploits of vindication through God's active force**

**Judg. 3:10** "And the spirit of Jehovah came upon him, and he judged Israel; and he went out to war, and Jehovah delivered Cushan-rishathaim king of Mesopotamia into his hand: and his hand prevailed against Cushan-rishathaim."

**Judg. 6:34** "But the spirit of Jehovah came upon Gideon; and he blew a trumpet; and Abiezer was gathered together after him."

**Judg. 14:6, 19** "And the spirit of Jehovah came mightily upon him, and he rent him as he would have rent a kid; and he had nothing in his hand: . . . And the spirit of Jehovah came mightily upon him, and he went down to Ashkelon, and smote thirty men of them, and took their spoil, and gave the changes of raiment unto them that declared the riddle."

**Judg. 15:14, 15** "When he came unto Lehi, the Philistines shouted as they met him: and the spirit of Jehovah came mightily upon him, and the ropes that were upon his arms became as flax that was burnt with fire, and his bands dropped from off his hands. And he found a fresh jawbone of an ass, and put forth his hand, and took it, and smote a thousand men therewith."

**Isa. 63:11, 12** "Then he remembered the days of old, Moses and

his people, saying, Where is he that brought them up out of the sea with the shepherds of his flock? Where is he that put his holy spirit in the midst of them? that caused his glorious arm to go at the right hand of Moses? that divided the waters before them, to make himself an everlasting name?"

**Judg. 11:29, 33** "Then the spirit of Jehovah came upon Jephthah, and he passed over Gilead and Manasseh, and passed over . . . unto the children of Ammon. And he smote them; . . . with a very great slaughter."

**Inspiration (Lit., "breathing upon").** *Visible manifestations where servants of God have been moved by invisible active force to write, speak or perform on behalf of God (pertaining to matters then current, not future)*

**Ex. 31:3** "And I have filled him with the spirit of God, in wisdom, and in understanding, and in knowledge, and in all manner of workmanship."

**1 Chron. 28:11, 12** "Then David gave to Solomon his son the pattern of the porch of the temple, and of the houses thereof, and of the treasures thereof, and of the upper rooms thereof, and of the inner chambers thereof, and of the place of the mercy-seat; and the pattern of all that he had by the spirit."

**2 Ki. 2:14-16** "And he took the mantle of Elijah that fell from him, and smote the waters, and said, Where is Jehovah, the God of Elijah? and when he also had smitten the waters, they were divided hither and thither; and Elisha went over. And when the sons of the prophets that were at Jericho over against him saw him, they said, The spirit of Elijah doth rest on Elisha."

**Isa. 11:2** "And the spirit of Jehovah shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and

might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of Jehovah."

**Luke 1:41, 42** "Well, as Elizabeth heard the greeting of Mary, the infant in her womb leaped, and Elizabeth was filled with holy spirit, and she called out loudly and said: 'Blessed are you among women, and blessed is the fruit of your womb!'"

**Neh. 9:20** "Thou gavest also thy good spirit to instruct them, and withheldest not thy manna from their mouth, and gavest them water for their thirst."

**Prophecying. Visible manifestation where future events are foretold by men moved by God's invisible active force**

**Num. 11:25, 26** "And Jehovah came down in the cloud, and spake unto him, and took of the spirit that was upon him, and put it upon the seventy elders: and it came to pass, that, when the spirit rested upon them, they prophesied, but they did so no more. But there remained two men in the camp, . . . and the spirit rested upon them; and they were of them that were written, but had not gone out unto the Tent; and they prophesied in the camp."

**Neh. 9:30** "Yet many years didst thou bear with them, and testifiedst against them by thy spirit through the prophets: yet would they not give ear: therefore gavest thou them into the hand of the peoples of the lands."

**Luke 1:67** "And Zechariah its father was filled with holy spirit, and he prophesied, saying."

**Ezek. 11:5** "And the spirit of Jehovah fell upon me, and he said unto me, Speak, Thus saith Jehovah."

**Acts 1:16** "Men, brothers, it was necessary for the scripture to be fulfilled which the holy spirit spoke beforehand by David's mouth about Judas."

**Acts 2:16, 17** "This is what was said through the prophet Joel, 'And in the last days,' God

says, 'I shall pour some of my spirit out upon every kind of flesh, and your sons and your daughters will prophesy.'

**Acts 21:10, 11** "But while we were remaining quite a number of days, a certain prophet named Agabus came down from Judea and he came to us and took up the girdle of Paul, bound his own feet and hands and said: 'Thus says the holy spirit, "The man to whom this girdle belongs the Jews will bind in this manner in Jerusalem and deliver into the hands of people of the nations."'"

**1 Cor. 12:8-10** "For example, to one there is given through the spirit speech of wisdom, . . . to another prophesying."

**2 Pet. 1:20, 21** "For you know this first, that no prophecy of Scripture springs from any private release ["comes out of private disclosure," *footnote*]. For prophecy was at no time brought by man's will, but men spoke from God as they were borne along by holy spirit."

**Zech. 7:12** "Yea, they made their hearts as an adamant stone, lest they should hear the law, and the words which Jehovah of hosts had sent by his spirit by the former prophets: therefore there came great wrath from Jehovah of hosts."

**Also: Num. 24:2, 3; 1 Sam. 10:10; Rev. 19:10.**

**Tongues. Visible manifestation where men are moved by God's invisible active force to speak in a foreign language to edify**

**Acts 2:4** "And they all became filled with holy spirit and started to speak with different tongues, just as the spirit was granting them to make utterance."

**Acts 10:44, 46** "While Peter was yet speaking about these matters the holy spirit fell upon all those hearing the word. For they heard them speaking with tongues and glorifying God."

**Acts 19:6** "And when Paul laid his hands upon them, the holy spirit came upon them, and they began speaking with tongues."

**1 Cor. 12:8-10** "For example, to one there is given through the spirit speech of wisdom, . . . to another different tongues."

**Interpretation. Visible manifestation where men borne along by God's invisible active force to make clear the meaning of dreams and prophecies**

**Gen. 41:25, 38, 39** "And Joseph said unto Pharaoh, The dream of Pharaoh is one: what God is about to do he hath declared unto Pharaoh. And Pharaoh said unto his servants, Can we find such a one as this, a man in whom the spirit of God is? And Pharaoh said unto Joseph, Forasmuch as God hath showed thee all this, there is none so discreet and wise as thou."

**Dan. 4:18** "This dream I, king Nebuchadnezzar, have seen; and thou, O Belteshazzar [Daniel], declare the interpretation, forasmuch as all the wise men of my kingdom are not able to make known unto me the interpretation; but thou art able; for the spirit of the holy gods is in thee."

**Dan. 5:12** "An excellent spirit, and knowledge, and understanding, interpreting of dreams, and showing of dark sentences, and dissolving of doubts, were found in the same Daniel, whom the king named Belteshazzar."

**1 Cor. 2:10** "For it is to us God has revealed them through his spirit, for the spirit searches into all things, even the deep things of God."

**Eph. 1:17** "That the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give you the spirit of wisdom and of revelation in the accurate knowledge of him."

**Eph. 3:5** "In other generations this secret was not made known



to the sons of men as it has now been revealed to his holy apostles and prophets by spirit."

**1 Pet. 1:10-12** "The prophets . . . kept on investigating what particular season or what kind of season the spirit in them was indicating concerning Christ when it was bearing witness beforehand about the sufferings for Christ and about the glories to follow these. It was revealed to them that, not to themselves, but to you, they were ministering the things which have now been announced to you through those who have declared the good news to you with holy spirit sent forth from heaven."

*Testimony, the Word of God. The Sacred Scriptures, perceptible manifestations of the sacred pronouncements of God through his invisible active force*

**Prov. 1:23** "Turn you at my reproof: behold, I will pour out my spirit upon you; I will make known my words unto you."

**Isa. 59:21** "And as for me, this is my covenant with them, saith Jehovah: my spirit that is upon thee, and my words which I have put in thy mouth, shall not depart out of thy mouth."

**John 6:63** "It is the spirit that is life-giving; the flesh is of no use at all. The sayings that I have spoken to you are spirit and are life."

**Rom. 8:16, 26** "The spirit itself bears witness with our spirit that we are God's children. In like manner the spirit also joins in with help for our weakness; for the problem of what we should pray for as we need to we do not know, but the spirit itself pleads for us with groanings unuttered."

**1 Cor. 2:10, 13** "For it is to us God has revealed them through his spirit, for the spirit searches into all things, even the deep things of God. These things

we also speak, not with words taught by human wisdom, but with those taught by the spirit, as we combine spiritual matters with spiritual words."

**Eph. 6:17** "Also accept the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the spirit, that is, God's word."

**Acts 1:16** "Men, brothers, it was necessary for the scripture to be fulfilled which the holy spirit spoke beforehand by David's mouth about Judas."

**Heb. 10:15-17** "Moreover, the holy spirit also bears witness to us, for after it has said, . . . it says afterwards."

*Helper ["paraclete," Gr.; "helper"]. The invisible active force visibly manifesting itself as helper, guide, advocate and comforter of the congregation as an organizational whole, in addition to aid by angels*

**Mark 13:11** "But when they are leading you along to deliver you up, do not be anxious beforehand about what to speak, but whatever is given you in that hour, speak this, for you are not the ones speaking, but the holy spirit is."

**John 14:16, 17, 26** "And I will request the Father and he will give you another helper to be with you forever, the spirit of the truth, which the world cannot receive, because it neither beholds it nor knows it. You know it, because it remains with you and is in you."

**John 15:26, 27** "When the helper arrives that I will send you from the Father, the spirit of the truth which proceeds from the Father, that one will bear witness about me, and you, in turn, are to bear witness, because you have been with me from when I began."

**John 16:7-15** "For if I do not go away, the helper will by no means come to you; but if I do go my way, I will send him to you. And when that one arrives

he will give the world convincing evidence concerning sin and concerning righteousness and concerning judgment: . . . he will guide you into all the truth, for he will not speak of his own impulse, but what things he hears he will speak, and he will declare to you the things coming. That one will glorify me, because he will receive from what is mine and will declare it to you."

**Acts 20:28** "Pay attention to yourselves and to all the flock, among which the holy spirit has appointed you overseers, to shepherd the congregation of God."

***Begetting. Manifestation of evidence to a member of the body of Christ that he has been born again of water and spirit as a new creature. Active force implants the incorruptible seed which gives hope of life in spirit, bringing a conditional right thereto***

**Matt. 3:16, 17** "After being baptized Jesus immediately came up from the water; and, look! the heavens were opened up, and he saw descending like a dove God's spirit coming upon him. Look! also, there was a voice from the heavens that said: 'This is my Son, the beloved, whom I have approved.'"

**John 3:3-8** "In answer Jesus said to him: 'Most truly I say to you, Unless anyone is born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.' Nicodemus said to him: 'How can a man be born when he is old? He cannot enter into the womb of his mother a second time and be born, can he?' Jesus answered: 'Most truly I say to you, Unless anyone is born from water and spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. What has been born from the flesh is flesh, and what has been born from the spirit is spirit. Do not marvel because I told you, You people must be born again. The wind [*pneuma*, Gr., elsewhere translated "spirit",

*footnote*] blows where it wants to, and you hear the sound of it, but you do not know where it comes from and where it is going. So is everyone that has been born from the spirit.'"

See also "Born Again".

***Baptism. The invisible active force giving manifestation that one has been baptized into the body of Christ, thus sharing jointly with all members regardless of differing offices***

**Matt. 3:11** "I, on the one hand, baptize you with water because of your repentance; but the one coming after me is stronger than I am, whose sandals I am not fit to take off. That one will baptize you people with holy spirit and with fire."

**Also: Mark 1:8; Luke 3:16; John 1:33, 34.**

**Acts 1:5, 8** "John, indeed, baptized with water, but you will be baptized in holy spirit not many days after this. But you will receive power when the holy spirit arrives upon you, and you will be witnesses of me both in Jerusalem and in all Judea and Samaria and to the most distant part of the earth."

**Eph. 4:4, 5** "One body there is, and one spirit, even as you were called in the one hope to which you were called; one Lord, one faith, one baptism."

**1 Cor. 12:12, 13** "For just as the body is one thing but has many members, and all the members of that body, although being many, are one body, so also is the Christ. For truly by one spirit we were all baptized into one body, whether Jews or Greeks, whether slaves or free, and we were all made to drink one spirit."

***Anointing. Manifestation to a member of Christ's body that he has been commissioned to office as a preacher***

**Isa. 61:1** "The spirit of the Lord Jehovah is upon me; be-

cause Jehovah hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek."

Also: Luke 4:18.

Matt. 3:16 "After being baptized Jesus immediately came up from the water; and, look! the heavens were opened up, and he saw descending like a dove God's spirit coming upon him."

1 John 2:20 "And you have an anointing from the holy one; all of you have knowledge."

Acts 2:17 "'And in the last days,' God says, 'I shall pour some of my spirit out upon every kind of flesh, and your sons and your daughters will prophesy.'"

Acts 10:38 "Namely, Jesus who was from Nazareth, how God anointed him with holy spirit and power, and he went through the land doing good and healing all those oppressed by the Devil, because God was with him."

See also "Minister of God."

**Sealed.** *A token payment or authoritative guarantee from God that a member of Christ's body has been called to a heavenly heritage, with gifts as a foretaste thereof*

1 Cor. 12:1 "Now concerning the spiritual gifts, brothers, I do not want you to be ignorant."

2 Cor. 1:22 "He has also put his seal upon us and has given us the token of what is to come, that is, the spirit in our hearts."

Eph. 1:11-14 "In union with whom we were also assigned as heirs, in that we were foreordained according to the purpose of him who operates all things according to the way his will counsels, that we should serve for the praise of his glory, we who have been first to hope in the Christ. But you also hoped in him after you heard the word of truth, the good news about your salvation. By means of him also, after you believed, you were sealed with the promised holy spirit, which is a token in advance of our inheritance, for the purpose of releasing by a ransom God's own possession, to his glorious praise."

Eph. 4:30 "Also do not be grieving God's holy spirit, with which you have been sealed for a day of releasing by ransom."

**Active Force**, or holy spirit, not a third part of a "triune god" or "trinity".

See "Trinity".

# Spiritism

## DEFINITION

Communication with demons, wicked spirit creatures (fallen angels), either directly or through human or other medium. These demons often impersonate dead humans. *A false practice.*

## ORIGIN

Practiced by ancient Babylonians, Egyptians and Assyrians.—Isa. 47:12, 13; Ex. 22:18.

### God's Word Forbids

Isa. 8:19, 20 "When they shall say unto you, Seek unto them

that have familiar spirits and unto the wizards that chirp and that mutter: should not a people

seek unto their God? . . . To the law and to the testimony! If they speak not according to this word, surely there is no morning for them."

**Deut. 18:10-12** "There shall not be found with thee any one . . . that useth divination, one that practiseth augury, or an enchanter, or a sorcerer, or a charmer, or a consulter with a familiar spirit, or a wizard, or a necromancer."

**Lev. 19:31** "Turn ye not unto them that have familiar spirits, nor unto the wizards; seek them not out, to be defiled by them: I am Jehovah your God."

**Lev. 20:6, 27** "The soul that turneth unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto the wizards, to play the harlot after them, I will even set my face against that soul, and will cut him off from among his people. A man also or a woman that hath a familiar spirit . . . shall surely be put to death."

**Also:** Mal. 3:5; Dan. 1:20; Acts 8:9, 11; 13:8-10; Mic. 5:12; 2 Ki. 21:6; Rev. 9:21.

### Christendom Condemned for Such Practices

**Rev. 18:23** "No light of a lamp will ever shine in you again, . . . for by your spiritistic practice all the nations were misled."

**1 Tim. 4:1** "Some will fall away from the faith, paying attention to misleading inspired utterances and teachings of demons."

### Practice Brings Destruction

**Gal. 5:19-21** "Now the works of the flesh are manifest, and they are fornication, uncleanness, loose conduct, idolatry, practice of spiritism, . . . As to these things I am forewarning you, . . . that those who practice such things will not inherit God's kingdom."

**Rev. 21:8** "But as for the . . . murderers and fornicators and those practicing spiritism and

idolaters and all the liars, their portion will be in the lake that burns with fire and sulphur. This means the second death."

**Also:** Rev. 22:15.

### Fortunetelling Condemned

**Matt. 6:34** "So, never be anxious about the next day, for the next day will have its own anxieties."

**Jas. 4:14** "Whereas you do not know what your life will be tomorrow."

**Prov. 27:1** "Boast not thyself of tomorrow: for thou knowest not what a day may bring forth."

**Acts 16:16-18** "A certain servant girl with a spirit, a demon of divination, . . . used to furnish her masters with much gain by practicing the art of prediction. . . . Paul . . . said to the spirit: 'I order you in the name of Jesus Christ to come out of her.' And it came out that very hour."

### Demonism Condemned

**Acts 19:13-20** "Certain ones . . . who practiced the casting out of demons also undertook to name the name of the Lord Jesus over those having the wicked spirits. . . . But in answer the wicked spirit said to them: 'I know Jesus and I am acquainted with Paul; but who are you?' With that the man in whom the wicked spirit was leaped upon them, got the mastery of the two of them . . . This became known to all, . . . and a fear fell upon them all, and the name of the Lord Jesus went on being magnified. . . . Indeed, quite a number of those who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them up before everybody."

**Also:** 1 Sam. 28:7-19; Isa. 2:6.

### Astrology Condemned

**Jer. 10:2** "Thus saith Jehovah, Learn not the way of the nations, and be not dismayed at the signs of heaven; for the nations are dismayed at them."

**Job 31:26-28** "If I have beheld the sun when it shined, or the

moon walking in brightness, and my heart hath been secretly enticed, and my mouth hath kissed my hand: this also were an iniquity to be punished by the judges; for I should have denied the God that is above."

**1 Tim. 6:20** "O Timothy, guard what is laid up in trust with you, turning away from the empty speeches that violate what is holy and from the contradictions of the falsely called 'knowledge.'"

### **Astrologers, Tools of Demons**

**Matt. 2:1-17** "After Jesus had been born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, look! astrologers from eastern parts came to Jerusalem, saying: 'Where is the one born king of the Jews? For we saw his star... and we have come to do him obeisance.'... Then Herod secretly summoned the astrologers and carefully ascertained from them the time of the star's appearing. ... Then Herod... had all the boys in Bethlehem... killed, from two years of age and under."

### **Special Revelations Have Ceased**

**1 Cor. 13:8-13** "Gifts of prophesying, . . . tongues, . . . knowledge, . . . will be done away with. For we have partial knowledge and we prophesy partially; but when that which is complete arrives, that which is partial will be done away with. . . . Now . . . remain faith, hope, love, these three, but the greatest of these is love."

See also: Eph. 4:11-14.

**Gal. 1:8** "Even if we or an angel out of heaven were to declare to you as good news something beyond what we declared to you as good news, let him be accursed."

### **Testing Inspired Expressions**

**1 John 4:1, 2** "Do not believe every inspired expression, but test the inspired expressions to see whether they originate with God, because many false proph-

ets have gone forth into the world. . . . Every inspired expression that confesses Jesus Christ as having come in the flesh originates with God."

**Rev. 16:13, 14** "I saw three unclean inspired expressions . . . come out of the mouth of the dragon . . . the wild beast and . . . the false prophet. They are, in fact, expressions inspired by demons and perform signs."

### **God's Word Now Contains God's Complete Revelations**

**2 Tim. 3:16, 17** "All Scripture is inspired of God . . . that the man of God may be fully competent, completely equipped for every good work."

**Rev. 22:18, 19** "If anyone makes an addition to these things, God will add to him the plagues that are written in this scroll; and if anyone takes anything away from the words of the scroll of this prophecy, God will take his portion away from the trees of life and out of the holy city, things which are written about in this scroll."

### **Dreams and Visions Not Now Given**

**Deut. 13:1-5** "If there arise in the midst of thee a prophet, or a dreamer of dreams, and he give thee a sign or a wonder, and the sign or the wonder come to pass, whereof he spake unto thee, saying, Let us go after other gods, which thou hast not known, and let us serve them; thou shalt not hearken unto the words of that prophet, or unto that dreamer of dreams."

**Jer. 29:8, 9** "Let not your prophets that are in the midst of you, and your diviners, deceive you; neither hearken ye to your dreams which ye cause to be dreamed. For they prophesy falsely unto you in my name: I have not sent them, saith Jehovah."

**Jer. 23:25-32** "I have heard what the prophets have said, that

prophesy lies in my name, saying, I have dreamed, I have dreamed. . . . The prophet that hath a dream, let him tell a dream; and he that hath my word, let him speak my word faithfully. What is the straw to the wheat? saith Jehovah. Is not my word like fire? saith Jehovah; and like a hammer that breaketh the rock in pieces? . . . I am against them that prophesy

lying dreams, . . . yet I sent them not, . . . neither do they profit this people at all, saith Jehovah."

**Ezek. 12:24, 25** "There shall be no more any false vision nor flattering divination within the house of Israel. For I am Jehovah; I will speak, and the word that I shall speak shall be performed."

**Also: Jer. 14:13-16; Ezek. 13:2, 3, 6, 7; Mic. 3:5-11; Zech. 13:3, 4.**

## Superior Authorities

### DEFINITION

In the field of government there are two parties, (1) the superior, the one who makes the law or rules of action, and (2) the inferior, the one who is bound by the rules of the superior to obey them. For divine government God is the chief superior and man the inferior.

**Rom. 13:1-4** "Let every soul be in subjection to the superior authorities [Jehovah God<sup>1</sup> and Christ Jesus<sup>2</sup>], for there is no authority except by God [only Christ Jesus and his theocratic organization recognized by God<sup>3</sup>]; the existing authorities [not political governments<sup>4</sup>] stand placed in their relative positions by God [not 'divine right of kings'<sup>5</sup>]. Therefore he who ranges himself up against the authority [Christ Jesus<sup>6</sup>] has taken a stand against the arrangement of God; those who have taken a stand against it will receive judgment to themselves [annihilation from Christ Jesus<sup>7</sup>]."

### Jehovah God Is Supreme Above All Superiors<sup>1</sup>

**Ps. 62:11, Mo** "There is one thing God has said; ay, twice have I heard him say it: that power belongs to God."

**Job 37:23, Mo** "The Almighty is beyond our minds. Supreme in power and rich in justice, he violates no right."

**Isa. 40:13, 15** "Who hath directed the spirit of Jehovah, or being his counsellor hath taught him? Behold, the nations are as a drop of a bucket, and are accounted as the small dust of the balance: behold, he taketh up the isles as a very little thing."

**Rom. 9:20, 21** "O man, who, then, really are you to be answering back to God? Shall the thing molded say to him that

molded it, 'Why did you make me this way?' What? Does not the potter have authority over the clay to make from the same lump one vessel for an honorable use, another for a dishonorable use?"

**Heb. 12:9** "Furthermore, we used to have fathers who were of our flesh to discipline us and we used to give them respect. Shall we not much more subject ourselves to the Father of our spiritual life and live?"

**Isa. 33:22** "For Jehovah is our judge, Jehovah is our lawgiver, Jehovah is our king; he will save us."

### Christ Jesus Is a Superior Second Only to Jehovah<sup>2</sup>

**John 17:1, 2** "Jesus spoke these things, and, raising his eyes to

heaven, he said: 'Father, the hour has come; glorify your son, that your son may glorify you, according as you have given him authority over all flesh, that, as regards the whole number which you have given him, he may give them everlasting life.'"

**1 Pet. 3:22** "He is at God's right hand, for he went his way to heaven, and angels and authorities and powers were made subject to him."

**Phil. 2:5, 9-11** "Keep this mental attitude in you which was also in Christ Jesus. For this very reason also God exalted him to a superior position and kindly gave him the name that is above every other name, so that in the name of Jesus every knee should bend of those in heaven and those on earth and those under the ground, and every tongue should openly confess that Jesus Christ is Lord to the glory of God the Father."

### **Jehovah Empowers Only Those Who Rightly Use Authority<sup>3</sup>**

**Eph. 1:19-23** "And what the surpassing greatness of his power is toward us believers. It is according to the operation of the mightiness of his strength, with which he has operated in the case of the Christ when he raised him up from the dead and seated him at his right hand in the heavenly places, far above every government and authority and power and lordship and every name named, not only in this system of things, but also in that to come. He also subjected all things under his feet, and made him head over all things to the congregation, which is his body, the fullness of him who fills up all things in all."

**1 Cor. 12:12, 18, 27, 28** "For just as the body is one thing but has many members, and all the members of that body, although being many, are one body, so also is the Christ. But now God has set the members in the

body, each one of them, just as he pleased. Now you are Christ's body, and members individually. And God has set the respective ones in the congregation, first, apostles."

**2 Cor. 10:8** "For even if we should boast a bit too much about the authority which the Lord gave us to build you up and not to tear you down, I would not be put to shame."

**2 Cor. 13:10** "That is why I write these things while absent, that, when I am present, I may not act with severity according to the authority which the Lord gave me, to build up and not to tear down."

**1 Cor. 9:12, 18** "If other men share in this authority over you, do we not much more so? Nevertheless, we have not made use of this authority, but we are bearing all things, in order that we might not offer any hindrance to the good news about the Christ. What, then, is my reward? That while declaring the good news I may furnish the good news without cost, to the end that I may not abuse my authority in the good news."

**2 Thess. 3:9** "Not that we do not have authority, but in order that we might offer ourselves as an example to you to imitate us."

**Heb. 13:7, 17, 24** "Remember those who are governing you, who have spoken the word of God to you, and as you contemplate how their conduct turns out imitate their faith. Be obedient to those who are governing you and be submissive, for they are keeping watch over your souls as those who will render an account, that they may do this with joy and not with sighing, for this would be damaging to you. Give my greetings to all those who are governing you and to all the holy ones."

**Worldly Rule (Pictured by  
"Beasts") Authorized by Sa-  
tan, the Dragon, Not  
by God<sup>1</sup>**

**Gen. 10:8-10, AT** "Cush was the father of Nimrod, who was the first person on the earth to be a despot.... The nucleus of his kingdom was Babylon."

**Dan. 7:1-24** "Daniel spake and said, I saw in my vision by night, and, behold, the four winds of heaven brake forth upon the great sea. And four great beasts came up from the sea, diverse one from another.... These great beasts, which are four, are four kings, that shall arise out of the earth.... The fourth beast shall be a fourth kingdom upon earth, which shall be diverse from all the kingdoms, and shall devour the whole earth, and shall tread it down, and break it in pieces."

**Rev. 17:3, 9, 10, 12** "I caught sight of a woman sitting upon a scarlet-colored wild beast that was full of blasphemous names and that had seven heads and ten horns. Here is where the intelligence that has wisdom comes in: The seven heads mean seven mountains where the woman sits on top. And there are seven kings: five have fallen, one is, the other has not yet arrived, but when he does arrive he must remain a short while. And the ten horns that you saw mean ten kings, who have not yet received a kingdom, but they do receive authority as kings one hour with the wild beast."

**Rev. 13:2, 4, 11, 12** "And the dragon gave the beast its power and its throne and great authority. And they worshiped the dragon because he gave the authority to the wild beast, and they worshiped the wild beast with the words: 'Who is like the wild beast, and who can do battle with it?' And I saw another wild beast ascending out of the earth, and it had two horns... And it exercises all the authority of the first wild beast in its sight."

**John 12:31** "Now there is a judging of this world; now the ruler of this world will be cast out."

**Rev. 12:9** "So down the great dragon was hurled, the original serpent, the one called Devil and Satan, who is misleading the entire inhabited earth."

**2 Cor. 4:4** "Among whom the god of this system of things has blinded the minds of the unbelievers."

**1 John 5:19** "We know we originate with God, but the whole world is lying in the power of the wicked one."

**Ancient Rulers Who Pictured  
Christ as Ruler Do Not Stand as  
Precedent for All Others<sup>2</sup>**

**Jer. 27:5, 6, 8** "I have made the earth, the men and the beasts that are upon the face of the earth, by my great power and by my outstretched arm; and I give it unto whom it seemeth right unto me. And now have I given all these lands into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, my servant; and the beasts of the field also have I given him to serve him. And it shall come to pass, that the nation and the kingdom which will not serve the same Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, and that will not put their neck under the yoke of the king of Babylon, that nation will I punish, saith Jehovah, with the sword, and with the famine, and with the pestilence, until I have consumed them by his hand."

**2 Chron. 36:22, 23** "Thus saith Cyrus king of Persia, All the kingdoms of the earth hath Jehovah, the God of heaven, given me; and he hath charged me to build him a house in Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Whosoever there is among you of all his people, Jehovah his God be with him, and let him go up."



**All Must Submit to Superior Authority, Christ Jesus<sup>6</sup>**

**Rom. 15:12** "And again Isaiah says: 'There will be the root of Jesse, and there will be one arising to rule nations; on him nations will rest their hope.'"

**Rev. 1:5** "Jesus Christ, . . . 'The Ruler of the kings of the earth.'"

**1 Pet. 2:13, 14, 17** "For the Lord's sake subject yourselves to every human creation: whether to a king as being superior or to governors as being sent by him to inflict punishment on evildoers but to praise doers of good. Honor men of all kinds, have love for the whole association of brothers, be in fear of God, have honor for the king."

**Matt. 28:18** "And Jesus approached and spoke to them, saying: 'All authority has been given me in heaven and on the earth.'"

**Those Who Show Works of Faith in Christ's Position Receive Favor**

**Rom. 13:3, 4** "For those ruling are an object of fear, not to the good deed, but to the evil. Do you, then, want to have no fear of the authority? Keep doing good, and you will have praise from it; for it is God's minister to you for your good. But if you are doing evil, be in fear: for it is not without purpose that it bears the sword; for it is God's minister, an avenger to express wrath upon the one practicing evil."

**Matt. 10:22** "And you will be hated by all people on account of my name; but he that has endured to the end is the one that will be saved."

**Matt. 24:9** "Then people will deliver you up to tribulation and

will kill you, and you will be hated by all the nations on account of my name."

**Matt. 25:34, 40** "Then the king will say to those on his right: 'Come, you who have my Father's blessing, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the world's foundation. . . Truly I say to you, To the extent that you did it to one of the least of these my brothers, you did it to me.'"

**Those Who Hold to Other Superiors as Supreme Must Perish at Christ's Hand<sup>7</sup>**

**Rom. 13:4** "But if you are doing evil, be in fear: for it is not without purpose that it bears the sword; for it is God's minister, an avenger to express wrath upon the one practicing evil."

**Luke 12:4, 5** "Moreover I say to you, my friends, Do not fear those who kill the body and after this are not able to do anything more. But I will indicate to you whom to fear: Fear him who after killing has authority to throw into Gehenna."

**Rev. 19:15** "And out of his mouth there protrudes a sharp long sword, that he may smite the nations with it, and he will shepherd them with a rod of iron. He treads, too, the press of the wine of the anger of the wrath of God the Almighty."

**Matt. 25:45, 46** "Then he will answer them with the words: 'Truly I say to you, To the extent that you did not do it to one of these least ones, you did not do it to me.' And these will depart into everlasting cutting-off, but the righteous ones into everlasting life."

See "Caesar's Things to Caesar."

# Ten "Lost Tribes"

## DEFINITION

The false teaching that the ten tribes who revolted with Jeroboam became lost after their captivity to Assyria. Some claim they migrated to America and constituted the American Indian tribes; "everlasting hills" (Genesis 49) claimed to be mountains of western America. Others say the ten tribes became the Anglo-Americans.

### Representatives of All Twelve Tribes Lived in Judah's Kingdom

**2 Chron. 11:13-17** "And the priests and the Levites that were in all Israel resorted to him out of all their border. For the Levites left their suburbs and their possession, and came to Judah and Jerusalem: for Jeroboam and his sons cast them off, that they should not execute the priest's office unto Jehovah.... And after them, out of all the tribes of Israel, such as set their hearts to seek Jehovah, the God of Israel, came to Jerusalem to sacrifice unto Jehovah, the God of their fathers. So they strengthened the kingdom of Judah."

**2 Chron. 15:9** "And he gathered all Judah and Benjamin, and them that sojourned with them out of Ephraim and Manasseh, and out of Simeon: for they fell to him out of Israel in abundance, when they saw that Jehovah his God was with him."

### A Remnant Composed of All Twelve Tribes Returned to Palestine

**Ezek. 37:19-28** "Thus saith the Lord Jehovah: Behold, I will take the stick of Joseph, which is in the hand of Ephraim, and the tribes of Israel his companions; and I will put them with it, even with the stick of Judah, and make them one stick, and they shall be one in my hand.... And say unto them, Thus saith the Lord Jehovah: Behold, I will take the children of Israel from

among the nations, whither they are gone, and will gather them on every side, and bring them into their own land: and I will make them one nation in the land, upon the mountains of Israel; and one king shall be king to them all; and they shall be no more two nations, neither shall they be divided into two kingdoms any more at all; neither shall they defile themselves any more with their idols, nor with any of their transgressions; but I will save them out of all their dwelling-places, wherein they have sinned, and will cleanse them: so shall they be my people, and I will be their God."

**Jer. 31:21, 22** "Set thee up waymarks, make thee guideposts; set thy heart toward the highway, even the way by which thou wentest: turn again, O virgin of Israel, turn again to these thy cities. How long wilt thou go hither and thither, O thou backsliding daughter?"

### Bible Record Testifies that Israel Returned, Speaking of All Israel, Heads of the Fathers' Houses, etc.

**Ezra 2:70** "So the priests, and the Levites, and some of the people, and the singers, and the porters, and the Nethinim, dwelt in their cities, and all Israel in their cities."

**Ezra 4:3** "But Zerubbabel, and Jeshua, and the rest of the heads of fathers' houses of Israel, said unto them, Ye have nothing to do with us in building a house unto our God."

See also: Ezra 2:2, 59; 3:1; 4:3; 7:7, 10, 28; 8:25, 29; 9:1; 10:1, 2, 5, 10; Neh. 2:10; 7:7, 61, 73; 9:1, 2; 11:3, 20; 12:47; 13:3; Luke 1:80; 7:9; John 1:31; 3:10.

### Some of All Twelve Tribes Were in Palestine in the Days of Jesus and Apostles

**Acts 26:7** "Our twelve tribes are hoping to attain to the fulfillment of this promise by intensely rendering him sacred service night and day."

**Isa. 8:14** "And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling and for a rock of offence to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and for a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem."

**Luke 2:36** "Now there was Anna a prophetess, Phanuel's daughter, of Asher's tribe."

**Acts 2:36** "Therefore let all the house of Israel know for a certainty that God made him both Lord and Christ, this Jesus whom you impaled."

**Jas. 1:1** "James, a slave of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ, to the twelve tribes that are scattered about."

**Acts 13:16, 17, 23, 24** "Paul rose, and motioning with his hand, he said: 'You Israelites and you others that fear God, hear. The God of this people Israel chose our forefathers, . . . God has brought to Israel a savior, Jesus, after John, in advance of the entry of that One, had preached publicly to all the people of Israel the baptism of those repenting.'"

**Luke 1:16** "And many of the sons of Israel will he [John the Baptist] turn back to Jehovah their God."

**Matt. 10:6, 23** "Go continually to the lost sheep of the house of Israel."

**Matt. 15:24** "In answer he said: 'I was not sent forth to any but to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.'"

See also: Matt. 2:20, 21; 8:10; Acts 2:22; 3:12; 4:27; 10:36, 37;

Rom. 9:31-33; 10:1; 11:1; Heb. 8:10.

### Israelites Cast Off as God's Nation, A.D. 33; All Peoples Could Then Be of God's "Holy Nation"

**Gal. 3:28** "There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor freeman, there is neither male nor female; for you are all one in union with Christ Jesus."

**Gal. 6:15, 16** "For neither is circumcision anything nor is uncircumcision, but a new creation is something. And all those who will walk orderly by this rule of conduct, upon them be peace and mercy, even upon the Israel of God."

**2 Cor. 5:16, 17** "Consequently, from now on we know no man according to the flesh. Even if we have known Christ according to the flesh, certainly we now know him so no more. Consequently, if anyone is in union with Christ, he is a new creation; the old things passed away, look! new things have come into existence."

**1 Pet. 2:9, 10** "You are 'a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for special possession, that you should declare abroad the excellencies' of the one that called you out of darkness into his wonderful light. For you were once not a people, but are now God's people; you were those who had not been shown mercy, but are now those who have been shown mercy."

[For the above reasons, the 144,000 mentioned in Revelation 7, from the twelve tribes, could not be literal Jews. The 12,000 from each tribe shows impartiality and complete, balanced organization.]

### Regathering in Last Days Is Not Nationally, Politically (as Indians, Anglo-Americans), but a Christian Gathering from All Nations for True Worship

**Acts 15:14** "Symeon has related thoroughly how God for

the first time turned his attention to the nations to take out of them a people for his name."

**Rev. 7:4-15** "And I heard the number of those who were sealed, a hundred and forty-four thousand, sealed out of every tribe of the sons of Israel: . . . After these things I saw, and, look! a great crowd, which no man was able to number, out of all nations and tribes and peoples and tongues, . . . And they keep on crying with a loud voice, saying: 'Salvation we owe to our God, who is seated on the throne, and to the Lamb.' . . . and they are rendering him sacred service day and night in his temple."

**Rev. 14:1-4** "And I saw, and look! the Lamb standing upon the mount Zion, and with him a hundred and forty-four thousand. . . . And they are singing as if a new song. . . . These were purchased from among mankind."

**Rev. 5:9, 10** "And they sing a new song, saying: 'You are worthy to take the scroll and open its seals, because you were slaughtered and with your blood you bought persons for God out of every tribe and tongue and people and nation, and you made them to be a kingdom and priests to our God, and they will rule as kings over the earth.'"

**Isa. 35:10** "And the ransomed of Jehovah shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy shall be upon their heads: they shall obtain gladness and joy, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away."

**Mal. 3:4** "Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto Jehovah, as in the days of old, and as in ancient years."

**Mic. 4:1-3** "But in the latter days it shall come to pass, that the mountain of Jehovah's house shall be established on the top of the mountains, and it shall be exalted above the hills; and peoples shall flow unto it. And many

nations shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of Jehovah, . . . and he will judge between many peoples, and will decide concerning strong nations afar off: and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruning-hooks; nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more."

### **"Everlasting Hills" Those of Palestine Where Joseph (Ephraim and Manasseh) Received His Inheritance**

**Gen. 49:26** "The blessings of thy father have prevailed above the blessings of my progenitors unto the utmost bound of the everlasting hills: they shall be on the head of Joseph."

**Josh. 17:7-11** "And the border of Manasseh was from Asher to Michmethath, which is before Shechem; and the border went along to the right hand, unto the inhabitants of En-tappuah. The land of Tappuah belonged to Manasseh; but Tappuah on the border of Manasseh belonged to the children of Ephraim. And the border went down unto the brook of Kanah, southward of the brook: these cities belonged to Ephraim among the cities of Manasseh: and the border of Manasseh was on the north side of the brook, and the goings out thereof were at the sea; southward it was Ephraim's, and northward it was Manasseh's, and the sea was his border; and they reached to Asher on the north, and to Issachar on the east. And Manasseh had in Issachar and in Asher Beth-shean and its towns, and Ibleam and its towns, and the inhabitants of Dor and its towns, and the inhabitants of En-dor and its towns, and the inhabitants of Taanach and its towns, and the inhabitants of Megiddo and its towns, even the three heights."

See "Jehovah's Witnesses".

# Tithing

## DEFINITION

A giving of one tenth of one's possessions or gains. While the number ten is used in the Scriptures to represent all, a tenth is only a fraction of it and represents the direct support given by the dedicated one year after year in both material and spiritual ways to the "temple" service. It is an evidence of the fact that we have dedicated our all to Jehovah God.

### **Abraham's Tithing to Melchizedek Showed Levitical Priesthood Inferior to Christ's**

Gen. 14:18-20 "And Melchizedek king of Salem brought forth bread and wine: and he was priest of God Most High. And he blessed him, and said, Blessed be Abram of God Most High, possessor of heaven and earth: and blessed be God Most High, who hath delivered thine enemies into thy hand. And he gave him a tenth of all."

Heb. 7:4-10 "Behold, then, how great this man [Melchizedek] was to whom Abraham, the family head, gave a tenth out of the chief spoils. True, the men who receive their priesthood from the sons of Levi have a commandment to collect tithes from the people according to the Law, that is, from their brothers, even if these have issued from the loins of Abraham; but the man who did not trace his genealogy from them took tithes from Abraham and blessed him who had the promises. Now without any dispute, the less is blessed by the greater. And in the one case it is men who are dying that receive tithes, but in the other case it is a man of whom it is witnessed that he lives. And, if I may use the expression, through Abraham even Levi who receives tithes has paid tithes, for he was still in the loins of his forefather when Melchizedek met him."

### **Jacob Vowed One Tenth (Not by Law), Picturing the Christian's Direct Support of "Temple" Service**

Gen. 28:20-22 "And Jacob

vowed a vow, saying, If God will be with me, and will keep me in this way that I go, and will give me bread to eat, and raiment to put on, so that I come again to my father's house in peace, and Jehovah will be my God, then this stone, which I have set up for a pillar, shall be God's house: and of all that thou shalt give me I will surely give the tenth unto thee."

### **Tithes Paid by Israelites Under the Law**

#### *The main tithe—to the Levites*

Num. 18:21 "And unto the children of Levi, behold, I have given all the tithe in Israel for an inheritance, in return for their service which they serve, even the service of the tent of meeting."

#### *The second tithe—to be used to travel to Jerusalem or other divinely designated place for assembly there. What was left was to be eaten there*

Deut. 14:22-26 "Thou shalt surely tithe all the increase of thy seed, that which cometh forth from the field year by year. And thou shalt eat before Jehovah thy God, in the place which he shall choose, to cause his name to dwell there, the tithe of thy grain, of thy new wine, and of thine oil, and the firstlings of thy herd and of thy flock; that thou mayest learn to fear Jehovah thy God always. And if the way be too long for thee, so that thou art not able to carry it, because the place is too far from thee, which Jehovah thy God shall choose, to set his name there, when Jehovah thy God

shall bless thee; then shalt thou turn it into money, and bind up the money in thy hand . . . and thou shalt bestow the money for whatsoever thy soul desireth, for oxen, or for sheep, or for wine, or for strong drink, or for whatsoever thy soul asketh of thee; and thou shalt eat there before Jehovah thy God, and thou shalt rejoice, thou and thy household."

***The poor tithe—on the third and sixth years of every seven-year period, instead of the second tithe***

Deut. 14:28, 29 "At the end of every three years thou shalt bring forth all the tithe of thine increase in the same year, and shalt lay it up within thy gates: and the Levite, because he hath no portion nor inheritance with thee, and the sojourner, and the fatherless, and the widow, that are within thy gates, shall come, and shall eat and be satisfied; that Jehovah thy God may bless thee in all the work of thy hand which thou doest."

***Tithe of Levites to the priests—a tithe of the tithe***

Num. 18:26, 28, 29 "Moreover thou shalt speak unto the Levites, and say unto them, When ye take of the children of Israel the tithe which I have given you from them for your inheritance, then ye shall offer up a heave-offering of it for Jehovah, a tithe of the tithe. Thus ye also shall offer a heave-offering unto Jehovah . . . of all the best thereof, even the hallowed part thereof out of it."

***To the king—taxes; this might vary according to taxes levied***

1 Sam. 8:15 "And he will take the tenth of your seed, and of your vineyards, and give to his officers, and to his servants."

***Tithing Not the Weightier Part of the Law***

Matt. 23:23, 24 "Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites!

because you give the tenth of the mint and the dill and the cummin, but you have disregarded the weightier matters of the Law, namely, judgment and mercy and faithfulness. These things it was binding to do, yet not to disregard the other things. Blind guides, who strain out the gnat but gulp down the camel!"

Luke 18:11-14 "The Pharisee stood and began to pray these things to himself: 'O God, I thank you I am not as the rest of men, extortioners, unrighteous, adulterers, or even as this tax collector. I fast twice a week, I give the tenth of all things I acquire.' But the tax collector standing at a distance was not willing even to raise his eyes heavenward, but kept beating his chest, saying: 'O God, be gracious to me a sinner.' I tell you, This man went down to his home proved more righteous than that man; because everyone that exalts himself will be humiliated, but he that humbles himself will be exalted."

***Jesus Upheld Tithing While Jewish Law Was in Force***

Luke 11:42 "But woe to you Pharisees, because you give the tenth of the mint and the rue and of every other vegetable, but you pass by the justice and the love of God! These things you were under obligation to do, but those other things not to omit."

***Tithing Ended When Law Abolished by God Through Christ***

Col. 2:13, 14 "Furthermore, though you were dead in your trespasses and in the uncircumcised state of your flesh, God made you alive together with him. He kindly forgave us all our trespasses and blotted out the handwritten document against us which consisted of decrees and which was in opposition to us, and He has taken it out of the way by nailing it to the torture stake."

**Gal. 3:13** "Christ by purchase released us from the curse of the Law by becoming a curse instead of us, because it is written: 'Accursed is every man hanged upon a stake.'"

**Eph. 2:15** "By means of his flesh he abolished the hatred, the Law of commandments consisting in decrees."

**Heb. 7:18** "Certainly, then, there occurs a setting aside of the preceding commandment on account of its weakness and ineffectiveness."

**Heb. 7:11, 12** "If, then, perfection were really through the Levitical priesthood, (for with it as a feature the people were given the Law,) what further need would there be for another priest to arise after the likeness of Melchizedek and not said to be after the likeness of Aaron?"

**Christian Offerings Are Free Will, "Gifts of Mercy," Not by Law nor Mandatory**

**2 Cor. 9:5-7** "Therefore I thought it necessary to encourage the brothers to come to you in advance and to get ready in advance your bountiful gift previously promised, that thus this might be ready as a bountiful gift and not as something extorted. But as to this, he that sows sparingly will also reap sparingly, and he that sows bountifully will also reap bountifully. Let each one do just as he has resolved in his heart, not grudgingly or under compulsion, for God loves a cheerful giver."

**Acts 24:17** "So after quite a number of years I arrived to bring gifts of mercy to my nation, and offerings."

**Rom. 15:25-27** "But now I am about to journey to Jerusalem to minister to the holy ones. For those in Macedonia and Achaia have been pleased to share up their things by a contribution to the poor of the holy ones in Jerusalem. True, they have been pleased to do so, and yet they were debtors to them; for if the

nations have shared in their spiritual things, they also owe it to minister publicly to these with things for the physical body."

**Acts 4:34, 35** "In fact, there was not one in need among them; for all those who were possessors of fields or houses would sell them and bring the values of the things sold and they would deposit them at the feet of the apostles. In turn, distribution would be made to each one just as he would have the need."

**Gal. 2:10** "Only we should keep the poor in mind. This very thing I have also earnestly endeavored to do."

**No Mention to Christians of Giving a Tenth**

**1 Cor. 16:2, 3** "Every first day of the week let each of you at his own house set something aside in store as he may be prospering, so that when I arrive collections will not take place then. But when I get there, whatever men you approve of by letters, these I shall send to carry your kind gift to Jerusalem."

**Christian "Tithe" Is Direct Support Regularly Given to Jehovah's Temple Service in Token of Having Dedicated All to God**

**Mal. 3:10, Da** "Bring the whole tithe into the treasure-house."

**Temple identified**

**1 Pet. 2:5, 9** "You yourselves also as living stones are being built up a spiritual house for the purpose of a holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices acceptable to God through Jesus Christ. On the other hand, you are 'a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for special possession, that you should declare abroad the excellencies' of the one that called you out of darkness into his wonderful light."

**Support by preaching and gifts**

**Heb. 13:15, 16** "Through him

let us always offer to God a sacrifice of praise, that is, the fruit of lips which make public declaration to his name. Moreover, do not forget the doing of good and the sharing of things with others, for with such sacrifices God is well pleased."

### **Support by meeting attendance**

**Heb. 10:23, 25** "Let us hold fast the public declaration of our hope without wavering, for he is faithful that promised. Not forsaking the gathering of ourselves together, as some have the custom, but encouraging one another, and all the more so as you behold the day drawing near."

### **Material support**

**Luke 12:33** "Sell the things belonging to you and give them as gifts of mercy. Make purses for yourselves that do not wear out, a never-failing treasure in the heavens, where a thief does not get near nor moth consumes."

### **Christian Gifts of Mercy Not Necessarily Regularly Given to the Congregation, or Its Appointed Servants, but to Relieve Needy Brothers and Expand Preaching Work**

**Jas. 2:15, 16** "If a brother or a sister is in a naked state and lacking the food sufficient for the day, yet a certain one of you says to them, 'Go in peace, keep warm and well fed,' but you do not give them the necessities for their body, of what benefit is it?"

**Rom. 15:26** "For those in Macedonia and Achaia have been pleased to share up their things by a contribution to the poor of the holy ones in Jerusalem."

**Phil. 4:14-17** "Nevertheless, you acted well in becoming sharers with me in my tribulation. In fact, you Philippians, also know that at the start of declaring the good news, when I departed from Macedonia, not a congregation took a share with me in

the matter of giving and receiving, except you alone, because, even in Thessalonica, you sent something to me both once and a second time for my need. Not that I am earnestly seeking the gift, but that I am earnestly seeking the fruitage that brings more credit to your account."

### **Christians Today Entrust "Faithful and Discreet Slave" Society with Material Means to Carry on Kingdom Work**

**Acts 11:29, 30** "So those of the disciples determined, each of them according as anyone could afford it, to send a relief ministration to the brothers dwelling in Judea; and this they did, dispatching it to the older men by the hand of Barnabas and Saul."

**2 Cor. 9:1-5** "Now concerning the ministry that is destined for the holy ones it is superfluous for me to write you, for I know your readiness of mind of which I am boasting to the Macedonians about you, that Achaia has stood ready now for a year, and your zeal has stirred up the majority of them. But I am sending the brothers, that our boasting about you might not prove empty in this respect, but that you may really be ready, just as I used to say you would be. Otherwise, in some way, if Macedonians should come with me and find you not ready, we—not to say you—should be put to shame in this assurance of ours. Therefore I thought it necessary to encourage the brothers to come to you in advance and to get ready in advance your bountiful gift previously promised, that thus this might be ready as a bountiful gift and not as something extorted."

**2 Cor. 9:11-13** "In everything you are being enriched for every kind of generosity, which produces through us an expression of thanks to God; because the ministry of this public service is not only to supply abundantly



the wants of the holy ones but also to be rich with many expressions of thanks to God. Through the proof that this ministry gives, they glorify God because you are submissive to the good news about the Christ, as you publicly declare you are, and because you are generous in your contribution to them and to all."

**1 Cor. 16:1-4** "Now concerning the collection which is for the holy ones, just as I gave orders to the congregations of Galatia, do that way also yourselves. Every first day of the week let each of you at his own house set something aside in store as he may be prospering, so that when I arrive collections will not take place then. But when I get there, whatever men you approve of by letters, these I shall send to carry your kind gift to Jerusalem. However, if it is fitting for me to go there also, they will go there with me."

**Christians Today Set Aside Money to Attend Assemblies; Enjoy Spiritual Food Provided**

**Deut. 14:22-27** "Thou shalt surely tithe all the increase of thy seed, that which cometh forth from the field year by year. And thou shalt eat before Jehovah thy God, in the place which he shall choose, to cause his name to dwell there, the tithe of thy grain, of thy new wine, and of thine oil, and the firstlings of thy herd and of thy flock; that thou mayest learn to fear Jehovah thy God always. And if the way be too long for thee, so that thou art not able to carry it, because the place

is too far from thee, which Jehovah thy God shall choose, to set his name there, when Jehovah thy God shall bless thee; then shalt thou turn it into money, and bind up the money in thy hand, and shalt go unto the place which Jehovah thy God shall choose: and thou shalt bestow the money for whatsoever thy soul desireth, for oxen, or for sheep, or for wine, or for strong drink, or for whatsoever thy soul asketh of thee; and thou shalt eat there before Jehovah thy God, and thou shalt rejoice, thou and thy household. And the Levite that is within thy gates, thou shalt not forsake him; for he hath no portion nor inheritance with thee."

**Christendom, as Pictured by Ancient Israel, Has Not Been Fully Devoted to God and Clean Worship**

**Mal. 3:8, 9** "Will a man rob God? yet ye rob me. But ye say, Wherein have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings. Ye are cursed with the curse; for ye rob me, even this whole nation."

**God's Boundless Blessings Now Poured Out on His Faithful People Today; Increase Testifies Prosperity**

**Mal. 3:10** "Bring ye the whole tithe into the store-house, that there may be food in my house, and prove me now herewith, saith Jehovah of hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing, that there shall not be room enough to receive it."

See "Charitable Works", "Law."

# **Tongues, Speaking In**

## **DEFINITION**

The special ability given through the holy spirit to some of the disciples in the early congregation that enabled them to preach or otherwise glorify God in a tongue or tongues other than their own

native tongue. Where the language was not understood by the congregation, the gift of interpretation might be given. Limited to the early congregation, it was a sign to foreign unbelievers; and, like all other special gifts of the holy spirit, was administered by Jesus Christ through the twelve apostles. At the apostles' death it was impossible to pass this special gift on to others, and therefore eventually it ceased.

### **Manifestation of Active Force as a Special Gift, the Eighth in Rating**

**1 Cor. 12:4-11, 28** "Now there are varieties of gifts, but there is the same spirit; . . . But the manifestation of the spirit is given to each one for a beneficial purpose. For example, to one there is given through the spirit speech of wisdom, . . . to another different tongues, and to another interpretation of tongues. But all these operations the one and the same spirit performs, making a distribution to each one respectively just as it wills. And God has set the respective ones in the congregation, first, apostles; second, prophets; third, teachers; then powerful works; then gifts of healings; helpful services, abilities to direct, different tongues."

**Acts 10:45, 46** "The free gift of the holy spirit was being poured out also upon people of the nations. For they heard them speaking with tongues and glorifying God."

### **Ability Through Spirit Came from Christ Jesus**

**Acts 2:1-6, 32, 33** "Now while the day of the feast of Pentecost was in progress they were all together at the same place, and suddenly there occurred from heaven a noise just like that of a rushing stiff breeze, and it filled the whole house in which they were sitting. And tongues as if of fire became visible and were distributed to them, and one sat upon each one of them, and they all became filled with holy spirit and started to speak with different tongues, just as the

spirit was granting them to make utterance. As it was, there were dwelling in Jerusalem Jews, reverent men, from every nation of those under heaven. . . . each one heard them speaking in his own language. 'This Jesus God resurrected, of which fact we are all witnesses. Therefore because he was exalted to the right hand of God and received the promised holy spirit from the Father, he has poured out this which you see and hear.'"

### **Gifts Administered by Apostles or in Their Presence**

**Acts 19:1-7** "In the course of events, while Apollos was in Corinth, Paul . . . found some disciples, and he said to them: 'Did you receive holy spirit when you became believers?' They said to him: 'Why, we have never heard whether there is a holy spirit.' . . . And when Paul laid his hands upon them, the holy spirit came upon them, and they began speaking with tongues and prophesying. All together, there were about twelve men."

**Acts 8:14-18** "When the apostles in Jerusalem heard that Samaria had accepted the word of God, they dispatched Peter and John to them, and these went down and prayed for them to get holy spirit. For it had not yet fallen upon any one of them, but they had only been baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus. Then they went to laying their hands upon them, and they began to receive holy spirit. Now when Simon saw that through the laying on of the hands of the apostles the spirit was given, he offered them money."

**Enabled Witnessing of Good News to Those of Another Language**

**Acts 2:7, 8, 11** "Indeed, they were astonished and began to wonder and say: 'See here, all these who are speaking are Galileans, are they not? And yet how is it we are listening each one of us to his own language in which we were born? ... we hear them speaking in our tongues about the magnificent things of God.'"

**Not All in Early Congregation Had Gift**

**1 Cor. 12:27, 28, 30, 31** "Now you are Christ's body, and members individually. And God has set the respective ones in the congregation, ... Not all speak in tongues, do they? Not all are translators, are they? But keep striving after the greater gifts."

**Understanding of Witness the Important Thing**

**1 Cor. 14:5-9** "Now I would like for all of you to speak in tongues, but I prefer that you prophesy. Indeed, he that prophesies is greater than he that speaks in tongues, unless, in fact, he translates, that the congregation may receive upbuilding. But at this time, brothers, if I should come speaking to you in tongues, what good would I do you unless I spoke to you either with a revelation or with knowledge or with a prophecy or with a teaching? ... In the same way also, unless you through the tongue utter speech easily understood, how will it be known what is being spoken? You will, in fact, be speaking into the air."

**If Tongue Was Unknown to Congregation, Translation Was to Be Given Also**

**1 Cor. 14:10-19** "It may be that there are so many kinds of speech-sounds in the world, and yet no kind is without meaning. If, then, I do not understand the

force of the speech-sound, I shall be a foreigner to the one speaking and the one speaking will be a foreigner to me.... Therefore let the one who speaks in a tongue pray that he may translate. For if I am praying in a tongue, it is my gift of the spirit that is praying, but my understanding is unfruitful. What is to be done, then? I will pray with the gift of the spirit, but I will also pray with my understanding. I will sing praise with the gift of the spirit, but I will also sing praise with my understanding. Otherwise, if you offer praise with a gift of the spirit, how will the man occupying the seat of the ordinary person say Amen to your giving of thanks, since he does not know what you are saying? True, you give thanks in a right way, but the other man is not being built up. I thank God, I speak in more tongues than all of you do. Nevertheless, in a congregation I would rather speak five words with my understanding, that I might also instruct others verbally, than ten thousand words in a tongue."

**Intended to Operate as a Sign to Unbelievers**

**1 Cor. 14:21-25** "In the Law it is written: 'With the tongues of foreigners and with the lips of strangers I will speak to this people, and yet not even then will they give heed to me,' says Jehovah." Consequently, tongues are for a sign, not to the believers, but to the unbelievers, whereas prophesying is, not for the unbelievers, but for the believers. Therefore, if the whole congregation comes together to one place and they all speak in tongues, but ordinary people or unbelievers come in, will they not say that you are mad? But if you are all prophesying and any unbeliever or ordinary person

comes in, he is put right by them all, he is closely examined by all, the secrets of his heart become manifest, so that he will prostrate himself and worship God, declaring, 'God is really among you.'"

### **Was Given to Edify, Not to Exalt the Creature by a Display of Gift**

1 Cor. 14:26-28 "What is to be done, then, brothers? When you come together, one has a psalm, another has a teaching, another has a revelation, another has a tongue, another has an interpretation. Let all things take place for upbuilding. And if someone speaks in a tongue, let it be limited to two or three at the most, and in turns, and let someone translate. But if there be no translator, let him keep silent in the congregation and speak to himself and to God."

1 Cor. 13:1 "If I speak in the tongues of men and of angels but do not have love, I have become a sounding piece of brass or a clashing cymbal."

### **Was to Continue Only as Long as Congregation in Early Development**

1 Cor. 13:8, 11, 12 "Whether there are tongues, they will cease; . . . When I was a babe, I used to speak as a babe, to think as a babe, to reason as a babe; but now that I have become a man, I have done away with the traits of a babe. For at present we see in hazy outline by means of a metal mirror, but then it will be face to face. At present I know partially, but then I shall know accurately even as I am accurately known."

### **Passed Away as Gift After Death of Apostles**

1 Cor. 13:8-10 "Love never fails. But whether there are gifts of prophesying, they will be done away with; whether there are tongues, they will cease; . . . For we have partial knowledge and we prophesy partially; but when that which is complete arrives, that which is partial will be done away with."

See "Spirit", "Gifts from God."

# Transmigration

## DEFINITION

The doctrine that the soul is separate and distinct from the body and passes at death into another body or (metempsychosis) the re-birth of the soul at death in another body either of human or animal form. *A false doctrine.*

## ORIGIN

Based on Satan's lie that the soul is immortal, stated to Eve in Eden, c.4025 B.C. (Gen. 3:4, 5) A pagan doctrine of the ancient Babylonians and Greeks. Believed by Hindus.

### **Souls Do Not Mix; They Reproduce After Their Own Kind**

Gen. 1:24 "God said, Let the earth bring forth living creatures after their kind, cattle, and creeping things, and beasts of the earth after their kind: and it was so."

Lev. 19:23 "Thou shalt not lie with any beast to defile thyself

therewith; neither shall any woman stand before a beast, to lie down thereto: it is confusion."

### **Souls of All Beasts on Earth Not Equivalent to One Human Soul**

Matt. 12:12 "All considered, of how much more worth is a man than a sheep!"

**Matt. 10:31** "You are worth more than many sparrows."

**Luke 12:23, 24** "The soul is worth more than food... Of how much more worth are you than birds?"

**1 Cor. 9:9, 10** "In the law of Moses it is written: 'You must not muzzle an ox when it is treading out the grain.' Is it oxen God is caring for? Or is it altogether for our sakes he says it? Really for our sakes it was written."

**Isa. 40:16** "Lebanon is not sufficient to burn, nor the beasts thereof sufficient for a burnt-offering."

**Heb. 9:13, 14** "For if the blood of goats and of bulls and the ashes of a heifer sprinkled on those who have been polluted sanctifies to the extent of cleanness of the flesh, how much more will the blood of the Christ, who through an everlasting spirit offered himself without blemish to God, cleanse our consciences from dead works?"

**God's Permitting Animal Souls to Be Slain by Man for Food, Clothing Denies that These May Be Transmigrated Human Souls**

**Gen. 9:3** "Every moving thing that liveth shall be food for you."

**2 Pet. 2:12** "These men, like unreasoning animals born naturally to be caught and destroyed."

**Acts 28:4, 5** "The venomous creature... he shook the venomous creature off into the fire."

**No Metempsychosis; Not Transmigrated by Being Born After Death to Other Parents**

**John 3:4** "Nicodemus said to him: 'How can a man be born when he is old? He cannot enter into the womb of his mother a second time and be born, can he?'"

**Deut. 25:5, 6** "If brethren dwell together, and one of them die, and have no son, the wife of the dead shall not be married with-

out unto a stranger: her husband's brother shall go in unto her, and take her to him to wife, and perform the duty of a husband's brother unto her. And it shall be, that the first-born that she beareth shall succeed in the name of his brother that is dead, that his name be not blotted out of Israel."

[Thus showing God recognizes the right of parents to have their own children and have them carry on their own name.]

**Metempsychosis Would Make Husbands Unnecessary; All Could Then Be Virgin Births**

**Gen. 5:3** "And Adam lived a hundred and thirty years, and begat a son in his own likeness, after his image."

**Gen. 2:18** "And Jehovah God said, It is not good that the man should be alone; I will make him a help meet for [mar., "answering to"] him."

**1 Cor. 11:3-11** "The head of a woman is the man;... the woman is man's glory. For man is not out of woman, but woman out of man; and what is more, man was not created for the sake of the woman, but woman for the sake of the man... Besides, in connection with the Lord neither is woman without man nor man without woman."

**Transmigration Would Make It Impossible for All Souls to Be Sinners Through One Man; Would Not Make a Son Subject to Inheritance of Good or Evil Tendencies from His Father or Suffer Because of His Father's Sins**

**Rom. 5:12-19** "Just as through one man sin entered into the world and death through sin, and thus death spread to all men because they had all sinned —... by one man's trespass many died,... by the trespass of the one man death ruled as king

through that one, . . . through one trespass the result to men of all kinds was condemnation."

**Ex. 20:5** "I Jehovah thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, upon the third and upon the fourth generation of them that hate me."

**Ex. 34:6, 7** "Jehovah, . . . that will by no means clear the guilty, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, and upon the children's children, upon the third and upon the fourth generation."

**Animal Souls Existed in Immense Numbers Thousands of Years Before Humans. Then No Human Souls Existed to Transmigrate**

**Gen. 1:20, 23, 26, 31** "And God said, Let the waters swarm with swarms of living creatures [Heb., "souls"], . . . a fifth day. . . . Let us make man in our image, . . . the sixth day."

**Jesus' Birth No Metempsychosis—His Life Pattern Not Superimposed upon Sperm of a Husband of Mary, nor a Resurrection, but a Continuation of Existence**

**John 8:58** "Jesus said to them: 'Most truly I say to you, Before Abraham came into existence, I have been.'"

**John 1:1, 14** "Originally the Word was, and the Word was with God, and the Word was a god. So the Word became flesh and resided among us, and we had a view of his glory, a glory such as belongs to an only-begotten son from a father."

**Matt. 1:18-20, 23** "Now Jesus Christ was born this way. During the time his mother Mary was promised in marriage to Joseph, she was found to be pregnant by holy spirit before they were united. However, Joseph her husband, because he was righteous and did not want to make

her a public spectacle, intended to divorce her secretly. But after he had thought these things over, look! Jehovah's angel appeared to him in a dream, saying: 'Joseph, son of David, do not be afraid to take Mary your wife home, for that which has been begotten in her is by holy spirit.' 'Look! the virgin will become pregnant and will give birth to a son, and they will call his name "Immanuel".'"

**Jesus Poured Out His Soul to Death; It Did Not Transmigrate**

**Isa. 53:12** "He poured out his soul unto death, and was numbered with the transgressors."

**Acts 2:25-27** "David says respecting him, ' . . . you will not forsake my soul in Hades, neither will you grant your man of loving-kindness to see corruption.'"

**Heavenly Resurrection Not Transmigration, but Recreation of Life Pattern or Personality (Including Memory) in a New Organism; Similarly the Earthly Resurrection**

**1 Cor. 15:38, 45** "God gives it a body just as it has pleased him, and to each of the seeds its own body. . . . 'The first man Adam became a living soul.' The last Adam became a life-giving spirit."

**2 Cor. 5:17** "If anyone is in union with Christ, he is a new creation; the old things passed away."

**Gal. 6:15** "Neither is circumcision anything nor is uncircumcision, but a new creation is something."

**See "Resurrection", "Death", "Born Again," "Kingdom," "Soul."**

# Trinity

## DEFINITION

"The Trinity is the term employed to signify the central doctrine of the Christian religion—the truth that in the unity of the Godhead there are Three Persons, the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, these Three Persons being truly distinct one from another."—*Catholic Encyclopedia*, Vol. XV, p. 47.

"In this one God there are three distinct Persons, the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost, who are perfectly equal to each other. We believe that Jesus Christ . . . He is God of the substance of the Father."—*The Faith of Our Fathers*, by Cardinal Gibbons, p. 1.  
*A false, unbiblical doctrine.*

## ORIGIN

Ancient Babylonish paganism c.2200 B.C. Brought into the deflected "Christian church" about the second century, being especially established in the Nicene Creed, A.D. 325. (See McClintock and Strong's *Cyclopaedia*, under "Trinity"; *The Two Babylons*, pp. 16, 17.)

### Texts Misapplied

<sup>1</sup>Heb. 1:8; <sup>2</sup>John 14:9, 10; Rom. 9:5; Titus 2:13; 1 John 5:7; <sup>3</sup>John 1:1; Rev. 3:14; <sup>4</sup>John 20:28; <sup>5</sup>John 8:58; Rev. 1:8, 11; 21:6; 22:13; <sup>6</sup>Col. 2:9; <sup>7</sup>John 10:30; <sup>8</sup>Acts 20:28; <sup>9</sup>John 10:18; 1 Tim. 3:16; <sup>10</sup>John 2:19; <sup>11</sup>Matt. 1:23; <sup>12</sup>John 15:26; 16:13-15, AV, Dy.

### Jehovah One God, Greatest Person<sup>1</sup>

Deut. 6:4 "Jehovah our God is one Jehovah."

John 14:28 "The Father is greater than I am."

John 10:29 (footnote) "My Father . . . is greater than all others."

Ps. 83:18 "Jehovah . . . [is] the Most High over all the earth."

1 Cor. 15:28 "That God may be all things to everyone."

Phil. 2:11 "Every tongue should openly confess that Jesus Christ is Lord to the glory of God the Father."

Isa. 42:8 "I am Jehovah, that is my name; and my glory will I not give to another."

Heb. 1:8 "With reference to the Son: 'God is your throne forever.'"

### Jehovah and Jesus Different Persons<sup>2</sup>

John 8:17, 18 "The witness of two men is true.' I am one that bears witness about myself and the Father who sent me bears witness about me."

1 John 5:7, AV "For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one."—This text spurious.

See Appendix on 1 John 5:7, NW.

Rom. 9:5 "God who is over all be blest forever. Amen."

See Appendix, Romans 9:5, NW.

Titus 2:13 "The . . . glorious manifestation of the great God and of our Savior Christ Jesus."

See Appendix, Titus 2:13, NW.

### The Son Created by God<sup>3</sup>

John 1:1 "Originally the Word was, and the Word was with God, and the Word was a god."

See Appendix, John 1:1, NW.

**Rev. 3:14** "These are the things the Amen says, the faithful and true witness, the beginning of the creation by God."

**John 1:18** "No man has seen God at any time; the only-begotten god who is in the bosom position with the Father is the one that has explained him."

**Col. 1:15, 16** "He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation, because by him all other things were created."

**Prov. 8:22-24** "Jehovah possessed me in the beginning of his way, before his works of old. I was set up from everlasting, from the beginning, before the earth was. When there were no depths, I was brought forth."  
—See marginal reading.

### Jesus Inferior to Jehovah

**Matt. 12:18** (Isa. 42:1) "Look! my servant whom I chose."

**Also: Isa. 53:11.**

**Acts 3:13, 26** "God . . . has glorified his Servant, Jesus. . . . God, after producing his Servant, sent him forth."

**Also: Acts 4:27; Phil. 2:7; Heb. 2:9.**

**John 8:28** "I do nothing of my own initiative, but just as the Father taught me I speak these things."

**John 5:19** "The Son cannot do a single thing of his own initiative, but only what he beholds the Father doing."

**Mark 13:32** "Concerning that day or the hour nobody knows, neither . . . the Son, but the Father."

**Matt. 20:23** "This sitting down at my right hand and at my left is not mine to give, but it belongs to those for whom it has been prepared by my Father."

**Rev. 1:1** "The revelation by Jesus Christ, which God gave him."

**Heb. 2:17** "He...[became] a... faithful high priest in things pertaining to God."

**Heb. 5:6; 7:17** "You are a priest forever after the likeness of Melchizedek."

### In Heaven Subject to God

**John 8:42** "From God I came forth and am here. Neither have I come of my own initiative at all, but that One sent me forth."

**John 12:49** "The Father himself that sent me has given me a commandment as to what to tell and what to speak."

**John 17:4, 8, 23, 25** "I have glorified you . . . having finished the work you have given me to do. . . . you sent me forth."

**1 Cor. 15:28** "But when all things will have been subjected to him, then the Son himself will also subject himself to the one who subjected all things to him, that God may be all things to everyone."

**Ps. 110:1** "Jehovah saith unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand."

### Jehovah Is Christ's God<sup>1</sup>

**John 20:17** "I am ascending to my Father and your Father and to my God and your God."

**1 Pet. 1:3** "Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ."

**Also: Eph. 1, 3, 17.**

**Heb. 1:8, 9** "But with reference to the Son: '... That is why God, your God, anointed you with the oil of great joy.'"

**Rev. 1:6** "And he made us to be a kingdom, priests to his God and Father."

**Rev. 3:12** "The one that conquers I will make a pillar in the temple of my God . . . I will write upon him the name of my God and the name of the city of my God."

**Luke 22:41, 42** "[Jesus] began to pray, saying: 'Father, if you wish, turn this cup aside from me. Nevertheless, let, not my will, but yours take place.'"

**Mark 15:34** "Jesus called out with a loud voice, 'My God, my God, for what purpose have you forsaken me?'"



See also: Matt. 26:39; John 17:1.

Heb. 5:7, 8 "In the days of his flesh Christ offered up supplications and also petitions to the one who was able to save him out of death, with strong outcries and tears, and he was favorably heard for his godly fear. Although he was a Son, he learned obedience from the things he suffered."

### Jehovah, "I Am," "Alpha and Omega"<sup>5</sup>

Rev. 1:8 "'I am the Alpha and the Omega,' says Jehovah God, 'the One who is and who was and who is coming, the Almighty.'"

Rev. 4:8 "Holy, holy, holy is Jehovah God, the Almighty, who was and who is and who is coming."

Isa. 44:6; 48:12 "Thus saith Jehovah, ... I am the first, and I am the last; and besides me there is no God."

Also: Rev. 21:6; 22:13.

Compare AV and NW at Rev. 1:11. Note omission in NW.

Ex. 3:14 "And God said unto Moses, I AM THAT I AM: and he said, Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, I AM hath sent me unto you." Contrast:

John 8:58 "Jesus said to them: 'Most truly I say to you, Before Abraham came into existence, I have been.'" [See footnote.]

### God Is Head over Christ<sup>6</sup>

1 Cor. 11:3 "But I want you to know that the head of every man is the Christ; in turn, the head of a woman is the man; in turn, the head of the Christ is God."

Col. 2:9 "Because it is in him that all the fullness of the divine quality dwells for the body."

John 3:34 "For the one whom God sent forth speaks the sayings of God, for he does not give the spirit sparingly."

### Unity of Father, Son and Congregation<sup>7</sup>

John 17:20-22 "I make request ... concerning those putting faith in me ... in order that they may all be one, just as you, Father, are in union with me and I am in union with you, that they also may be in union with us, ... in order that they may be one just as we are one."

John 10:30 (footnote) "I and the Father are at unity."

### Impossible for God to Die but Jesus in Grave for Three Days

1 Tim. 1:17 "Now to the King of eternity, incorruptible, invisible, the only God, be honor and glory for ever and ever. Amen."

Ps. 90:2 "From everlasting to everlasting, thou art God."

Jer. 10:10 "But Jehovah is the true God; he is the living God, and an everlasting King."

Acts 10:39, 40 "But they also did away with him by hanging him on a stake. God raised this One up on the third day and granted him to become visible."

### Christ's Blood Shed as Ransom, Not God's Blood<sup>8</sup>

1 Cor. 15:50 "Flesh and blood cannot inherit God's kingdom."

Acts 20:28 "Shepherd the congregation of God, which he purchased with the blood of his own [Son]."

See *New World Appendix*, Acts 20:28.

Heb. 9:14 "How much more will the blood of the Christ, who ... offered himself without blemish to God, cleanse our consciences?"

1 Pet. 1:18, 19 "You were released ... with precious blood ... even Christ's."

### God Resurrected Christ to a Higher Position than Before<sup>9</sup>

Acts 2:32, 33 "This Jesus God resurrected, of which fact we are all witnesses. Therefore because he was exalted to the right hand

of God and received the promised holy spirit from the Father, he has poured out this which you see and hear."

**Acts 13:30, 37** "But God raised him up from the dead; he whom God raised up did not see corruption."

**Rom. 10:9** "For if you publicly declare that 'word in your mouth', that Jesus is Lord, and exercise faith in your heart that God raised him up from the dead, you will be saved."

**2 Cor. 4:14** "Knowing that he who raised Jesus up will raise us up also together with Jesus."

**Gal. 1:1** "Paul, an apostle ... through Jesus Christ and God the Father, who raised him up from the dead."

**John 10:18** "No man has taken it away from me, but I surrender it of my own initiative. I have authority to let go of it, and I have authority to receive it again. The commandment on this I received from my Father."

**Also:** Acts 17:31; Rom. 8:11; 1 Cor. 6:14; 15:15; Eph. 1:20; 1 Pet. 1:21.

### **God Began Raising of Temple Body (Congregation) on Third Day<sup>10</sup>**

**John 2:19, 21, 22** "'Break down this temple, and in three days I will raise it up.' But he was talking about the temple of his body. When, though, he was raised up from the dead, his disciples called to mind that he used to say this."

(For expression, "I will," see **Ezekiel 43:3**: "According to the vision that I saw when I came to destroy the city"; also **Isaiah 6:10**: "Make the heart of this people fat.")

**John 20:1, 17** "On the first day of the week Mary Magdalene came to the memorial tomb early in the day, ... Jesus said to her: 'Stop clinging to me. ... But be on your way to my brothers and say to them, "I am ascending to my Father."'"

### **Christ's Titles Show Inferior to God<sup>11</sup>**

As to titles "Emmanuel" and "Jehovah our righteousness":

**Jer. 33:16** "Jerusalem shall dwell safely; and this is the name whereby she shall be called: Jehovah our righteousness."

**Isa. 63:9** "The angel of his presence saved them."

#### **Joshua's name same as Jesus**

**Heb. 4:8** "For if Joshua ["Jesus," *footnote*] had led them into a place of rest, God would not afterward have spoken of another day."

See also **Matthew 1:23** and **Jeremiah 23:6**, as to titles "Emmanuel" and "Jehovah our righteousness".

### **Holy Spirit Not a Person; Subject to God<sup>12</sup>**

**John 15:26 (footnote)** "When the helper arrives that I will send you from the Father, the spirit of the truth which proceeds from the Father, that one will bear witness about me."

**Matt. 3:16** "Jesus immediately came up from the water; ... and he [John] saw descending like a dove God's spirit coming upon him."

**Acts 2:2-4, 17, 32, 33** "They all became filled with holy spirit ... 'And in the last days,' God says, 'I shall pour some of my spirit out upon every kind of flesh.' ... 'Therefore because he [Christ] was exalted to the right hand of God and received the promised holy spirit from the Father, he has poured out this which you see and hear.'"

**Also:** **John 16:7, 8, 13 (footnotes)**

### **Holy Spirit Not Shown at God's Throne as a Person**

**Rev. 7:10** "Salvation we owe to our God, who is seated on the throne, and to the Lamb."

**Acts 7:55, 56** "But he [Stephen], being full of holy spirit, gazed into heaven and caught

sight of God's glory and of Jesus standing at God's right hand, and he said: 'Look! I behold the heavens opened up and the Son of man standing at God's right hand.'"

**Rev. 4:5** "And there are seven lamps of fire burning before the throne, and these mean the seven spirits of God."

**Rev. 5:6** "And I saw standing in the midst of the throne and of the four living creatures and in the midst of the persons of advanced age a lamb as though it had been slaughtered, having seven horns and seven eyes, which eyes mean the seven spirits of God that have been sent forth into the whole earth."

### **Identity of Jehovah and of Christ No "Unexplainable Mystery"**

**John 17:3** "This means everlasting life, their taking in knowledge of you, the only true God, and of the one whom you sent forth, Jesus Christ."

**Luke 10:22** "Who the Son is no one knows but the Father, and who the Father is, no one knows but the Son, and he to whom the Son is willing to reveal him."

Also: Matt. 11:27.

**Matt. 13:11** "In reply he [Jesus] said: 'To you it is granted to understand the sacred secrets of the kingdom of the heavens.'"

### **Jehovah God Not Contradictory**

**1 Cor. 14:33** "For God is a God, not of disorder, but of peace."

**Heb. 6:18** "It is impossible for God to lie."

**Jas. 3:17** "But the wisdom from above is . . . reasonable."

### **God the Superior Blesses Christ the Inferior**

**Heb. 7:7** "Now without any dispute, the less is blessed by the greater."

**Ps. 21:3-6** "For thou meetest him with the blessings of goodness: thou settest a crown of fine gold on his head. He asked life of thee, thou gavest it him, even length of days for ever and ever. His glory is great in thy salvation: honor and majesty dost thou lay upon him. For thou makest him most blessed for ever: thou makest him glad with joy in thy presence."

See also "Jehovah", "Jesus Christ", "Spirit."

# World Distress

## DEFINITION

(1) The tribulation brought upon Satan's world (heavens and earth) by Christ the King's taking action to unseat Satan from his position as ruler of the earth. Note two things about this: (a) Actual combat against Satan and his demon horde in heaven. This began with Christ's enthronement, A.D. 1914, and was cut short A.D. 1918, to be resumed at Armageddon against Satan and his invisible and visible hosts. (b) In between, while this tribulation is cut short, there is a work of proclaiming the Kingdom and its day of vengeance, and of exposing Satan's filthy organization, interfering with his hold upon mankind and wasting the pastures of false religion, and bringing confusion among the ranks of Satan's earthly organization.

(2) The anguish and sorrows brought upon the peoples of earth by reason of Satan's desperate all-out attempt to crush all truth and righteousness out of the earth and to turn all men against God

before Armageddon, with a view to a depopulated earth. By playing upon man's sinfulness and selfishness, and by his oppressive demonic and visible organization, Satan has whipped up violence and great distress.

**(1a) Christ the King's Action in  
Literal Warfare Against Satan's  
World A.D. 1914-1918**

**Rev. 12:5-9** "And she gave birth to a son, a male, who is destined to shepherd all the nations with an iron rod.... And war broke out in heaven: Michael and his angels battled with the dragon, and the dragon and its angels battled but it did not prevail, neither was a place found for them any longer in heaven. So down the great dragon was hurled, the original serpent, the one called Devil and Satan, who is misleading the entire inhabited earth; he was hurled down to the earth, and his angels were hurled down with him."

**Ps. 110:2** "Jehovah will send forth the rod of thy strength out of Zion: rule thou in the midst of thine enemies."

**Luke 10:18** "At that he said to them: 'I began to behold Satan already fallen like lightning from heaven.'"

**Rev. 18:2** "He cried out with a strong voice, saying: 'She has fallen! Babylon the great has fallen, and she has become a dwelling-place of demons and a lurking-place of every unclean exhalation and a lurking-place of every unclean and hated bird!'"

***A time of rejoicing for all  
righteous creatures***

**Rev. 12:10-12** "And I heard a loud voice in heaven say: 'Now have come to pass the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God and the authority of his Christ, because the accuser of our brothers has been hurled down, who accuses them day and night before our God!... On this account be glad, you heavens and you who reside in them!'"

**Luke 21:28** "But as these things start to occur, raise your-

selves erect and lift your heads up, because your deliverance is getting near."

***This action temporarily halted  
when Satan's organization was  
completely cleaned out of  
heaven***

**Matt. 24:7, 8, 21, 22, 14** "For nation will rise against nation and kingdom against kingdom, and there will be food shortages and earthquakes in one place after another. All these things are a beginning of pangs of distress. For then there will be great tribulation such as has not occurred since the world's beginning until now, no, nor will occur again. In fact, unless those days were cut short, no flesh would be saved; but on account of the chosen ones those days will be cut short. And this good news of the kingdom will be preached in all the inhabited earth for the purpose of a witness to all the nations, and then the accomplished end will come."

**Heb. 12:26, 27** "At that time his voice shook the earth, but now he has promised, saying: 'Yet once more I will set not only the earth but also the heaven in commotion.' Now the expression 'Yet once more' signifies the removal of the things being shaken as things that have been made, in order that the things not being shaken may remain."

**Mark 13:20** "Unless Jehovah had cut short the days, no flesh would be saved. But on account of the chosen ones that he has chosen he has cut short the days."

***Allowing this interim is a great  
mercy of God***

**2 Pet. 3:9, 15** "Jehovah is not slow respecting his promise, as some people consider slowness,

but he is patient with you because he does not desire any to be destroyed but desires all to attain to repentance. Furthermore, consider the patience of our Lord as salvation."

**Rev. 14:6, 7** "I saw another angel flying in midheaven and he had everlasting good news to declare as glad tidings to those who dwell on the earth, and to every nation and tribe and tongue and people, saying in a loud voice: 'Fear God and give him glory, because the hour of the judgment by him has arrived.'"

**Isa. 1:9** "Except Jehovah of hosts had left unto us a very small remnant, we should have been as Sodom, we should have been like unto Gomorrah."

***Provides opportunity for remnant to be gathered and prove integrity***

**Luke 13:29** "Furthermore, people will come from eastern parts and western, and from north and south, and will recline at the table in the kingdom of God."

**Matt. 24:45-47** "Who really is the faithful and discreet slave whom his master appointed over his domestics to give them their food at the proper time? Happy is that slave if his master on arriving finds him doing so. Truly I say to you, He will appoint him over all his belongings."

**Luke 18:7, 8** "Certainly, then, shall not God cause justice to be done to his chosen ones who cry aloud to him day and night, even though he is longsuffering toward them? I tell you, He will cause justice to be done to them speedily. Nevertheless, when the Son of man arrives, will he really find this faith on the earth?"

**Mal. 3:1-3** "The Lord, whom ye seek, will suddenly come to his temple; and the messenger of the covenant, whom ye desire, behold, he cometh, saith Jehovah of hosts. But who can abide the day of his coming? and who

shall stand when he appeareth? for he is like a refiner's fire, and like fullers' soap: and he will sit as a refiner and purifier of silver, and he will purify the sons of Levi, and refine them as gold and silver; and they shall offer unto Jehovah offerings in righteousness."

**Isa. 12:1** "And in that day thou shalt say, I will give thanks unto thee, O Jehovah; for though thou wast angry with me, thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortest me."

**Isa. 6:5-8** "Then said I, Woe is me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips: for mine eyes have seen the King, Jehovah of hosts. Then flew one of the seraphim unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar: and he touched my mouth with it, and said, Lo, this hath touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin forgiven. And I heard the voice of the Lord, saying, Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then I said, Here am I; send me."

**Isa. 52:11** "Depart ye, depart ye, go ye out from thence, touch no unclean thing; go ye out of the midst of her; cleanse yourselves, ye that bear the vessels of Jehovah."

**Matt. 24:16-18** "Then let those in Judea begin fleeing to the mountains. Let the man on the housetop not come down to take the goods out of his house; and let the man in the field not return to the house to pick up his outer garment."

**Isa. 45:1 and Rev. 3:7** "Thus saith Jehovah to his anointed, to Cyrus, whose right hand I have holden, to subdue nations before him, and I will loose the loins of kings; to open the doors before him, and the gates shall not be shut." "And to the angel of the congregation in Philadelphia

write: These are the things he says who is holy, who is true, who has the key of David, who opens so that no one will shut, and shuts so that no one opens."

***Allows other sheep to hear and be saved***

**John 10:16** "And I have other sheep, which are not of this fold; those also I must bring, and they will listen to my voice, and they will become one flock, one shepherd."

**Matt. 25:31-33** "When the Son of man arrives in his glory and all the angels with him, then he will sit down on his glorious throne. And all the nations will be gathered before him, and he will separate people one from another, just as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats. And he will put the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on his left."

**Rev. 22:17** "And the spirit and the bride keep on saying, 'Come!' And let anyone hearing say, 'Come!' And let anyone thirsting come; let anyone that wishes take life's water free."

***War to be resumed and completed by Christ at Armageddon***

**Isa. 28:21** "For Jehovah will rise up as in mount Perazim, he will be wroth as in the valley of Gibeon; that he may do his work, his strange work, and bring to pass his act, his strange act."

**Rev. 6:2** "And I saw, and, look! a white horse, and the one seated upon it had a bow, and a crown was given him, and he went forth conquering and to complete his conquest."

**2 Pet. 3:7, 10** "But by the same word the heavens and the earth that are now are stored up for fire and are being reserved to the day of judgment and of destruction of the ungodly men. Yet Jehovah's day will come as a thief, in which the heavens will pass away with a hissing noise, but the elements being intensely hot will be dissolved, and earth

and the works in it will be discovered."

**1 Thess. 5:3** "Whenever it is that they are saying, 'Peace and security!' then sudden destruction is to be instantly upon them just as the pang of distress upon a pregnant woman, and they will by no means escape."

**Matt. 24:20, 21** "Keep praying that your flight may not occur in wintertime nor on the sabbath day; for then there will be great tribulation such as has not occurred since the world's beginning until now, no, nor will occur again."

***(1b) Distress Brought on Satan's Organization Between 1918 and Armageddon***

**Luke 21:25** "Also there will be signs in sun and moon and stars, and on the earth anguish of nations, not knowing the way out because of the roaring of the sea and its agitation."

**Rev. 1:7** "Look! he is coming with the clouds, and every eye will see him, and those who pierced him; and all the tribes of the earth will beat themselves in grief because of him. Yes, Amen."

**Rev. 6:15-17** "And the kings of the earth and the top-ranking ones and the military commanders and the rich and the strong ones and every slave and free person hid themselves in the dens and in the rock-masses of the mountains. And they keep saying to the mountains and to the rock-masses: 'Fall over us and hide us from the face of the one seated on the throne and from the wrath of the Lamb, because the great day of their wrath has come, and who is able to stand?'"

**Rev. 16:21** "And a great hail with every stone about the weight of a talent descended out of heaven upon the men, and yet the men blasphemed God due to the plague of hail, because the plague of it was unusually great."

**Rev. 9:5, 6** "And it was granted the locusts, not to kill them, but that these should be tormented five months, and the torment upon them was as torment by a scorpion when it strikes a man. And in those days the men will seek death but will by no means find it, and they will desire to die but death keeps fleeing from them."

***God's servants have part in this proclamation work; no physical violence used***

**2 Cor. 10:3-5** "For though we walk in the flesh, we do not wage warfare according to what we are in the flesh. For the weapons of our warfare are not fleshly, but powerful by God for overturning strongly entrenched things. For we are overturning reasonings and every lofty thing raised up against the knowledge of God, and we are bringing every thought into captivity to make it obedient to the Christ."

**Eph. 6:12** "Because we have a fight, not against blood and flesh, but against the governments, against the authorities, against the world-rulers of this darkness, against the wicked spirit forces in the heavenly places."

***False religionists and oppressors of the people discomfited, bring opposition and persecution to God's servants***

**Jer. 25:36** "A voice of the cry of the shepherds, and the wailing of the principal of the flock! for Jehovah layeth waste their pasture."

**Luke 13:28** "There is where your weeping and the gnashing of your teeth will be, when you see Abraham and Isaac and Jacob and all the prophets in the kingdom of God, but yourselves thrown outside."

***Many will come forth to stand with God's servants, to their salvation***

**Rev. 7:9-17** "After these things I saw, and, look! a great crowd,

which no man was able to number, out of all nations and tribes and peoples and tongues, standing before the throne and before the Lamb, dressed in white robes, and there were palm branches in their hands. And they keep on crying with a loud voice, saying: 'Salvation we owe to our God, who is seated on the throne, and to the Lamb.' . . . 'These are the ones that come out of the great tribulation, and they have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb. . . . because the Lamb who is in the midst of the throne will shepherd them, and will guide them to fountains of waters of life.'"

**Mic. 4:1-3** "But in the latter days it shall come to pass, that the mountain of Jehovah's house shall be established on the top of the mountains, and it shall be exalted above the hills; and peoples shall flow unto it. And many nations shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of Jehovah, and to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths. For out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of Jehovah from Jerusalem; and he will judge between many peoples, and will decide concerning strong nations afar off: and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruning-hooks; nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more."

**Zech. 8:22, 23** "Yea, many peoples and strong nations shall come to seek Jehovah of hosts in Jerusalem, and to entreat the favor of Jehovah. Thus saith Jehovah of hosts: In those days it shall come to pass, that ten men shall take hold, out of all the languages of the nations, they shall take hold of the skirt of him that is a Jew, saying, We will go with you, for we have heard that God is with you."

**Jonah 3:5, 10** "And the people of Nineveh believed God; and they proclaimed a fast, and put on sackcloth, from the greatest of them even to the least of them. And God saw their works, that they turned from their evil way; and God repented of the evil which he said he would do unto them; and he did it not."

## **(2) Woes upon People, Wickedness, All Caused by Satan**

**Isa. 14:16, 17, 20** "They that see thee shall gaze at thee, they shall consider thee, saying, Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms; that made the world as a wilderness, and overthrew the cities thereof; that let not loose his prisoners to their home? ... thou hast destroyed thy land, thou hast slain thy people; the seed of evil-doers shall not be named for ever."

**Heb. 2:14, 15** "Therefore, since the 'young children' are sharers of blood and flesh, he also similarly partook of the same things, that through his death he might destroy the one having the means to cause death, that is, the Devil, and might emancipate all those who for fear of death were subject to slavery all through their lives."

**John 8:44** "You are from your father the Devil and you wish to do the desires of your father. That one was a manslayer when he began, and he did not stand fast in the truth, because truth is not in him. When he speaks the lie, he speaks according to his own disposition, because he is a liar and the father of the lie."

**Acts 10:38** "He went through the land doing good and healing all those oppressed by the Devil, because God was with him."

**Increased now because Satan knows Armageddon near**

**Rev. 12:12** "On this account be glad, you heavens and you who

reside in them! Woe for the earth and for the sea, because the Devil has come down to you, having great anger, knowing he has a short period of time."

**Rev. 6:4-8** "And another came forth, a fiery-colored horse, and to the one seated upon it there was granted to take peace away from the earth so that they should slaughter one another, and a great sword was given him. And when he opened the third seal, I heard the third living creature say, 'Come!' And I saw, and, look! a black horse, and the one seated upon it had a pair of scales in his hand. And I heard a voice as if in the midst of the four living creatures say: 'A quart of wheat for a day's wage, and three quarts of barley for a day's wage; and do not harm the olive oil and the wine.' And when he opened the fourth seal, I heard the voice of the fourth living creature say, 'Come!' And I saw, and, look! a pale horse, and the one seated upon it had the name Death. And Hades was closely following him. And authority was given them over the fourth part of the earth, to kill with a long sword and with food shortage and with deadly plague and by the wild beasts of the earth."

## **Persecution to break Jehovah's witnesses Satan's main effort**

**Rev. 12:13, 17** "Now when the dragon saw it was hurled down to the earth, it persecuted the woman that gave birth to the male child. And the dragon grew wrathful at the woman, and went off to wage war with the remaining ones of her seed, who observe the commandments of God and have the work of bearing witness to Jesus."

**This permitted by Jehovah to test his servants and show Satan's world worthy of destruction**

**Rev. 2:10** "Do not be afraid of the things you are destined to



suffer. Look! the Devil will keep on throwing some of you into prison that you may be fully put to the test, and that you may have tribulation ten days. Prove yourself faithful even with the danger of death, and I will give you the crown of life."

Prov. 27:11 "My son, be wise, and make my heart glad, that I may answer him that reproacheth me."

Mark 13:9 "As for you, look out for yourselves; people will deliver you up to local courts and you will be beaten in synagogues and be put on the stand before governors and kings for my sake for the purpose of a witness to them."

Ezek. 38:10-39:4 "Thus saith the Lord Jehovah: It shall come to pass in that day, that things shall come into thy mind, and thou shalt devise an evil device: and thou shalt say, I will go up to the land of unwallled villages; I will go to them that are at rest, that dwell securely, all of them dwelling without walls, and having neither bars nor gates; to take the spoil and to take the prey; to turn thy hand against the waste places that are now inhabited, and against the people that are gathered out of the nations, that have gotten cattle and goods, that dwell in the middle of the earth... and thou shalt come up against my people Israel, as a cloud to cover the land: it shall come to pass in the latter days, that I will bring thee against my land, that the nations may know me, when I shall be sanctified in thee, O Gog, before their eyes." "And I will turn thee about, and will lead thee on, and will cause thee to come up from the uttermost parts of the north; and I will bring thee upon the mountains of Israel; and I will smite thy bow out of thy left hand, and will cause thine arrows to fall out of thy right hand. Thou shalt fall upon the mountains of Israel,

thou, and all thy hordes, and the peoples that are with thee: I will give thee unto the ravenous birds of every sort, and to the beasts of the field to be devoured."

***Satan tries to thwart God's purpose of gathering remnant of Christ's body, and of having earthly other sheep survive Armageddon***

2 Thess. 2:1 "Brothers, respecting the presence of our Lord Jesus Christ and our being gathered together to him."

1 Pet. 5:8 "Keep your senses, be watchful. Your adversary, the Devil, walks about like a roaring lion, seeking to devour someone."

Rev. 16:14-16 "They are, in fact, expressions inspired by demons and perform signs, and they go forth to the kings of the entire inhabited earth, to gather them together to the war of the great day of God the Almighty. 'Look! I am coming as a thief. Happy is the one that stays awake and keeps his outer garments, that he may not walk naked and people look upon his parts of shame.' And they gathered them together to the place that is called in Hebrew Har-Magedon."

Zech. 3:1, 2; 4:9 "And he showed me Joshua the high priest standing before the angel of Jehovah, and Satan standing at his right hand to be his adversary. And Jehovah said unto Satan, Jehovah rebuke thee, ... is not this a brand plucked out of the fire?" "The hands of Zerubabel have laid the foundation of this house; his hands shall also finish it; and thou shalt know that Jehovah of hosts hath sent me unto you."

***Distress will increase until Armageddon; no world conversion possible***

2 Tim. 3:1-5, 13 "But know this, that in the last days critical times hard to deal with will be here. For men will be lovers of

themselves, lovers of money, self-assuming, haughty, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, without gratitude, with no loving-kindness, having no natural affection, not open to any agreement, slanderers, without self-control, fierce, without love of goodness, betrayers, headstrong, puffed up with self-esteem, lovers of pleasures rather than lovers of God, having a form of godly devotion but proving false to its power; and from these turn away. . . . wicked men and impostors will advance from bad to worse, misleading and being misled."

**Matt. 24:37** "For just as the days of Noah were, so the presence of the Son of man will be."

**Gen. 6:13** "And God said unto Noah, The end of all flesh is come before me; for the earth is filled with violence through them; and, behold, I will destroy them with the earth."

***Such distresses are a sign of the last days***

**Matt. 24:3-10, 33-35** "While he was sitting upon the mount of Olives, the disciples approached him privately, saying: 'Tell us, When will these things be, and what will be the sign of your presence and of the consummation of the system of things?' . . . Jesus said . . . 'For nation will rise against nation and kingdom against kingdom, and there will be food shortages and earthquakes in one place after another. All these things are a beginning of pangs of distress. Then people will deliver you up to tribulation and will kill you, and you will be hated by all the nations on account of my name. Then, also, many will be stumbled and will betray one another

and will hate one another. . . . Truly I say to you that this generation will by no means pass away until all these things occur. Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will by no means pass away.'"

**Luke 21:25, 31** "Also there will be signs in sun and moon and stars, and on the earth anguish of nations, not knowing the way out because of the roaring of the sea and its agitation. . . . In this way you also, when you see these things occurring, know that the kingdom of God is near."

***Distress to end for all time at Armageddon***

**Nah. 1:9** "What do ye devise against Jehovah? he will make a full end; affliction shall not rise up the second time."

**Rev. 11:18** "But the nations became wrathful, and your own wrath came, and the appointed time . . . to bring to ruin those ruining the earth."

**Ps. 72:4** "He will judge the poor of the people, he will save the children of the needy, and will break in pieces the oppressor."

**Isa. 14:4** "How hath the oppressor ceased! the golden city ceased!"

**Isa. 66:23, 24** "And it shall come to pass, that from one new moon to another, and from one sabbath to another, shall all flesh come to worship before me, saith Jehovah. And they shall go forth, and look upon the dead bodies of the men that have transgressed against me: for their worm shall not die, neither shall their fire be quenched; and they shall be an abhorring unto all flesh."

See also "Devil and Demons", "Sign of Last Days."

# Worship of Mary

## DEFINITION

The unscriptural practice based upon the false teachings (1) that Christ Jesus' earthly mother, Mary, was born of 'immaculate conception', that is to say, that, by the special grace of God, she was freed at the moment of conception from inheriting the "original sin" of Adam; (2) that she is the "mother of God"; (3) that she is "ever virgin", never having borne any other children; (4) that she is the "woman" mentioned at Genesis 3:15 and will bruise the serpent's head; (5) that she is the "spiritual mother" of the "church"; (6) that prayers addressed to her as an intercessor or mediatrix are heard and answered by God; (7) that she was "taken up body and soul into heaven" in an "assumption"; (8) and that honor and veneration are due her. A practice opposed to the Scriptures and that turns attention and worship away from Jehovah God and Christ Jesus.

## ORIGIN

The worship of Mary as an application of the false doctrine of the Communion of Saints is not contained even in the earlier forms of the Apostles' Creed of apostate Christianity and was totally unknown to true Christians. Although Tertullian (A.D. 155-222) was claimed to be among the first to imply the view that "martyrs" could obtain graces and blessings for others (*Cath. Encycl.*, Vol. XV, p. 459), "devotion to The Blessed Virgin" was not extensively taught until probably well after the sixth century and did not reach full development until the later Middle Ages. The pronouncement of the assumption of Mary as an infallible dogma of the Roman Catholic Church was not made until 1950. Such worship, especially of "mother and child", finds its real origin in pagan Babylon with Semiramis ("queen of heaven") and Nimrod her son.

(1) **Jesus' Mother, Mary, Not "Immaculate" or Freed from Inherited Sin. Only Jesus Himself Was**

**Ps. 50:7, Dy [51:5, AS]** "For behold I was conceived in iniquities: and in sins did my mother conceive me."

**Rom. 5:12, Dy** "Wherefore as by one man sin entered into this world and by sin death; and so death passed upon all men, in whom all have sinned."

**Rom. 3:9, 10, Dy** "What then? Do we excel them? No, not so.

For we have charged both Jews and Greeks, that they are all under sin. As it is written: There is not any man just."

**Ps. 13:1, Dy [14:1, AS]** "They are corrupt, and are become abominable in their ways: there is none that doth good, no, not one."

**Heb. 7:26, Dy** "For it was fitting that we should have such a high priest, holy, innocent, undefiled, separated from sinners, and made higher than the heavens."

***"Special grace" of God to forgive sins completely would not be extended until after Jesus' blood was shed as ransom***

1 Cor. 15:22, **Dy** "And as in Adam all die, so also in Christ all shall be made alive."

Eph. 1:7, **Dy** "In whom we have redemption through his blood, the remission of sins, according to the riches of his grace."

Heb. 9:22, 24, 26, 28, **Dy** "And almost all things, according to the law, are cleansed with blood; and without shedding of blood there is no remission. For Jesus is not entered into the Holies made with hands, the patterns of the true: but into Heaven itself, that he may appear now in the presence of God for us... now once, at the end of ages, he hath appeared for the destruction of sin by the sacrifice of himself. So also Christ was offered once to exhaust the sins of many."

See "Ransom".

***Mary fulfilled law of purification after Jesus' birth and also offered her sin offering, showing herself not without sin***

Luke 2:22-24, **Dy** "And after the days of her purification, according to the law of Moses, were accomplished, they carried him to Jerusalem, to present him to the Lord: as it is written in the law of the Lord: every male opening the womb shall be called holy to the Lord: and to offer a sacrifice, according as it is written in the law of the Lord, a pair of turtledoves or two young pigeons."

Lev. 12:6-8, **Dy** "And when the days of her purification are expired, for a son, or for a daughter, she shall bring to the door of the tabernacle of the testimony, a lamb of a year old for a holocaust, and a young pigeon or a turtle for sin: and shall deliver them to the priest. Who shall offer them before the

Lord, and shall pray for her: and so she shall be cleansed from the issue of her blood. This is the law for her that beareth a man child or a maid child. And if her hand find not sufficiency, and she is not able to offer a lamb, she shall take two turtles, or two young pigeons, one for a holocaust, and another for sin: and the priest shall pray for her, and so she shall be cleansed."

**(2) Mary Could Not Be "Mother of God", Since God Is Without Beginning**

Ps. 89:2, **Dy** [90:2, AS] "Before the mountains were made, or the earth and the world was formed; from eternity and to eternity thou art God."

Jer. 10:10, **Dy** "But the Lord is the true God: he is the living God and the everlasting king."

1 Tim. 1:17, **Dy** "Now to the king of ages, immortal, invisible, the only God, be honour and glory for ever and ever."

***Mary was born 75 generations after Adam, who was created by God***

Luke 3:23-38, **Dy** "And Jesus himself was beginning about the age of thirty years: being (as it was supposed) the son of Joseph, who was of Heli, who was of Mathat, ... who was of Henos, who was of Seth, who was of Adam, who was of God."

Gen. 2:7, **Dy** "And the Lord God formed man of the slime of the earth, and breathed into his face the breath of life; and man became a living soul."

***Jesus had an existence long before Mary. She admits Abraham was her forefather, and Jesus testifies that he existed before Abraham***

Luke 1:55 "Just as he once said to our forefathers, to Abraham and to his seed, forever."

John 8:58 "Jesus said to them: 'Most truly I say to you, Before Abraham came into existence, I have been.'"

**Jesus was not God, but was God's Son and became subject to the Father**

**Luke 1:30-32, 35, Dy** "And the angel said to her: Fear not, Mary, for thou hast found grace with God. Behold thou shalt conceive in thy womb and shalt bring forth a son: and thou shalt call his name Jesus. He shall be great and shall be called the Son of the Most High.... And the angel answering, said to her: The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee and the power of the Most High shall overshadow thee. And therefore also the Holy which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God."

**Luke 9:35, Dy** "And a voice came out of the cloud, saying: This is my beloved son. Hear him."

**1 Cor. 15:28, Dy** "And when all things shall be subdued unto him, then the Son also himself shall be subject unto him that put all things under him, that God may be all in all."

See "Incarnation", "Trinity."

**"Mother of God" teaching same as pagan "queen of heaven"**

**Jer. 7:18, Dy** "The children gather wood, and the fathers kindle the fire, and the women knead the dough, to make cakes to the queen of heaven, and to offer libations to strange gods, and to provoke me to anger."

[See *Cath. Encycl.*, Vol. XV, p. 460, for evidence that a sect of apostate Christians (4th century) was condemned for offering cakes to Mary.]

**(3) Mary Not Properly Called "Ever Virgin", Since She Bore Other Children**

**Matt. 1:25, Dy** "And he knew her not till she brought forth her firstborn son: and he called his name Jesus."

**Matt. 13:55, 56, Dy** "Is not this the carpenter's son? Is not his mother called Mary, and his brethren James and Joseph and

Simon and Jude? And his sisters, are they not all with us?"

**Clear distinction shown between Jesus' natural and spiritual brothers**

**Matt. 12:46-50, Dy** "As he was yet speaking to the multitudes, behold his mother and his brethren stood without, seeking to speak to him. And one said to him: Behold thy mother and thy brethren stand without, seeking thee. But he answering him that told him, said: Who is my mother and who are my brethren? And stretching forth his hand towards his disciples, he said: Behold my mother and my brethren. For whosoever shall do the will of my Father that is in heaven, he is my brother, and sister, and mother."

**John 2:12, Dy** "After this, he went down to Capharnaum, he and his mother and his brethren and his disciples."

**John 7:3, 5, 10, Dy** "And his brethren said to him: Pass from hence and go into Judea, that thy disciples also may see thy works which thou dost. For neither did his brethren believe in him. But after his brethren were gone up, then he also went up to the feast, not openly, but, as it were, in secret."

**Gal. 1:19, Dy** "But other of the apostles I saw none, saving James the brother of the Lord."

**(4) Woman of Genesis 3:15 Is Not Mary, but God's Invisible Organization**

**Gen. 3:15, Dy** "I will put enmities between thee and the woman, and thy seed and her seed: she shall crush thy head, and thou shalt lie in wait for her heel."

[Footnote, vs. 15, *Douay*: "She shall crush. So divers of the fathers read this place, conformably to the Latin [though not to the original Hebrew]: others read it *ipsam*, that is, the seed. ... It is by her seed, Jesus Christ,

that the woman crushes the serpent's head."]

**Gen. 3:15, CB** "I will put enmity between you and the woman, between your seed and her seed; he shall crush your head, and you shall lie in wait for his heel."

**Isa. 54:5, 13** "For thy Maker is thy husband; Jehovah of hosts is his name: and the Holy One of Israel is thy Redeemer; the God of the whole earth shall he be called. And all thy children shall be taught of Jehovah; and great shall be the peace of thy children."

***Jesus as born of Mary was flesh and unable to kill Satan***

**Gal. 4:4, Dy** "But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent his Son, made of a woman, made under the law."

**John 1:14, Dy** "And the Word was made flesh and dwelt among us (and we saw his glory, the glory as it were of the only begotten of the Father)."

**1 John 4:2, 3, Dy** "By this is the spirit of God known. Every spirit which confesseth that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is of God: and every spirit that dissolveth Jesus is not of God. And this is Antichrist."

**Heb. 2:14, Dy** "Therefore because the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself in like manner hath been partaker of the same: that, through death, he might destroy him who had the empire of death, that is to say, the devil."

***Jesus became God's spirit Son through rebirth***

**John 3:5, 6, Dy** "Jesus answered: Amen, amen, I say to thee, unless a man be born again of water and the Holy Ghost, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. That which is born of the flesh is flesh: and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit."

**Luke 3:21, 22, Dy** "Jesus also being baptized and praying, heaven was opened: and the Holy

Ghost descended in a bodily shape, as a dove, upon him. And a voice came from heaven: Thou art my beloved Son. In thee I am well pleased."

See "Born Again".

***Jesus' spiritual mother (the woman) is God's invisible organization and mother of his spiritual brothers***

**Rom. 8:29, Dy** "For whom he foreknew, he also predestinated to be made conformable to the image of his Son: that he might be the firstborn amongst many brethren."

**Gal. 4:22-26, Dy** "Abraham had two sons: the one by a bondwoman and the other by a free woman. But he who was of the bondwoman was born according to the flesh: but he of the free woman was by promise. Which things are said by an allegory. For these are the two testaments. ... Agar ... hath affinity to that Jerusalem which now is: and is in bondage with her children. But that Jerusalem which is above is free: which is our mother."

**Apoc. 12:1, 5, 17, Dy** "And a great sign appeared in heaven: A woman clothed with the sun, and the moon under her feet, and on her head a crown of twelve stars. And she brought forth a man child, who was to rule all nations with an iron rod. And her son was taken up to God and to his throne. And the dragon was angry against the woman: and went to make war with the rest of her seed, who keep the commandments of God and have the testimony of Jesus Christ."

***Jesus is the spirit seed of the heavenly woman to crush the invisible Serpent's head***

**Gal. 3:16, Dy** "To Abraham were the promises made and to his seed. He saith not: And to his seeds, as of many. But as of one: And to thy seed, which is Christ."

**Gen. 22:15-17, Dy** "And the angel of the Lord called to Abraham... saying: By my own self have I sworn, saith the Lord:... Thy seed shall possess the gates of their enemies."

**1 John 3:8, Dy** "For this purpose the Son of God appeared, that he might destroy the works of the devil."

**Rom. 16:20, Dy** "And the God of peace crush Satan under your feet speedily."

**Apoc. 12:7-9, Dy** "And there was a great battle in heaven: Michael and his angels fought with the dragon, and the dragon fought, and his angels. And they prevailed not: neither was their place found any more in heaven. And that great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, who is called the devil and Satan."

**Apoc. 20:1-3, 7-9, Dy** "And I saw an angel coming down from heaven, having the key of the bottomless pit and a great chain in his hand. And he laid hold on the dragon, the old serpent, which is the devil and Satan, and bound him for a thousand years. And he cast him into the bottomless pit and shut him up and set a seal upon him, that he should no more seduce the nations till the thousand years be finished. And after that, he must be loosed a little time. And when the thousand years shall be finished, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison and shall go forth and seduce the nations... And there came down fire from God out of heaven and devoured them: and the devil, who seduced them, was cast into the pool of fire and brimstone."

**(5) Mary Not Given Special Position in Early Congregation as "Spiritual Mother"**

**Acts 1:14, 15, Dy** "All these were persevering with one mind in prayer with the women and Mary the mother of Jesus, and with his brethren. In those days, Peter, rising up in the midst of

the brethren, said (now the number of persons together was about an hundred and twenty)."

**1 Tim. 2:11-13, Dy** "Let the woman learn in silence with all subjection. But I suffer not a woman to teach, nor to use authority over the man: but to be in silence. For Adam was first formed: then Eve."

**Gal. 4:26, Dy** "But that Jerusalem which is above is free: which is our mother."

**(6) Improper to Address Prayers to Mary as Mediatrix**

**John 14:6, 13, Dy** "Jesus saith to him: I am the way, and the truth, and the life. No man cometh to the Father, but by me. ... and whatsoever you shall ask the Father in my name, that will I do."

**1 Tim. 2:1, 5, Dy** "I desire therefore, first of all, that supplications, prayers, intercessions and thanksgivings be made for all men: for there is one God: and one mediator of God and men, the man Christ Jesus."

See "Prayer".

**(7) "Assumption" of Mary, or Taking Her Body and Soul into Heaven, Unscriptural and Unreasonable. Flesh-and-Blood Bodies Could Not Exist Beyond Earth's Atmosphere**

**John 3:3, 7, 8, Dy** "Jesus answered and said to him: Amen, amen, I say to thee, unless a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God. Wonder not that I said to thee: You must be born again. The spirit breatheth where he will and thou hearest his voice: but thou knowest not whence he cometh and whither he goeth. So is every one that is born of the Spirit."

**1 Cor. 15:42, 44, 45, 48-50, Dy** "So also is the resurrection of the dead. It is sown in corruption: it shall rise in incorruption. It is sown a natural body: it shall rise a spiritual body. If there be a natural body, there is also a

spiritual body, as it is written: The first man Adam was made into a living soul: the last Adam into a quickening spirit. Such as is the earthly, such also are the earthly: and such as is the heavenly, such also are they that are heavenly. Therefore, as we have borne the image of the earthly, let us bear also the image of the heavenly. Now this I say, brethren, that flesh and blood cannot possess the kingdom of God: neither shall corruption possess incorruption."

**(8) Scriptural References to Her as "Blessed", "Happy" or "Highly Favored" Do Not Mean Worship Was Her Due**

**Luke 1:28, 30, Dy** "And the angel being come in, said unto her: Hail, full of grace ["highly favored one," NW], the Lord is with thee: blessed art thou among women. . . . Fear not, Mary, for thou hast found grace with God."

**Luke 1:41-48, Dy** "Elizabeth was filled with the Holy Ghost. And she cried out with a loud voice and said: Blessed art thou among women and blessed is the fruit of thy womb. . . . And Mary said: My soul doth magnify the Lord. . . . for behold from henceforth all generations shall call me blessed ["happy," NW]."

**Same expressions used toward others**

**Judg. 5:24, Dy** "Blessed among women be Jahel the wife of Haber the Cinite: and blessed be she in her tent."

**Deut. 28:1, 4, Dy** "The Lord thy God will make thee higher than all the nations that are on

the earth. Blessed shall be the fruit of thy womb, and the fruit of thy ground, and the fruit of thy cattle, the droves of thy herds, and the folds of thy sheep."

**Gen. 30:9, 10, 13, Dy** "Lia, perceiving that she had left off bearing, gave Zelpha her handmaid to her husband. And when she had conceived and brought forth a son, . . . Lia said: This is for my happiness: for women will call me blessed. Therefore she called him Aser."

**Mal. 3:12, Dy** "And all nations shall call you blessed: for you shall be a delightful land, saith the Lord of hosts."

**Jesus showed veneration of Mary was wrong**

**Luke 11:27, 28, Dy** "And it came to pass, as he spoke these things, a certain woman from the crowd, lifting up her voice, said to him: Blessed is the womb that bore thee and the paps that gave thee suck. But he said: Yea rather, blessed are they who hear the word of God and keep it."

**John 2:3, 4** "When the wine ran short the mother of Jesus said to him: 'They have no wine.' But Jesus said to her: 'What have I to do with you, woman?'"

See also *Moffatt*.

**John 2:3, 4, AT** "The wine gave out, and Jesus' mother said to him, 'They have no more wine!' Jesus said to her, 'Do not try to direct me.'"

**John 19:26, CB** "When Jesus, therefore, saw his mother and the disciple standing by, whom he loved, he said to his mother, 'Woman, behold thy son.'"



satisfactorily and "make sure of all things" for your hearer's benefit. You will have to know your book, its themes, and its subjects for study to put it to good use.

**Bible Studies:** Always carry "*Make Sure of All Things*" with you to your home Bible studies. These small group gatherings in private homes allow for full expression on the part of everyone present. Maybe you will need additional scriptures to help settle an idea in the mind of your student, or maybe his question is not fully answered in the paragraph of the publication you are studying. Or he may get off on a side issue that will need to be cleared up before you go on. This book may aid you to get the answer quickly, especially if you use the division of the book "Subjects for Study".

**The Family Study:** Jehovah admonishes you to train your children in the right way. The family study leader, whether it be the father or the mother, can teach the children from this book as well as from any other publication of the Society. With the minds of the children so full of "whys", doubtless this book will help the children to put their full confidence in the highest authority, Jehovah's Word. Parents may have daily studies with their children in one of the Society's publications, and this can also be done with this publication by taking page after page and reading and discussing the scriptures. Certainly if you train up a child in the way he should go he will never depart from it. Train your children to use their own Bible as you conduct your Bible study with "*Make Sure of All Things*". Familiarity with the scriptures and their location in the Bible is very important to impress upon the minds of the children early in life, so they will know the importance of the Scriptures. Remember, your children are going to be ministers of God. Train them from their youth.

**Casual Witnessing:** Why not carry this handy book with you to work, when you go visiting, and on Bible studies? Have it with you in your everyday activities. When you start a conversation on almost any subject, you can quickly bring it around to something on the Bible. You can quickly start an acquaintance with someone while traveling by talking about present conditions, and then it will not be long before you are in a discussion. "*Make Sure of All Things*" is small and compact and always ready to help your memory.

**Talks:** You never know when you will be called on to give a discourse. Scriptural material for the proof of your arguments can easily be gathered with this aid. The speaker

can either use the arrangement as set forth in the book or rearrange the material to suit his argument and presentation. The "Subjects for Study" division, which appears as an appendix to the book, will certainly help speakers in gathering their material on almost any subject, even those not mentioned in the seventy themes. For example, "children," "Christian," "man," "thousand years" are not among the themes, but are subjects of great importance.

**Informal Group Gatherings:** Jehovah's witnesses assemble together in informal groups from time to time, and "*Make Sure of All Things*" will prove to be a basis for new-world conversation. Often questions arise and you just talk about them, but let "*Make Sure of All Things*" get into the discussion with you. Or maybe as a helpful and instructive entertainment a general knowledge quiz can be carried on by having one of the brothers use the book while the others see how many scriptures they can give to questions based on the themes or the various subheadings. A very interesting evening can be spent this way and everyone will be taking in knowledge.

**Service Meetings:** "*Make Sure of All Things*" will be a handy aid in preparing demonstrations, particularly in showing how interesting back-calls can be conducted. It can be shown how the book will help the publisher in his presentation and make it versatile. Demonstrations will help illustrate how it can be used on any of the above-mentioned subjects.

All Christians need knowledge now. They must seek it. They need all the information they can get of Jehovah's Word, so they may carry on true worship in holy array with all their fellow Christians. Jehovah's witnesses will never stop taking in knowledge, for they know that Jesus said: "This means everlasting life, their taking in knowledge of you, the only true God, and of the one whom you sent forth, Jesus Christ." (John 17:3) Having made sure of all things we will want to draw out this knowledge from within ourselves to teach it to others also. There is much work yet to be done in proclaiming this good news of Jehovah's kingdom in all the world for a witness, because "many nations shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of Jehovah, and to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths. For out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of Jehovah from Jerusalem".—Micah 4:2.

# Subjects for Study

This section is designed to help you to quickly find answers to many Bible questions and to "make sure of all things". Become familiar with its use. The numbers listed refer to pages where Bible texts are quoted that deal with the topic. These subjects are added to the seventy principal themes that precede this section as an aid in your private Bible study, reference work and preparation of discourses. They will be of special help in connection with group Bible studies in the home.

## A

**Abomination**, idolatry is, 172  
**Abyss(ed)**, demons will be, 108  
     Devil cast into, 104  
     symbolizes deathlike condition, 163  
**Active force**, moves to obedience, 211  
     needed to change thinking, 273  
     produces visible manifestations, 360  
**Ancestor Worship**, 9, 10  
**Angels**, assist in sifting work, 323  
     created before earth, 79  
     higher than men, 358  
     not immortal, 247  
     rebellious, 152  
     Satan restrained by, 105  
     vary in rank, 79  
     See Devil and Demons, Heavens  
**Animal(s)**, are souls, 349  
     made subject to man, 11  
     man forbidden unclean relations with, 13  
     man's superiority to, 10  
     no afterlife for, 13  
     not to live forever, 86, 352  
     not transmigrated souls, 384  
     vicious, were to be killed, 11  
     Worship, 10-13  
**Anointed**, 74, 95, 200  
**Antichrist**, 14-16  
**Apostles**, have no successors, 17  
     not in heaven till Christ's coming, 20  
     organization restored as in days of, 199  
     possessed miraculous gifts, 144  
     transmitted gifts of spirit, 23, 138  
**Apostolic Succession**, 16-24  
**Armageddon**, 24-27  
     antichrists destroyed at, 16  
     Christ resumes war activities at, 393  
     comes suddenly, 26  
     fought over Kingdom issue, 235  
     judgment enforced at, 222  
     Kingdom to come in fury at, 235  
     near, 395

    procreation mandate to survivors of, 110  
     Satan, demons abysed at, 108  
     sides, 24  
     survivors, 26  
     1,000-year day of test follows, 224  
**Assembl(ies, y)**, district, national, 206  
     money set aside to attend, 380  
     of New World society, 280  
     See Meetings  
**Association with outsiders dangerous**, 279  
**Astrolog(ers, y)**, 167, 367, 368  
**Atonement**, 69, 259  
     See Ransom  
**Authenticity of the Bible**, 44

## B

**Babylon**, 14, 300  
**Back-Calls**, 139  
**Baptism**, 27-36  
     does not wash away sins, 30  
     in name of Father, Son, holy spirit, 31  
     into Christ, 33  
     into Christ's body, 34  
     into Christ's death, 34  
     Jesus', 29  
     John the Baptist's, 28, 29  
     means complete immersion, 27  
     necessary step of obedience, 30  
     of infants unscriptural, 32  
     repentance must precede, 30, 307  
     symbolizes dedication, 30, 265  
     with fire, destruction, 34, 35  
     with holy spirit, 33, 34, 365  
**Beasts**, worldly rule pictured by, 371  
**Beggar and rich man**: see Lazarus  
**Bible**, 36-46  
     authenticity of, 44  
     constitution of Jehovah's witnesses, 199  
     contains God's complete revelations, 368  
     greatest truth of, is Kingdom, 227  
     in harmony with true science, 43  
     inspired by God, 39  
     interpretation from God, 40

is true guide, 287  
 not of human origin, 37  
 preservation, 40  
 studies, 139, 269, 270  
 transmission of, 40  
 true religion recognizes, 301  
 versus tradition, 41

**Birth**, God not responsible for every, 166  
 of Christ, fall, 2 B.C., 167

**Birthday not to be commemorated**, 166

**"Bishop,"** a designation misapplied, 172

**Black race not from curse**, 291

**Blood**, "flesh and," 260  
 is life stream, 356  
 of Christ Jesus, 47, 288, 388  
 of Jesus denied in mass, 258  
 Transfusion, 47, 48  
 validated new covenant, 72

**Body of Christ**, a new creation, 82  
 anointing as preachers, 365  
 baptism into, 34, 365  
 baptized with spirit, 33  
 die sacrificial death, 88  
 sealed, 366  
 triumphs over death, 88  
 See Congregation

**Book(s)**, "of nature," 36, 79  
 proper in publishing, 270

**Born**, Again, 48-50  
 by water and spirit, 48, 365  
 mother in heaven, 49  
 to heavenly hope, 50

**C**

**Caesar cannot require man's worship**, 53

**Caesar's Things to Caesar**, 50-53

**Cain married his sister**, 291

**Caste System**, 54-57

**Charitable Works**, 57-60

**Children**, condemned with parents, 223  
 delinquency of, 257, 342  
 God not responsible for birth of, 166  
 ministers, 266  
 not properly turned over to state, 66  
 obedient to Christian parents, 256  
 of Adam affected by corruptness, 118  
 of Mary, 400  
 parents' duty to train, 256  
 receive favor with parents, 223  
 to attend meetings, 257  
 when parents not responsible for, 223

**Christ**, as a Signal, 85  
 as Rock, 16  
 came to reveal true religion, 298  
 death of, observed by Memorial, 166, 169  
 first to be raised, 312  
 foundation of new world, 228  
 granted immortal life, 246  
 has divine nature, 247  
 head of congregation, 18  
 holds keys of death and hell, 22, 90  
 is a spirit, 207, 357  
 is a superior second to Jehovah, 369  
 is God's chief minister, 263

Judge, 221  
 King of congregation, 233  
 King of world, 234  
 Kingdom rule begins, 322  
 Levitical priests inferior to, 376  
 "name" is office, authority, 31  
 not to be worshiped as on crucifix, 84  
 only mediator between God and men, 68  
 perfect exemplar, 303  
 purposes of first, second presence, 322  
 resurrection of, 312  
 second presence proved invisible, 321  
 sign of first presence, 319  
 sign of second presence, 319  
 the channel of God's love, 251  
 validated new covenant with blood, 72  
 See Jesus Christ, Ransom

**Christian(s)**, ambassadors, 133  
 betrayed, hated, 338  
 children of, favored, 256  
 congregation, 72, 74, 75  
 conscience must be trained, 132  
 do not let money-making hinder, 132  
 idolatry forbidden to, 175  
 live by principles in Law, 241  
 marriage of, 254  
 must be a minister, 264  
 must have some dealings with world, 131  
 must love, be kind to all in world, 130  
 must maintain integrity, 130  
 must not take course of world, 129  
 must speak truth uncensored, 134  
 must stick to work of preaching, 134  
 neutral, 133  
 not to observe holidays, 165  
 persecution of, 338  
 recognize governments, 66  
 recognize rights of others, 65  
 religion means action, 303  
 respect consciences of others, 133  
 save money to attend assemblies, 380  
 tithe of, 378  
 weekly sabbath not enjoined upon, 328  
 work of, during God's rest day, 326  
 See Jehovah's Witnesses

**Christmas**, 166

**Church**: see Congregation

**Cleanness of organization**, 76, 203

**Clergy**, in open disobedience, 343  
 "man of lawlessness," 14  
 not authorized as elevated class, 56  
 religious leaders not "brothers", 185  
 responsible for communism, 64  
 "seed of serpent," 306  
 seek power and honor, 15

**Comforter**, 364

**Commandments**: see Ten Commandments

**Commission to preach**, 185

**Communism**, 61-67  
 as "red religion", 15, 306  
 cannot bring peace, 63  
 clergy responsible for, 64  
 will suffer destruction, 64

**Community responsibility**, 75, 223

**Conducting studies**, 141

**Confession**, 67-70  
 public, 69

- to fellow Christians proper, 68
- to God through Christ, 68
- Congregation**, Christ king of, 233
- cliques and classes forbidden in, 56
- early, not communistic, 65
- family relationship in, 276
- foundation of, 17
- governing body of, 58
- has overseers, 204
- helper as comforter of, 364
- is present-day "nation", 195
- love is identification mark of, 253
- may confess wrong course, 69
- meetings of, essential, 279
- meets for study, 205
- miraculous gifts to mature the, 137
- nation of Israel the first, 70
- of God, 70-78
- of today is mature, 140
- prayers of, acceptable, 283
- relief to needy among, 203
- Scriptural names applied to, 72, 194
- structure of Christian, 75
- structure of Jewish, 71
- the minister's, 270
- unity of Father, Son and, 388
- See Body of Christ
- Conscience**, determines activities, 277
- laws kept by Christians for sake of, 53
- must be trained, 132
- of others respected, 133
- violation of, means God's disfavor, 133
- Consecration**, 94, 95
- Contributions**, receipt of, proper, 271
- Covenant**: see Law, New covenant
- Covering cherub**, 97, 152
- Creation**, 78-83
- Adam perfect in, 344
- beyond understanding completely, 82
- days of, not 24 hours, 324
- gives evidence of God, 62
- God desisted from earthly, 324
- God's works of, perfect, 81
- man the highest earthly, 116
- only-begotten Son the first, 79
- Cross**, 83-86
- Jesus' death not on a, 84
- use in worship is idolatry, 84
- See Stake
- Curse not cause of black race**, 291

## D

- Day(s)**, definition of, 324
- of creation not 24 hours, 324
- sabbath, 324, 327
- 7,000-year rest, 324
- 1,000-year test, 224
- "Deacon,"** a designation misapplied, 172
- Death**, 86-90
- child delinquency results in, 257
- done away with, 89
- equalizes man and beast, 13
- false religion brought, 297
- forsaking Jehovah brought, 117
- freedom from, 125

- "gates of," 90
- hell associated with, 158
- is an enemy, 87
- is end of wrong thinking, 275
- "key of," 22
- man's works not tested after, 289
- Memorial observes Christ's, 166, 169
- missing mark brought, 345
- no dread of, for animals, 116
- no fear of, for "other sheep", 90
- no resurrection from second, 89
- 144,000 share in Christ's, 315
- result of sin, 86
- sacrificial, 88
- Satan caused, 87, 99
- severs marriage contract, 255
- soul not conscious after, 287
- used to denote change of condition, 90

- Dedication**, 91-97
- baptism a symbol of, 30
- cost calculated, 92
- essential for life, 249
- must precede ordination, 265
- repentance a prerequisite to, 307

- Delinquency**, juvenile, 257, 342

- Demons**, 106-108
- astrologers tools of, 368
- faith protects from, 122
- impersonate dead humans, 106
- organization of, under Devil, 101, 102
- sentenced to death, 106
- worship paid to, 107, 303

- Devil**, and Demons, 97-108
- appears as benefactor, 99
- cast into abyss at Armageddon, 104
- faith overcomes, 121
- is a person, 99
- names of, 98
- sentenced to death, 99

- Disfellowshipping**, 204

- Disobedience**, Adam's, 326
- is false religion, 304
- is refusing God's high standard, 345

- Divine right of kings**, 172

- Divorce(d)**, Christian grounds for, 255
- decree against Jews, 215
- demons, by God, 106
- Devil, by God, 99

- Documents used to compile Genesis**, 40

- Dominion over animals**, 10, 111

- Dreams**, 39, 363, 368

- See Visions

## E

- Earth**, and Its Destiny, 108-112
- created, 81
- Devil's, 101
- inherited by meek, 62
- man to remain on, 82
- never depopulated, 110
- never destroyed, 108
- only dwelling place for humans, 354

- Easter**, 168

- Eating meat sacrificed to idols**, 175

- "Elder,"** designation misapplied, 172

- Employer not to be cheated**, 278

**End of world**, 25  
 survivors of, 110  
**Entertainment**, choice of, 277  
**Everlasting life**, 90, 105, 136, 226,  
 243, 248, 295, 331  
**Evil**, bent of mind, 272  
 "slave," 15, 343  
**Evolution**, 112-119  
**Expansion**, 342

## F

**Faith**, 119-122  
 a gift from God, 120  
 based on knowledge, 91  
 gives protection against demons, 122  
 overcomes world, 121  
 saves, 242  
 tested, 121, 289  
 true, founded on Christ, 120  
 without proof for evolution, 119  
 works of, follow baptism, 32  
**"Faithful and discreet slave,"** 200, 379  
 See Remnant  
**False prophet(s)**, 14, 109  
**Famil(ies, y)**, condemnation, 223  
 connections do not bring salvation, 56  
 dissensions overcome, 277  
 God made man as, 54  
 God's choosing not dependent on, 341  
 relationship in congregation, 276  
 seventy original, from Noah, 291  
**Fear**, a sign of last days, 340  
 freedom from, 125  
 overcome by love, 253  
**Flag salute**, 176  
**Forgiveness of sins**, by disciples, 146  
 by Jesus, 145, 347  
 God the One to confess to for, 68  
 no man can grant, 68  
 not for world, 348  
**Fortunetelling**, 367  
**Freedom**, 122-126  
 Jehovah enjoys absolute, 122  
 man's, relative, 123  
**Friendship with the World**, 126-134

## G

**Gehenna**, 161, 162  
**Gentiles**, 19, 20, 30, 218  
**Gift(s)**, cultivated, 136, 140  
 from God, 135-144  
 love greater than miraculous, 253  
 miraculous, 137, 138  
 of faith, 120  
 of healing, 144, 145, 148, 149  
 of holy spirit, 23, 381  
 of mercy, 379  
 of perfect language to man, 117  
 of service with marriage, 142  
 of singleness, 142  
 of tongues, 381  
 selfish, bring no favor, 58  
 voluntary, 58  
**Giv(e, ing)**, freely without show, 58  
 of spiritual things more important, 59  
 voluntary, 58

**God**, a jealous, 184  
 does not repent of purposes, 310  
 his power of resurrection, 312  
 is head over Christ, 388  
 Jehovah is one, 386  
 man restored to favor of, 295  
 no image of, possible, 174  
 no nation superior before, 292  
 not responsible for each birth, 166, 354  
 Satan is a, 102  
 the Creator, Jehovah, 79, 290  
**Gossip**, 276  
**Governing body**, 58, 65, 200  
 authority and duties of, 200  
**Government(s)**, Christians recognize, 66  
 Israeli, 213, 216  
 pictured by beast, false prophet, 109  
 political, of the Devil, 62  
 theocratic, 229  
**Grave**, as burying place, 157  
 Jonah a sign of Jesus in, 319  
 See Hell  
**Gravedom**: see Hell

## H

**Hades**, 18, 22, 156  
 "gates of," 90  
 See Hell  
**Harlot**: see Babylon  
**Healing**, 144-150  
 easy as forgiving sins, 68  
 gift not used on self, 148  
 gift passed away after apostles, 149  
 powers given as a sign, 147  
 receiving money not permitted for, 149  
**Heaven(s)**, 150-154  
 God's dwelling place, 151  
 God's invisible organization, 151  
 keys of, 18  
 new, 110, 152  
 Satan's invisible, 101, 152  
 sky, 153  
 starry, physical, 80, 153  
**Hell**, 154-164  
 good, bad go there, 158  
 hope for those in, 159  
 means grave, gravedom, 156  
 powerless against God's chosen, 159  
 to be finally destroyed, 160  
 wicked are abased to, 159  
**Higher Powers**: see Superior Authorities  
**Holidays**, 165-171  
**Holy**, days of Christendom abominable, 171  
 nation, 96  
**Holy spirit**: see Active force  
**Honorary Titles**, 171, 172  
**House-to-house work**, 139, 268  
**Husband**, Christian duties of, 255

## I

**Idolatry**, 172-178  
 a snare of Satan, 173  
 brings punishment, 174  
 forbidden, 173, 175  
 stubbornness and rebellion are, 174  
 worship of state powers is, 176

**Image(s)**, Christ in God's express, 357  
 have no power to help, 173, 178  
 man in God's, 122  
 not needed in prayer, 178  
 of animals forbidden, 12

**Immersion**: see Baptism

**Immortal (ity)**, a reward, 136, 350  
 angels do not have, 247  
 Christ is, 209, 357  
 doctrine of human, untruthful, 312  
 given for faithfulness, 246, 247  
 inseparably linked with Kingdom, 351  
 limited to heavenly persons, 247  
 new creation to be, 82  
 primarily Jehovah's, 243, 349

**Incarnation**, 179-181  
 Jesus was not an, 180  
 prophets at transfiguration not an, 181  
 See Materialized

**Incorruptibility**, 243  
 a reward for faithfulness, 350  
 angels do not have, 247  
 brought to light, 246  
 is primarily Jehovah's, 349

**Inspiration**, 39, 40, 362

**Inspired expressions**, 360-368

**Integrity**, 98, 100, 105, 130

**Interfaith**, 181-187  
 doctrinal differences not petty, 185  
 forbidden, 183  
 Jehovah in opposition to, 182  
 resisted by early Christians, 186

**Interpretation**, 363

**Inventions of man not creations**, 82

**Israel**, 211  
 first congregation of God, 70  
 judgment of fleshly, 220  
 judgment of spiritual, 221  
 "of God," 218  
 payment of tithes by, 376  
 regathering of true, not political, 374  
 separated by Law covenant, 238

**Issue**, Armageddon to be fought over, 235  
 Christians hated over, 338  
 to be settled forever, 100

## J

**Jehovah**, 188-193  
 alone before creation, 78  
 blesses people of all nations, 293  
 his power extends everywhere, 191  
 his power to hear, answer prayer, 282  
 his spirit, active force, 360-366  
 his vindication most important, 192  
 is a person, 188, 386  
 is a Savior, 331, 336  
 is a soul, 349  
 is a spirit, 357  
 is immortal, incorruptible, 243, 349  
 is one God, 386  
 is supreme above all superiors, 369  
 is the "Alpha and Omega", 388  
 is the source, giver of life, 243  
 is the source of love, 250  
 not omnipresent, 191  
 7,000-year sabbath of, 324

**Jehovah's Witness(es)**, 193-207  
 Abel, the first on earth, 193  
 are ambassadors, 197  
 Christ is Leader of, 195  
 each is a minister, 197  
 Jehovah is Founder, giver of name, 195  
 Jesus is chief, 193  
 persecuted by Satan, 395

**Jesus Christ**, 207-210  
 and Jehovah different persons, 386  
 baptized at age of thirty, 167  
 birth of, no metempsychosis, 385  
 born c. October 1, 2 B.C., 167, 208  
 Chief Agent of life, 331  
 chief witness of Jehovah, 193  
 commissioned followers to preach, 185  
 flesh of, 260  
 gives life to obedient mankind, 243  
 had natural brothers, 400  
 heir of Kingdom, 228  
 inferior to Jehovah God, 387, 389, 390  
 is seed of woman, 401  
 kept Law perfectly, 239  
 Law nailed to stake of, 238  
 mass denies, 258  
 materialized, 314, 320  
 meaning of name, 207  
 mediates new covenant, 241  
 no incarnation, 180  
 put to death on upright stake, 84  
 religious leaders not brothers of, 185  
 resurrection of, 313, 314, 319  
 was flesh, 14, 180, 181  
 See Christ

**Jews**, rejection of Jesus by, 215  
 Return to Palestine, 210-219  
 true, of promise, 217

**John**, baptism by, 28, 29  
 baptizing, A.D. 29, 167  
 born, 2 B.C., 167

**Jubilee**, 123

**Judgment**, Days, 219-226  
 Edenic, 219  
 for peoples of the nations, 222  
 of fleshly Israel, 220  
 of God's house, 221  
 of Noah's day, 219  
 of Satan's world, 103  
 of sheep and goats, 223  
 of Sodom and Gomorrah, 220  
 of 1,000-year day of test, 224  
 witnesses raised up during, 193

## K

**Keys**, of death and hell, 22, 90  
 of heaven, 18

**King(s)**, 24, 210, 228, 229, 233, 234, 237

**Kingdom**, 226-237  
 ambassador of, 197  
 Christ waited to receive the, 234  
 Christendom is not God's, 236  
 Christians hated over issue of, 338  
 comes against Satan's organization, 235  
 flesh and blood cannot enter, 351  
 God judges who is worthy to enter, 20

immortality linked with, 351  
 is "new heavens", 152  
 knowledge of entering, 19  
 lawbreakers excluded from, 239  
 message and ministry of, 153, 197, 233  
 no second death for members of, 90  
 not "in one's heart", 231  
 preaching is only soul-saving work, 357  
 realm of, 231  
 rule begins at second presence, 322  
 spirit-begotten members, 49  
 subjects of, 110, 231  
 work opposed by world leaders, 338

**Knowledge**, basis for faith, 91  
 necessary for new-world living, 275  
 needed to develop faith, 121  
 of opportunity to enter Kingdom, 19  
 repentance leads to, 307

**L**

**"Last days,"** 257, 273, 299

**Law(s)**, 237-242  
 Christians keep, 53  
 covenant, 71  
 covenant replaced by new covenant, 241  
 fulfilled by love, 250  
 fulfilled, moved out of way, 329  
 given only to Israel, 238  
 Jews freed from, 84  
 life not possible by, 249  
 -makers are Jehovah and Christ, 199  
 "of freedom," 124  
 "of mind," 274  
 "of Moses" set mark, 346  
 "of sin," 274, 347  
 of tithes for Israel, 376, 377  
 pictured realities, 239  
 safeguarded against idolatry, 174  
 salvation not possible by, 334  
 sins against covenant, 28, 309  
 to serve only until Messiah, 238

**Lazarus and rich man**, 160

**League of Nations**, 338, 339

**Lent**, 170

**Life**, 242-249  
 a gift from God, 136  
 a reward for proved integrity, 105  
 Adam, Eve had conditional, 244  
 administered by Christ and 144,000, 232  
 all men born without right to, 244  
 as an intelligent person, is soul, 356  
 at end of 1,000 years, 90, 226, 248, 318  
 brought to light by Christ, 246  
 Chief Agent of, is Jesus, 331  
 forever forfeited by Adam, Eve, 244  
 future, more important, 246  
 limited span of, for lower animals, 116  
 pattern, 83, 313, 327, 356, 385  
 principle or force, 355, 356, 358, 359  
 ransom brings, to man, 295  
 resurrection of, 317  
 rights lost, exact price needed, 294

**Limbo**, 160

**Literature**, proper in publishing, 270

**Lord's Return**: see Return of Christ

**Lord's supper**, 259

**Love**, 250-253  
 for God unifies, 197

## M

**Male members teach in congregation**, 141

**Man(s)**, angels higher than, 358  
 bent of mind toward evil, 272, 273  
 created perfect, 116  
 created to live forever, 86  
 created with God's attributes, 82  
 degraded, not evolving, 117  
 has life principle or force, 355  
 has relative freedom, 123  
 highest earthly creation, 116  
 is a soul, 349  
 -kind sprang from Adam, Noah, 290, 291  
 life given to obedient, 243  
 made for earth, 82  
 meets mark at end of 1,000 years, 348  
 mind of, must be trained, 275  
 missing mark brought death on, 345  
 needs a ransom, 294  
 not infallible, 21  
 "of lawlessness," 14  
 races of, created, 290

**"Many roads, one destiny,"** 186

**Mark**, death brought by missing, 345  
 Law proved men were missing, 346  
 of perfection met, 348  
 of perfection set in Eden, 344

**Marriage**, 253-257  
 gift of service with, 142  
 improper restrictions on, 343  
 requirements of law met, 51

**Mary**, not "ever virgin", 400  
 not "mother of God", 399, 400  
 not woman of Gen. 3:15, 400  
 Worship of, 398-403

**Mass**, 257-263

**Materialized**, 106, 313, 314, 320

**Mediator**, Christ, 68, 241  
 Christ needs no priestly, 259  
 Moses, 238

**Meetings**, attendance at, essential, 279  
 children to attend, 257  
 service, 205, 206

**Melchizedek**, 376

**Memorial**, 169, 259  
 See Lord's supper

**Men pray with head uncovered**, 283

**Messiah**: see Christ

**Metempsychosis**, 384, 385

**Millennium**: see Thousand year(s)

**Mind**, attitude of, is spirit, 359  
 bent toward evil, 272, 273  
 Eve's, corrupted, 272  
 fed wrong things by Satan, 273  
 law of, 274  
 must be trained, filled, 275, 279  
 soundness of, needed for salvation, 332  
 true religion transforms, 302

**Minister(s)**, child, 266  
 congregation of, 270  
 in Israel exempted, 133  
 Jesus Christ is God's chief, 263  
 mature, may be overseers, 204



no retirement for, 267  
 not commercial, 271  
 of God, 263-271  
 ordination of, 264, 265  
 record of work kept, 206  
 Satan's, false, 154  
 secondary occupations proper for, 271  
 women may be, 265

**Miracles**, by invisible active force, 361

**Miraculous gifts**, 137, 138  
 love greater than, 253  
 no longer present, 138

## N

**Nation(s)**, confused, perplexed, 340  
 have violated God's rest day, 326  
 new, 217, 218  
 not any, a "super race", 292  
 of Israel cast off, 374  
 of Jehovah blessed, 293  
 peoples of all, blessed, 293  
 practicing genocide condemned, 293  
 ruled with rod of iron, 322

**Nature**, balance in, 115

"book of," 79  
 divine, 247  
 human, 248

**Neutrality of Christians**, 133

**New covenant**, 72, 95, 216, 241, 258, 262

**New creation**, 82

**New earth**, 110

**New system(s) of things**, 33, 73, 137,  
 187, 340

**New World**, 120, 199, 210, 225, 227,  
 272, 273

foundation laid at Christ's ascent, 228  
 freedoms, 125  
 Living, 272-280  
 society, 110, 272, 280

## O

**Obedience**, active force moves to, 241

as a son, Adam's worship, 296  
 is Christian's work, 326  
 necessary for salvation, 333  
 the governing principle, 190

**One Hundred and Forty-four Thousand**, 24,  
 34, 49, 70, 82, 90, 95, 136, 150, 196,  
 226, 228, 232, 247, 248, 315, 316,  
 322, 350, 374

**Ordination**, 264, 265

**Organization(s)**, capital, 229  
 men seek relief in makeshift, 343  
 of God, 94, 99, 106, 122, 149, 151,  
 190, 323, 341, 400, 401  
 of Jehovah's witnesses, 199  
 of Satan, 14, 101, 102, 104, 109, 124,  
 152, 230, 235, 339, 391, 393  
 of seed, 228  
 "princes" in, 75  
 special appointments made through, 268

**Other sheep**, 110, 393

are Jehovah's witnesses, 196  
 baptism necessary, 30  
 benefits of new covenant for, 74  
 have hope of earthly resurrection, 317  
 may hold service positions, 204

no fear of death for, 90  
 subjects of Kingdom, 231

**Overseer**, 204  
 See "Bishop"

## P

**Paradise**, 318

**Parents**, duty to train children, 256  
 merit extends to children, 223  
 respect for, proper, 9

**Peddler**, minister not, 271

**Perfection**, Adam had rights by, 244

Kingdom uplifts man to, 232  
 man meets, at end of 1,000 years, 348  
 mark of, set in Eden, 344

**Permission of Devil's existence**, 100

**Persecution**, defeated, 199  
 fire of, means sharing with Christ, 289  
 of Jehovah's witnesses, 395  
 of true religion by false, 305  
 sign of last days, 338

**Personality**, new, 274

recognized in resurrection, 313  
 resurrected, 356, 385

**Peter**, did not rule congregation, 21

no record, was in Rome, 22  
 not infallible, 21  
 not the "rock", 16  
 use of keys by, 18, 20  
 was married, 23

**Polygamy**, 254

**Prayer(s)**, 280-286

a protection against Satan, 104  
 "amen" proper, 281  
 during spiritual sickness, 146  
 for dead accomplish nothing, 287  
 for rulers, 131, 285  
 for salvation, 333  
 great test of, 282  
 of congregation acceptable, 283  
 of wicked unanswered, 286  
 posture not prescribed, 282  
 repetitious, forbidden, 282  
 right matters, occasions for, 284  
 to God only through Christ, 281  
 to "saints" not authorized, 178, 281  
 unanswered if asked amiss, 285

**Preach(ing)**, brings salvation, 198

Jesus commissioned followers to, 185  
 method of, 268  
 of Christ's stake, 85  
 of Jonah, a sign, 319  
 of Kingdom as present, 233  
 of Kingdom is soul-saving work, 357  
 of Kingdom message unifies, 197  
 of Kingdom world-wide a sign, 338  
 proper on sabbath, 328  
 public, 206, 269  
 witnesses must, 197

**Presence of Christ**, first

King of congregation since, 233  
 sign of, 319  
 to supply ransom, 322  
 See Christ, Jesus Christ

**Presence of Christ**, second  
 apostles not in heaven before, 20

for purpose of salvation, 322  
invisible, 321  
nations ruled with iron rod at, 322  
resurrection of 144,000 begins, 322  
sign of, 319, 320, 337  
See Christ, Jesus Christ  
**Priest(hood)**, atonement by high, 259  
Christ's, 376  
consecration applies only to, 95  
in Israel not class distinction, 55  
Levitical, 376  
**Princes**, 75  
**Propaganda of world deceptive**, 128  
**Prophecy**, 362  
**Prophet(s)**, 14, 109  
**Public speaking**, preaching, 140, 206, 269  
**Purgatory**, 286-290

## Q

**Queen of heaven**, 168, 400

## R

**Race(s)**, black, not from curse, 291  
distinctions no barrier, 197  
due to hereditary factors, 291  
Israel's favor not superiority of, 55  
of Mankind, 290-293  
**Ransom**, 293-296  
exact price needed for, 294  
faith in, leads to salvation, 120, 332  
Jesus provides, 245  
makes resurrection possible, 88  
not appreciated without repentance, 309  
provided only if Jesus all flesh, 181  
releases from trouble, 294  
supplied at first presence, 322  
those having faith in, alive, 88  
**Redemption**, 88, 123  
**Registrations complied with**, 52  
**Reincarnation**: see Transmigration  
**Relative worship forbidden**, 177, 178  
**Religion(s)**, 296-307  
Adam's, without formalism, 296  
Christendom began with falling away, 298  
Christians set free from false, 124  
Eve's mind bent away from true, 272  
false, induced by lying claim, 297  
false, permeated by demons, 107  
false, to be destroyed, 300  
how false originated, 98, 296, 297  
many false, sign of last days, 337  
ministers of false, 154  
"natural," not sufficient, 301  
true, is revealed, 301  
**Remnant**, 153, 200, 215, 217, 392  
**Repentance**, 307-311  
deathbed, cannot manifest itself, 308  
for sins against Law covenant, 28, 309  
leads to knowledge, 307  
must precede dedication, baptism, 30, 91  
none from sin against holy spirit, 309  
replaces sorrow with joy, 308  
required of all saved, 307  
requires instruction, 307  
**Respect for rulers**, 50, 172  
**Responsibility**, community, 223

**Resurrection**, 311-318  
after paradise established, 111, 318  
all prior to Christ awaiting, 88  
death triumphed over by, 88  
first, 315  
for judgment on earth, 317  
from the "gates of death", 90  
hope of, 311, 314  
is not a transmigration, 315, 385  
key of Hades used at time of, 22  
life pattern re-created in, 83, 313, 327  
none from second death, 89  
no second death for 144,000 after, 90  
not a violation of God's rest, 327  
of faithful men of old, 317  
of Jesus a sign, 215  
of Jesus as immortal, 209  
of Jesus not in same body, 314  
of life, 317  
of 144,000, 248, 315, 316, 322  
possible through ransom, 88  
provides entry into Kingdom, 236  
provides opportunity for life, 248  
wicked not remembered for, 314  
**Return**, of Christ, 319-324  
visits, 139, 269  
**Revelations**, God's Word contains, 368  
special, have ceased, 368  
**Rich man and beggar**: see Lazarus  
**Righteousness**, by works impossible, 333  
self-, impossible, 333  
**Rock**, 16  
**Rosary**, forbidden in prayer, 282

## S

**Sabbath**, 324-330  
abolished with rest of Law, 238  
Christ's resurrection no change of, 330  
Jehovah's 7,000-year, 324  
not to be kept for all time, 240  
seventh-day, a shadow, 329  
weekly, 327, 328  
**Sacrifice(s)**, of Jesus frees, 261, 262, 347  
of Jesus never needs renewal, 258  
typical, 258  
unbloody, do not remit sins, 259  
**Saints**, 96, 281  
**Saluting flags is idolatry**, 176  
**Salvation**, 330-336  
depends upon Jesus, 331  
effected at second presence, 322  
not "once saved always saved", 332  
repentance required for, 307  
self-, impossible, 333  
through baptism into Greater Noah, 336  
through faith in ransom, 120  
through preaching work, 198  
universal, a fallacy, 334  
way of, 332  
**Sanctification**, 91, 95, 96  
by means of truth and holy spirit, 96  
must be maintained, 96  
**Satan**, brings woes upon people, 395  
cast out of heaven, 103  
destroyed, 104, 230, 336  
inspires expressions, 360

- introduced sin, death, 87  
 is a god, 102  
 is responsible for wrong thinking, 273  
 no forgiveness for world of, 348  
 protection against, 104  
 proved a liar, 103  
 released at end of 1,000 years, 226  
 tries to thwart God's purpose, 396  
 world of, condemned, 221  
 See Devil
- School**, ministry, 206
- Sects**, 300
- Seed**, 208, 228  
 of Abraham, 218  
 of serpent, 306  
 of woman is Christ, 401
- Serpent**: see Devil, Satan
- Servant(s)**, assistant, 141  
 cleansed as by fire, 289  
 have been inspired, 362  
 of God hated by world, 127  
 of God use no violence, 394  
 special, 204, 270  
 See "Bishop", "Deacon"
- Service**, appointments, 202, 204, 268  
 meeting, 205, 206  
 positions of other sheep, 204  
 repentance a prerequisite to, 307
- Seventieth week**, time of, 20
- Sheol**, 156  
 "gates of," 90  
 See Hell
- Sign(s)**, healing and tongues as, 147, 382  
 lying, performed in God's name, 339  
 not given to faithless Jews, 215  
 of Christ's first presence, 319  
 of Christ's second presence, 319, 320  
 of Last Days, 257, 337-344  
 of sabbath to Jews, 238, 328
- Sin(s)**, 344-349  
 against holy spirit, 309  
 against Law covenant, 28, 309  
 are accounted inactive in death, 288  
 confession of, proper, 68  
 forgiveness of, easy as healing, 68  
 freedom from, 126  
 introduced, 87, 97  
 man freed from law of, 347  
 no man can forgive, 68  
 not washed away by baptism, 30  
 of Adam, 344  
 of repentant ones forgotten, 308  
 only inherited, excused, 347  
 results in death, 86  
 slavery of, 123  
 that incurs second death, 89  
 those in, considered dead by God, 88  
 unbloody sacrifice does not remit, 259  
 willful, bring destruction, 348
- Social**, legal distinctions, accepted, 52  
 reforms not Christian's activity, 57  
 status no barrier, 197
- Son of man**, 124
- Soul(s)**, 349-357  
 animals are, 349  
 attributes, qualities of, 352  
 "dead," 355  
 human, is mortal, destructible, 352  
 human, to live forever if obedient, 353  
 no transmigration of, 315  
 not conscious after death, 287  
 reproduce after own kind, 383  
 reproduce in own likeness, 355  
 See Transmigration
- Speaking**: see Public speaking
- Spirit**, 357-366  
 active force of God is, 360  
 angels are, 358  
 distinguished from soul, 356  
 fruitage of, 251  
 gifts of, 142  
 holy, not a person, 389  
 inspired expressions are, 360  
 Jehovah is, 357  
 Jesus is, 357  
 life principle is, 355, 358  
 mental disposition is, 359  
 poured out on Jewish remnant, 217  
 true religion produces fruits of, 302
- Spiritism**, 366-369
- Stake**, a symbol of shame, reproach, 85  
 boasting in, means bearing reproach, 86  
 enemies of, are those denying ransom, 85  
 Jesus' death on a, 84  
 Law nailed to, 238  
 preaching of, means preaching ransom, 85  
 See Cross
- Stones**, in spiritual temple, 17
- Street work**, 139, 269
- Stud(ies, y)**, children to attend, 257  
 home Bible, 139, 269, 270  
 personal, necessary, 279, 333
- Superior Authorities**, 369-372  
 Adam, Eve tried to become, 326  
 Jehovah, Christ are, 199
- Superior(s)**, Christ Jesus is a, 369  
 Jehovah above all, 369  
 no nation is, 292
- Suprem(acy, e)**, 92, 98, 100, 104, 189, 230, 369
- System(s) of things**, Jewish, 70, 71  
 new, 33, 73, 137, 187, 340  
 Satan's, 102, 109, 273

## T

- Tartar(os, us)**, 155, 164
- Taxes should be paid**, 51
- Teaching**, 141
- Temple(s)**, 214, 217, 306
- Tempt(ation)**, brought by Satan, 101  
 Jehovah does not, 192
- Ten Commandments**, not for all time, 240  
 proper to quote as proof, 242  
 trying to gain life by, 309
- Ten "Lost Tribes"**, 373-375
- Theocratic**, government, 102, 229  
 organization, 199
- Thousand year(s)**, 22, 24, 35, 89, 90, 104, 110, 112, 150, 232, 248, 318, 324, 329, 348  
 day of test, 224  
 Satan bound for, 164

Time of 69½ and 70 weeks, 19, 20  
 Tithing, 376-380  
 Titles, Honorary, 171, 172  
 Tongues, 363  
   Speaking in, 380-383  
 Tradition(s), 287, 303  
   made lawbreakers of Pharisees, 239  
 Transmigration, 383-385  
   resurrection not, 315  
 Transubstantiation, 257  
 Trinity, 386-390

## U

United Nations, 338, 339  
 Unity of Father, Son, congregation, 388  
 Universal salvation, 334-336

## V

Vaccination, 48  
 Vindicat(e, ion), 104, 192, 230, 325, 361  
 Visions, 39, 368

## W

War(s), Christ's, against Satan, 391, 393  
   fomented by Satan, 107  
   freedom from, 125  
   of supernatural forces, 25  
   world, a sign, 337  
 Wickedness, not created by Jehovah, 192  
 Wife, Christian duties of, 255  
 Witness: see Jehovah's Witnesses  
 Women, lead prayer with head covered, 283  
   may be ministers, 265  
 Word of God, the Bible, 36  
   contains complete revelations, 368  
   searches man's thoughts, 274  
 Work(ing, s), avoided in rest day, 325  
   cleansing fire tests, 289  
   during test day determine judgment, 225  
   for governments not prohibited, 52

God desisted from earthly creative, 324  
 nations violated rest day by own, 326  
 of "character development", 333  
 of faith, 32  
 of God perfect, 81  
 of Kingdom opposed, 338  
 of preaching, 267  
 of proclamation without violence, 394  
 of Satan erased, 104  
 soul-saving, 357  
 World, controlled by Satan, 126  
   course of action of, 127  
   Distress, 390-397  
   divine condemnation on, 221  
   end of, 25, 219  
   false religion is part of this, 305  
   Friendship with the, 126-134  
   Jehovah's witnesses not a part of, 196  
   leaders oppose Kingdom work, 338  
   no forgiveness for Satan's, 348  
   of Satan judged, 103  
   overcome by faith, 121  
   powers, seventh and eighth, 339  
   prayers for, unanswered, 285  
   rule pictured by beasts, 371  
   things loved by, 126  
   thinking, out of harmony with God, 127  
   wars, sign of last days, 337  
 Worship(ers), active service, 197  
   freedom of, 125  
   new nation advancing true, 218  
   of Adam was without formalism, 296  
   of Easter egg, rabbit, 168  
   of Jewish nation prophetic, 298  
   of Mary, 398-403  
   of state brings destruction, 63  
   of state is idolatry, 176  
   restoration of true, a sign, 340  
   self-, 174  
   use of cross in, is idolatry, 84  
   world-wide expansion of clean, 342

## WATCHTOWER BIBLE EDITIONS

*American Standard Version:* Complete Bible, edition of 1901. Clear-faced, readable type. Contains cyclopedic concordance and maps. Footnotes give alternate renderings. Size: 7¾" x 5½" x 1¾". Bound in light-brown leatherette. Remit \$1.50.

*New World Translation of the Christian Greek Scriptures:* The Greek Scriptures, Matthew to Revelation, in modern English, 800 pages. Contains an Appendix, thousands of cross references and chain references. Copious footnotes furnish critical apparatus and alternate renderings. Size: 7½½" x 5" x ¾". Bound in green leatherette. Remit \$1.50.

See addresses on last page for ordering the above.

Chief Office and Official Address of  
**WATCH TOWER BIBLE & TRACT SOCIETY**  
**WATCHTOWER BIBLE AND TRACT SOCIETY, INC.**  
**INTERNATIONAL BIBLE STUDENTS ASSOCIATION**  
 is  
 124 Columbia Heights, Brooklyn 1, New York, U. S. A.

**Addresses of Branch offices:**

**America (U.S.)**, 117 Adams St., Brooklyn 1, N. Y. **\*\*Australia**, 11 Beresford Road, Strathfield, N.S.W. **\*\*Austria**, Liechtensteinstr. 24, Vienna IX. **\*\*Bahamas**, Box 1247, Nassau, N.P. **\*\*Belgium**, 28 Ave. Gen. Eisenhower, Schaerbeek-Brussels. **\*\*Bolivia**, Casilla No. 1440, La Paz. **\*\*Brazil**, Rua Licinio Cardoso 330, Rio de Janeiro. **\*\*British Guiana**, 50 Brickdam, Georgetown. **\*\*British Honduras**, Box 257, Belize. **\*\*British West Indies**, 21 Taylor St., Woodbrook, Port of Spain, Trinidad. **\*\*Burma**, P.O. Box 62, Rangoon. **\*\*Canada**, 40 Irwin Ave., Toronto 5, Ontario. **\*\*Chile**, Moneda 1710, Santiago. **\*\*Colombia**, Carrera 16, 23-85, Bogotá. **\*\*Costa Rica**, Apartado 2043, San José. **\*\*Cuba**, Calle D No. 206, Almendares, Marianao, Havana. **\*\*Cyprus**, Box 196, Famagusta. **\*\*Denmark**, Søndre Fasanvej 54, Copenhagen-Valby. **\*\*Ecuador**, Casilla 4512, Guayaquil. **\*\*Egypt**, Post Box 387, Cairo. **\*\*Eire**, 86 Lindsay Road, Glasnevin, Dublin. **\*\*El Salvador**, Apartado 401, San Salvador. **\*\*England**, 34 Craven Terrace, London, W. 2. **\*\*Ethiopia**, Box 1781, Addis Ababa. **\*\*Fiji**, Box 23, Suva. **\*\*Finland**, Vainamöisenskatu 27, Helsinki. **\*\*France**, 3 Villa Guibert, Paris 16<sup>e</sup>. **\*\*Germany (Western)**, Am Kohlheck, (16) Wiesbaden-Dotzheim. **\*\*Gold Coast, B.W.A.**, Box 760, Accra. **\*\*Greece**, 16 Tenedou St., Athens 8. **\*\*Guatemala**, 11 Avenida Norte No. 5-67, Guatemala. **\*\*Haiti**, Post Box B-185, Port-au-Prince. **\*\*Hawaii**, 1228 Pensacola St., Honolulu 14. **\*\*Honduras**, Apartado 147, Tegucigalpa. **\*\*Hong Kong**, 232 Tai Po Rd., 2d Floor, Kowloon. **\*\*India**, 167 Love Lane, Bombay 27. **\*\*Indonesia**, Postbox 105, Djakarta. **\*\*Israel**, P.O. Box 385, Jerusalem. **\*\*Italy**, Via Monte Maloia 10, Monte Sacro, Rome 742. **\*\*Jamaica**, 151 King St., Kingston. **\*\*Japan**, 1 Toyooka-cho, Shiba-Mita, Minato-Ku, Tokyo. **\*\*Jordan**, P.O. Box 18, Beit-Jala. **\*\*Lebanon**, P.O. Box 1122, Beirut. **\*\*Liberia**, P.O. Box 171, Monrovia. **\*\*Luxembourg**, 66 Boulevard General Patton, Luxembourg. **\*\*Mexico**, Calzada Melchor Ocampo 71, México 4, D.F. **\*\*Netherlands**, Koningslaan 1, Amsterdam-Z. **\*\*Netherlands West Indies**, Breedestraat 12, Otrabanda, Curaçao. **\*\*Newfoundland**, Canada, Post Box 521, St. John's. **\*\*New Zealand**, G.P.O. Box 30, Wellington, C. 1. **\*\*Nicaragua**, Apartado 183, Managua, D.N. **\*\*Nigeria**, West Africa, P.O. Box 695, Lagos. **\*\*Northern Rhodesia**, Box 5, Lusaka. **\*\*Norway**, Inkognitogaten 28 B., Oslo. **\*\*Nyasaland**, Box 83, Blantyre. **\*\*Pakistan**, Post Box 7227, Karachi 3. **\*\*Panama**, Box 274, Ancon, C.Z. **\*\*Paraguay**, Ayolas 394, Asunción. **\*\*Peru**, Pasaje Velarde 165, Lima. **\*\*Philippine Republic**, 104 Roosevelt Rd., San Francisco del Monte, Quezon City. **\*\*Puerto Rico**, 704 Calle Lafayette, Pda. 21, Urb. Hip., Santurce 34. **\*\*Sierra Leone**, Box 136, Freetown. **\*\*Singapore**, 15, 33 Poole Road. **\*\*South Africa**, Private Bag, P.O. Elandsfontein, Transvaal. **\*\*Southern Rhodesia**, P.O. Box 1462, Salisbury. **\*\*Surinam**, Zwartenhovenbrugstraat 181 Boven, Paramaribo. **\*\*Sweden**, Luntmakaregatan 94, Stockholm Va. **\*\*Switzerland**, Allmendstrasse 39, Berne 22. **\*\*Thailand**, Box 67, Bangkok. **\*\*Uruguay**, Joaquín de Salterain 1264, Montevideo. **\*\*Venezuela**, Ave. Prin. del Paraíso 27, Quinta Savtepaúl, Paraíso, Caracas.